

# Canopy<sup>®</sup> System Release 8 User Guide

Sys8-UG-en  
Issue 1a  
November 2006

includes...

**Planning Guide**

**Installation and  
Configuration Guide**

**Operations Guide**

**Reference**

# MOTO<sup>4</sup>WI



## Notices

See the following information:

- important regulatory and legal notices in Section 36 on Page 495.
- personal safety guidelines in Section 15 on Page 171.

## Trademarks, Product Names, and Service Names

MOTOROLA, the stylized M Logo and all other trademarks indicated as such herein are trademarks of Motorola, Inc.® Reg. U.S. Pat & Tm. Office. Canopy is a registered trademark and MOTOWi4 is a trademark of Motorola, Inc. All other product or service names are the property of their respective owners.

Adobe Reader is a registered trademark of Adobe Systems Incorporated.

Java and all other Java-based marks are trademarks or registered trademarks of Sun Microsystems, Inc. in the U.S. and other countries.

Microsoft and Windows are registered trademarks of Microsoft Corporation, and Windows XP is a trademark of Microsoft Corporation.

© 2006 Motorola, Inc. All rights reserved.

<http://www.motorola.com/canopy>

## TABLE OF SECTIONS

<b>Guide To This User Guide</b>	<b>31</b>
<b>Overview of Canopy Networks</b>	<b>43</b>
<b>Planning Guide</b>	<b>129</b>
<b>Installation and Configuration Guide</b>	<b>169</b>
<b>Operations Guide</b>	<b>369</b>
<b>Reference Information</b>	<b>491</b>
<b>Glossary</b>	<b>507</b>





# TABLE OF CONTENTS

## GUIDE TO THIS USER GUIDE.....31

<b>1</b>	<b>New in This Issue.....</b>	<b>33</b>
1.1	New Products and Features Described in Issue 2 .....	33
1.2	New Descriptions and Revisions in Issue 2 .....	33
1.3	MOTOWi4 Portfolio .....	33
1.4	Products Covered by This User Guide.....	33
1.5	Products Not Covered by This User Guide .....	34
1.6	Software Compatibility Described in This User Guide.....	34
<b>2</b>	<b>Using This User Guide .....</b>	<b>35</b>
2.1	Finding the Information You Need.....	35
2.1.1	<i>Becoming Familiar with This User Guide .....</i>	<i>35</i>
2.1.2	<i>Searching This User Guide .....</i>	<i>38</i>
2.1.3	<i>Finding Parameter and Field Definitions for Module Web Pages .....</i>	<i>38</i>
2.2	Interpreting Typeface and Other Conventions .....	41
2.3	Getting Additional Help.....	42
2.4	Sending Feedback .....	42

## OVERVIEW OF CANOPY NETWORKS.....43

<b>3</b>	<b>Advancing from Research to Implementation .....</b>	<b>45</b>
<b>4</b>	<b>Realizing a Wireless Backhaul Network .....</b>	<b>47</b>
<b>5</b>	<b>Exploring the Scope of Solutions .....</b>	<b>49</b>
5.1	Components.....	49
5.1.1	<i>Canopy Access Point Module .....</i>	<i>49</i>
5.1.2	<i>Advantage Access Point Module.....</i>	<i>49</i>
5.1.3	<i>Access Point Cluster .....</i>	<i>50</i>
5.1.4	<i>Canopy Subscriber Module.....</i>	<i>50</i>
5.1.5	<i>Advantage Subscriber Module .....</i>	<i>50</i>

5.1.6	<i>Canopy Lite Subscriber Module</i> .....	50
5.1.7	<i>900-MHz AP and SM</i> .....	51
5.1.8	<i>Backhaul Module</i> .....	52
5.1.9	<i>OFDM Series Backhaul Modules</i> .....	52
5.1.10	<i>Power Indoor Units for OFDM Series Backhaul Modules</i> .....	53
5.1.11	<i>Radio Adjustable Power Capabilities</i> .....	54
5.1.12	<i>T1/E1 Multiplexer</i> .....	54
5.1.13	<i>Cluster Management Module-2 (Part 1008CK-2)</i> .....	55
5.1.14	<i>Cluster Management Module micro (Part 1070CK)</i> .....	56
5.1.15	<i>GPS Antenna</i> .....	56
5.1.16	<i>Surge Suppressor (Part 300SS)</i> .....	57
5.1.17	<i>Accessory Components</i> .....	57
5.2	<i>Frequency Band Ranges</i> .....	62
5.3	<i>Canopy Product Comparisons</i> .....	62
5.3.1	<i>Canopy Product Applications</i> .....	62
5.3.2	<i>Link Performance and Encryption Comparisons</i> .....	63
5.3.3	<i>Cluster Management Product Comparison</i> .....	67
5.4	<i>Antennas for Connection to 900-MHz Modules</i> .....	68
5.4.1	<i>Certified Connectorized Flat Panel Antennas</i> .....	68
5.4.2	<i>Third-party Certified Connectorized Flat Panel Antenna</i> .....	68
5.5	<i>Adjunctive Software Products</i> .....	69
5.6	<i>Bandwidth and Authentication Manager</i> .....	70
5.7	<i>Prizm</i> .....	70
5.7.1	<i>Network Definition and Element Discovery</i> .....	70
5.7.2	<i>Monitoring and Fault Management</i> .....	71
5.7.3	<i>Element Management</i> .....	72
5.7.4	<i>BAM Subsystem in Prizm</i> .....	72
5.7.5	<i>Northbound Interface</i> .....	72
5.8	<i>License Management</i> .....	73
5.9	<i>Specifications and Limitations</i> .....	75
5.9.1	<i>Radios</i> .....	75
5.9.2	<i>Cluster Management Products</i> .....	75
5.9.3	<i>300SS and 600SS Surge Suppressors</i> .....	76
<b>6</b>	<b>Differentiating Among Components</b> .....	<b>77</b>

6.1	Interpreting Model (Part) Number.....	77
6.2	Sorted Model (Part) Numbers .....	80
6.3	Interpreting Electronic Serial Number (ESN).....	81
6.4	Finding the Model (Part) Number and ESN.....	81
<b>7</b>	<b>Canopy Link Characteristics .....</b>	<b>83</b>
7.1	Understanding Bandwidth Management .....	83
7.1.1	Downlink Frame Contents .....	83
7.1.2	Uplink Frame Contents.....	83
7.1.3	Default Frame Structures .....	84
7.1.4	Media Access Control and AP Capacity .....	85
7.1.5	Canopy Slot Usage .....	85
7.1.6	Data Transfer Capacity .....	85
7.1.7	Maximum Information Rate (MIR) Parameters .....	86
7.1.8	Committed Information Rate .....	88
7.1.9	Bandwidth from the SM Perspective .....	88
7.1.10	Interaction of Burst Allocation and Sustained Data Rate Settings.....	88
7.1.11	High-priority Bandwidth .....	88
7.1.12	Hardware Scheduling .....	90
7.1.13	2X Operation .....	92
7.2	Understanding Synchronization .....	95
7.2.1	GPS Synchronization .....	95
7.2.2	Passing Sync in a Single Hop .....	97
7.2.3	Passing Sync in an Additional Hop .....	97
<b>8</b>	<b>Meeting Link Requirements .....</b>	<b>101</b>
8.1	AP-SM Links .....	101
8.2	BH-BH Links.....	103
<b>9</b>	<b>Previewing Network Configurations .....</b>	<b>105</b>
9.1	Viewing Typical Layouts.....	105
9.2	Viewing Case Studies .....	107
<b>10</b>	<b>Accessing Features .....</b>	<b>109</b>
10.1	Activating Features.....	116
10.1.1	Fixed License Keys .....	116
10.2	Enabling Features .....	117

<b>11</b>	<b>Acquiring Proficiencies.....</b>	<b>119</b>
11.1	Understanding RF Fundamentals .....	119
11.2	Understanding IP Fundamentals.....	119
11.3	Acquiring a Canopy Demonstration Kit .....	119
11.3.1	900-MHz with Integrated Antenna and Band-pass Filter Demonstration Kit.....	119
11.3.2	900-MHz with Connectorized Antenna Demonstration Kit.....	120
11.3.3	2.4-GHz with Adjustable Power Set to Low Demonstration Kit.....	120
11.3.4	2.4-GHz with Adjustable Power Set to High Demonstration Kit.....	120
11.3.5	5.1-GHz Demonstration Kit .....	121
11.3.6	5.2-GHz Demonstration Kit .....	121
11.3.7	5.4-GHz Demonstration Kit .....	121
11.3.8	5.7-GHz with Integrated Antenna Demonstration Kit.....	122
11.3.9	5.7-GHz with Connectorized Antenna and Adjustable Power Set to Low ..	122
11.3.10	Demonstration Kit Part Numbers.....	122
11.4	Acquiring a Canopy Starter Kit.....	123
11.4.1	900-MHz with Integrated Antenna and Band-pass Filter Starter Kit .....	123
11.4.2	900-MHz with Connectorized Antenna Starter Kit.....	124
11.4.3	2.4-GHz with Adjustable Power Set to Low Starter Kit .....	124
11.4.4	2.4-GHz with Adjustable Power Set to High Starter Kit .....	124
11.4.5	5.1-GHz Starter Kit.....	125
11.4.6	5.2-GHz Starter Kit.....	125
11.4.7	5.4-GHz Starter Kit.....	125
11.4.8	5.7-GHz with Integrated Antenna Starter Kit.....	126
11.4.9	5.7-GHz with Connectorized Antenna and Adjustable Power Set to Low ..	126
11.4.10	Starter Kit Part Numbers .....	126
11.5	Evaluating Canopy Training Options.....	127
11.6	Attending On-line Knowledge Sessions .....	127

## **PLANNING GUIDE .....129**

<b>12</b>	<b>Engineering Your RF Communications .....</b>	<b>131</b>
12.1	Anticipating RF Signal Loss .....	131
12.1.1	Understanding Attenuation.....	131
12.1.2	Calculating Free Space Path Loss.....	131

12.1.3	Calculating Rx Signal Level.....	131
12.1.4	Calculating Fade Margin .....	132
12.2	Analyzing the RF Environment.....	133
12.2.1	Mapping RF Neighbor Frequencies .....	133
12.2.2	Anticipating Reflection of Radio Waves .....	134
12.2.3	Noting Possible Obstructions in the Fresnel Zone.....	134
12.2.4	Radar Signature Detection and Shutdown.....	135
12.3	Using Jitter to Check Received Signal Quality .....	136
12.4	Using Link Efficiency to Check Received Signal Quality .....	137
12.4.1	Comparing Efficiency in 1X Operation to Efficiency in 2X Operation.....	137
12.4.2	When to Switch from 2X to 1X Operation Based on 60% Link Efficiency...	137
12.5	Considering Frequency Band Alternatives .....	138
12.5.1	900-MHz Channels.....	139
12.5.2	2.4-GHz Channels.....	139
12.5.3	5.2-GHz Channels.....	140
12.5.4	5.4-GHz Channels.....	141
12.5.5	5.7-GHz Channels.....	142
12.5.6	Channels Available for OFDM Backhaul Modules .....	142
12.5.7	Example Channel Plans for AP Clusters.....	142
12.5.8	Multiple Access Points Clusters .....	144
12.6	Selecting Sites for Network Elements .....	145
12.6.1	Resources for Maps and Topographic Images .....	146
12.6.2	Surveying Sites.....	146
12.6.3	Assuring the Essentials.....	147
12.6.4	Finding the Expected Coverage Area .....	147
12.6.5	Clearing the Radio Horizon .....	148
12.6.6	Calculating the Aim Angles .....	148
12.7	Collocating Canopy Modules.....	149
12.8	Deploying a Remote AP .....	150
12.8.1	Remote AP Performance .....	151
12.8.2	Example Use Case for RF Obstructions .....	151
12.8.3	Example Use Case for Passing Sync .....	152
12.8.4	Physical Connections Involving the Remote AP .....	153
12.9	Diagramming Network Layouts .....	154
12.9.1	Accounting for Link Ranges and Data Handling Requirements.....	154

12.9.2	<i>Avoiding Self Interference</i> .....	154
12.9.3	<i>Avoiding Other Interference</i> .....	156
<b>13</b>	<b>Engineering Your IP Communications</b> .....	<b>157</b>
13.1	Understanding Addresses .....	157
13.1.1	<i>IP Address</i> .....	157
13.2	Dynamic or Static Addressing .....	157
13.2.1	<i>When a DHCP Server is Not Found</i> .....	157
13.3	Network Address Translation (NAT) .....	158
13.3.1	<i>NAT, DHCP Server, DHCP Client, and DMZ in SM</i> .....	158
13.3.2	<i>NAT and VPNs</i> .....	163
13.4	Developing an IP Addressing Scheme .....	164
13.4.1	<i>Address Resolution Protocol</i> .....	164
13.4.2	<i>Allocating Subnets</i> .....	164
13.4.3	<i>Selecting Non-routable IP Addresses</i> .....	165
<b>14</b>	<b>Engineering VLANs</b> .....	<b>167</b>
14.1	SM Membership in VLANs .....	167
14.2	Priority on VLANs (802.1p) .....	168

## **INSTALLATION AND CONFIGURATION GUIDE .....169**

<b>15</b>	<b>Avoiding Hazards</b> .....	<b>171</b>
15.1	Preventing Overexposure to RF Energy .....	171
15.1.1	<i>Details of Calculations for Separation Distances and Power Compliance Margins</i> .....	171
15.2	Grounding Canopy Equipment .....	173
15.2.1	<i>Grounding Infrastructure Equipment</i> .....	173
15.2.2	<i>Grounding Canopy 30/60- and 150/300-Mbps Backhaul Modules</i> .....	174
15.2.3	<i>Grounding SMs</i> .....	174
15.3	Conforming to Regulations .....	176
15.4	Protecting Cables and Connections .....	176
<b>16</b>	<b>Testing the Components</b> .....	<b>179</b>
16.1	Unpacking Components .....	179
16.2	Configuring for Test .....	179

16.2.1	<i>Configuring the Computing Device for Test</i> .....	179
16.2.2	<i>Default Module Configuration</i> .....	180
16.2.3	<i>Component Layout</i> .....	180
16.2.4	<i>Diagnostic LEDs</i> .....	181
16.2.5	<i>CMM2 Component Layout</i> .....	182
16.2.6	<i>CMMmicro Component Layout</i> .....	182
16.2.7	<i>Standards for Wiring</i> .....	184
16.2.8	<i>Best Practices for Cabling</i> .....	184
16.2.9	<i>Recommended Tools for Wiring Connectors</i> .....	184
16.2.10	<i>Wiring Connectors</i> .....	184
16.2.11	<i>Alignment Tone—Technical Details</i> .....	186
16.3	<i>Configuring a Point-to-Multipoint Link for Test</i> .....	186
16.3.1	<i>Quick Start Page of the AP</i> .....	187
16.3.2	<i>Time Tab of the AP</i> .....	193
16.3.3	<i>Session Status Tab of the AP</i> .....	195
16.3.4	<i>Beginning the Test of Point-to-Multipoint Links</i> .....	199
16.3.5	<i>Remote Subscribers Tab of the AP</i> .....	199
16.3.6	<i>General Status Tab of the SM</i> .....	200
16.3.7	<i>Continuing the Test of Point-to-Multipoint Links</i> .....	203
16.3.8	<i>General Status Tab of the AP</i> .....	204
16.3.9	<i>Concluding the Test of Point-to-Multipoint Links</i> .....	206
16.4	<i>Configuring a Point-to-Point Link for Test</i> .....	206
16.4.1	<i>Quick Start Page of the BHM</i> .....	207
16.4.2	<i>Time Tab of the BHM</i> .....	209
16.4.3	<i>Beginning the Test of Point-to-Point Links</i> .....	213
16.4.4	<i>Continuing the Test of Point-to-Point Links</i> .....	215
16.4.5	<i>General Status Tab of the BHM</i> .....	216
16.4.6	<i>Concluding the Test of Point-to-Point Links</i> .....	218
16.4.7	<i>Setting up a CMMmicro</i> .....	219
16.4.8	<i>Status Page of the CMMmicro</i> .....	224
16.4.9	<i>Configuration Page of the CMMmicro</i> .....	227
16.4.10	<i>Configuring Modules for Connection to CMMmicro</i> .....	234
16.4.11	<i>Event Log Page of the CMMmicro</i> .....	234
16.4.12	<i>GPS Status Page of the CMMmicro</i> .....	234
16.4.13	<i>Port MIB Page of the CMMmicro</i> .....	235

<b>17</b>	<b>Preparing Components for Deployment.....</b>	<b>237</b>
17.1	Correlating Component-specific Information .....	237
17.2	Ensuring Continuing Access to the Modules.....	237
<b>18</b>	<b>Configuring for the Destination.....</b>	<b>239</b>
18.1	Configuring an AP for the Destination .....	239
18.1.1	<i>General Tab of the AP.....</i>	<i>239</i>
18.1.2	<i>IP Tab of the AP .....</i>	<i>243</i>
18.1.3	<i>Radio Tab of the AP .....</i>	<i>245</i>
18.1.4	<i>SNMP Tab of the AP .....</i>	<i>250</i>
18.1.5	<i>Quality of Service (QoS) Tab of the AP .....</i>	<i>253</i>
18.1.6	<i>Security Tab of the AP .....</i>	<i>255</i>
18.1.7	<i>VLAN Tab of the AP .....</i>	<i>258</i>
18.1.8	<i>VLAN Membership Tab of the AP .....</i>	<i>260</i>
18.1.9	<i>DiffServe Tab of the AP.....</i>	<i>261</i>
18.1.10	<i>Unit Settings Tab of the AP .....</i>	<i>263</i>
18.2	Configuring an SM for the Destination .....	264
18.2.1	<i>General Tab of the SM .....</i>	<i>265</i>
18.2.2	<i>NAT and IP Tabs of the SM with NAT Disabled.....</i>	<i>267</i>
18.2.3	<i>NAT and IP Tabs of the SM with NAT Enabled .....</i>	<i>273</i>
18.2.4	<i>Radio Tab of the SM .....</i>	<i>278</i>
18.2.5	<i>SNMP Tab of the SM .....</i>	<i>281</i>
18.2.6	<i>Quality of Service (QoS) Tab of the SM.....</i>	<i>284</i>
18.2.7	<i>Security Tab of the SM.....</i>	<i>287</i>
18.2.8	<i>VLAN Tab of the SM .....</i>	<i>289</i>
18.2.9	<i>VLAN Membership Tab of the SM.....</i>	<i>291</i>
18.2.10	<i>DiffServe Tab of the SM.....</i>	<i>292</i>
18.2.11	<i>Protocol Filtering Tab of the SM.....</i>	<i>294</i>
18.2.12	<i>NAT Port Mapping Tab of the SM .....</i>	<i>295</i>
18.2.13	<i>Unit Settings Tab of the SM .....</i>	<i>296</i>
18.3	Setting the Configuration Source .....	297
18.4	Configuring a BH Timing Master for the Destination .....	299
18.4.1	<i>General Tab of the BHM .....</i>	<i>300</i>
18.4.2	<i>IP Tab of the BHM.....</i>	<i>303</i>
18.4.3	<i>Radio Tab of the BHM.....</i>	<i>305</i>



18.4.4	<i>SNMP Tab of the BHM</i> .....	308
18.4.5	<i>Security Tab of the BHM</i> .....	311
18.4.6	<i>DiffServe Tab of the BHM</i> .....	313
18.4.7	<i>Unit Settings Tab of the BHM</i> .....	315
18.5	Configuring a BH Timing Slave for the Destination .....	317
18.5.1	<i>General Tab of the BHS</i> .....	317
18.5.2	<i>IP Tab of the BHS</i> .....	320
18.5.3	<i>Radio Tab of the BHS</i> .....	322
18.5.4	<i>SNMP Tab of the BHS</i> .....	325
18.5.5	<i>Quality of Service (QoS) Tab of the BHS</i> .....	327
18.5.6	<i>Security Tab of the BHS</i> .....	328
18.5.7	<i>DiffServe Tab of the BHS</i> .....	330
18.5.8	<i>Unit Settings Tab of the BHS</i> .....	331
18.6	Adjusting Transmitter Output Power .....	332
<b>19</b>	<b>Installing Components</b> .....	<b>335</b>
19.1	PDA Access to Canopy Modules .....	335
19.2	Installing an AP .....	339
19.3	Installing a Connectorized Flat Panel Antenna .....	339
19.4	Installing a GPS Antenna .....	340
19.4.1	<i>Recommended Materials for Cabling the GPS Antenna</i> .....	341
19.4.2	<i>Cabling the GPS Antenna</i> .....	341
19.5	Installing a CMM2 .....	341
19.5.1	<i>CMM2 Installation Temperature Range</i> .....	341
19.5.2	<i>Recommended Tools for Mounting a CMM2</i> .....	342
19.5.3	<i>Mounting a CMM2</i> .....	342
19.5.4	<i>Cabling a CMM2</i> .....	343
19.5.5	<i>Verifying CMM2 Connections</i> .....	347
19.6	Installing a CMMmicro .....	347
19.6.1	<i>CMMmicro Temperature Range</i> .....	348
19.6.2	<i>Recommended Tools for Mounting a CMMmicro</i> .....	348
19.6.3	<i>Mounting a CMMmicro</i> .....	348
19.6.4	<i>Installing the Power Supply for the CMMmicro</i> .....	348
19.6.5	<i>Cabling a CMMmicro</i> .....	350
19.6.6	<i>Verifying CMMmicro Connections</i> .....	351
19.7	Installing an SM .....	351

19.8	Verifying an AP-SM Link .....	355
19.9	Installing a Reflector Dish.....	358
19.9.1	Both Modules Mounted at Same Elevation .....	358
19.9.2	Modules Mounted at Different Elevations .....	359
19.9.3	Mounting Assembly .....	359
19.10	Installing a BH Timing Master .....	360
19.11	Installing a BH Timing Slave .....	362
19.12	Upgrading a BH Link to BH20 .....	363
19.13	Verifying a BH Link.....	363
<b>20</b>	<b>Verifying System Functionality .....</b>	<b>367</b>

## **OPERATIONS GUIDE .....369**

<b>21</b>	<b>Growing Your Network.....</b>	<b>371</b>
21.1	Monitoring the RF Environment.....	371
21.1.1	Spectrum Analyzer .....	371
21.1.2	Graphical Spectrum Analyzer Display .....	371
21.1.3	Using the AP as a Spectrum Analyzer .....	372
21.2	Considering Software Release Compatibility .....	373
21.2.1	Designations for Hardware in Radios.....	373
21.2.2	CMMmicro Software and Hardware Compatibility .....	374
21.2.3	MIB File Set Compatibility .....	375
21.3	Redeploying Modules.....	375
21.3.1	Wiring to Extend Network Sync.....	375
<b>22</b>	<b>Securing Your Network .....</b>	<b>377</b>
22.1	Isolating APs from the Internet.....	377
22.2	Encrypting Canopy Radio Transmissions .....	377
22.2.1	DES Encryption .....	377
22.2.2	AES Encryption .....	377
22.2.3	AES-DES Operability Comparisons .....	378
22.3	Managing Module Access by Passwords.....	379
22.3.1	Adding a User for Access to a Module.....	379
22.3.2	Overriding Forgotten IP Addresses or Passwords on AP, SM, or BH .....	381
22.3.3	Overriding Forgotten IP Addresses or Passwords on CMMmicro .....	383

22.4	Requiring SM Authentication.....	384
22.5	Filtering Protocols and Ports .....	384
22.5.1	<i>Port Filtering with NAT Enabled</i> .....	384
22.5.2	<i>Protocol and Port Filtering with NAT Disabled</i> .....	385
22.6	Encrypting Downlink Broadcasts.....	386
22.7	Isolating SMs.....	386
22.8	Filtering Management through Ethernet.....	387
22.9	Allowing Management from Only Specified IP Addresses .....	387
22.10	Configuring Management IP by DHCP.....	387
<b>23</b>	<b>Managing Bandwidth and Authentication .....</b>	<b>389</b>
23.1	Managing Bandwidth without BAM.....	389
23.2	Bandwidth and Authentication Manager (BAM) Services and Features .....	389
23.2.1	<i>Bandwidth Manager Capability</i> .....	389
23.2.2	<i>Authentication Manager Capability</i> .....	391
<b>24</b>	<b>Managing the Network From a Management Station (NMS) .....</b>	<b>393</b>
24.1	Roles of Hardware and Software Elements .....	393
24.1.1	<i>Role of the Agent</i> .....	393
24.1.2	<i>Role of the Managed Device</i> .....	393
24.1.3	<i>Role of the NMS</i> .....	393
24.1.4	<i>Dual Roles for the NMS</i> .....	393
24.1.5	<i>Simple Network Management Protocol (SNMP) Commands</i> .....	393
24.1.6	<i>Traps from the Agent</i> .....	394
24.1.7	<i>AP SNMP Proxy to SMs</i> .....	394
24.2	Management Information Base (MIB) .....	394
24.2.1	<i>Cascading Path to the MIB</i> .....	394
24.2.2	<i>Object Instances</i> .....	395
24.2.3	<i>Management Information Base Systems and Interface (MIB-II)</i> .....	395
24.2.4	<i>Canopy Enterprise MIB</i> .....	396
24.3	Configuring Modules for SNMP Access .....	397
24.4	Objects Defined in the Canopy Enterprise MIB.....	397
24.4.1	<i>AP, SM, and BH Objects</i> .....	398
24.4.2	<i>AP and BH Timing Master Objects</i> .....	400
24.4.3	<i>SM and BH Timing Slave Objects</i> .....	404
24.4.4	<i>CMMmicro Objects</i> .....	407

24.5	Objects Defined in the Canopy OFDM BH Module MIB.....	410
24.6	Objects Supported in the Canopy 30/60-Mbps BH .....	411
24.7	Objects Supported in the Canopy 150/300-Mbps BH .....	411
24.8	Interface Designations in SNMP .....	411
24.9	Traps Provided in the Canopy Enterprise MIB .....	412
24.10	Traps Provided in the Canopy 30/60-Mbps BH Module MIB.....	412
24.11	Traps Provided in the Canopy 150/300-Mbps BH Module MIB.....	412
24.12	MIB Viewers .....	413
<b>25</b>	<b>Using the Canopy Network Updater Tool (CNUT).....</b>	<b>415</b>
25.1	CNUT Functions.....	415
25.2	Network Element Groups .....	415
25.3	Network Layers .....	415
25.4	Script Engine .....	416
25.5	Software Dependencies for CNUT .....	416
25.6	CNUT Download .....	416
<b>26</b>	<b>Using Informational Tabs in the GUI.....</b>	<b>417</b>
26.1	Viewing General Status (All) .....	417
26.2	Viewing Session Status (AP, BHM).....	417
26.3	Viewing Remote Subscribers (AP, BHM).....	418
26.4	Interpreting Messages in the Event Log (All) .....	418
26.4.1	<i>Time and Date Stamp .....</i>	<i>418</i>
26.4.2	<i>Event Log Data Collection.....</i>	<i>418</i>
26.4.3	<i>Messages that Flag Abnormal Events .....</i>	<i>421</i>
26.4.4	<i>Messages that Flag Normal Events .....</i>	<i>421</i>
26.5	Viewing the Network Interface Tab (All).....	422
26.6	Interpreting Radio Statistics in the Scheduler Tab (All).....	423
26.7	Viewing the List of Registration Failures (AP, BHM) .....	424
26.8	Interpreting Data in the Bridging Table (All) .....	425
26.9	Translation Table (SM).....	426
26.10	Interpreting Data in the Ethernet Tab (All).....	426
26.11	Interpreting RF Control Block Statistics in the Radio Tab (All).....	429
26.12	Interpreting Data in the VLAN Tab (AP, SM).....	430
26.13	Data VC (All) .....	432

26.14	Filter (SM).....	433
26.15	NAT Stats (SM) .....	434
26.15.1	NAT DHCP Statistics (SM).....	435
26.15.2	Interpreting Data in the GPS Status Page (AP, BHM) .....	436
<b>27</b>	<b>Using Tools in the GUI .....</b>	<b>437</b>
27.1	Using the Spectrum Analyzer Tool (SM, BHS).....	437
27.2	Using the Alignment Tool (SM, BHS) .....	437
27.3	Using the Link Capacity Test Tool (All) .....	440
27.4	Using the AP Evaluation or BHM Evaluation Tool (SM, BHS) .....	442
27.5	Using the Frame Calculator Tool (All) .....	446
27.6	Using the SM Configuration Tool (AP, BHM) .....	451
27.7	Using the BER Results Tool (SM, BHS).....	452
<b>28</b>	<b>Maintaining Your Canopy Software .....</b>	<b>453</b>
28.1	History of System Software Upgrades .....	453
28.1.1	Canopy Release 8 Features.....	453
28.1.2	Canopy Release 8 Fixes .....	453
28.2	History of CMMmicro Software Upgrades .....	453
28.3	Typical Contents of Release Notes .....	453
28.4	Typical Upgrade Process .....	454
28.4.1	Downloading Software and Release Notes.....	454
<b>29</b>	<b>Rebranding Module Interface Screens .....</b>	<b>455</b>
<b>30</b>	<b>Toggling Remote Access Capability.....</b>	<b>459</b>
30.1	Denying All Remote Access .....	459
30.2	Reinstating Remote Access Capability .....	459
<b>31</b>	<b>Setting Up a Protocol Analyzer on Your Canopy Network .....</b>	<b>461</b>
31.1	Analyzing Traffic at an SM .....	461
31.2	Analyzing Traffic at an AP or BH with No CMM .....	462
31.3	Analyzing Traffic at an AP or BH with a CMM.....	462
31.4	Example of a Protocol Analyzer Setup for an SM .....	463
<b>32</b>	<b>Troubleshooting.....</b>	<b>471</b>
32.1	General Planning for Troubleshooting.....	471
32.2	General Fault Isolation Process .....	471

32.3	Questions to Help Isolate the Problem.....	472
32.4	Secondary Steps .....	472
32.5	Procedures for Troubleshooting .....	473
32.5.1	<i>Module Has Lost or Does Not Establish Connectivity.....</i>	<i>473</i>
32.5.2	<i>NAT/DHCP-configured SM Has Lost or Does Not Establish Connectivity .</i>	<i>474</i>
32.5.3	<i>SM Does Not Register to an AP.....</i>	<i>476</i>
32.5.4	<i>BHS Does Not Register to the BHM .....</i>	<i>477</i>
32.5.5	<i>Module Has Lost or Does Not Gain Sync .....</i>	<i>478</i>
32.5.6	<i>Module Does Not Establish Ethernet Connectivity.....</i>	<i>479</i>
32.5.7	<i>Module Does Not Power Up.....</i>	<i>480</i>
32.5.8	<i>Power Supply Does Not Produce Power .....</i>	<i>480</i>
32.5.9	<i>CMM2 Does Not Power Up.....</i>	<i>481</i>
32.5.10	<i>CMM2 Does Not Pass Proper GPS Sync to Connected Modules.....</i>	<i>481</i>
32.5.11	<i>Module Software Cannot be Upgraded.....</i>	<i>482</i>
32.5.12	<i>Module Functions Properly, Except Web Interface Became Inaccessible..</i>	<i>482</i>
33	<b>Obtaining Technical Support.....</b>	<b>483</b>
34	<b>Getting Warranty Assistance.....</b>	<b>489</b>

## **REFERENCE INFORMATION .....491**

35	<b>Administering Modules through telnet Interface .....</b>	<b>493</b>
36	<b>Legal and Regulatory Notices .....</b>	<b>495</b>
36.1	Important Note on Modifications.....	495
36.2	National and Regional Regulatory Notices.....	495
36.2.1	<i>U.S. Federal Communication Commission (FCC) and Industry Canada (IC) Notification.....</i>	<i>495</i>
36.2.2	<i>Regulatory Requirements for CEPT Member States (<a href="http://www.cept.org">http://www.cept.org</a>)</i>	<i>496</i>
36.2.3	<i>European Union Notification.....</i>	<i>497</i>
36.2.4	<i>UK Notification.....</i>	<i>498</i>
36.2.5	<i>Belgium Notification.....</i>	<i>498</i>
36.2.6	<i>Luxembourg Notification.....</i>	<i>498</i>
36.2.7	<i>Czech Republic Notification .....</i>	<i>498</i>
36.2.8	<i>Norway Notification .....</i>	<i>498</i>
36.2.9	<i>Greece Notification.....</i>	<i>499</i>

36.2.10	<i>Brazil Notification</i> .....	499
36.2.11	<i>Australia Notification</i> .....	499
36.3	Exposure .....	499
36.4	Equipment Disposal .....	499
36.5	Legal Notices .....	499
36.5.1	<i>Software License Terms and Conditions</i> .....	499
36.5.2	<i>Hardware Warranty in U.S.</i> .....	502
36.5.3	<i>Limit of Liability</i> .....	502
<b>37</b>	<b>Additional Resources</b> .....	<b>503</b>
<b>38</b>	<b>History of Documentation</b> .....	<b>505</b>
	<b>GLOSSARY</b> .....	<b>507</b>

## LIST OF FIGURES

Figure 1: Canopy Advantage Platform GUI logo.....	49
Figure 2: Pole-mounted AP cluster .....	50
Figure 3: Structure-mounted SM.....	50
Figure 4: Examples of flat panel antennas with 900-MHz modules .....	51
Figure 5: Dish-mounted 10- or 20-Mbps BH .....	52
Figure 6: 30/60- or 150/300-Mbps Backhaul Module, integrated antenna .....	52
Figure 7: 30/60- or 150/300-Mbps Backhaul Module, connected to external antenna.....	53
Figure 8: PIDU for 30/60-Mbps BH .....	53
Figure 9: PIDU for 150/300-Mbps BH .....	53
Figure 10: T1/E1 Multiplexer, front view.....	54
Figure 11: T1/E1 Multiplexer, rear view .....	54
Figure 12: CMM2 enclosure.....	55
Figure 13: CMM2 pole-mounted .....	55
Figure 14: Motorola GPS antenna .....	56
Figure 15: 300SS surge suppressor .....	57
Figure 16: ACPS110-03A power supply .....	58
Figure 17: ACPSSW-09A power supply.....	58
Figure 18: 27RD with mounted module.....	58
Figure 19: SMMB1 SM support bracket.....	59
Figure 20: ACATHS-01 alignment headset.....	61
Figure 21: HSG-01 Housing.....	61
Figure 22: Uplink data slot usage.....	85
Figure 23: TDD dividing Canopy frames .....	86
Figure 24: Uplink and downlink rate caps adjusted to apply aggregate cap .....	87
Figure 25: Uplink and downlink rate cap adjustment example.....	87
Figure 26: Canopy channel, 75% downlink, 0% high priority in uplink.....	90
Figure 27: One unsynchronized AP in cluster.....	96
Figure 28: GPS timing throughout the Canopy network.....	97
Figure 29: Additional link to extend network sync, Design 3.....	98
Figure 30: Additional link to extend network sync, Design 4.....	98



Figure 31: Additional link to extend network sync, Design 5.....	99
Figure 32: Canopy Path Profiler tool .....	103
Figure 33: OFDM series BH Link Estimator tool .....	104
Figure 34: Typical network layout with no BH.....	105
Figure 35: Typical network layout with BH .....	106
Figure 36: Typical multiple-BH network layout.....	106
Figure 37: Determinants in Rx signal level.....	132
Figure 38: Example layout of 7 Access Point clusters .....	145
Figure 39: Fresnel zone .....	147
Figure 40: Variables for calculating angle of elevation (and depression).....	148
Figure 41: Double-hop backhaul links.....	149
Figure 42: Remote AP deployment.....	150
Figure 43: Example 900-MHz remote AP behind 2.4-GHz SM.....	152
Figure 44: Remote AP wired to SM that also serves a customer.....	153
Figure 45: Remote AP wired to SM that serves as a relay .....	154
Figure 46: NAT Disabled implementation .....	159
Figure 47: NAT with DHCP Client and DHCP Server implementation.....	160
Figure 48: NAT with DHCP Client implementation.....	161
Figure 49: NAT with DHCP Server implementation .....	162
Figure 50: NAT without DHCP implementation.....	163
Figure 51: Example of IP address in Class B subnet.....	164
Figure 52: Canopy base cover, attached and detached .....	180
Figure 53: Canopy CMM2, bottom view.....	182
Figure 54: Cluster Management Module micro .....	183
Figure 55: RJ-45 pinout for straight-through Ethernet cable .....	185
Figure 56: RJ-45 pinout for crossover Ethernet cable.....	185
Figure 57: RJ-11 pinout for straight-through sync cable .....	186
Figure 58: Quick Start tab of AP, example.....	188
Figure 59: Radio Frequency Carrier tab of AP, example .....	189
Figure 60: Synchronization tab of AP, example .....	190
Figure 61: LAN IP Address tab of AP, example .....	191
Figure 62: Review and Save Configuration tab of AP, example .....	192
Figure 63: Time tab of AP, example.....	193

Figure 64: Session Status tab data from AP, example .....	195
Figure 65: Remote Subscribers tab of AP, example .....	199
Figure 66: General Status tab of SM, example .....	200
Figure 67: General Status tab of AP, example.....	204
Figure 68: Quick Start tab of BHM, example.....	208
Figure 69: Time tab of BHM, example .....	210
Figure 70: Remote Subscribers tab of BHM, example.....	212
Figure 71: General Status tab of BHS, example .....	213
Figure 72: General Status tab of BHM, example .....	216
Figure 73: CMMmicro layout.....	219
Figure 74: CMMmicro door label.....	221
Figure 75: CMMmicro circuit board .....	222
Figure 76: CMMmicro connections .....	223
Figure 77: Status page of CMMmicro, example.....	224
Figure 78: Configuration page of CMMmicro, example.....	227
Figure 79: GPS Status page of CMMmicro, example .....	234
Figure 80: Port MIB page of CMMmicro, example .....	235
Figure 81: General tab of AP, example.....	240
Figure 82: IP tab of AP, example .....	243
Figure 83: Radio tab of AP (900 MHz), example .....	245
Figure 84: SNMP tab of AP, example .....	250
Figure 85: Quality of Service (QoS) tab of AP, example.....	253
Figure 86: Security tab of AP, example.....	255
Figure 87: VLAN tab of AP, example .....	258
Figure 88: VLAN Membership tab of AP, example .....	260
Figure 89: DiffServe tab of AP, example.....	261
Figure 90: Unit Settings tab of AP, example .....	263
Figure 91: General tab of SM, example .....	265
Figure 92: NAT tab of SM with NAT disabled, example.....	268
Figure 93: IP tab of SM with NAT disabled, example.....	271
Figure 94: NAT tab of SM with NAT enabled, example .....	273
Figure 95: IP tab of SM with NAT enabled, example .....	277
Figure 96: Radio tab of SM, example.....	278

Figure 97: SNMP tab of SM, example.....	281
Figure 98: Quality of Service (QoS) tab of SM, example .....	284
Figure 99: Security tab of SM, example .....	287
Figure 100: VLAN tab of SM, example.....	290
Figure 101: VLAN Membership tab of SM, example.....	291
Figure 102: DiffServe tab of SM, example .....	292
Figure 103: Protocol Filtering tab of SM, example .....	294
Figure 104: NAT Port Mapping tab of SM, example .....	296
Figure 105: Unit Settings tab of SM, example.....	296
Figure 106: General tab of BHM, example.....	300
Figure 107: IP tab of BHM, example .....	303
Figure 108: Radio tab of BHM, example .....	305
Figure 109: SNMP tab of BHM, example .....	308
Figure 110: Security tab of BHM, example .....	311
Figure 111: DiffServe tab of BHM, example.....	313
Figure 112: Unit Settings tab of BHM, example .....	315
Figure 113: General tab of BHS, example .....	317
Figure 114: IP tab of BHS, example.....	320
Figure 115: Radio tab of BHS, example.....	322
Figure 116: SNMP tab of BHS, example.....	325
Figure 117: Quality of Service (QoS) tab of BHS, example .....	327
Figure 118: Security tab of BHS, example .....	328
Figure 119: DiffServe tab of BHS, example .....	330
Figure 120: Unit Settings tab of BHS, example.....	331
Figure 121: PDA Quick Status tab, example.....	336
Figure 122: PDA Spectrum Analyzer tab of SM, example .....	336
Figure 123: PDA Spectrum Results tab of SM, example .....	337
Figure 124: PDA Information tab of SM, example.....	337
Figure 125: PDA AP Evaluation tab of SM, example .....	338
Figure 126: PDA Aim tab of SM, example .....	338
Figure 127: Detail of GPS antenna mounting .....	341
Figure 128: Detail of pole mounting .....	342
Figure 129: Location of 115-/230-volt switch .....	343

Figure 130: Layout of logical connections in CMM2 .....	345
Figure 131: Canopy CMM2, front view.....	346
Figure 132: Port indicator LED on Ethernet switch .....	347
Figure 133: SM attachment to reflector arm.....	352
Figure 134: SM grounding per NEC specifications .....	352
Figure 135: Internal view of Canopy 300SS Surge Suppressor.....	353
Figure 136: Audible Alignment Tone kit, including headset and connecting cable .....	354
Figure 137: AP/SM link status indications in the AP Session Status tab .....	357
Figure 138: Correct mount with reflector dish .....	358
Figure 139: Incorrect mount with reflector dish .....	359
Figure 140: Mounting assembly, exploded view .....	360
Figure 141: BH attachment to reflector arm .....	361
Figure 142: Session Status tab of BHM .....	365
Figure 143: Spectrum Analyzer tab of SM, example.....	372
Figure 144: General Status tab view for GUEST-level account .....	380
Figure 145: Add User tab of SM, example .....	381
Figure 146: RJ-11 pinout for the override plug.....	382
Figure 147: Categorical protocol filtering .....	385
Figure 148: Session Status tab data, example .....	417
Figure 149: Event Log tab data, example .....	420
Figure 150: Network Interface tab of AP, example .....	422
Figure 151: Network Interface tab of SM, example.....	422
Figure 152: Scheduler tab of SM, example.....	423
Figure 153: SM Registration Failures tab of AP, example .....	424
Figure 154: Bridging Table tab of AP, example .....	425
Figure 155: Translation Table tab of SM, example .....	426
Figure 156: Ethernet tab of AP, example .....	427
Figure 157: Radio tab of Statistics page in SM, example .....	429
Figure 158: VLAN tab of AP, example .....	431
Figure 159: Data VC tab of SM, example .....	432
Figure 160: Filter tab on SM, example .....	434
Figure 161: Nat Stats tab on SM, example .....	435
Figure 162: NAT DHCP Statistics tab in SM, example .....	435

Figure 163: Alignment tab of BHS, example .....	437
Figure 164: Link Capacity Test tab with 1522-byte packet length, example .....	440
Figure 165: Link Capacity Test tab with 64-byte packet length, example .....	441
Figure 166: AP Evaluation tab of SM, example .....	443
Figure 167: Frame Calculator tab, example .....	447
Figure 168: Calculated Frame Results section of Frame Calculator tab, example .....	450
Figure 169: SM Configuration tab of AP, example .....	451
Figure 170: BER Results tab of SM, example .....	452
Figure 171: Example ftp session to transfer custom logo file .....	456
Figure 172: Example telnet session to activate custom logo file .....	457
Figure 173: Example telnet session to clear custom files .....	458
Figure 174: Protocol analysis at SM .....	461
Figure 175: Protocol analysis at AP or BH not connected to a CMM .....	462
Figure 176: Protocol analysis at AP or BH connected to a CMM .....	463
Figure 177: IP tab of SM with NAT disabled and local accessibility .....	464
Figure 178: Local Area Connection Properties window .....	465
Figure 179: Internet Protocol (TCP/IP) Properties window .....	465
Figure 180: Ethernet Capture Options window .....	466
Figure 181: Ethernet Capture window .....	467
Figure 182: <capture> - Ethernet window, Packet 1 selected .....	468
Figure 183: <capture> - Ethernet window, Packet 14 selected .....	469
Figure 184: NAT Table tab of SM, example .....	475
Figure 185: NAT DHCP Statistics tab of SM, example .....	476
Figure 186: Event Log tab of SM, example .....	478

## LIST OF TABLES

Table 1: Canopy User Guide organization scheme .....	36
Table 2: Examples of where to find information in this user guide .....	37
Table 3: Locations of screen captures and associated documentation .....	38
Table 4: Font types .....	41
Table 5: Admonition types.....	41
Table 6: Essential user guide elements for new backhaul network implementation .....	47
Table 7: Adjustable power radios.....	54
Table 8: Power supply descriptions .....	57
Table 9: Recommended outdoor UTP Category 5E cables .....	59
Table 10: Recommended indoor UTP Category 5E cables .....	60
Table 11: Recommended antenna cables .....	60
Table 12: Product applications per frequency band range.....	62
Table 13: Products with encryption options available per frequency band, PTMP links ...	63
Table 14: Typical range and throughput per frequency band, PTMP links .....	64
Table 15: Products with encryption options available per frequency band, PTP links .....	65
Table 16: Typical range and throughput per frequency band, PTP links .....	66
Table 17: Cluster management product similarities and differences .....	67
Table 18: Canopy applications and tools .....	69
Table 19: Correct placement of license keys .....	73
Table 20: CMM2 specifications and limitations .....	75
Table 21: CMMmicro specifications and limitations .....	76
Table 22: Canopy model numbers (part numbers) for AES and DES encryption modules	80
Table 23: Canopy model numbers (part numbers) for proprietary encryption modules ....	81
Table 24: Labels and locations of model (part) numbers and ESNs .....	81
Table 25: Characteristics of hardware scheduling .....	91
Table 26: Effect of 2X operation on throughput for the SM.....	93
Table 27: Effects of network conditions on PTMP throughput .....	102
Table 28: Comparison of SM products with Canopy Advantage AP .....	102
Table 29: Canopy features.....	109
Table 30: Demonstration Kit part numbers .....	123

Table 31: Starter Kit part numbers .....	126
Table 32: Signal quality levels indicated by jitter.....	136
Table 33: Recommended courses of action based on Efficiency in 2X operation .....	137
Table 34: Example 900-MHz channel assignment by sector .....	143
Table 35: Example 2.4-GHz channel assignment by sector .....	143
Table 36: Example 5.2-GHz channel assignment by sector .....	143
Table 37: Example 5.4-GHz channel assignment by sector .....	144
Table 38: Example 5.7-GHz channel assignment by sector .....	144
Table 39: VLAN filters in point-to-multipoint modules .....	168
Table 40: Exposure separation distances .....	171
Table 41: Calculated distances and power compliance margins .....	172
Table 42: Statistical incidence of current from lightning strikes .....	174
Table 43: LEDs in AP and BHM.....	181
Table 44: LEDs in SM and BHS.....	181
Table 45: Port Configuration selections for CMMmicro.....	229
Table 46: When changes become effective in CMMmicro.....	233
Table 47: Control slot settings for all APs in cluster.....	247
Table 48: Recommended combined settings for typical operations.....	298
Table 49: Where feature values are obtained for an SM with authentication required ...	298
Table 50: Where feature values are obtained for an SM with authentication disabled ...	299
Table 51: Total gain per antenna .....	333
Table 52: Patch antenna and reflector gain .....	333
Table 53: Transmitter output power settings, example cases.....	334
Table 54: Wire size for CMMmicro power runs of longer than 9 feet (2.8 m).....	349
Table 55: Hardware series by MAC address .....	373
Table 56: Hardware series differences .....	374
Table 57: AP/BH compatibility with CMMmicro.....	374
Table 58: Ports filtered per protocol selections .....	386
Table 59: Example times to download for arbitrary tiers of service with Canopy AP .....	390
Table 60: Example times to download for arbitrary tiers of service with Advantage AP .	391
Table 61: Categories of MIB-II objects.....	395
Table 62: Canopy Enterprise MIB objects for APs, SMs, and BHs.....	398
Table 63: Canopy Enterprise MIB objects for APs and BH timing masters .....	400

Table 64: Canopy Enterprise MIB objects for SMs and BH timing slaves .....	404
Table 65: Canopy Enterprise MIB objects for CMMmicros .....	407
Table 66: Canopy OFDM BH module MIB objects.....	410
Table 67: Event Log messages for abnormal events.....	421
Table 68: Event Log messages for normal events.....	421
Table 69: Basic site information for technical support.....	484
Table 70: Supported telnet commands for module administration.....	493
Table 71: US FCC IDs and Industry Canada certification numbers .....	496



## LIST OF PROCEDURES

Procedure 1: Modifying a fixed license key for a module IP address.....	116
Procedure 2: Analyzing the spectrum .....	133
Procedure 3: Invoking the low power mode .....	155
Procedure 4: Wrapping the cable.....	177
Procedure 5: Setting up the AP for Quick Start.....	186
Procedure 6: Bypassing proxy settings to access module web pages .....	187
Procedure 7: Using Quick Start to configure a standalone AP for test .....	189
Procedure 8: Setting up the SM for test .....	194
Procedure 9: Retrying to establish a point-to-multipoint link .....	195
Procedure 10: Verifying and recording information from SMs .....	203
Procedure 11: Verifying and recording information from the AP.....	206
Procedure 12: Setting up the BH for Quick Start .....	207
Procedure 13: Using Quick Start to configure the BHs for test .....	209
Procedure 14: Setting up the BHS for test .....	211
Procedure 15: Verifying and recording information from the BHS .....	215
Procedure 16: Verifying and recording information from the BHM.....	218
Procedure 17: Setting up a CMMmicro .....	220
Procedure 18: Setting CMMmicro parameters for test.....	228
Procedure 19: Installing the AP.....	339
Procedure 20: Mounting the GPS antenna .....	340
Procedure 21: Mounting the CMM2 .....	342
Procedure 22: Cabling the CMM2.....	343
Procedure 23: Verifying CMM2 connections.....	347
Procedure 24: Mounting the CMMmicro .....	348
Procedure 25: Installing the Power Supply for the CMMmicro.....	349
Procedure 26: Cabling the CMMmicro .....	350
Procedure 27: Verifying CMMmicro connections .....	351
Procedure 28: Installing the SM .....	351
Procedure 29: Verifying performance for an AP-SM link .....	355
Procedure 30: Installing the BHM .....	360
Procedure 31: Installing the BHS .....	362

Procedure 32: Verifying performance for a BH link.....	363
Procedure 33: Verifying system functionality .....	367
Procedure 34: Using the Spectrum Analyzer in AP feature .....	372
Procedure 35: Extending network sync.....	375
Procedure 36: Fabricating an override plug .....	382
Procedure 37: Regaining access to a module .....	383
Procedure 38: Using the override switch to regain access to CMMmicro .....	383
Procedure 39: Installing the Canopy Enterprise MIB files.....	396
Procedure 40: Performing a Link Capacity Test .....	441
Procedure 41: Using the Frame Calculator.....	449
Procedure 42: Replacing the Canopy logo on the GUI with another logo.....	455
Procedure 43: Changing the URL of the logo hyperlink.....	457
Procedure 44: Returning a module to its original logo and hyperlink.....	458
Procedure 45: Denying all remote access .....	459
Procedure 46: Reinstating remote access capability .....	459
Procedure 47: Setting up a protocol analyzer .....	464
Procedure 48: Troubleshooting loss of connectivity.....	473
Procedure 49: Troubleshooting loss of connectivity for NAT/DHCP-configured SM.....	474
Procedure 50: Troubleshooting SM failing to register to an AP .....	476
Procedure 51: Troubleshooting BHS failing to register to a BHM .....	477
Procedure 52: Troubleshooting loss of sync .....	478
Procedure 53: Troubleshooting loss of Ethernet connectivity .....	479
Procedure 54: Troubleshooting failure to power up .....	480
Procedure 55: Troubleshooting failure of power supply to produce power .....	480
Procedure 56: Troubleshooting CMM2 that malfunctions .....	481
Procedure 57: Troubleshooting CMM2 not passing sync .....	481
Procedure 58: Troubleshooting an unsuccessful software upgrade .....	482
Procedure 59: Restoring the web interface to a module .....	482

# GUIDE TO THIS USER GUIDE



# 1 NEW IN THIS ISSUE

## 1.1 NEW PRODUCTS AND FEATURES DESCRIBED IN ISSUE 2

This section is a placeholder where elements of this user guide that describe new products and features will be listed in future issues.

## 1.2 NEW DESCRIPTIONS AND REVISIONS IN ISSUE 2

This section is a placeholder where other new descriptions, as well as clarifications and corrections, will be listed in future issues.

## 1.3 MOTOWi4 PORTFOLIO

Motorola has introduced the broad MOTOWi4™ portfolio of fixed, nomadic, and mobile wireless broadband solutions, among which Canopy® products are significant. The MOTOWi4 portfolio meets residential and enterprise data transport needs with the following present and future solutions:

- residential access fixed solutions
  - Canopy Access Point and Subscriber Modules in the following frequency band ranges:
    - 900 MHz                      ◦ 5.1 GHz                      ◦ 5.4 GHz
    - 2.4 GHz                      ◦ 5.2 GHz                      ◦ 5.7 GHz
  - WiMAX fixed and mobile solutions, based on the 802.16e (WiMAX) standard, in the following frequency band ranges:
    - 2.3 GHz                      ◦ 2.5 GHz                      3.5 GHz
- Metro WiFi local area mesh network solutions, based on the 802.11 standard
- backhaul solutions, based on the 802.16e (WiMAX) standard or Canopy protocols, in the following frequency band ranges:
  - 2.4 GHz                      – 5.4 GHz
  - 5.2 GHz                      – 5.7 GHz

## 1.4 PRODUCTS COVERED BY THIS USER GUIDE

Most Canopy products are covered by this user guide:

- radio-networked modules in the following frequency band ranges:
  - 900 MHz                      – 5.2 GHz
  - 2.4 GHz                      – 5.4 GHz
  - 5.1 GHz                      – 5.7 GHz
- Cluster Management Module-2 (CMM2)
- Cluster Management Module micro (CMMmicro)
- Surge Suppressor

## 1.5 PRODUCTS NOT COVERED BY THIS USER GUIDE

Some specific-use Canopy products are referred to in this user guide but fully described in their own separate user guides:

- 30-Mbps Backhaul Module. See *Canopy 30 Mbps 60 Mbps Backhaul User Guide* and *Motorola Canopy OFDM Backhaul Quick Start Guide*.
- 30/60-Mbps Backhaul Module. See *Canopy 30 Mbps 60 Mbps Backhaul User Guide* and *Motorola Canopy OFDM Backhaul Quick Start Guide* for (30/60 Mbps).
- 150/300-Mbps Backhaul Module. See *Canopy 150 Mbps 300 Mbps Backhaul User Guide* and *Motorola Canopy OFDM Backhaul Quick Start Guide* (for 150/300 Mbps).
- MOTOWi4 Ultra Light Access Point (ULAP) and Ultra Light Outdoor Subscriber Unit (OSU). See *Canopy 3500 System User Guide*.
- Bandwidth and Authentication Manager. See *Canopy Bandwidth and Authentication Manager (BAM) Release 2.1 User Guide* (or *Canopy Bandwidth and Authentication Manager (BAM) User Guide* for earlier releases).
- License Manager. See *Canopy Networks License Manager User Guide*.
- Prizm. See *Motorola Canopy Prizm User Guide*.
- T1/E1 Multiplexer. See *Canopy T1/E1 Multiplexer User Guide*.

## 1.6 SOFTWARE COMPATIBILITY DESCRIBED IN THIS USER GUIDE

The following sections of this document provide details and caveats about the compatibility of Canopy products:

- [Designations for Hardware](#) on Page 373
- [CMMmicro Software and Hardware Compatibility](#) on Page 374
- [MIB File Set Compatibility](#) on Page 375

## 2 USING THIS USER GUIDE

This document should be used with Canopy features through Software Release 8 and CMMmicro Release 2.1.1. The audience for this document includes system operators, network administrators, and equipment installers.

### 2.1 FINDING THE INFORMATION YOU NEED

#### 2.1.1 Becoming Familiar with This User Guide

This is a guide to the guide. A high-level overview of the guide and some examples of where to look provide insight into how information is arranged and labeled.

The Table of Contents provides not only a sequential index of topics but also a visual glance at the organization of topics in this guide. A few minutes spent with the Table of Contents in either the paper or the electronic version of this guide can save much more time in finding information now and in the future. The List of Procedures may be especially useful in the paper version of this guide, particularly where you mark those procedures that you wish to frequently see.

In contrast, the List of Figures and List of Tables are most useful for automated searches on key words in the electronic version of this guide. If a match is present, the match is the first instance that the search finds.

### Quick Reference

The Canopy User Guide comprises six sections, as described in [Table 1](#).

**Table 1: Canopy User Guide organization scheme**

Section	Purpose
Guide to This User Guide (this section)	Identifies <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>◦ products covered by this user guide.</li> <li>◦ products covered by their own separate user guides.</li> <li>◦ how this user guide is organized.</li> <li>◦ where to find module web pages and parameter descriptions.</li> <li>◦ what the various typefaces and admonitions indicate.</li> <li>◦ how to contact Canopy.</li> </ul>
Overview of Canopy Networks	Provides <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>◦ references to RF and networking theory.</li> <li>◦ a list of sections to see if you are building only a backhaul network.</li> <li>◦ overviews and comparisons of Canopy products and how they communicate.</li> <li>◦ descriptions of data handling and synchronization.</li> <li>◦ a review of Canopy optional features.</li> <li>◦ resources for developing familiarity and proficiencies with Canopy networks.</li> </ul>
Planning Guide	Provides essential information for <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>◦ evaluating an area for a Canopy network.</li> <li>◦ specifying the IP addresses and frequency band ranges to use for each type of link.</li> </ul>
Installation and Configuration Guide	Provides systematic approaches for <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>◦ avoiding hazards from RF and natural causes.</li> <li>◦ testing, storing, and deploying Canopy equipment.</li> </ul>
Operations Guide	Provides guidance for <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>◦ expanding network coverage.</li> <li>◦ improving the security of Canopy wireless links.</li> <li>◦ distributing bandwidth resources.</li> <li>◦ monitoring and changing variables through SNMP.</li> </ul>
Reference Information	Provides supplemental information such as <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>◦ authorizations, approvals, and notices.</li> <li>◦ a bibliography of adjunctive information sources.</li> <li>◦ a history of changes in Canopy documentation.</li> </ul>
Glossary	Defines terms and concepts that are used in this user guide.



## Examples

A list of common tasks and references to information that supports each task is provided in [Table 2](#).

**Table 2: Examples of where to find information in this user guide**

If you want to know...	then see...	because...
what the Spectrum Analyzer in SM and BHS feature does	<a href="#">Avoiding Self Interference</a> on Page 154	this topic is important to RF planning.
	<a href="#">Monitoring the RF Environment</a> on Page 371	this topic is also important to managing the network.
what types of slots compose the Canopy frame	<a href="#">Understanding Bandwidth Management</a> on Page 83	this information is helpful for understanding Canopy networks.
how to calculate whether an object will interfere with a signal	<a href="#">Noting Possible Obstructions in the Fresnel Zone</a> on Page 134	this topic is important to RF planning.
how long a cable you can use from the GPS antenna to the CMM	<a href="#">Cables</a> on Page 35	cables are accessory components.
	<a href="#">Procedure 20</a> on Page 340 or <a href="#">Procedure 24</a> on Page 348	the advisory applies to mounting GPS antennas <i>and</i> CMMs.
how to react to a WatchDog Event Log message	<a href="#">Messages that Flag Abnormal Events</a> on Page 421 <i>and</i> <a href="#">Messages that Flag Normal Events</a> on Page 421	together, these two sections document all significant Event Log messages.
what beam angle the passive reflector dish produces	<a href="#">Specifications and Limitations</a> on Page 73, then downward to a table for a Canopy Part Number that includes "RF."	the beam angle is a specification.
how to aim the passive reflector dish	<a href="#">Installing a Reflector Dish</a> on Page 358	aiming is associated with Backhaul Module installation.
how to set Differentiated Services values so that traffic with original ToS byte formatting continues to be prioritized as it was before DSCP fields.	<a href="#">High-priority Bandwidth</a> on Page 88	DSCP fields specify the level of priority that the device is requesting for the packet.

## 2.1.2 Searching This User Guide

To search this document and the software release notes of supported releases, look in the Table of Contents for the topic and in the Adobe Reader® search capability for keywords that apply.<sup>1</sup> These searches are most effective when you begin the search from the cover page because the first matches may be in titles of sections, figures, tables, or procedures.

## 2.1.3 Finding Parameter and Field Definitions for Module Web Pages

Because this user guide is sequentially arranged to support tasks, and various tasks require different settings and readings, parameter and field definitions are scattered according to the tasks that they support. The locations of these are provided in [Table 3](#).

**Table 3: Locations of screen captures and associated documentation**

Tab or Web Page Displayed	Page
<a href="#">Add User tab of SM, example</a>	381
<a href="#">Alignment tab of BHS, example</a>	437
<a href="#">AP Evaluation tab of SM, example</a>	443
<a href="#">BER Results tab of SM, example</a>	452
<a href="#">Bridging Table tab of AP, example</a>	425
<a href="#">Calculated Frame Results section of Frame Calculator tab, example</a>	450
<a href="#">Configuration page of CMMmicro, example</a>	227
<a href="#">DiffServe tab of AP, example</a>	261
<a href="#">DiffServe tab of BHM, example</a>	313
<a href="#">DiffServe tab of BHS, example</a>	330
<a href="#">DiffServe tab of SM, example</a>	292
<a href="#">Ethernet tab of AP, example</a>	427
<a href="#">Event Log tab data, example</a>	420
<a href="#">Event Log tab of SM, example</a>	478
<a href="#">Frame Calculator tab, example</a>	447
<a href="#">General Status tab of AP, example</a>	204
<a href="#">General Status tab of BHM, example</a>	216
<a href="#">General Status tab of BHS, example</a>	213
<a href="#">General Status tab of SM, example</a>	200
<a href="#">General Status tab view for GUEST-level account</a>	380
<a href="#">General tab of AP, example</a>	240
<a href="#">General tab of BHM, example</a>	300
<a href="#">General tab of BHS, example</a>	317

---

<sup>1</sup> Reader is a registered trademark of Adobe Systems, Incorporated.

<b>Tab or Web Page Displayed</b>	<b>Page</b>
General tab of SM, example	265
GPS Status page of CMMmicro, example	234
IP tab of AP, example	243
IP tab of BHM, example	303
IP tab of BHS, example	320
IP tab of SM with NAT disabled and local accessibility	464
IP tab of SM with NAT disabled, example	271
IP tab of SM with NAT enabled, example	277
LAN IP Address tab of AP, example	191
Link Capacity Test tab with 1522-byte packet length, example	440
Link Capacity Test tab with 64-byte packet length, example	441
NAT DHCP Statistics tab of SM, example	476
NAT Port Mapping tab of SM, example	296
NAT tab of SM with NAT disabled, example	268
NAT tab of SM with NAT enabled, example	273
NAT Table tab of SM, example	475
PDA Aim tab of SM, example	338
PDA AP Evaluation tab of SM, example	338
PDA Information tab of SM, example	337
PDA Quick Status tab, example	336
PDA Spectrum Analyzer tab of SM, example	336
PDA Spectrum Results tab of SM, example	337
Port MIB page of CMMmicro, example	235
Protocol Filtering tab of SM, example	294
Quality of Service (QoS) tab of AP, example	253
Quality of Service (QoS) tab of BHS, example	327
Quality of Service (QoS) tab of SM, example	284
Quick Start tab of AP, example	188
Quick Start tab of BHM, example	208
Radio Frequency Carrier tab of AP, example	189
Radio tab of AP (900 MHz), example	245
Radio tab of BHM, example	305
Radio tab of BHS, example	322
Radio tab of SM, example	278

Tab or Web Page Displayed	Page
<a href="#">Remote Subscribers tab of AP, example</a>	199
<a href="#">Remote Subscribers tab of BHM, example</a>	212
<a href="#">Review and Save Configuration tab of AP, example</a>	192
<a href="#">Scheduler tab of SM, example</a>	423
<a href="#">Security tab of AP, example</a>	255
<a href="#">Security tab of BHM, example</a>	311
<a href="#">Security tab of BHS, example</a>	328
<a href="#">Security tab of SM, example</a>	287
<a href="#">Session Status tab data from AP, example</a>	195
<a href="#">Session Status tab data, example</a>	417
<a href="#">SM Configuration tab of AP, example</a>	451
<a href="#">SM Registration Failures tab of AP, example</a>	424
<a href="#">SNMP tab of AP, example</a>	250
<a href="#">SNMP tab of BHM, example</a>	308
<a href="#">SNMP tab of BHS, example</a>	325
<a href="#">SNMP tab of SM, example</a>	281
<a href="#">Spectrum Analyzer tab of SM, example</a>	372
<a href="#">Status page of CMMmicro, example</a>	224
<a href="#">Synchronization tab of AP, example</a>	190
<a href="#">Time tab of AP, example</a>	193
<a href="#">Time tab of BHM, example</a>	210
<a href="#">Unit Settings tab of AP, example</a>	263
<a href="#">Unit Settings tab of BHM, example</a>	315
<a href="#">Unit Settings tab of BHS, example</a>	331
<a href="#">Unit Settings tab of SM, example</a>	296
<a href="#">VLAN Membership tab of AP, example</a>	260
<a href="#">VLAN Membership tab of SM, example</a>	291
<a href="#">VLAN tab of AP, example</a>	258
<a href="#">VLAN tab of SM, example</a>	290

## 2.2 INTERPRETING TYPEFACE AND OTHER CONVENTIONS

This document employs distinctive fonts to indicate the type of information, as described in [Table 4](#).

**Table 4: Font types**



Font	Type of Information
<b>variable width bold</b>	Selectable option in a graphical user interface or settable parameter in the web-based interface to a Canopy component.
constant width regular	Literal system response in a command-line interface.
<i>constant width italic</i>	Variable system response in a command-line interface.
<b>constant width bold</b>	Literal user input in a command-line interface.
<b><i>constant width bold italic</i></b>	Variable user input in a command-line interface.




This document employs specific imperative terminology as follows:

- *Type* means press the following characters.
- *Enter* means type the following characters and then press Enter.

This document also employs a set of consistently used admonitions. Each of these types of admonitions has a general purpose that underlies the specific information in the box. These purposes are indicated in [Table 5](#).

**Table 5: Admonition types**

Admonition Label	General Message
	<p><b>NOTE:</b> informative content that may</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>◦ defy common or cursory logic.</li> <li>◦ describe a peculiarity of the Canopy implementation.</li> <li>◦ add a conditional caveat.</li> <li>◦ provide a reference.</li> <li>◦ explain the reason for a preceding statement or provide prerequisite background for what immediately follows.</li> </ul>
	<p><b>RECOMMENDATION:</b> suggestion for an easier, quicker, or safer action or practice.</p>

Admonition Label	General Message
	<p><b><i>IMPORTANT!</i></b></p> <p>informative content that may</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>◦ identify an indication that you should watch for.</li> <li>◦ advise that your action can disturb something that you may not want disturbed.</li> <li>◦ reiterate something that you presumably know but should always remember.</li> </ul>
	<p><b><i>CAUTION!</i></b></p> <p>a notice that the risk of harm to equipment or service exists.</p>
	<p><b><i>WARNING!</i></b></p> <p>a notice that the risk of harm to person exists.</p>

## 2.3 GETTING ADDITIONAL HELP

Help is available for problems with supported products and features. [Obtaining Technical Support](#) on Page 483 provides the sequence of actions that you should take if these problems arise.

## 2.4 SENDING FEEDBACK

We welcome your feedback on Canopy system documentation. This includes feedback on the structure, content, accuracy, or completeness of our documents, and any other comments you have. Send your comments to [technical-documentation@canopywireless.com](mailto:technical-documentation@canopywireless.com).

# OVERVIEW OF CANOPY NETWORKS





### 3 ADVANCING FROM RESEARCH TO IMPLEMENTATION

Before you begin to research a possible Canopy implementation, you should have both

- basic knowledge of RF theory. See
  - [Understanding RF Fundamentals](#) on Page 119.
  - [Engineering Your RF Communications](#) on Page 131.
- network experience. See
  - [Canopy Link Characteristics](#) on Page 83.
  - [Understanding IP Fundamentals](#) on Page 119.
  - [Engineering Your IP Communications](#) on Page 157.



## 4 REALIZING A WIRELESS BACKHAUL NETWORK

Canopy backhaul modules (BHs) can connect Canopy access point clusters to the point of presence or be the backbone of a Metro WiFi mesh network. In other applications, the backhaul modules can be used to provide connectivity for

- cell sites, in lieu of leased T1/E1 telecommunications lines.
- buildings in corporate or institutional campuses.
- remote sites, including temporary sites set up for relief efforts.

These BHs are available in 10- or 20-Mbps modulation rates from the factory. The rate is distinguished as BH10 or BH20 in the Software Version field of the General Status tab (in the Home page) of the module GUI.

For these and any other backhaul networks, [Table 6](#) provides a quick reference to information that you would need to establish and maintain the Canopy wireless backhaul network.

**Table 6: Essential user guide elements for new backhaul network implementation**

Element	Title	Page
Section 1.5	<a href="#">Products Not Covered by This User Guide</a>	34
Section 5.1.8	<a href="#">Backhaul Module</a>	51
Section 5.1.9	<a href="#">OFDM Series Backhaul Module</a>	52
Section 5.1.10	<a href="#">Power Indoor Units for OFDM Series Backhaul Modules</a>	53
Section 5.1.12	<a href="#">T1/E1 Multiplexer</a>	54
Section 5.1.13	<a href="#">Cluster Management Module-2 (Part 1008CK-2)</a>	55
Section 5.1.14	<a href="#">Cluster Management Module micro (Part 1070CK)</a>	56
Table 15	<a href="#">Products with encryption options available per frequency band, PTP links</a>	65
Table 16	<a href="#">Typical range and throughput per frequency band, PTP links</a>	66
Section 8.2	<a href="#">BH-BH Links</a>	101
Figure 36	<a href="#">Typical multiple-BH network layout</a>	106
Section 12.2	<a href="#">Analyzing the RF Environment</a>	133
Section 12.5	<a href="#">Considering Frequency Band</a>	138
Section 15	<a href="#">Avoiding Hazards</a>	171
Section 16.4	<a href="#">Configuring a Point-to-Point Link for Test</a>	206
Section 17	<a href="#">Preparing Components for Deployment</a>	237
Section 18.4	<a href="#">Configuring a BH Timing Master for the Destination</a>	299
Section 18.5	<a href="#">Configuring a BH Timing Slave for the Destination</a>	317
Section 19.4	<a href="#">Installing a GPS Antenna</a>	340
Section 19.5	<a href="#">Installing a CMM2</a>	341
Section 19.6	<a href="#">Installing a CMMmicro</a>	347

Section 19.9	<a href="#">Installing a Reflector Dish</a>	358
Section 19.10	<a href="#">Installing a BH Timing Master</a>	360
Section 19.11	<a href="#">Installing a BH Timing Slave</a>	362
Section 19.13	<a href="#">Verifying a BH Link</a>	363
Section 21.2.2	<a href="#">CMMmicro Software and Hardware Compatibility</a>	374
Section 22.2	<a href="#">Encrypting Canopy Radio Transmissions</a>	377
Section 22.3	<a href="#">Managing Module Access</a>	379
Section 24.6	<a href="#">Objects Supported in the Canopy 30/60-Mbps BH</a>	411
Section 24.7	<a href="#">Objects Supported in the Canopy 150/300-Mbps BH</a>	411
Section 24.10	<a href="#">Traps Provided in the Canopy 30/60-Mbps BH Module MIB</a>	412
Section 24.11	<a href="#">Traps Provided in the Canopy 150/300-Mbps BH Module MIB</a>	412
Section 25	<a href="#">Using the Canopy Network Updater Tool (CNUT)</a>	415
Section 28.3	<a href="#">Typical Contents of Release Notes</a>	453
Section 28.4	<a href="#">Typical Upgrade Process</a>	454
Section 31.2	<a href="#">Analyzing Traffic at an AP or BH with No CMM</a>	462
Section 31.3	<a href="#">Analyzing Traffic at an AP or BH with a CMM</a>	462
Section 32	<a href="#">Troubleshooting</a>	471
Section 33	<a href="#">Obtaining Technical Support</a>	483
Section 34	<a href="#">Getting Warranty</a>	489

## 5 EXPLORING THE SCOPE OF SOLUTIONS

Canopy wireless broadband applications include:

- local area network (LAN) extensions
- Internet subscriber service
- high-bandwidth point-to-point connections
- multicast video (for instruction or training, for example)
- private branch exchange (PBX) extensions
- point-to-multipoint data backhaul
- redundant network backup
- video surveillance
- voice over IP (VoIP)
- TDM over Ethernet (for legacy voice and data)

### 5.1 COMPONENTS

Canopy networks use some or all of the following components. For the components that provide a graphical user interface (GUI), access to the GUI is through a web browser. In Release 8 and later, cascading style sheets (CSS) configure the GUI. Thus an operator is able to customize the GUI by editing these style sheets.

#### 5.1.1 Canopy Access Point Module

The Canopy Access Point (AP) module distributes network or Internet services in a 60° sector to not more than 200 subscribers or fewer and 4,096 MAC addresses, which may be directly-connected PCs, IP appliances, gateways, Subscriber Modules (SMs), and the AP, except that *no limit* applies behind subscriber network address translation (NAT) gateways. The AP is configurable through a web interface. A Canopy AP can communicate with only a Canopy SM, *not also* an Advantage SM or a Canopy Lite SM.

#### 5.1.2 Advantage Access Point Module

The Canopy Advantage AP distributes services as broadly as the Canopy AP. However, the Advantage AP provides greater throughput and less latency. Each tab in the GUI for Canopy Advantage modules displays the distinctive branding shown in [Figure 1](#).



Figure 1: Canopy Advantage Platform GUI logo

The Advantage AP communicates with all Canopy SMs in its frequency band range: Canopy SMs, Advantage SMs, and Canopy Lite SMs.

### 5.1.3 Access Point Cluster

The AP cluster consists of two to six APs that together distribute network or Internet services to a community of 1,200 or fewer subscribers. Each AP transmits and receives in a 60° sector. An AP cluster covers as much as 360°.

The variety of available APs and Advantage APs in frequency band range, power adjustability, and antenna configuration is shown under [Acquiring a Canopy Demonstration Kit](#), beginning on Page 119.

An AP cluster is pictured in [Figure 2](#).



**Figure 2: Pole-mounted AP cluster**

### 5.1.4 Canopy Subscriber Module

The Subscriber Module (SM) is a customer premises equipment (CPE) device that extends network or Internet services by communication with an AP. The SM is configurable through a web interface.

The variety of available SMs and Advantage SMs in frequency band range, power adjustability, and antenna configuration is shown under [Acquiring a Canopy Demonstration Kit](#), beginning on Page 119.

A Canopy SM can communicate with either a Canopy AP or an Advantage SP.

An SM mounted directly to a structure is pictured in [Figure 3](#).



**Figure 3: Structure-mounted SM**

### 5.1.5 Advantage Subscriber Module

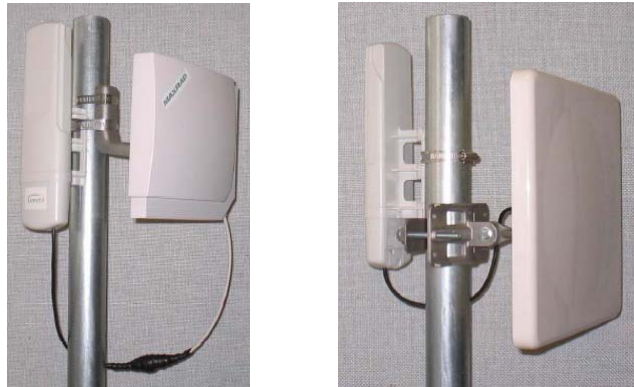
The Canopy Advantage SM provides the same configurability and services as the Canopy SM. However, in a link with the Advantage AP, the Advantage SM provides uncapped sustained throughput through the 2X operation feature. See [2X Operation](#) on Page 92. An Advantage SM can communicate with only an Advantage AP.

### 5.1.6 Canopy Lite Subscriber Module

Canopy Lite SMs cost less and provide less throughput than regular Canopy SMs. They support the same radio frequencies, interference tolerance, and product reliability. They give operators the additional option to serve cost-sensitive customers who want standard services (web browsing, email, VoIP, and downloads), but do not require the higher throughput that is available with a regular Canopy SM. Canopy Lite SMs support an aggregate(uplink plus downlink) throughput of 512 kbps. Through purchased floating licenses that Prizm manages, they are upgradeable to 1, 2, 4, or 7 Mbps aggregate throughput. A Canopy Lite SM can communicate with only a Canopy Advantage AP. A comparison of the Canopy Lite SM to the Canopy SM and Advantage SM is provided in [Table 28](#) on Page 102.

### 5.1.7 900-MHz AP and SM

Canopy 900 MHz AP and SM modules operate at 3.3 Mbps (compared to 10 Mbps for other Canopy frequency bands). With Downlink Data set to 75% in the AP, the AP supports high throughput to an SM.



**Figure 4: Examples of flat panel antennas with 900-MHz modules**

These 900-MHz modules run the same software and provide the same parameters, network features, and connections as all other Canopy APs and SMs. The physics of longer-wavelength 900 MHz, the power allowed by regulatory authorities, and the low required level of Canopy Carrier-to-Interference (C/I) ratio combine to support

- line of sight (LOS) range of up to 40 miles (over 64 km)
- increased non-line of sight (NLOS) range, depending on RF considerations such as foliage, topography, and obstructions.

When colocated with a Canopy SM of another frequency band range, the 900-MHz AP may serve, without a tower or BH, as a *remote* AP (see [Deploying a Remote AP](#) on Page 150). 900-MHz AP/SM links are logical choices for extending radio networks where you wish to

- add subscriber-handling capacity to a tower that is either
  - fully used in the other frequency band ranges.
  - not available to any other frequency band range.
- reach sparsely populated areas.
- penetrate foliage.
- add a remote AP behind an SM that operates in another frequency band range.

### 5.1.8 Backhaul Module

A pair of Backhaul Modules (BHs) provide point-to-point connectivity as either

- a standalone link
- a link through a cluster management module to an AP cluster.

You must configure a BH as either a timing master (BHM) or timing slave (BHS). The BHM provides synchronization signal (sync) to the BHS.

A BH mounted to a passive reflector dish is pictured in [Figure 5](#). Carrier applications for these modules include reaching remote AP clusters, interconnecting campus buildings or remote branch offices, extending private branch exchange (PBX) circuits, backhauling cell sites, and extending central office T1s/E1s.

These BHs are supported by this user guide. See [Realizing a Wireless Backhaul Network](#) on Page 47.



**Figure 5: Dish-mounted 10- or 20-Mbps BH**

### 5.1.9 OFDM Series Backhaul Modules

These high-speed BHs provide point-to-point data connectivity via a 5.4- or 5.7-GHz wireless Ethernet bridge that operates at broadband data rates. They provide non-Line of Sight (NLOS) operation through the use of Orthogonal Frequency Division Multiplex (OFDM) modulation and Transmit Diversity. Transmissions penetrate foliage, such that almost universal coverage is typical at short range.

The link consists of a pair of identical BHs that transmit and receive on an automatically selected but configurable frequency. The installer sets up one unit as the master and the other as the slave. (Each unit is preconfigured as master or slave but can be reconfigured to the other.) These modules are available as either connectorized for an external antenna or equipped with an integrated antenna.

Each end of the link consists of both

- an outdoor transceiver (ODU) that contains all the radio and networking electronics (see [Figure 6](#) and [Figure 7](#))
- an indoor passive connection box (PIDU) that contains status indicators and network connection (see [Figure 8](#) and [Figure 9](#)).

Available modulations are 30/60 Mbps and



**Figure 6: 30/60- or 150/300-Mbps Backhaul Module, integrated antenna**



150/300 Mbps. A 30-Mbps BH is software-upgradable to 60 Mbps, and a 150-Mbps BH is likewise software-upgradable to 300 Mbps. Products in this series are supported by dedicated user guides.

By default, these BHs use a proprietary data scrambling and encryption scheme. The 30/60-Mbps BHs have AES encryption available as a licensed option. The 150/300-Mbps BHs support virtual private networking (VPN).

Carrier applications for these modules include reaching remote AP clusters, interconnecting campus buildings or remote branch offices, extending private branch exchange (PBX) circuits, backhauling cell sites, and extending central office T1s/E1s.

(OFDM Series BHs were previously available in 45-Mbps modulation, which can be upgraded to 60 Mbps by software.)



**Figure 7: 30/60- or 150/300-Mbps Backhaul Module, connected to external antenna**

#### 5.1.10 Power Indoor Units for OFDM Series Backhaul Modules

Canopy also offers the required power indoor unit (PIDU) that generates the voltage for the 30/60- or 150/300-Mbps BHs. The PIDU provides status indicators for the ODU.

Examples of these PIDUs are shown in [Figure 8](#) and [Figure 9](#).

#### **CAUTION!**

The PIDU for the 30/60-Mbps BH and the PIDU for the 150/300-Mbps BH are clearly distinguished by their front labels. These units are unique and *are not* interchangeable under any circumstances. Their pinouts vary. Using any power unit other than the proper one of these two will destroy the module.



**Figure 8: PIDU for 30/60-Mbps BH**



**Figure 9: PIDU for 150/300-Mbps BH**

### 5.1.11 Radio Adjustable Power Capabilities

To help network operators become or remain compliant with applicable regulations in their regions and nations, Canopy offers adjustable power radios in various frequency band ranges, as indicated in [Table 7](#).

See also [Adjusting Transmitter Output Power](#) on Page 332 to ensure that your radios do not exceed the maximum permitted EIRP.

**Table 7: Adjustable power radios**

Frequency Band Range	Introduced in Canopy System Release
900 MHz <sup>1</sup>	7.0
2.4 GHz <sup>1</sup>	4.2.7
5.4 GHz <sup>2</sup>	4.2.7
5.7 GHz <sup>1</sup>	6.1
<b>NOTES:</b> 1. As a distinct part number. 2. In the base model.	

### 5.1.12 T1/E1 Multiplexer

The Canopy T1/E1 Multiplexer converts the data stream from T1/E1 ports into Ethernet packets that are then transported over the Canopy BH link. This enables up to three T1 (or up to two E1) circuits to be extended over Ethernet networks. The T1/E1 Multiplexer is available in two power configurations:

- an external 3.3-v DC power source from a 120/240-v AC adapter (supplied by Canopy)
- an optional connection to an external -48 v DC supply for battery backup.

The T1/E1 Multiplexer supports

- synchronous TDM-based services over wireless Ethernet networks.
- CAS signaling transparent to all other signaling protocols on T1/E1.
- 10Base-T/100Base-TX uplink to the network.
- management interfaces.
- simplified troubleshooting through T1/E1 line loopback test.



**Figure 10: T1/E1 Multiplexer, front view**



**Figure 11: T1/E1 Multiplexer, rear view**

Applications include

- obviating leased lines.
- implementing wireless PBX networking.
- establishing cellular backhaul links.
- providing homeland security backup or emergency voice networks.
- routing LAN/WAN data on excess bandwidth.

This product is supported by the dedicated document *Canopy T1/E1 Multiplexer User Guide*.

#### 5.1.13 Cluster Management Module-2 (Part 1008CK-2)

The Cluster Management Module-2 (CMM2) provides power, GPS timing from an antenna that is included, and networking connections for an AP cluster. The CMM2 can also connect to a BH, in which case the CMM2 is the central point of connectivity for the entire site. The CMM2 can connect as many as eight collocated modules—APs, BHMs, BHSs—and an Ethernet feed.

The CMM2 requires two cables for each connected module:

- One provides Ethernet communications and power. This cable terminates in an RJ-45 connector.
- The other provides synchronization (sync), GPS status, and time and date in a serial interface. This cable terminates in an RJ-11 connector.

A CMM2 is pictured in [Figure 12](#). A CMM2 as part of a mounted Canopy system is pictured in [Figure 13](#).



Figure 12: CMM2 enclosure



Figure 13: CMM2 pole-mounted

#### 5.1.14 Cluster Management Module micro (Part 1070CK)

The Cluster Management Module micro (CMMmicro) provides power, GPS timing, and networking connections for an AP cluster. Unlike the CMM2, the CMMmicro is configurable through a web interface.

The CMMmicro contains an 8-port managed switch that supports Power over Ethernet (PoE)<sup>2</sup> on each port and connects any combination of APs, BHMs, BHSSs, or Ethernet feed. The CMMmicro can auto-negotiate speed to match inputs that are either 100Base-TX or 10Base-T, and either full duplex or half duplex, where the connected device is set to auto-negotiate. Alternatively, these parameters are settable.

A CMMmicro requires only one cable, terminating in an RJ-45 connector, for each connected module to distribute

- Ethernet signaling.
- power to as many as 8 collocated modules—APs, BHMs, or BHSSs. Through a browser interface to the managed switch, ports can be powered or not.
- sync to APs and BHMs. The CMMmicro receives 1-pulse per second timing information from Global Positioning System (GPS) satellites through an antenna (included) and passes the timing pulse embedded in the 24-V power to the connected modules.

GPS status information is available at the CMMmicro, however

- CMMmicro provides time and date information to BHMs and APs if both the CMMmicro is operating on CMMmicro Release 2.1 or later and the AP/BHM is operating on Canopy System Release 4.2 or later.  
See [Time Tab of the AP](#) on Page 193.
- CMMmicro *does not* provide time and date information to BHMs and APs if either the CMMmicro is operating on a release earlier than CMMmicro Release 2.1 or the AP/BHM is operating on a release earlier than Canopy System Release 4.2.

#### 5.1.15 GPS Antenna

The Motorola GPS antenna provides either

- timing pulses to the CMMmicro.
- timing pulses and positioning information to the CMM2.

The GPS antenna is pictured in [Figure 14](#).



**Figure 14: Motorola GPS antenna**

---

<sup>2</sup> Through a proprietary scheme, different from IEEE Standard 803.af. Also, BHs in the OFDM Series use yet another proprietary scheme.

### 5.1.16 Surge Suppressor (Part 300SS)

The 300SS Surge Suppressor provides a path to ground (Protective Earth ↓) that protects connected equipment from near-miss lightning strikes. A 300SS is pictured in [Figure 15](#).



**Figure 15: 300SS surge suppressor**

### 5.1.17 Accessory Components

In addition to the above modules, the following accessories are available.

#### Power Supplies

The various power supplies available for Canopy modules are listed in [Table 8](#).

**Table 8: Power supply descriptions**

For Use With	Part Number	Voltage (AC)	Cycles per Second (Hz)	Includes
CMMmicro	ACPS81WA	100 to 240	50 to 60	US IEC line cord
	ACPS81W-02A	100 to 240	50 to 60	no IEC line cord
Canopy radio <sup>2</sup> (except OFDM backhauls)	ACPS110-03A <sup>1</sup>	120	50 to 60	US plug
	ACPSSW-09A <sup>3</sup>	90 to 240	50 to 60	US, Euro, and UK adaptors
	ACPSSW-10A <sup>3</sup>	90 to 240	50 to 60	Argentina adaptor
	ACPSSW-11A <sup>3</sup>	90 to 240	50 to 60	Australia adaptor
	ACPSSW-12A <sup>3</sup>	90 to 240	50 to 60	China adaptor
	30/60-Mbps OFDM BH	ACPSSW200-02A <sup>4</sup>	100 to 250 AC or -48 DC	47 to 63
ACPSSW200-01A		100 to 250	47 to 63	
150/300-Mbps OFDM BH	ACPSSW200-03A <sup>5</sup>	100 to 250	47 to 63	

**NOTES:**

1. Pictured in [Figure 16](#).
2. Single transceiver.
3. Pictured in [Figure 17](#).
4. Pictured in [Figure 8](#) on Page 53.
5. Pictured in [Figure 9](#) on Page 53.



Figure 16: ACPS110-03A power supply



Figure 17: ACPSSW-09A power supply

### Passive Reflector Dish Assembly

The 27RD Passive Reflector Dish on both ends of a BH link extends the distance range of the link and focuses the beam into a narrower angle to reduce interference. The 27RD on an SM only helps to reduce interference. The module support tube provides the proper offset focus angle. See [Figure 18](#).

For 5.7-GHz radios, the reflector gain is 18dB and the beam width is 6° at 3 dB. For 2.4-GHz radios, the reflector gain is 11dB and the beam width is 17° at 3 dB. These beam width statements apply to both azimuth and elevation in each case.



Figure 18: 27RD with mounted module



### Module Support Brackets

The SMMB1 support bracket facilitates mounting the SM to various surfaces of a structure and has slots through which chimney straps can be inserted. An SMMB1 is pictured in [Figure 19](#).

The SMMB2 is a heavy duty mounting bracket for the 900-MHz connectorized SM and its external antenna.

The BH1209 is a pole-mount bracket kit for Canopy backhaul modules.



**Figure 19: SMMB1 SM support bracket**

### Cables

Canopy modules that are currently or recently sold can auto-sense whether the Ethernet cable is wired as straight-through or crossover. Some modules that were sold earlier cannot. The MAC address, visible on the module, distinguishes whether the module can. All CMMmicros can auto-sense the cable scheme.

Where a non auto-sensing module is deployed

- a straight-through cable must be used for connection to a network interface card (NIC).
- a crossover cable must be used for connection to a hub, switch, or router.

Canopy-recommended Ethernet and sync cables can be ordered in lengths up to 328 ft (100 m) from Best-Tronics Manufacturing, Inc. at <http://www.best-tronics.com/motorola.htm>. These cables are listed in [Table 9](#) and [Table 10](#).

**Table 9: Recommended outdoor UTP Category 5E cables**

Best-Tronics Part #	Description
BT-0562	RJ-45 TO RJ-45; straight-through Ethernet cable
BT-0562S	RJ-45 TO RJ-45; shielded straight-through Ethernet cable
BT-0565	RJ-45 TO RJ-45; crossover Ethernet cable
BT-0565S	RJ-45 TO RJ-45; shielded crossover Ethernet cable
BT-0563	RJ-11 TO RJ-11; sync cable
BT-0563S	RJ-11 TO RJ-11; shielded sync cable

**NOTE:**

Shielded cable is strongly recommended for all AP cluster and BH installations.

**Table 10: Recommended indoor UTP Category 5E cables**

Best-Tronics Part #	Description
BT-0596	RJ-45 TO RJ-45; straight-through Ethernet cable
BT-0595	RJ-45 TO RJ-45; crossover Ethernet cable

Approved Ethernet cables can also be ordered as bulk cable:

- CA-0287
- CA-0287S (shielded)

Canopy-approved antenna cables can be ordered in lengths up to 100 ft (30.4 m), as listed in [Table 11](#).

**Table 11: Recommended antenna cables**

Best-Tronics Part #	Description
BT-0564	N TO N GPS antenna cable for CMM2
BT-0716	BNC TO N GPS antenna cable for CMMmicro

### Category 5 Cable Tester

For purchase within the U.S.A., the CTCAT5-01 Cable Tester is available.

### Override Plug

An override plug (sometimes called a default plug) is available to provide access to a module whose password and/or IP address have been forgotten. This plug allows the AP, SM, or BH to be accessed using IP address 169.254.1.1 and no password. During the override session, you can assign any new IP address and set either or both user passwords (display-only and/or full access) as well as make other parameter changes.

This plug is available from Best-Tronics Manufacturing, Inc. at <http://www.best-tronics.com/motorola.htm> as Part BT-0583 (RJ-11 Default Plug). Alternatively if you wish, you can fabricate an override plug. For instructions, see [Procedure 36](#) on Page [382](#) and the pinout in [Figure 146](#) on Page [382](#).



### Alignment Headset

The ACATHS-01 Alignment Headset facilitates the operation of precisely aiming an SM toward an AP (or a BHS toward a BHM). This device produces infinitely variable

- pitch, higher when the received signal is stronger.
- volume, louder when jitter is less.

An ACATHS-01 is pictured in [Figure 20](#).

Pinouts for an alternative listening device are provided under [Alignment Tone—Technical Details](#) on [Page 186](#).



**Figure 20: ACATHS-01 alignment headset**

### Module Housing

The HSG-01 Canopy Plastic Housing is available for replacement of a damaged housing on a module that is otherwise functional. The HSG-01 is pictured in [Figure 21](#).

The HSG-01 and all module housings of this design provide clearances for cable ties on the Ethernet and sync cables.



**RECOMMENDATION:**

Use 0.14" (40-lb tensile strength) cable ties to secure the Ethernet and sync cables to the cable guides on the module housing.

For the Ethernet cable tie, the Ethernet cable groove is molded lower at the top edge. For the sync cable tie, removal of a breakaway plug provides clearance for the sync cable, and removal of two breakaway side plates provides clearance for the sync cable tie.



**Figure 21: HSG-01 Housing**

## 5.2 FREQUENCY BAND RANGES

In the 2.4-, 5.2-, 5.1-, 5.4-, and 5.7-GHz frequency band ranges, Canopy APs, SMs, and BHs are available. Additionally, in the 900-MHz frequency band range, Canopy APs and SMs are available. National restrictions may apply. See [Legal and Regulatory Notices](#) on Page 495.

To avoid self-interference, a Canopy network typically uses two or more of these ranges. For example, where properly arranged, all AP clusters and their respective SMs can use the 2.4-GHz range where the BH links use the 5.7-GHz range. In this scenario, subscriber links can span as far as 5 miles (8 km) with no reflector dishes, and the BH links can span as far as 35 miles (56 km) with reflector dishes on both ends.

Within this example network, wherever the 2.4-GHz module is susceptible to interference from other sources, AP clusters and their linked SMs may use the 5.2-GHz range to span as far as 2 miles (3.2 km) with no reflector dishes. The network in this example takes advantage of frequency band range-specific characteristics of Canopy modules as follows:

- The 900-MHz modules cover a larger area, albeit with lower throughput, than modules of the other frequency bands. The 900-MHz modules can be used to
  - penetrate foliage
  - establish links that span greater distances
  - add subscribers
  - add overall throughput where modules of other frequency bands cannot be used (such as where interference would result or space on a tower is limited).
- The 2.4-GHz frequency band range supports AP/SM links of greater than 2-mile spans (with no reflectors).
- The 5.7-GHz frequency band range supports BH links that span as far as 35 miles.

## 5.3 CANOPY PRODUCT COMPARISONS

### 5.3.1 Canopy Product Applications

The product applications per frequency band range are summarized in [Table 12](#).

**Table 12: Product applications per frequency band range**

Product	Frequency Band Range					
	900 MHz	2.4 GHz	5.1 GHz	5.2 GHz	5.4 GHz	5.7 GHz
Access Point Module	•	•	•	•	•	•
Subscriber Module	•	•	•	•	•	•
Subscriber Module with Reflector <sup>1</sup>		•		•	•	•
Backhaul Module		•	•	•	•	•
Backhaul Module with Reflector <sup>1</sup>		•	•	•	•	•
OFDM Series					•	•

Product	Frequency Band Range					
	900 MHz	2.4 GHz	5.1 GHz	5.2 GHz	5.4 GHz	5.7 GHz
Backhaul Module						
CMM2	•	•	•	•	•	•
CMMmicro	•	•	•	•	•	•
T1/E1 Multiplexer		•	•	•	•	•
Power supply	•	•	•	•	•	•
Surge suppressor	•	•	•	•	•	•
<b>NOTES:</b> 1. National or regional regulations may limit EIRP to the same as without a reflector, and therefore require Transmit Output Power to be reduced. See <a href="#">National and Regional Regulatory Notices</a> on Page 495. In these cases <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>the reflector used with an SM reduces beamwidth to reduce interference, but <i>does not</i> increase the range of the link.</li> <li>the reflector on both ends of a BH link reduces beamwidth to reduce interference and also increases the range of the link.</li> </ul>						

### 5.3.2 Link Performance and Encryption Comparisons

The encryption options on Canopy *point-to-multipoint* (PTMP) products are summarized in [Table 13](#). Typical Line-of-Site (LOS) range and aggregate useful throughput for Canopy PTMP links are summarized in [Table 14](#).

**Table 13: Products with encryption options available per frequency band, PTMP links**

Frequency Band	Products available with the following encryption options	
	DES or none	AES or none
2.4 GHz @100 mW (ETSI)	•	•
2.4 GHz @ 1W	•	•
5.1 GHz	•	
5.2 GHz	•	•
5.4 GHz	•	•
5.7 GHz	•	•
900 MHz	•	•

**Table 14: Typical range and throughput per frequency band, PTMP links**

Frequency Band	Advantage AP				Canopy AP			
	Range		Aggregate Throughput Mbps	Round-trip Latency msec	Range		Aggregate Throughput <sup>3</sup> Mbps	Round-trip Latency msec
	no SM Reflector mi (km)	with SM Reflector mi (km)			no SM Reflector mi (km)	with SM Reflector mi (km)		
2.4 GHz ETSI	0.3 (0.5)	0.3 (0.5) <sup>1</sup>	14	6	0.6 (1)	0.6 (1) <sup>1</sup>	7	20
	0.6 (1)	0.6 (1) <sup>1</sup>	7	6				
2.4 GHz	2.5 (4)	7.5 (12)	14	6	5 (8)	15 (24)	7	20
	5 (8)	15 (24)	7	6				
5.1 GHz	1 (1.6)	na	14	6	2 (3.2)	na	7	20
	2 (3.2)	na	7	6				
5.2 GHz	1 (1.6)	na <sup>2</sup>	14	6	2 (3.2)	na <sup>2</sup>	7	20
	2 (3.2)	na <sup>2</sup>	7	6				
5.4 GHz	1 (1.6)	1 (1.6) <sup>1</sup>	14	6	2 (3.2)	2 (3.2) <sup>1</sup>	7	20
	2 (3.2)	2 (3.2) <sup>1</sup>	7	6				
5.7 GHz	1 (1.6)	5 (8)	14	6	2 (3.2)	10 (16)	7	20
	2 (3.2)	10 (16)	7	6				
900 MHz <sup>4</sup>	40 (64)	na	4	15				

**NOTES:**

- In Europe, 2.4-GHz ETSI and 5.4-GHz SMs can have a reflector added to focus the antenna pattern and reduce interference, but transmit output power must be reduced to maintain the same EIRP as without a reflector, so the throughput and range specs for PTMP links remain the same.
- In the USA and Canada, the use of a reflector with a full power radio in the 5.2-GHz frequency band is not allowed.
- These values assume a hardware series P9 AP running hardware scheduler. When running software scheduler on a series P7, P8, or P9 AP, aggregate throughput drops to 6.2 Mbps, and only 4 Mbps is available to any one SM. (Series P7 and P8 APs can only run software scheduler.)
- All 900-MHz APs are Advantage APs.

**GENERAL NOTES:**

Range is affected by RF conditions, terrain, obstacles, buildings, and vegetation.

An Advantage AP in other than 900 MHz has an aggregate (sum of uplink plus downlink) throughput or capacity of 14 Mbps, if RF conditions, range, and SM hardware version permit.

An Advantage SM in other than 900 MHz has an aggregate sustained throughput of 14 Mbps if RF conditions and range permit.

A regular SM can burst to 14 Mbps if RF conditions and range permit, then run at 7 Mbps sustained throughput.

The encryption options on Canopy *point-to-point* (PTP) products are summarized in [Table 15](#). Typical Line-of-Site (LOS) range and aggregate useful throughput for Canopy PTP links are summarized in [Table 16](#).

**Table 15: Products with encryption options available per frequency band, PTP links**

Frequency Band	Modulation Rate (Mbps)	Products available with the following encryption options			
		DES or none	AES or none	Proprietary	Proprietary or AES licensed upgrade
2.4 GHz @100 mW (ETSI)	10	•	•		
	20	•	•		
2.4 GHz @ 1W	10	•	•		
	20	•	•		
5.1 GHz	10	•			
	20	•			
5.2 GHz	10	•	•		
	20	•	•		
5.2 GHz ER	10	•	•		
	20	•	•		
5.4 GHz	10	•	•		
	20	•	•		
	30 60				•
	150 300			•	
5.7 GHz	10	•	•		
	20	•	•		
	30 60				•
	150 300			•	

**Table 16: Typical range and throughput per frequency band, PTP links**

Frequency Band	Modulation Rate (Mbps)	Throughput	
		No Reflectors	Both Reflectors
2.4 GHz @100 mW (ETSI)	10	7.5 Mbps to 2 km	7.5 Mbps to 16 km
	20	14 Mbps to 1 km	14 Mbps to 8 km
2.4 GHz @ 1W	10	7.5 Mbps to 5 mi (8 km)	7.5 Mbps to 35 mi (56 km)
	20	14 Mbps to 3 mi (5 km)	14 Mbps to 35 mi (56 km)
5.1 GHz	10	7.5 Mbps to 2 mi (3.2 km)	
	20	14 Mbps to 2 mi (3.2 km)	
5.2 GHz	10	7.5 Mbps to 2 mi (3.2 km)	
	20		
5.2 GHz ER	10		7.5 Mbps to 10 mi (16 km)
	20		14 Mbps to 5 mi (8 km)
5.4 GHz	10	7.5 Mbps to 2 mi (3.2 km)	7.5 Mbps to 10 mi (16 km) <sup>1</sup>
	20	14 Mbps to 1 mi (1.6 km)	14 Mbps to 5 mi (8 km) <sup>1</sup>
	30	dynamically variable from 1.5 to 21 Mbps aggregate <sup>2</sup>	
	60	dynamically variable from 3 to 43 Mbps aggregate <sup>2</sup>	
	150	dynamically variable from 7 to 150 Mbps aggregate <sup>2</sup>	
	300	dynamically variable from 14 to 300 Mbps aggregate <sup>2</sup>	
5.7 GHz	10	7.5 Mbps to 2 mi (3.2 km)	7.5 Mbps to 35 mi (56 km)
	20	14 Mbps to 1 mi (1.6 km)	14 Mbps to 35 mi (56 km)
	30	dynamically variable from 1.5 to 21 Mbps aggregate <sup>2</sup>	
	60	dynamically variable from 3 to 43 Mbps aggregate <sup>2</sup>	
	150	dynamically variable from 7 to 150 Mbps aggregate <sup>2</sup>	
	300	dynamically variable from 14 to 300 Mbps aggregate <sup>2</sup>	
<b>NOTES:</b>			
1. These ranges are with power reduced to within 1 W (30 dBm) EIRP.			
2. Use the Link Estimator tool to estimate throughput for a given link.			

### 5.3.3 Cluster Management Product Comparison

Canopy offers a choice between two products for cluster management: CMM2 and CMMmicro. Your choice should be based on the installation environment and your requirements. The similarities and differences between these two products are summarized in [Table 17](#).

**Table 17: Cluster management product similarities and differences**

Characteristic	CMM2	CMMmicro
Approximate size	17" H x 13" W x 6.5" D (43 cm H x 33 cm W x 7 cm D)	12" H x 10" W x 3" D (30 cm H x 25 cm W x 8 cm D)
Approximate weight	25 lb ( 11.3 kg)	8 lb (3.5 kg)
Cabling	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>◦ one Ethernet/power cable per radio.</li> <li>◦ one sync cable per radio.</li> </ul>	one Ethernet/power/sync cable per radio.
Canopy network interconnection	8 Ethernet ports	8 Ethernet ports
Data throughput	auto-negotiates to full or half duplex	auto-negotiates to full or half duplex
Ethernet operating speed standard	auto-negotiates to 10Base-T or 100Base-TX	auto-negotiates to 10Base-T or 100Base-TX
Additional Ethernet ports	one for data feed one for local access (notebook computer)	none
Power supply	integrated 24-V DC to power APs, BHs, and GPS receiver	external 24-V DC to power APs, BHs, and GPS receiver
SNMP management capability	none	provided
Sync (to prevent self-interference)	carried by the additional serial cable to each AP and BHM	embedded in power-over-Ethernet cable
Time & Date	carried by the additional serial cable to each AP and BHM	provided by NTP (Network Time Protocol). CMMmicro can be an NTP server.
Weatherized	enclosure and power supply	only the enclosure (not the power supply)
Web interface	none	web pages for status, configuration, GPS status, and other purposes
<b>NOTE:</b> Auto-negotiation of data throughput and Ethernet operating speed depend on the connected device being set to auto-negotiate as well.		

## 5.4 ANTENNAS FOR CONNECTION TO 900-MHz MODULES

Like the 2.4-, 5.2-, 5.4-, and 5.7-GHz module, the 900-MHz connectorized module has

- the same housing.
- a covered Ethernet port.
- a utility port for alignment headset, sync cable to CMM2, or override plug.

The 900-MHz AP or SM is available either

- as a connectorized unit with a 16-inch (approximately 40-cm) cable with a male N-type connector for connection to the antenna.
- with an integrated antenna in a different form factor.

### 5.4.1 Certified Connectorized Flat Panel Antennas

Motorola has certified through regulatory agencies four connectorized flat panel antenna options. Motorola offers one of these, whose attributes include

- gain—10 dBi
- dimensions—8.8 x 8.1 x 1.6 inches (22.4 x 20.6 x 4.06 cm)
- weight—1.2 lbs (0.54 kg)
- polarization—vertical or horizontal
- cable—12-inch (30.5 cm)
- connector—female N-type
- beamwidth—approximately 60° vertical and 60° horizontal at 3 dBm

Motorola has certified three other antennas, which are available through Canopy resellers. The attributes of one of these other certified antennas include

- gain—10 dBi
- dimensions—12 x 12 x 1 inches (30.5 x 30.5 x 2.5 cm)
- weight—3.3 lbs (1.5 kg)
- polarization—vertical or horizontal
- connector—female N-type
- beamwidth—approximately 60° vertical and 60° horizontal at 3 dBm

Examples of these antennas are pictured in [Figure 4](#) on Page 51.

### 5.4.2 Third-party Certified Connectorized Flat Panel Antenna

A third party may certify additional antennas for use with the Canopy connectorized 900-MHz module.



## 5.5 ADJUNCTIVE SOFTWARE PRODUCTS

The capabilities of available applications and tools are summarized for comparison in [Table 18](#). In this table CNUT represents Canopy Network Updater Tool, Release 1.1 or later, and BAM represents Bandwidth and Authentication Manager, Release 2.0 or later.

**Table 18: Canopy applications and tools**

Capability	Application or Tool		
	Prizm	CNUT	BAM
<b>authenticates</b> SMS	•		•
controls <b>authentication</b> in APs	•	•	
manages <b>Committed Information Rate</b> (CIR)	•		•
has <b>dependency</b> on another application <sup>3</sup>		•	
automatically <b>discovers</b> elements	•	•	
<b>exports</b> network information with hierarchy	•	•	
supports user-defined <b>folder</b> -based operations	•	•	
senses <b>FPGA version</b> on an element	•	•	
upgrades <b>FPGA version</b> on an element		•	
enables/disables <b>hardware scheduling</b>		•	
manages the <b>high-priority channel</b>	•		•
<b>imports</b> network information with hierarchy	•	•	
<b>interface</b> to a higher-level network management system (NMS)	•		
<b>interface</b> to an operations support system (OSS)	•		
manages <b>Maximum Information Rate</b> (MIR)	•		•
automatically works from <b>root</b> (highest) level		•	
element <b>selection</b> can be individual or multiple	•	•	•
element <b>selection</b> can be criteria based	•		
element <b>selection</b> can be user-defined branch	•	•	
senses <b>software release</b> on an element	•	•	
upgrades <b>software release</b> on an element		•	
manages <b>VLAN</b> parameters	•		•
provides access to element <b>web interface</b>	•		

## 5.6 BANDWIDTH AND AUTHENTICATION MANAGER

Canopy Bandwidth and Authentication Manager (BAM) software allows you to use

- a primary server to distribute bandwidth resources per subscriber, require SMs to authenticate per AP, and deny service to unauthorized SMs.
- a secondary server to redundantly store identical SM bandwidth and authentication data and become governing if the primary server goes out of service.
- an optional tertiary server to do the same if both the primary and secondary servers go out of service.

In BAM Release 2.1, subscriber administration for an SM or batch of SMs is performed as follows:

- Insert the ESNs.
- Specify MIR and Security attributes.
- Specify CIR attributes.
- Specify whether BAM should send its stored CIR attributes.
- Specify VLAN attributes.
- Specify whether BAM should send its stored VLAN attributes.
- Specify VLAN IDs to associate with the SM(s).

This product is supported by the dedicated document *Canopy Bandwidth and Authentication Manager Release 2.1 User Guide* and associated release notes.

The upgrade path from BAM Release 2.1 is Prizm Release 2.0. See *Motorola Canopy Prizm User Guide*, Issue 3, and *Motorola Canopy Prizm Release 2.0 Release Notes*.

## 5.7 Prizm

The product name PrizmEMS is changed to Prizm in Release 2.0 and later, to reflect that the product capabilities are expanded beyond those of the element management system (EMS). Throughout this user guide, the name change applies to text for Release 2.0 and for multiple releases that include 2.0. It does not apply to text that is for a previous release. Case by case, software elements such as the GUI in the client application and XML files on the server may retain the PrizmEMS syntax.

### 5.7.1 Network Definition and Element Discovery

Prizm allows the user to partition the entire Canopy network into criteria-based subsets that can be independently managed. To assist in this task of defining networks, Prizm auto discovers Canopy network elements that are in

- user-defined IP address ranges
- SM-to-AP relationships with APs in the user-defined range
- BHS-to-BHM relationships with BHMs in the user-defined range.
- PLV Modem-to-PLV Bridge relationships with PLV Bridges in the user-defined range.

For a Canopy AP, SM, BHM, BHS, PLV Bridge, PLV Modem, or CMMmicro, Prizm

- auto discovers the element to the extent possible.
- includes the element in the network tree.
- shows general information.
- shows Canopy information.
- supports Canopy-specific operations.

For a generic element, Prizm

- auto discovers the element as only a generic network element.
- includes the element in the network tree.
- shows general information.
- shows events and alerts.
- charts port activity.

For passive elements (such as CMM2 or a non-manageable switch or hub), Prizm allows you to enter into the network tree a folder/group with name, asset/owner information, and descriptive information.

Supported element types include

Canopy Access Point Module	Generic SNMP Device (16 Port)
Canopy Backhaul Master Module	Generic SNMP Device (24 Port)
Canopy Backhaul Slave Module	Generic SNMP Device (26 Port)
Canopy PrizmEMS	High-Speed Backhaul Master Module 150/300 Mbps
Canopy Subscriber Module	High-Speed Backhaul Master Module 30/60 Mbps
Cluster Management Module micro	High-Speed Backhaul Slave Module 150/300 Mbps
Cluster Management Module-4	High-Speed Backhaul Slave Module 30/60 Mbps
Cluster Management Module-4 Switch	PLV Bridge Unit
Generic Group	PLV Modem Unit
Generic SNMP Device	Ultra Light Access Point
Generic SNMP Device (08 Port)	Ultra Light Outdoor Subscriber Unit

### 5.7.2 Monitoring and Fault Management

Prizm receives the traps that Canopy elements send and generates an alert for each of these. Prizm also allows the user to establish sets of criteria that would generate other alerts and trigger email notifications. Optionally, the user can specify a trap template. In this case, Prizm receives traps for non-Canopy elements in the network.

For any individual element that the user selects, Prizm offers text and graphed displays of element configuration parameters and performance statistics from an interval that the user specifies.

### 5.7.3 Element Management

Prizm allows the user to perform any of the following operations on any specified element or group of elements:

- Manage
  - large amounts of SNMP MIB data.
  - module passwords.
  - IP addresses.
  - other communications setup parameters.
  - site information: Site Name, Site Location, and Site Contact parameters.
- Reset the element.

### 5.7.4 BAM Subsystem in Prizm

Prizm Release 2.0 and later integrates Canopy Bandwidth and Authentication Manager (BAM) functionality and supports simple migration of a pre-existing BAM data into the Prizm database. These releases also support the maintenance of authentication and bandwidth data on a RADIUS server, to the same extent that BAM Release 2.1 (the final release of BAM) did.

Either of the following modes is available for the Prizm server, subject to licensing:

- BAM-only functionality, which manages only
  - authentication, bandwidth service plans, and VLAN profiles of SMs.
  - authentication of Powerline LV modems.
- Full Prizm functionality, which manages attributes for all elements and authentication of SMs and Powerline LV modems.

One difference between a service plan (or VLAN profile) and a configuration template that has the identical set of attributes is that the former is a long-term association whereas the latter is a one-time push to the element. When a service plan or VLAN profile is modified, the change is automatically applied to all elements that have the association. Another difference is that a configuration template cannot overwrite any values that a service plan or VLAN profile has set in an element.

### 5.7.5 Northbound Interface

In Release 1.1 and later, Prizm provides three interfaces to higher-level systems:

- a Simple Network Management Protocol (SNMP) agent for integration with a network management system (NMS).
- a Simple Object Access Protocol (SOAP) XML-based application programming interface (API) for web services that supports integration with an operations support systems (OSS) such as a customer relationship management (CRM), billing, or provisioning system.
- console automation that allows such higher-level systems to launch and appropriately display the Prizm management console in GUI that is custom developed, using the *PrizmEMS™ Software Development Kit (SDK)*, which Canopy provides for this purpose.

Together these interfaces constitute the Northbound Interface feature. Prizm server administrator tasks and GUI developer information are provided in the *PrizmEMS™ Software Development Kit (SDK)*. This SDK also describes the how to define new element types and customize the Details views.

All other features of the Prizm product are supported by the dedicated document *Motorola Canopy Prizm User Guide* and associated release notes.

## 5.8 LICENSE MANAGEMENT

Under the original licensing regime for Canopy networks, licenses were permanently tied to the Media Access Control (MAC) address of the equipment that was licensed or that used the licensed feature. Thus, they were not transferable. Under server-based license management, for some functionalities, Canopy offers licenses that

- float upon demand within the network.
- are tied to only the hostID (MAC address) of the license management server for which they were ordered.

In Release 4.2.3 and later, server-based license management adds flexibility and makes available licenses that previously would have been held by de-commissioned equipment. License management technology from Macrovision, based on a FLEXnet™ Publisher license management model, provides the platform for Canopy server-based licensing. Canopy capabilities that are authorized by licenses on this platform are *FLEXenabled* products.

In this platform, the license management server checks and then either assigns or declines to assign a license in real time. See the *Canopy Networks License Manager User Guide*.

The total number of floating license keys that you need for any feature is the highest number that you will ever want to have simultaneously in use. The proper placement of these keys and the number and placement of fixed Canopy licenses are listed in [Table 19](#).

**Table 19: Correct placement of license keys**

In This Release	License Key	Must Be in Directory	If This Platform	On This Server Device
LM 1.0	License Manager Server	C:\Program Files\Motorola\Canopy\FLEXnet\license_files	Windows	LM Server
		/usr/local/Canopy/FLEXnet/license_files	Enterprise Linux	
BAM 2.0	BAM Server, AP Auth Server (APAS), Cap 2	C:\Program Files\Motorola\Canopy\FLEXnet\license_files	Windows	LM Server <sup>1</sup>
		/usr/local/Canopy/FLEXnet/license_files	Enterprise Linux	
		/usr/local/canopy/include	Enterprise Linux	BAM Server <sup>2</sup>

In This Release	License Key	Must Be in Directory	If This Platform	On This Server Device
BAM 2.1	BAM Server, AP Auth Server (APAS), Cap 2	C:\Program Files\Motorola\Canopy\FLEXnet\license_files	Windows	LM Server <sup>1</sup>
		/usr/local/Canopy/FLEXnet/license_files	Enterprise Linux	
		/usr/local/Canopy/FLEXnet/license_files	Enterprise Linux	BAM Server <sup>2</sup>
PrizmEMS 1.0	PrizmEMS Server, Element Pack	C:\Program Files\Motorola\Canopy\FLEXnet\license_files	Windows	LM Server <sup>3</sup>
		/usr/local/Canopy/FLEXnet/license_files	Enterprise Linux	
		C:\Program Files\Motorola\Canopy\FLEXnet\license_files	Windows	PrizmEMS Server <sup>4</sup>
		/usr/local/Canopy/Prizm/license_files	Enterprise Linux	
PrizmEMS 1.1	PrizmEMS Server, Element Pack	C:\Program Files\Motorola\Canopy\FLEXnet\license_files	Windows	LM Server <sup>3</sup>
		/usr/local/Canopy/FLEXnet/license_files	Enterprise Linux	
Prizm 2.0 and 2.1 for full mgmt	PrizmEMS Server, Element Pack  BAM Server, AP Auth Server (APAS), Cap 2 Canopy Lite	C:\Program Files\Motorola\Canopy\FLEXnet\license_files	Windows	LM server <sup>5</sup>
		/usr/local/Canopy/FLEXnet/license_files	Enterprise Linux	
Prizm 2.0 and 2.1 for BAM-only or redundant BAM	BAM Server, AP Auth Server (APAS), Cap 2 Canopy Lite	C:\Program Files\Motorola\Canopy\FLEXnet\license_files	Windows	LM server <sup>1</sup>
		/usr/local/Canopy/FLEXnet/license_files	Enterprise Linux	

**NOTES:**

1. One key required per each deployed BAM server.
2. Copied here so that BAM can find License Manager. No additional charge for using this copy.
3. One key required per each deployed PrizmEMS server.
4. Copied here so that PrizmEMS can find License Manager. No additional charge for using this copy.
5. One BAMServer key and one PrizmEMSServer key required per each full management Prizm server.

## 5.9 SPECIFICATIONS AND LIMITATIONS

### 5.9.1 Radios

Canopy radio specifications are provided at  
<http://motorola.canopywireless.com/products/specshome.php>.

### 5.9.2 Cluster Management Products

**Table 20: CMM2 specifications and limitations**

Specification or Limitation	Canopy System Range
Max length from Cluster Management Module to any radio	328 cable feet (100 meters)
Max length from Cluster Management Module to GPS antenna	100 cable feet (30.5 meters)
Dimensions	17.00" H x 12.88" W x 6.50" D (43.18 cm H x 32.72 cm W x 16.51 cm D)
Weight	25.0 lbs. (11.3 kg)
Operation Temperature	-40°F to +131°F (-40°C to +55°C)
Overall	Meets CE IP44 according to EN60529:2000
AC Input Voltage and Frequency	100 V – 240 V~, 0.7 A – 0.35 A, settable to either 230 V or 115 V nominal input. 50 Hz – 60 Hz Note: Applying 230 V to a unit that is set to 115 V may damage the unit.
AC Input Power	Nominal 66 watts, max 92 watts with 8 modules connected to the CMM at max cable length.
24-V DC Input Voltage	18 to 32 V DC, measured at CMM
24-V DC Input Power	Nominal 60 watts. Maximum 84 watts with 8 modules connected to the CMM at maximum cable length. 9A inrush upon start-up.
24-V DC Usage	If using a typical "24V +/-5%" power supply, ensure that CMM is within 400 cable feet (120 m) of the power supply. Use minimum 12 AWG (4 mm <sup>2</sup> ) copper wire.
12-V DC Input Voltage	11.5 to 32 VDC, measured at CMM
12-V DC Usage	If using a 12V power source (typically an automobile battery in a test or emergency situation), use 12 AWG (4 mm <sup>2</sup> ) wire between the power supply and the CMM, ensure that the CMM is within 10 cable feet (3 m) of the power supply, and ensure the modules are within 20 cable feet (6 m) of the CMM.
Ethernet, GPS Sync, and GPS Coax Cables	The use of cables that conform to the operational temperature of the product as well as being UV light protected is mandatory.

**Table 21: CMMmicro specifications and limitations**

Specification or Limitation	Canopy System Range
Enclosure Size	Approximately 12" H x 10" W x 3" D (Approximately 30 cm H x 25 cm W x 7.5 cm D)
CMMmicro Weight (without DC power supply)	Approximately 8 lb (Approximately 3.5 k)
Max length from Cluster Management Module to any radio	328 cable feet (100 meters)
Max length from Cluster Management Module to GPS antenna	100 cable feet (30.5 meters)
Operating Temperature	-40°F to +131°F (-40°C to +55°C)
Provided DC Power Converter Input Voltage	100 – 240 V~
Provided DC Power Converter Input Frequency	50 – 60 Hz
CMMmicro Power Input Voltage	21.5 – 26.5 V DC
CMMmicro Power Current	3.36 A @ 24 V DC (3.75 – 3.0 A over voltage range)
Ethernet, GPS sync, and GPS coax cables	The use of cables that conform to the operational temperature of the product as well as having UV light protection is mandatory. Cables can be ordered from Best-Tronics Manufacturing, Inc. at <a href="http://www.best-tronics.com/motorola.htm">http://www.best-tronics.com/motorola.htm</a> .

### 5.9.3 300SS and 600SS Surge Suppressors

Canopy Surge Suppressor specifications are provided at <http://motorola.canopywireless.com/products/specshome.php>.



## 6 DIFFERENTIATING AMONG COMPONENTS

### 6.1 INTERPRETING MODEL (PART) NUMBER

The part number of a module typically represents

- the model number, which may indicate
  - radio frequency band range.
  - link distance range.
  - whether the module is Canopy Advantage.
  - the factory-set encryption standard.
- the module type.
- whether the reflector dish is included.
- the antenna scheme of the module.
- whether adjustable power in the module is preset to low.
- the modulation capability.

#### Radio Frequency Band Range

The leading digits usually indicate the frequency band range in which the module can operate. For example, if the part number is 5700BH, then the frequency band range of the module is 5.7 GHz.

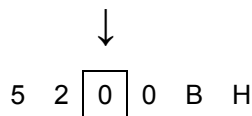


An exception to this general rule is that the leading digits in the part number of 5.1-GHz modules are 52. These modules are differentiated from 5.2-GHz modules by the leading four digits (5202 for 5.1 GHz, 5200 for 5.2 GHz).

You cannot change the frequency band range of the module.

#### Link Distance Range or Canopy Advantage

The third digit in the part number may indicate whether the module is an extended range, Canopy Advantage, or Canopy model. 1 indicates extended range. For example, if the part number is 5210BH, then the module *is* an extended range module. If the part number is 5200BH, then the module is not an extended range model.

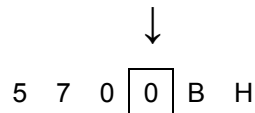


6 in the third position (5760SM, for example) indicates Canopy Lite. 5 in the third position (5250AP, for example) indicates that the module is Canopy Advantage. 0 in the third position (5200AP, for example) indicates that the module is Canopy. However, *part numbering for 900-MHz APs and SMs differs from this general rule*. All APs and SMs in this frequency band range are Canopy Advantage, but none of their part numbers use 5 in the third position.

You cannot change the link distance range of the module. However, you can license a Canopy SM to uncap its aggregate throughput (a capability of the Advantage SM).

### Encryption Standard or Frequency Band Range

The fourth digit in the part number usually indicates the encryption standard that was preset at the factory. 1 indicates the Advanced Encryption Standard (AES). 0 indicates the Data Encryption Standard (DES) standard. For example, if the part number is 5201BH, then transmissions from the module are encrypted according to AES. If the part number is 5200BH, then transmissions from the module are encrypted according to DES.



An exception to this general rule is that the fourth digit in the part number of 5.1-GHz modules is 2. These modules are differentiated from 5.2-GHz modules by the leading four digits (5202 for 5.1 GHz, 5200 for 5.2 GHz).

You cannot change the encryption basis (from DES to AES, for example), but you can enable or disable the encryption.

### Module Type

The next two alpha characters indicate the module type. For example, CK indicates that the module is a Cluster Management Module.

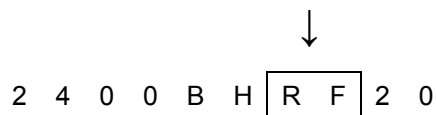


The module type cannot be changed.

### Reflector Added

In specifications tables and price lists, the trailing characters RF or RF20 indicate that the associated information applies to the module being

- mounted to the 27RD Passive Reflector Dish, in the case of specifications.
- ordered with the 27RD Passive Reflector Dish, in the case of price lists.



However, this designation is not shown on either label of the module, and a module ordered with the dish can be deployed without the dish.

### Antenna Scheme

In specifications tables and price lists, the trailing character C indicates that the module is connectorized for an external antenna.

↓  
9 0 0 0 S M C

An F in this position indicates that the module has an internal antenna with a band-pass filter (for example, 9000APF).

You cannot transform a module from connectorized to internal antenna or from internal antenna to connectorized, but you may have flexibility in what external antenna you deploy with it.

### Adjustable Power Preset to High or Low

A trailing WL can indicate that the module had adjustable power that is preset to low.

↓  
2 4 0 0 A P W L

However, the 5700SMC and 5700APC are connectorized, but also have adjustable power preset to low. No special designation is made for adjustable power that is set to high (no trailing letters are used; for example, 5252AP).

You can reset power to higher in a module with adjustable power that is preset to low, but you are constrained by applicable regulations in your region and or nation.

### Modulation Capability

A trailing 20 indicates that the module is capable of being set to either

- 20-Mbps modulation (aggregate throughput of 14 Mbps)
- 10-Mbps modulation (aggregate throughput of 7 Mbps).

↓  
2 4 0 0 B H R F 2 0

The absence of a trailing 20 indicates that the module is capable of only 10-Mbps modulation.

## 6.2 SORTED MODEL (PART) NUMBERS

The various model/part numbers of Canopy products are categorically listed in [Table 22](#).

**Table 22: Canopy model numbers (part numbers) for AES and DES encryption modules**

Range	Integrated Antenna				Connectorized for Antenna			
	Canopy		Advantage		Canopy		Advantage	
	DES	AES	DES	AES	DES	AES	DES	AES
5.7 GHz	5700AP 5700BH 5700BH20 5700BHRF 5700BHRF20 5700SM 5760SM	5701AP 5701BH 5701BH20 5701BHRF 5701BHRF20 5701SM	5750AP 5750SM	5751AP 5751SM	5700APC 5700BHC 5700BHC20 5700SMC	5701APC 5701BHC 5701BHC20 5701SMC	5750APC 5750SMC	5751APC 5751SMC
5.4 GHz	5400AP 5400BH 5400BH20 5400BHRF 5400BHRF20 5400SM	5401AP 5401BH 5401BH20 5401BHRF 5401BHRF20 5401SM	5450AP 5450SM	5451AP 5451SM				
5.1 GHz	5202AP 5202BH 5202SM 5212BH20 5212BHRF20		5252AP 5252SM					
5.2 GHz	5200AP 5200BH 5200SM 5210BHRF 5210BHRF20	5201AP 5201BH 5201SM 5211BH20 5211BHRF 5211BHRF20	5250AP 5250SM	5251AP 5251SM				
2.4 GHz	2400AP 2400APWL 2400BH 2400BH20 2400BHRF 2400BHRF20 2400BHWL 2400BHWL20 2400BHWLRF 2400BHWLRF20 2400SM 2400SMWL	2401AP 2401APWL 2401BH 2401BH20 2401BHRF 2401BHRF20 2401BHWL 2401BHWL20 2401BHWLRF 2401BHWLRF20 2401SM 2401SMWL	2450AP 2450APWL 2450SM 2450SMWL	2451AP 2451APWL 2451SM 2451SMWL				
900 MHz			9000AP 9000APF 9000SM 9000SMF	9001AP 9001APF 9001SM 9001SMF			9000APC 9000SMC	9001APC 9001SMC

**Table 23: Canopy model numbers (part numbers) for proprietary encryption modules**

Range	Integrated Antenna	Connectorized for Antenna
5.7 GHz	5830BH 5830BH15 5730BH 5730BH20	5830BHC 5830BHC15 5730BHC 5730BHC20
5.4 GHz	5430BH 5430BH20	5430BHC 5430BHC20

### 6.3 INTERPRETING ELECTRONIC SERIAL NUMBER (ESN)

Canopy module labels contain a product serial number that could be significant in your dealings with Motorola or your supply chain. This is the electronic serial number (ESN), also known as the Media Access Control (MAC) address, of the module. This hexadecimal number identifies the module in

- communications between modules.
- the data that modules store about each other (for example, in the **Registered To** field).
- the data that the BAM software applies to manage authentication and bandwidth.
- Prizm auto discovery of SMs through the AP (or BHS through the BHM).
- software upgrades performed by the Canopy Network Updater Tool (CNUT).
- information that CNUT passes to external tools.

### 6.4 FINDING THE MODEL (PART) NUMBER AND ESN

The labels and locations of Canopy module model (part) numbers and ESNs are shown in [Table 24](#).

**Table 24: Labels and locations of model (part) numbers and ESNs**

Numeric String	Label and Location	
	Older Modules	Newer Modules
Model (part) number	<b>PN</b> outside	<b>Model #</b> outside
ESN/MAC address	<b>S/N</b> inside	<b>ESN</b> outside



## 7 CANOPY LINK CHARACTERISTICS

### 7.1 UNDERSTANDING BANDWIDTH MANAGEMENT

#### 7.1.1 Downlink Frame Contents

The AP broadcasts downlink frames that contain control information, allocating slots in succeeding or future uplink frames to SMs that have requested service. The downlink frame also contains a beacon frame, control information, and data that specific SMs have requested. Each SM

- examines the downlink frame to distinguish whether data is addressed to that SM.
- retrieves data addressed to that SM.
- directs such data to the appropriate end user.

#### 7.1.2 Uplink Frame Contents

Uplink frames contain control information from each SM that request service on succeeding uplink frames. SMs insert data into the uplink frames in an amount that the AP has established.

Optionally, you can configure the AP to change the source MAC address in every packet it receives from its SMs to the MAC address of the SM that bridged the packet, before forwarding the packet toward the public network. If you do, then

- not more than 10 IP devices at any time are valid to send data to the AP from behind the SM.
- the AP populates the Translation Table tab of its Statistics web page, displaying the MAC address and IP address of all the valid connected devices.
- each entry in the Translation Table is associated with the number of minutes that have elapsed since the last packet transfer between the connected device and the SM.
- if 10 are connected, and another attempts to connect
  - and no Translation Table entry is older than 255 minutes, the attempt is ignored.
  - and an entry is older than 255 minutes, the oldest entry is removed and the attempt is successful.
- the **Send Untranslated ARP** parameter in the General tab of the Configuration page can be
  - disabled, so that the AP will overwrite the MAC address in Address Resolution Protocol (ARP) packets before forwarding them.
  - enabled, so that the AP will forward ARP packets regardless of whether it has overwritten the MAC address.

This is the **Translation Bridging** feature, which you can enable in the General tab of the Configuration web page in the AP. When this feature is disabled, the setting of the **Send Untranslated ARP** parameter has no effect, because all packets are forwarded untranslated (with the source MAC address intact).

See [Address Resolution Protocol](#) on Page 164.

### 7.1.3 Default Frame Structures

With a 64-byte slot size, the default Canopy frame in hardware scheduling consists of

- variable numbers of uplink and downlink data slots, subject to the following factors:
  - Maximum range decreases the number of available slots to 32.
  - Background bit error rate (BER) mode decreases the number of available data slots by one (and bandwidth by 200 kbps).
  - Every two control slots that are allocated decrease the number of available data slots by one.
- 0 to 10 control slots, subject to operator setting
- 0 to 9 downlink acknowledgement slots, dynamically assigned
- 0 to 9 uplink acknowledgement slots, dynamically assigned
- 1 uplink schedule slot
- 1 beacon slot, which identifies the
  - timing and distribution for the SMs
  - ratio of uplink to downlink allocation
  - ESN of the AP
  - color code
  - protocol (point-to-point or point-to-multipoint)
  - number of registered SMs
  - frame number
  - control slot information
- air delay, subject to the value of the **Max Range** parameter in the AP

#### Control Slots

The Radio tab of the Configuration web page in the AP displays the total of control slots (default 3, maximum 7 in the 900-MHz frequency band range<sup>3</sup> and 16 in all others). These control slots are contention slots. If too many SMs contend for these slots, then the number of control slots may be increased.

#### Frame Scheduling

When an SM boots, the following sequence occurs:

1. The SM finds this beacon slot from an AP.
2. The SM synchronizes with the AP.
3. If BAM is configured on the AP and the AP is licensed for authentication, then
  - a. the AP sends a Registration Request message to Prizm for authentication.
  - b. following a successful challenge, Prizm returns an Authentication Grant message to the AP.

---

<sup>3</sup> In the 900-MHz frequency band range, the frame size is 16,667 bits. In all others, the frame size is 25,000 bits. The smaller frame does not provide enough space to allocate more than 7 control slots.



- c. the AP sends a Registration Grant to the SM.

If BAM *is not* configured on the AP or the AP is not licensed for authentication, then the AP simply returns the Registration Grant to the SM.

This Registration Grant includes the distance between the AP and SM. The SM uses the distance to distinguish when to transmit data in the uplink frame. The AP performs advance scheduling of up to 1024 frames that each SM will be permitted to use in the uplink frame.

#### 7.1.4 Media Access Control and AP Capacity

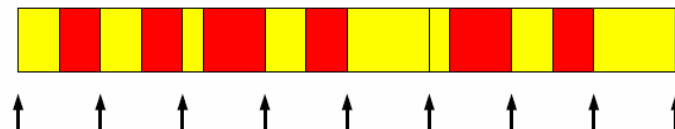
Regardless of whether the maximum number of SMs (200) all request service at the same time, the reservation Media Access Control (MAC) system allows the AP to give a reservation slot to each SM that requests service.

Regardless of the distance between any SM and the AP, the reservation MAC system ensures that all SM data slots are free of contention. For this reason

- all SMs are equally able to compete for uplink and downlink bandwidth.
- the capacity of the AP is not degraded by distance from the SMs.

#### 7.1.5 Canopy Slot Usage

The frame illustrated in [Figure 22](#) shows both packet fragments (yellow) and unused slot space (red) typical of uplink traffic. Packet sizes smaller than 64 bytes cause unused slot spaces.



**Figure 22: Uplink data slot usage**

The following statistics apply to Canopy frame slot usage:

- Slot capacity is 64 bytes.
- The optimum Ethernet packet size is 1518 bytes.
- The maximum downlink throughput for one AP to one SM is 1800 packets per second (pps).
- The maximum uplink throughput for one AP to one SM is 300 pps.
- The maximum backhaul throughput is 3000 pps.

#### 7.1.6 Data Transfer Capacity

Canopy modules use Time Division Duplex (TDD) on a common frequency to divide frames for uplink (orange) and downlink (green) usage, as shown in [Figure 23](#).

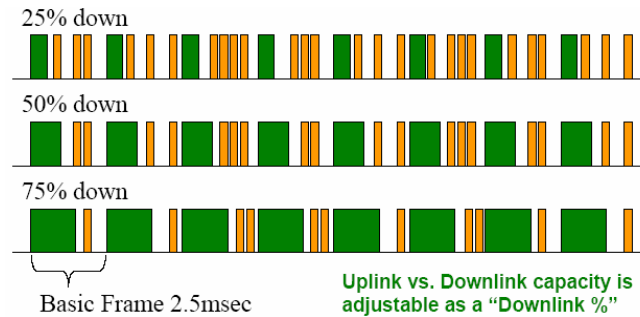


Figure 23: TDD dividing Canopy frames

### 7.1.7 Maximum Information Rate (MIR) Parameters

Canopy point-to-multipoint links use the following four MIR parameters for bandwidth management:

- **Sustained Uplink Data Rate** (kbps)
- **Uplink Burst Allocation** (kb)
- **Sustained Downlink Data Rate** (kbps)
- **Downlink Burst Allocation** (kb)

You can independently set each of these parameters per AP or per SM.

#### Token Bucket Concept

The Canopy software uses a theoretical *token bucket* that

- stores credits (tokens) for the SM to spend on bandwidth for reception or transmission.
- drains tokens during reception or transmission.
- refills with tokens at the sustained rate set by the network operator.

For each token, the SM can send toward the network in the uplink (or the AP can send toward the SM in the downlink) an equivalent number of kilobits. Two buckets determine the permitted throughput: one in the SM for uplink and one in the AP for downlink.

The applicable set of **Uplink Burst Allocation** and **Downlink Burst Allocation** parameters determine the *number* of tokens that can fill each bucket. When the SM transmits (or the AP transmits) a packet, the equivalent number of tokens is removed from the uplink (or downlink) bucket.

Except when full, the bucket is continuously being refilled with tokens at *rates* that the applicable set of **Sustained Uplink Data Rate** and **Sustained Downlink Data Rate** parameters specify. The bucket often drains at a rate that is much faster than the sustained data rate but can refill at only the sustained data rate. Thus, the effects of the allocation and rate parameters on packet delay are as follows:

- the burst allocation affects how many kilobits are processed before packet delay is imposed.
- the sustained data rate affects the packet delay that is imposed.

Which set of these MIR parameters are applicable depends on the interactions of other parameter values. These interactions are described under [Setting the Configuration](#)

[Source](#) on Page 297. Also, where the **Configuration Source** parameter setting in the AP specifies that BAM values should be used, they are used only if Prizm is configured to send the values that it stores for the MIR parameters.

### MIR Data Entry Checking

Uplink and downlink MIR is enforced as shown in [Figure 24](#).



#### NOTE:

In these figures, *entry* refers to the setting in the data rate parameter, not the burst allocation parameter.

$$\text{uplink cap enforced} = \frac{\text{uplink entry} \times \text{aggregate cap for the SM}}{\text{uplink entry} + \text{downlink entry}}$$

$$\text{downlink cap enforced} = \frac{\text{downlink entry} \times \text{aggregate cap for the SM}}{\text{uplink entry} + \text{downlink entry}}$$

**Figure 24: Uplink and downlink rate caps adjusted to apply aggregate cap**

For example, in the Canopy SM, if you set the **Sustained Uplink Data Rate** parameter to 2,000 kbps and the **Sustained Downlink Data Rate** parameter to 10,000 kbps, then the uplink and downlink MIR that will be enforced for the SM can be calculated as shown in [Figure 25](#).

$$\text{uplink cap enforced} = \frac{2,000 \text{ kbps} \times 7,000 \text{ kbps}}{2,000 \text{ kbps} + 10,000 \text{ kbps}} = 1,167 \text{ kbps}$$

$$\text{downlink cap enforced} = \frac{10,000 \text{ kbps} \times 7,000 \text{ kbps}}{2,000 \text{ kbps} + 10,000 \text{ kbps}} = 5,833 \text{ kbps}$$

**Figure 25: Uplink and downlink rate cap adjustment example**

In this example case, the derived 1,167-kbps uplink and 5,833-kbps downlink MIR sum to the fixed 7,000-kbps aggregate cap of the Canopy SM.

### 7.1.8 Committed Information Rate

The Committed Information Rate (CIR) capability feature enables the service provider to guarantee to any subscriber that bandwidth will never decrease to below a specified minimum, unless CIR is oversubscribed. Bandwidth can be, and typically will be, higher than the minimum, but this guarantee helps the WISP to attract and retain subscribers.

In BAM Release 2.1 and in Prizm Release 2.0, CIR configuration is supported as follows:

- The GUI allows you to view and change CIR configuration parameters per SM.
- When an SM successfully registers and authenticates, if BAM or Prizm has CIR configuration data for the SM, then messages make the CIR configuration available to the SM, depending on the Configuration Source setting. (See [Setting the Configuration Source](#) on Page 297.)
- The operator can disable the CIR feature in the SM without deleting the CIR configuration data.

### 7.1.9 Bandwidth from the SM Perspective

In the Canopy SM, normal web browsing, e-mail, small file transfers, and short streaming video are rarely rate limited with practical bandwidth management (QoS) settings. When the SM processes large downloads such as software upgrades and long streaming video or a series of medium-size downloads, the bucket rapidly drains, the burst limit is reached, and some packets are delayed. The subscriber experience is more affected in cases where the traffic is more latency sensitive.

Example download times for various arbitrary tiers of service are shown in [Table 59](#) on Page 390 and [Table 60](#) on Page 391.

### 7.1.10 Interaction of Burst Allocation and Sustained Data Rate Settings

If the Burst Allocation is set to 1200 kb and the Sustained Data Rate is set to 128 kbps, a data burst of 1000 kb is transmitted at full speed because the Burst Allocation is set high enough. After the burst, the bucket experiences a significant refill at the Sustained Data Rate. This configuration uses the advantage of the settable Burst Allocation.

If both the Burst Allocation and the Sustained Data Rate are set to 128 kb, a burst is limited to the Burst Allocation value. This configuration does not take advantage of the settable Burst Allocation.

If the Burst Allocation is set to 128 kb and the Sustained Data Rate is set to 256 kbps, the actual rate will be the burst allocation (but in kbps). As above, this configuration does not take advantage of the settable Burst Allocation.

### 7.1.11 High-priority Bandwidth

To support low-latency traffic such as VoIP (Voice over IP) or video, the Canopy system implements a high-priority channel. This channel does not affect the inherent latencies in the Canopy system but allows high-priority traffic to be immediately served. The high-priority pipe separates low-latency traffic from traffic that is latency tolerant, such as standard web traffic and file downloads.

A Canopy module prioritizes traffic by

- reading the Low Latency bit (Bit 3) in the IPv4 Type of Service (ToS) byte in a received packet.
- reading the 802.1p field of the 802.1Q header in a received packet, where VLAN is enabled on the module.

- comparing the 6-bit Differentiated Services Code Point (DSCP) field in the ToS byte of a received packet to a corresponding value in the DiffServe tab of the Configuration page of the module.

### Low Latency Bit

Bit 3 is set by a device outside the Canopy system. In the uplink frame, the SM monitors Bit 3. If this bit is set, then

- the SM prioritizes this traffic in its high-priority queue according to AP configuration settings for the high-priority channel.
- the system sends the packet on the high-priority channel and services this channel before any normal traffic.

### 802.1P Field

See [Priority on VLANs \(802.1p\)](#) on Page 168.

### DSCP Field

Like Bit 3 of the original IPv4 ToS byte, the DSCP field (Bits 0 through 5) in the redefined ToS byte is set by a device outside the Canopy system. A packets contains no flag that indicates whether the encoding is for the Low Latency bit or the DSCP field. For this reason, you must ensure that all elements in your trusted domain, including routers and endpoints, set and read the ToS byte with the same scheme.

Canopy modules monitor ToS bytes with DSCP fields, but with the following differences:

- The 6-bit length of the field allows it to specify one of 64 service differentiations.
- These correlate to 64 individual (**CodePoint**) parameters in the DiffServe tab of the Configuration page.
- Per RFC 2474, 3 of these 64 are preset and cannot be changed. (See <http://www.faqs.org/rfcs/rfc1902.html>.)
- For any or all of the remaining 61 CodePoint parameters, you can specify a value of
  - 0 through 3 for low-priority handling.
  - 4 through 7 for high-priority handling.



#### **RECOMMENDATION:**

Ensure that your Differentiated Services domain boundary nodes mark any entering packet, as needed, so that it specifies the appropriate Code Point for that traffic and domain. This prevents theft of service level.

An example of the DiffServe tab in the Configuration page and parameter descriptions are provided under [DiffServe Tab of the AP](#) on Page 261. This tab and its rules are identical from module type to module type in Canopy. However, any of the 61 configurable Code Points can be set to a different value from module to module, thus defining unique per-hop behavior for some traffic.

This tab in the AP and BHM sets the priorities for the various packets in the downstream (sent from the public network). This tab in the SM and BHS sets the priorities for the various packets in the upstream (sent to the public network).

Typically in the Canopy network, some SMs attach to older devices that use the ToS byte as originally formatted, and others to newer devices that use the DSCP field. The *default* values in the DiffServe tab allow your modules to prioritize traffic from the older devices roughly the same as they traditionally have. However, these default values may result in more high-priority traffic as DSCP fields from the newer devices are read and handled. So, after making any changes in the DiffServe tab, carefully monitor the high-priority channel for high packet rates

- in SMs that you have identified as those to initially set and watch.
- across your Canopy network when you have broadly implemented Code Point values, such as via SNMP.

The standard channel in Canopy PTMP communications is illustrated in [Figure 26](#).

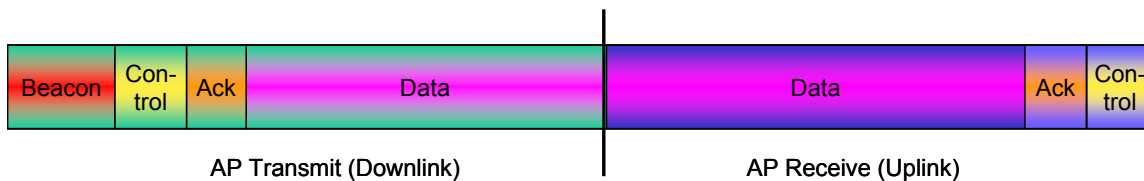


Figure 26: Canopy channel, 75% downlink, 0% high priority in uplink

### 7.1.12 Hardware Scheduling

Canopy Release 8 supports only hardware scheduling. Hardware scheduling always sends high-priority traffic first, even to the exclusion of other traffic.



#### **IMPORTANT!**

The number of channels available to the AP is reduced by the number of SMs configured for the high-priority channel. With this feature enabled on all SMs, an AP can support only 100 SMs (instead of 200).



#### **IMPORTANT!**

In a Canopy BH link with Canopy T1/E1 Multiplexers, the BHs must be configured for an uplink/downlink ratio of 50% uplink/50% downlink. The Canopy T1/E1 Multiplexers are full duplex.

Canopy Release 8 requires APs, BHs, and AES SMs to be Series P9 or later hardware.<sup>4</sup> The characteristics of hardware scheduling in a Canopy sector are summarized in [Table 25](#).

<sup>4</sup> See [Designations for Hardware in Radios](#) on Page 373.

**Table 25: Characteristics of hardware scheduling**

Category	Factor	Treatment
Throughput	Aggregate throughput, less additional overhead	14 Mbps
	ACK slots in downlink used for data except when request for uplink is present	Yes
Latency	Number of frames required for the scheduling process	1
	Round-trip latency <sup>1</sup>	≈ 6 ms
	AP broadcast the download schedule	No
High-priority Channel	Allocation for <i>uplink</i> high-priority traffic on amount of high-priority traffic	Dynamic, based on amount of high-priority traffic
	Allocation for <i>downlink</i> high-priority traffic on amount of high-priority traffic	Dynamic, based on amount of high-priority traffic
	Order of transmission	<ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>1. CIR high-priority</li> <li>2. CIR low-priority</li> <li>3. Other high-priority</li> <li>4. Other low-priority</li> </ol>
Transmit Frame Spreading	Support for Transmit Frame Spreading feature	In Release 7.0 and later
CIR	Capability	In all releases
<b>NOTES:</b> 1. For 2.4- and 5.8-GHz modules.		

**CAUTION!**

Power requirements for modules that run hardware scheduling affect the recommended maximums for power cord length feeding the CMMmicro. See [Table 54](#) on [Page 349](#). However, the requirements *do not* affect the maximums for the CMM2.

Packets that have a priority of 4 to 7 in either the DSCP or a VLAN 802.1p tag are automatically sent on the high-priority channel, but only where the high-priority channel is enabled.

### 7.1.13 2X Operation

A General tab option in both Advantage SMs and some Canopy SMs provides double the aggregate throughput for SMs that are nearer than half of the distance range from the AP (the nearest one-fourth of the SMs in the sector). The requirements of this feature are as follows:

- The AP must be an Advantage AP.
- The SM must be near the AP, as described above.
- The SM must be of the P9 hardware series and enabled for hardware scheduling. See [Designations for Hardware](#) on Page 373.
- The **2X Rate** parameter in the SM must be set to enabled. This is the default setting.
- The amount of noise and multipath must be low enough to allow the receiver in the 6-dB less sensitive (2X) state to maintain a high carrier-to-interference (C/I) ratio.

The flexibility of this feature is as follows:

- At the time of registration, signaling is at the 1X rate. However, if the above requirements are all met, then the SM switches to 2X.
- Thereafter, whenever RF conditions are unfavorable for 2X operation, the SM switches to 1X. When favorable RF conditions allow, the SM switches back to 2X, if user data is present at that time.
- Similarly, whenever no user data is present, the SM switches to 1X. When user data flow resumes, the SM switches back to 2X, if RF conditions allow.
- Both links for the SM (uplink and downlink) are independent for this feature. (One can be operating at 2X operation while the other is operating at 1X.)
- Other SMs in the sector can be communicating with the AP at the other modulation rate.
- Although subscribers with Canopy SMs realize higher bursts, and subscribers with Advantage SMs realize both higher burst and higher sustained throughput, the network operator realizes higher sector throughput capacity in the AP.

The effect of 2X operation on aggregate throughput for the SM is indicated in [Table 26](#).



**Table 26: Effect of 2X operation on throughput for the SM**

Type of SM		Typical Aggregate Rates <sup>1</sup>	
		Sustained <sup>2</sup>	Burst <sup>2</sup>
Advantage	900 MHz <sup>3</sup>	4 Mbps	4 Mbps
	Any other frequency band range	14 Mbps	14 Mbps
Canopy P9	Any frequency band range except 900 MHz	7 Mbps	14 Mbps
<b>NOTES:</b> 1. Subject to competition among all SMs in the sector. 2. Can be less if limited by the value of <b>Downlink Data</b> set in the Radio tab of the Configuration page in the AP. 3. All 900-MHz modules are Advantage.			

### Competition for Bandwidth

When multiple SMs vie for bandwidth, the AP divides its bandwidth among them, considering their effective CIR and MIR values. However, 2X operation uses bandwidth twice as efficiently as 1X, even where MIR values apply. This is because, in 2X operation, the modules transmit their data in 4-level frequency shift keying (FSK), not 2-level as they would in 1X operation. This moves twice the data per slot. Thus, for the sum of all bandwidth that 2X-eligible customers use, the bandwidth available to the remaining customers increases by half of that sum when these eligible customers are transmitting and receiving in 2X operation.

### Engineering for 2X Operation

The following priorities should guide your implementation of 2X operation:

- In the near half of the distance range of the AP
  - identify the customers who use the most bandwidth.
  - enable their SMs first for 2X operation.
- When you have deployable Canopy P7 and P8 SMs, *do not* deploy Canopy Advantage SMs or Canopy P9 SMs beyond half the distance range of the AP. At this distance, steady and reliable 2X operation typically is not achievable. Deploy the Canopy P7 and P8 SMs here.
- Wherever practical, implement 25 MHz of channel separation for 2X operation.

### Checking Link Efficiencies in 2X Operation

Unlike in 1X operation, efficiencies below 90% on the Link Capacity Test tab in the Tools web page of the SM do not necessarily indicate a poor quality link. Efficiency of 45% in 2X operation is equivalent to efficiency of 90% in 1X. If you read efficiency between 45% and 90%, check the status of 2X operation (as described below) to confirm that the link is operating at 2X.

Since received signal strength typically varies over time, you should perform link tests at various times of day and on various days of the week. Efficiencies should consistently be 45% or greater for 2X operation. Where readings are lower, you are unlikely to solve the RF problem by enabling 1X operation. (For example, if you read 40% at 2X, you can

expect 80% at 1X.) In these cases, you may be able to achieve better efficiencies by re-aiming the SM, mounting it elsewhere, or retrofitting it with a reflector dish.

### Checking the Status of 2X Operation

The Session Status tab in the Home page of the AP provides operation status information about each *SM-to-AP* link. Under the MAC address of each SM, the data in this tab includes a line such as the following:

RATE : VC 19 Rate 2X/2X VC 255 Rate 2X/1X

Interpret this information is as follows:

- VC means virtual channel. If one VC is displayed, the high-priority channel is disabled. If two are displayed, the high-priority channel is enabled and is using the higher number VC (255 in the above example).
- 2X/2X indicates that the SM-to-AP link is in 2X operation.
- 2X/1X indicates that the SM is capable of 2X operation but the SM-to-AP link is in 1X operation. This can be for either of the following reasons:
  - The SM has not sent data on the channel yet.
  - The received signal does not support 2X operation.
- 1X/1X indicates that the SM is capable of only 1X operation. This can be for either of the following reasons:
  - The SM does not support 2X operation (SM is of the hardware series P7 or P8).
  - The **2X Rate** parameter is disabled in the General tab of the Configuration page in the SM.



#### CAUTION!

2X operation requires approximately 3 to 5% more power than 1X operation. This additional power affects the recommended maximum for power cord length feeding the CMMmicro. See [Table 54](#) on [Page 349](#). However, 2X operation *does not* affect the maximums for the CMM2.

### Disabling 2X Operation

Disabling 2X operation for an SM can be helpful for alignment, troubleshooting, or preventing frequent automatic switches between 2X and 1X, where RF conditions are only marginally favorable to 2X. The ability to disable 2X for an SM is inherent since the 2X Operation feature was introduced.

Disabling 2X operation for a sector can be helpful for identifying a baseline for 1X-to-2X comparison, broader troubleshooting activities, or forcing all SMs to 1X rather than disabling 2X in each SM. Release 8 provides a **2X Rate** parameter in the General tab of the Configuration page in the AP:

- If you click **Disable**, then **Save Changes** and **Reboot**, 2X operation is disabled for the sector, regardless of the 2X Rate setting in each SM.
- If you later click **Enable**, then **Save Changes** and **Reboot**, 2X operation is enabled in the sector for SMs with 2X Rate enabled on their Configuration>General page. SMs with 2X Rate disabled on their

Configuration>General page (or P7 or P8 SMs that don't support 2X Rate) will only operate at 1X.

## 7.2 UNDERSTANDING SYNCHRONIZATION

The system uses Time Division Duplexing (TDD) - one channel alternately transmits and receives - rather than using one channel for transmitting and a second channel for receiving. To accomplish TDD, the AP must provide sync to its SMs – it must keep them in sync. Furthermore, collocated APs must be synced together - an unsynchronized AP that transmits during the receive cycle of a collocated AP can prevent that second AP from being able to decode the signals from its SMs. In addition, across a geographical area, APs that can “hear” each other benefit from using a common sync to further reduce self-interference within the network.

### 7.2.1 GPS Synchronization

The Navigation Satellite Timing and Ranging (NAVSTAR) Global Positioning System (GPS) uses 24 satellites to relay information for precise derivation of position and time.

The Canopy Cluster Management Module (CMM) contains a Motorola Oncore GPS Receiver. The CMM is a critical element in the operation of the Canopy system. At one AP cluster site or throughout an entire wireless system, the CMM provides a GPS timing pulse to each module, synchronizing the network transmission cycles.

The Oncore GPS Receiver tracks eight or more satellites. The CMM uses the signal from at least four of these satellites to generate a one-second interval clock that has a rise time of 100 nsec. This clock directly synchronizes APs and BHMs which, in turn, synchronize the SMs and BHSs in the Canopy network.

The Oncore GPS Receiver also provides

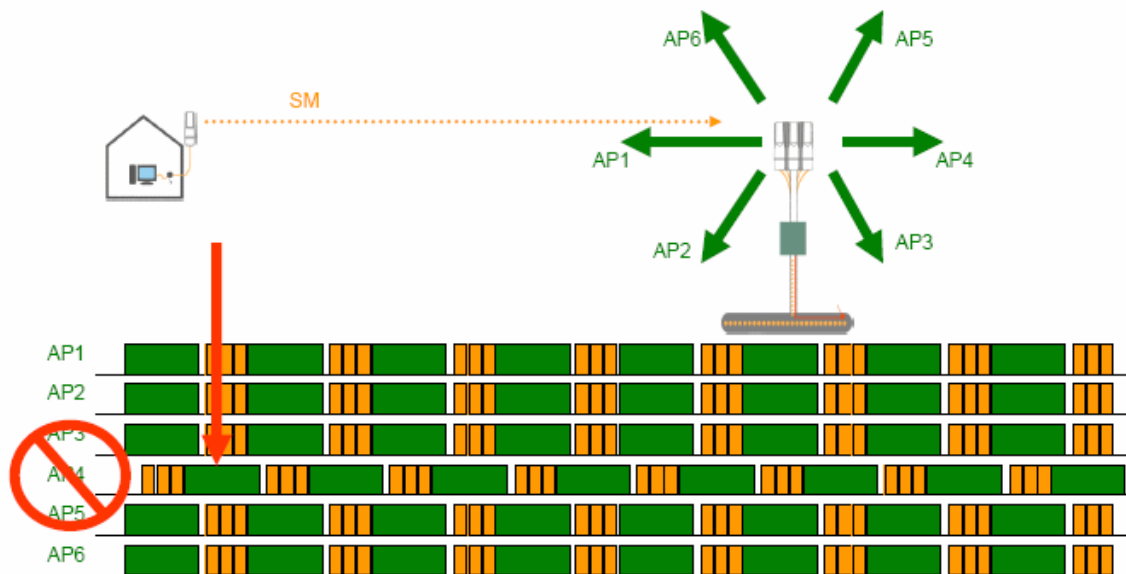
- the latitude and longitude of the GPS antenna (collocated with the CMM)
- the number of satellites that are being tracked
- the number of satellites that are available
- the date
- the time in Universal Coordinated Time (UCT)
- the altitude of the GPS antenna
- other information that can be used to diagnose network problems.

#### Alternative to GPS Sync

A Canopy link can operate without GPS sync, but cannot operate without sync. The alternative to GPS sync is to configure the AP or BHM in the link to generate a sync pulse to pass to the SM or BHS, respectively. Depending on the RF environment in which the link operates, this latter alternative may or may not be plausible.

For example, in [Figure 27](#), AP4

- is not synchronized with any of the other APs.
- is transmitting nearby the other APs while they are expecting to receive SM transmissions from a maximum distance.



**Figure 27: One unsynchronized AP in cluster**

The result is self-interference. In this scenario, the self-interference can be avoided only by synchronizing the TDD transmit cycles of all APs that operate in the same frequency band.

An AP that is isolated by at least 5 miles (8 km) from any other Canopy equipment, or a BHM in an isolated standalone BH link can generate and pass sync pulse without GPS timing and not risk that interference will result from the generated sync. In any other type of Canopy link, sync should be derived from GPS timing.



**NOTE:**

The OFDM Series BHMs generate their own sync. For more information about these modules, see the user guides that support them. Titles are listed under [Products Not Covered by This User Guide](#) on Page 34.

**Advantage of GPS Sync**

Although the embedded timing generation capability of the Canopy AP and BHM keeps a precise clock, no trigger exists to start the clock at the same moment in each AP of a cluster. So, the individual AP can synchronize communications between itself and registered SMs, but cannot synchronize itself with other Canopy modules, except by GPS timing (shown in [Figure 28](#)).

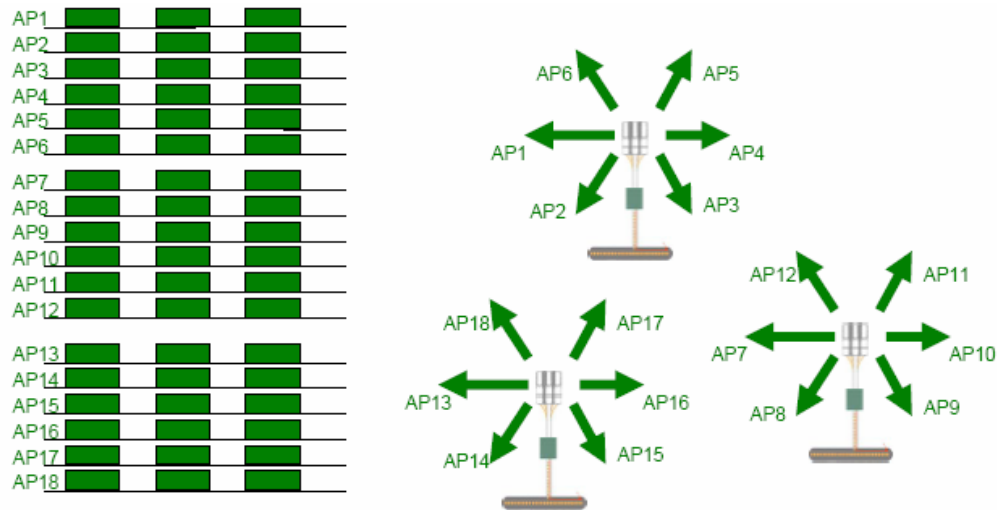


Figure 28: GPS timing throughout the Canopy network

### 7.2.2 Passing Sync in a Single Hop

Network sync can be passed in a single hop in the following network designs:

- Design 1
  1. A CMM provides sync to a collocated AP.
  2. This AP sends the sync over the air to SMs.
- Design 2
  1. A CMM provides sync to a collocated BH timing master.
  2. This BH timing master sends the sync over the air to a BH timing slave.

### 7.2.3 Passing Sync in an Additional Hop

Network sync can be extended by one additional link in any of the following network designs:

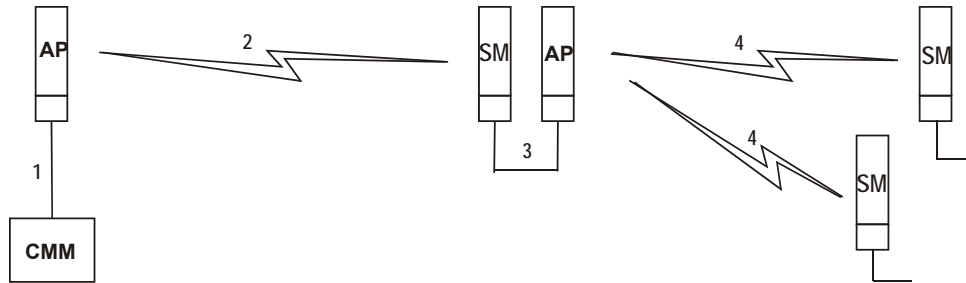


**NOTE:**

In each of these following designs, Link 2 is *not* on the same frequency band as Link 4. (For example, Link 2 may be a 5.2-GHz link while Link 4 is a 5.7- or 2.4-GHz link.)

- Design 3
  1. A CMM provides sync to a collocated AP.
  2. This AP sends the sync over the air to an SM.
  3. This SM delivers the sync to a collocated AP.
  4. This AP passes the sync in the additional link over the air to SMs.

This design is illustrated in [Figure 29](#).

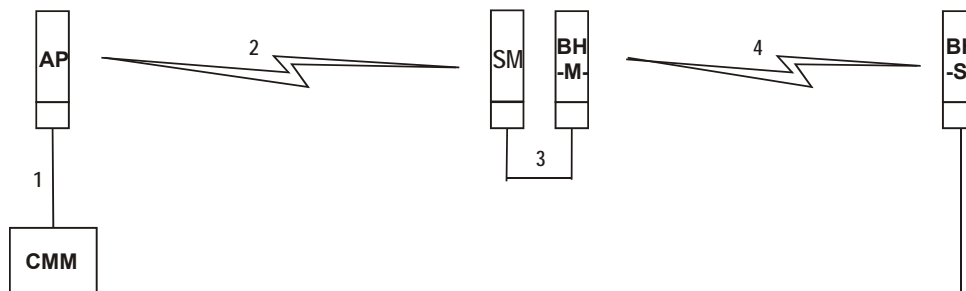


**Figure 29: Additional link to extend network sync, Design 3**

- Design 4

1. A CMM provides sync to a collocated AP.
2. This AP sends the sync over the air to an SM.
3. This SM delivers the sync to a collocated BHM.
4. This BHM passes the sync in the additional link over the air to a BHS.

This design is illustrated in [Figure 30](#).

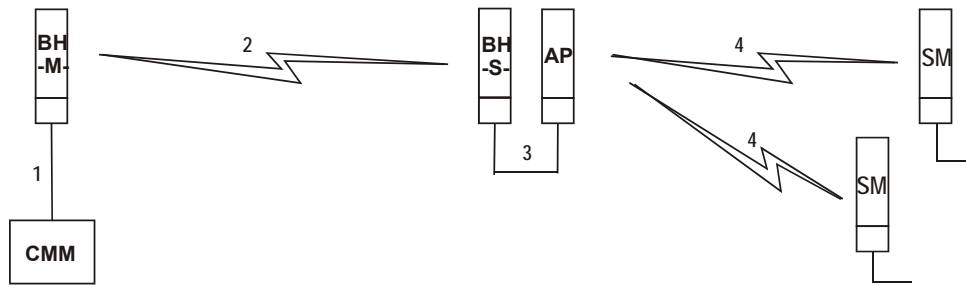


**Figure 30: Additional link to extend network sync, Design 4**

- Design 5

1. A CMM provides sync to a collocated BHM or the BHM generates timing.
2. This BHM sends the sync over the air to a BHS.
3. This BHS delivers the sync to a collocated AP.
4. This AP passes the sync in the additional link over the air to SMs.

This design is illustrated in [Figure 31](#).



**Figure 31: Additional link to extend network sync, Design 5**

Wiring and configuration information for this sync extension is described under [Wiring to Extend Network Sync](#) on Page 375.

All Canopy radios support the remote AP functionality. The BHS and the SM can reliably pass the sync pulse, and the BHM and AP can reliably receive it. The sync is passed in a cable that connects Pins 1 and 6 of the RJ-11 timing ports of the two modules. (The sync cable is described under [Cables](#) on Page 59.) When you connect modules in this way, you must also adjust configuration parameters to ensure that

- the AP is set to properly receive sync.
- the SM will not propagate sync to the AP if the SM itself ceases to receive sync.





## 8 MEETING LINK REQUIREMENTS

### 8.1 AP-SM LINKS

APs communicate with SMs using a point-to-multipoint protocol. An AP-SM link has lower throughput and higher latency than a backhaul link for two reasons:

- Many endpoints are involved.
- The bandwidth request and reservation process consumes bandwidth.

In the 900-MHz frequency band range, round-trip latency is typically

- 40 msec with software scheduling.
- 15 msec with hardware scheduling.

In all other Canopy frequency band ranges, round-trip latency is typically

- 15 msec with software scheduling.
- 6 msec with hardware scheduling.

At range settings of greater than 40 miles (64 km) in the 900-MHz AP, more time elapses between transmit and receive cycles to compensate for greater air delay. In each frame, this reduces the number of data slots, which slightly reduces the aggregate throughput of the link. However, the throughput is as predictable as in other Canopy point-to-multipoint links.

Throughput is a factor of the **Max Range** parameter in the AP and is effective for all SMs, regardless of their distance from the AP. Throughput includes all downlink data to all SMs and all uplink data from all SMs that link to the AP. For throughput with hardware scheduling, see [Table 14](#) on [Page 64](#).

End user perspective of throughput is based on both bandwidth in the sending direction and the return of TCP acknowledgement packets in the other. Where sufficient downlink bandwidth exists to support downlink traffic and overhead, transient traffic congestion in the uplink can cause some TCP acknowledgement packets to be dropped, and the end user to perceive a reduction in throughput. This can also occur with sufficient uplink bandwidth and dropping acknowledgment packets in the downlink.

However, a Canopy network operator can optionally enable the **Prioritize TCP ACK** parameter in the AP and BHM, giving these packets priority over other packet types. This results in fewer of them being dropped.

The effects of changing network conditions on PTMP throughput are indicated in [Table 27](#).

**Table 27: Effects of network conditions on PTMP throughput**

Changing Network Condition	Effect on AP Aggregate Throughput
Increasing the <b>Max Range</b> parameter setting <sup>1</sup> in the AP	somewhat decreased <sup>2</sup>
Increasing the number of SMs that register in the AP	no effect
Increase in downlink traffic	
Increase in uplink traffic	
Increasing the average bandwidth allotted to the SMs that register in the AP	no effect, even when the additional bandwidth is used.
<b>NOTES:</b> 1. For non 900-MHz APs, the AP accepts a <b>Max Range</b> value of up to 30 miles (48 km). See <a href="#">Max Range</a> on Page 246. 2. To avoid a decrease of unnecessary proportion, set to not much further than the distance between the AP and the furthest SM that registers in the AP.	

A comparison of SM products in link with a Canopy Advantage AP is shown in [Table 28](#).

**Table 28: Comparison of SM products with Canopy Advantage AP**

Product	Maximum Sustained Aggregate Throughput to a Single SM	Burst	Cap on Committed Information Rate	Upgradability	VoIP Channels Supported
Canopy Advantage SM	14 Mbps	14 Mb	none	none	multiple
Canopy SM	7 Mbps	14 Mb	none	to Advantage SM capabilities	multiple
Canopy Lite SM as purchased	512 kbps	768 kb	100 kbps	to 1, 2, 4, or 7 Mbps	1
Canopy Lite SM upgraded to 1 Mbps	1 Mbps	1.5 Mb	100 kbps	none	1
Canopy Lite SM upgraded to 2 Mbps	2 Mbps	3 Mb	100 kbps	none	1
Canopy Lite SM upgraded to 4 Mbps	4 Mbps	7 Mb	200 kbps	none	2
Canopy Lite SM upgraded to 7 Mbps	7 Mbps	7 Mb	200 kbps	none	2

## 8.2 BH-BH LINKS

Canopy BHs communicate with each other using a point-to-point protocol. This point-to-point protocol uses a 2.5-msec frame. A BH link has higher throughput and lower latency (typically 5 msec, 2.5 msec in each direction) for two reasons:

- Only two endpoints are involved.
- No bandwidth request and reservation process is involved.

For 10-Mbps BHs, the aggregate throughput on the channel is 7.5 Mbps. For 20-Mbps BHs, the aggregate throughput on the channel is 14 Mbps. If a BH is set to a downlink ratio of 50%, then the bandwidth in each direction is half of the total BH link bandwidth.

In the Canopy OFDM series of BHs

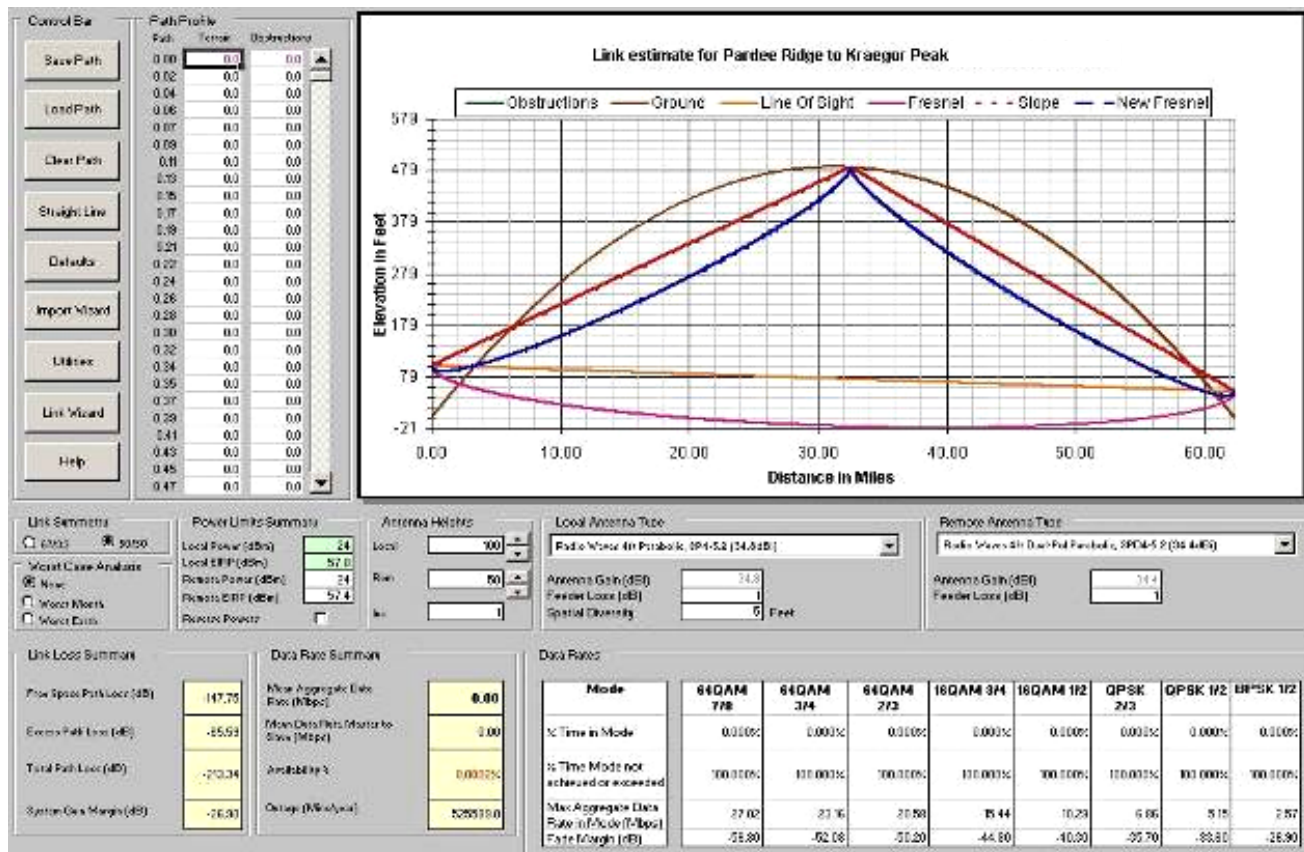
- aggregate throughput rates are dynamically variable, as listed in [Table 16](#) on [Page 66](#).
- the 150/300-Mbps BH features a TDM mode and two T1/E1 ports (one at 150 Mbps) to support telecommunications traffic (for example, to haul traffic between a cell site and its mobile switching center).
- a Link Estimator tool is available. This tool accepts input from the Path Profiler tool at <http://motorola.canopywireless.com/support/linkestimator>. The Path Profiler is a form that, when you populate and click **Send Form**, returns a text file that you can then save as a .dat file to input into the Link Estimator tool.

An example of a populated Path Profiler tool is shown in [Figure 32](#).

	Latitude (90N to 90S)	Longitude (180E to 180W)	Antenna Height (AGL)
Local:	38.2347222	-120.8044444	160
Remote:	37.9430556	-121.89000	140
Path resolution:	Number of data points <input type="button" value="Auto"/>		
Units:	Height Units: <input type="button" value="Feet"/>		Range Units:
	<input type="button" value="Miles"/>		
Link Name:	Pardee Ridge to Kraegor Peak		
Filename:	PR2KP		
Contact Name:	<input type="text"/>		
Company Name:	<input type="text"/>		
Phone:	<input type="text"/>		
Email Address:	<input type="text"/>		
<input type="button" value="Send Form"/>			

Figure 32: Canopy Path Profiler tool

An example of calculated link characteristics in the Link Estimator tool is shown in [Figure 33](#).



**Figure 33: OFDM series BH Link Estimator tool**

The Link Estimator tool is available for you to download with documentation at <http://motorola.canopywireless.com/support/software/index.php?catid=9>. Given the inputs, this tool calculates achievable throughput and link availability, expressed as a percentage.

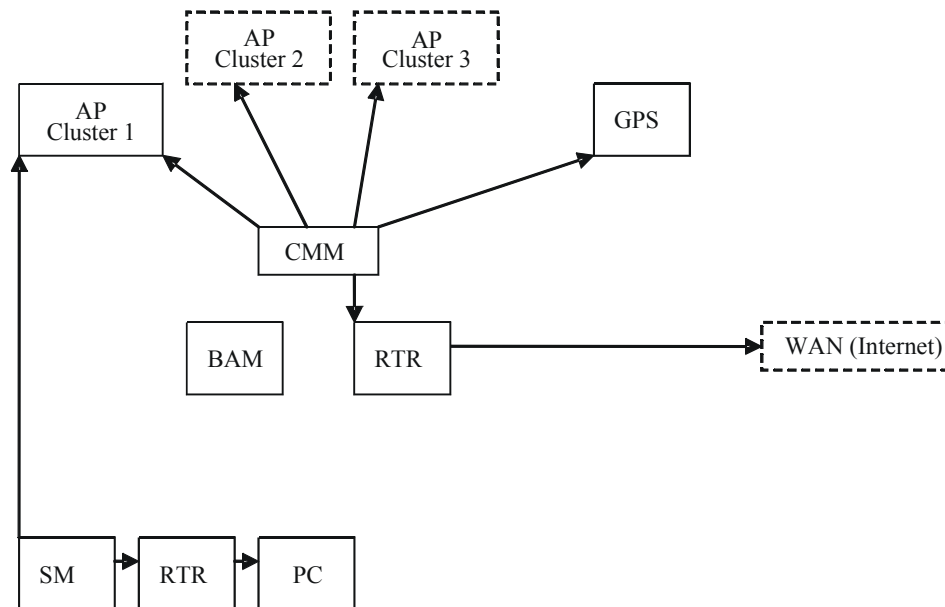
## 9 PREVIEWING NETWORK CONFIGURATIONS

The following are examples of network layouts. Customer experience case studies are also available.

### 9.1 VIEWING TYPICAL LAYOUTS

The following layouts are typical of Canopy system implementations:

- [Figure 34: Typical network layout with no BH](#)
- [Figure 35: Typical network layout with BH](#)
- [Figure 36: Typical multiple-BH network layout](#)



**Figure 34: Typical network layout with no BH**

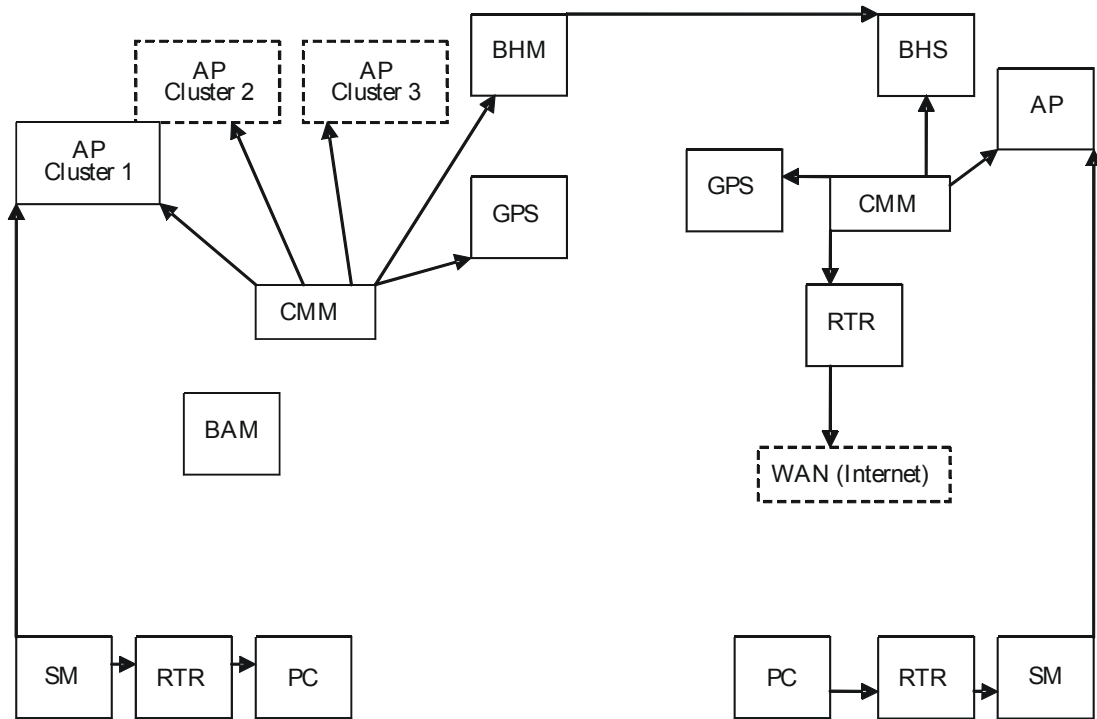


Figure 35: Typical network layout with BH

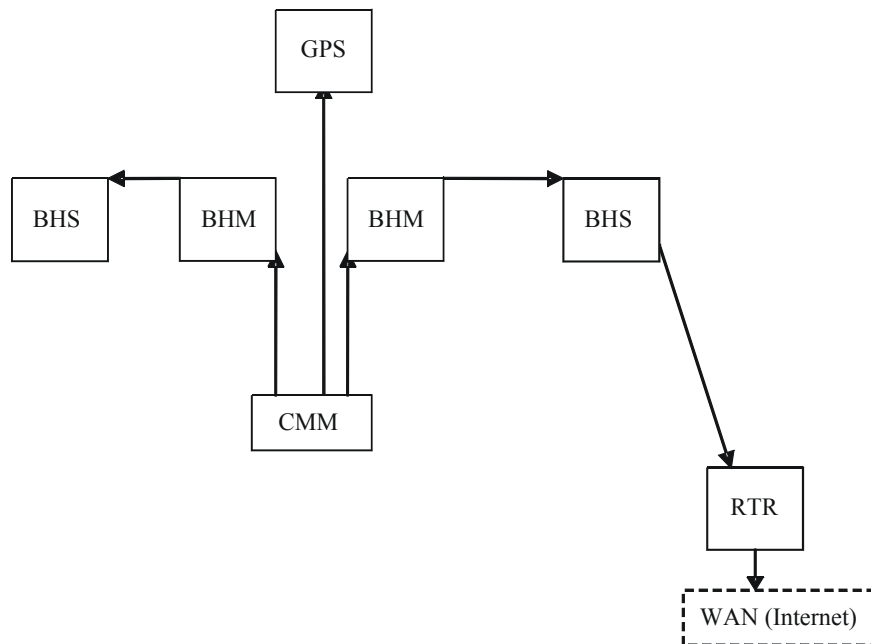


Figure 36: Typical multiple-BH network layout

## **9.2 VIEWING CASE STUDIES**

Case studies of Canopy implementations are available as “Feature Articles” for download from <http://www.connectwithcanopy.com/index.cfm?canopy=menu.case>.





## 10 ACCESSING FEATURES

Canopy Release 8 networks support the features that are indicated in [Table 29](#).

**Table 29: Canopy features**

<b>Regulatory Features</b>	<b>Module Type(s)</b>	<b>Controlled in GUI Page/Tab</b>	<b>SNMP Control</b>
RoHS compliant (EU “green” mandate)	All modules	no	no
WEEE compliant	All modules	no	no
Complies with Human RF exposure limits (ETSI)	All radios	no	no
<b>Radio Features</b>	<b>Module Type(s)</b>	<b>Controlled in GUI Page/Tab</b>	<b>SNMP Control</b>
Time Division Duplex	All radios	no	no
Scalable up to 6 sectors per cell.	AP SM	no	no
200 registered subscribers supported per AP	AP SM	no	no
Fixed /nomadic operation	All radios	no	no
20 ms or less round trip latency (OTA with Canopy MAC, under normal conditions)	All radios	no	no
Transmit frame spreading for geographical area co-existence	AP BHM	Configuration/Radio	yes
Radio statistics (scheduler)	All radios	Statistics/Scheduler	yes
2X rate, enabled per link (requires Advantage AP or 20 Mbps BH)	SM BHS	Configuration/General	yes
2X rate, enabled per sector (requires Advantage AP or 20 Mbps BH )	AP BHM	Configuration/General	yes
Manual transmit power control - normal and low (-18 dB)	All radios	Configuration/Radio	yes
Manual transmit power control, 1 dB increments over 25 dB at the AP	AP BHM	Configuration/Radio	yes

<b>RF Configuration Features</b>	<b>Module Type(s)</b>	<b>Controlled in GUI Page/Tab</b>	<b>SNMP Control</b>
Configurable center-channel carrier frequency	AP BHM	Configuration/Radio	yes
255 configurable "color codes" to manage SM to AP (or (BHS to BHM) registration	All radios	Configuration/Radio	yes
16 configurable "sector IDs" for administrative convenience	AP BHM	Configuration/Radio	yes
Configurable range settings (determines air turn-around time)	AP	Configuration/Radio	yes
Configurable downlink data % (determines transmit/receive ratio)	AP BHM	Configuration/Radio	yes
Configurable number of reserved control slots (manages contention for uplink requests)	AP	Configuration/Radio	yes
Configurable frequency scan list at SM	SM BHS	Configuration/Radio	yes
Packet stats - RF interface	All radios	Statistics/Radio	yes
<b>Timing Features</b>	<b>Module Type(s)</b>	<b>Controlled in GUI Page/Tab</b>	<b>SNMP Control</b>
Configurable AP/BHM sync source - Sync over Power over Ethernet, self-sync, or sync cable	AP BHM	Configuration/General	yes
"Remote AP" support, including timing pulse propagation through SM/BHS	SM BHS	Configuration/General	yes
<b>Ethernet Interface Features</b>	<b>Module Type(s)</b>	<b>Controlled in GUI Page/Tab</b>	<b>SNMP Control</b>
Selectable link speeds - 10/100 Base T, half, full-duplex	All modules	Configuration/General	yes
Ethernet link auto-negotiation	All modules	Configuration/General	no
Accepts straight-through or crossover Ethernet cable wiring (Auto-MDX)	All modules	no	no
Wire line Interface: Ethernet cable with proprietary PoE	All modules	no	no
Disable SM Ethernet link	SM	Configuration/General	yes
Packet stats - Ethernet interface	All radios	Statistics/Ethernet	yes

<b>IP Interface Features</b>	<b>Module Type(s)</b>	<b>Controlled in GUI Page/Tab</b>	<b>SNMP Control</b>
Configurable LAN settings (IP address, mask, gateway)	All radios	Configuration/IP	yes
Module's management IP address assignable via DHCP	All radios	Configuration/IP	yes
Private LAN to support AP to SM (or BHM to BHS) communications	All radios	Configuration/IP	yes
Configurable SM mgmt accessibility (Local/Ethernet only, or Public/RF and Local/Ethernet)	SM	Configuration/IP	yes
<b>Security Features (Authentication, Encryption, and Access Control)</b>	<b>Module Type(s)</b>	<b>Controlled in GUI Page/Tab</b>	<b>SNMP Control</b>
Configurable SM authentication using BAM/PrizmEMS	AP SM	Configuration/Security	yes
Configurable BH authentication, standalone	BHM BHS	Configuration/Security	no
DES encryption on standard product	All radios	no	yes
AES encryption on AES product	All radios	no	yes
Configurable whether SM/BHS displays AP/BHM beacon information	AP BHM	Configuration/Security	yes
Configurable web, telnet, and ftp session timeout	All radios	Configuration/Security	yes
Configurable access to radio management - up to 3 source IP addresses	All radios	Configuration/Security	yes
User/account names (up to 4) and passwords on modules	All radios	Account	yes
Permission levels control ability to add/delete users/passwords	All radios	Account	yes
Override plug to override lost IP address or user/password	All radios	no	no
Override plug configurable as a default plug - reset to factory defaults	AP SM BHM BHS	Configuration/Unit Settings	yes
Override switch to override lost IP address or user/password on CMM	CMMmicro	no	no

<b>Monitoring Features</b>	<b>Module Type(s)</b>	<b>Controlled in GUI Page/Tab</b>	<b>SNMP Control</b>
List of registered SMs/BHSs with full data, with hot links to SMs/BHSs	AP BHM	Configuration/General	multiple objects
Abbreviated list of SMs/BHSs, with hot links to SMs/BHSs	AP BHM	Configuration/General	multiple objects
Received power level indication	All radios	Configuration/General	yes
LEDs on modules to display states and activity	All modules	no	no
Received interference level indication (jitter)	All radios	Configuration/General	yes
Configurable web-page auto-refresh	All modules	Configuration/General	yes
SM registration failures	AP BHM	Statistics/Reg Failures	yes
Event log	All modules	Home/Event Log	no
Operator can use own logo on GUI pages	All modules	no	yes
Operator can use own style sheets for GUI	All modules	no	yes
<b>Bridge Management Features</b>	<b>Module Type(s)</b>	<b>Controlled in GUI Page/Tab</b>	<b>SNMP Control</b>
Configurable bridge entry timeout	All radios	Configuration/General	yes
Bridging table statistics (up to 4096 entries)	All radios	Statistics/Bridging Table	yes
Disable bridging on BHs	BHM BHS	Configuration/General	yes
<b>SM Isolation Features (preventing communication between SMs)</b>	<b>Module Type(s)</b>	<b>Controlled in GUI Page/Tab</b>	<b>SNMP Control</b>
SM isolation at AP	AP	Configuration/General	yes
SM isolation at CMM	CMMmicro	Configuration/General	yes
<b>SM Isolation Features</b>	<b>Module Type(s)</b>	<b>Controlled in GUI Page/Tab</b>	<b>SNMP Control</b>
Translation bridging (replace customer MAC with SM MAC address)	AP	Configuration/General	yes
With Translation bridging, choice of sending untranslated ARP	AP	Configuration/General	yes
Translation table statistics	All radios	Statistics/Translation Table	yes
<b>Quick Start Feature</b>	<b>Module Type(s)</b>	<b>Controlled in GUI Page/Tab</b>	<b>SNMP Control</b>
AP configuration quick-start wizard	AP BHM	Quick Start	

<b>Bandwidth Management Features</b>	<b>Module Type(s)</b>	<b>Controlled in GUI Page/Tab</b>	<b>SNMP Control</b>
AP Maximum Information Rate (MIR) default settings	AP	Configuration/QoS	yes
Per SM Maximum Information Rate (MIR)	SM	Configuration/QoS	yes
Per SM Committed Information Rate (CIR) for high and low channels	SM	Configuration/QoS	yes
"Configuration Source" for MIR/CIR/HP/VLAN can be either SM or BAM/Prizm	AP	Configuration/General	yes
CIR for low priority channel on BH	BHS	Configuration/QoS	yes
Configurable priority for TCP Acks, to optimize bandwidth use	AP BHM	Configuration/General	yes
<b>Bandwidth Management Features</b>	<b>Module Type(s)</b>	<b>Controlled in GUI Page/Tab</b>	<b>SNMP Control</b>
Configurable High Priority channel with configurable DiffServ mappings on AP, SM (2 classes of service)	AP SM	Configuration/DiffServe	yes
Permanent BH High Priority Channel with configurable DiffServ mappings on BH (2 classes of service)	BHM BHS	Configuration/DiffServe	yes
Virtual channel (high/low priority) statistics	All radios	Statistics/Data VC	yes
<b>Network Address Translation (NAT) Features</b>	<b>Module Type(s)</b>	<b>Controlled in GUI Page/Tab</b>	<b>SNMP Control</b>
NAT	SM	Configuration/NAT	yes
NAT DMZ	SM	Configuration/NAT	yes
NAT DHCP server on LAN with up to 254 IP addresses in pool	SM	Configuration/NAT	yes
NAT DHCP client on WAN (obtains NAT address from a DHCP server)	SM	Configuration/NAT	yes
NAT port mapping	SM	Configuration/NAT	yes
VPN "pass through" for L2TP over IPSec (but not PPTP)		no	no
NAT statistics	SM	Statistics/NAT Stats	yes
NAT DHCP statistics	SM	Statistics/NAT DHCP Statistics	yes
NAT table	SM	Logs/NAT Table	no
<b>Filtering Features</b>	<b>Module Type(s)</b>	<b>Controlled in GUI Page/Tab</b>	<b>SNMP Control</b>
Protocol filtering based on protocol	SM	Configuration/Protocol Filtering	yes
Operator-defined port filtering (3 ports)	SM	Configuration/Protocol Filtering	yes
Packet filter statistics	All radios	Statistics/Filter	yes

<b>VLAN Management Features</b>	<b>Module Type(s)</b>	<b>Controlled in GUI Page/Tab</b>	<b>SNMP Control</b>
Configurable VLAN	AP SM CMMmicro	Configuration/VLAN	yes
Highly configurable VLAN (802.1Q)	AP SM	Configuration/VLAN	yes
Use of VLAN priorities (802.1p) with high priority channel	AP SM	no	yes
Port-based VLAN switching on CMM	CMMmicro	Configuration	yes
VLAN statistics	AP SM	Statistics/VLAN	yes
<b>Dynamic Frequency Selection (DFS) Feature</b>	<b>Module Type(s)</b>	<b>Controlled in GUI Page/Tab</b>	<b>SNMP Control</b>
DFS v1.2.3	All radios	no	yes
<b>Time Features</b>	<b>Module Type(s)</b>	<b>Controlled in GUI Page/Tab</b>	<b>SNMP Control</b>
Time and Date from CMM via Network Time Protocol (NTP) server	AP BHM	Configuration/Time	yes
Time and Date manually settable	AP BHM	Configuration/Time	yes
CMM provides NTP server	CMMmicro	no	no
<b>Spectrum Analyzer Features</b>	<b>Module Type(s)</b>	<b>Controlled in GUI Page/Tab</b>	<b>SNMP Control</b>
Spectrum analyzer	SM BHS	Tools/Spectrum Analyzer	no
Ability to switch an AP to an SM (or BHS to BHM)	AP BHM	Configuration/General	yes
<b>Aim/Link Quality Features</b>	<b>Module Type(s)</b>	<b>Controlled in GUI Page/Tab</b>	<b>SNMP Control</b>
Alignment tone for using during aiming/alignment	SM BHS	no	no
Aiming support page when not using alignment tone	SM BHS	Tools/Alignment	multiple objects
LED for alignment	SM BHS	no	no
Configure SM power-up state - aiming or operational	SM BHS	Configuration/General	yes
Link capacity test, with configurable packet length	All radios	Tools/Link Capacity Test	yes
Display of SM configuration information at AP	AP BHM	Home/Session Status	yes
Display/evaluation of AP beacon data from all receivable APs	SM BHS	Tools/AP Evaluation	yes
Over-the-air radio Bit Error Rate (BER) indicator	All radios	Tools/BER Results	yes

<b>Frame Tool Feature</b>	<b>Module Type(s)</b>	<b>Controlled in GUI Page/Tab</b>	<b>SNMP Control</b>
Frame calculator for supporting collocation	All radios	Tools/Frame Calculator	no
<b>Personal Digital Assistant (PDA) Interface Features</b>	<b>Module Type(s)</b>	<b>Controlled in GUI Page/Tab</b>	<b>SNMP Control</b>
GUI automatically sized/styled for PDA when displayed on a PDA	All radios	all	no
Spectrum analyzer display for PDA	All radios	PDA/Spectrum Results (PDA)	no
Specific pages for PDA display	All radios	PDA	no
<b>SNMP Interface Features</b>	<b>Module Type(s)</b>	<b>Controlled in GUI Page/Tab</b>	<b>SNMP Control</b>
Support of SNMP v2	All modules	no	no
Canopy Enterprise MIB	All modules	no	no
Configurable SNMP community string	All radios	Configuration/SNMP	yes
Configurable SNMP accessing subnet	All radios	Configuration/SNMP	yes
10 configurable SNMP trap addresses	All radios	Configuration/SNMP	yes
Configurable traps (sync and session)	All radios	Configuration/SNMP	yes
Configurable SNMP permissions (read, read/write)	All radios	Configuration/SNMP	yes
Configurable site information, including site name	All modules	Configuration/SNMP	yes
<b>Upgrade Process Features</b>	<b>Module Type(s)</b>	<b>Controlled in GUI Page/Tab</b>	<b>SNMP Control</b>
Upgrading using CNUT and SM Auto-update for SMs	All modules	no	no
Configurable update address to support distributed software upgrades	AP	Configuration/General	yes
<b>AP Cluster Management Features</b>	<b>Module Type(s)</b>	<b>Controlled in GUI Page/Tab</b>	<b>SNMP Control</b>
CMM port power control	CMMmicro	Configuration	yes
CMM port reset	CMMmicro	Configuration	yes
CMM: Sufficient ports for at least 4 AP, 2 BH, plus management	CMMmicro	no	no
CMM: Sufficient power for at least 4 AP plus 2 BH	CMMmicro	no	no
Powered from 90-264 VAC, 50/60 Hz; 55 V DC power output	AP BH	no	no

Physical Features	Module Type(s)	Controlled in GUI Page/Tab	SNMP Control
MTBF > 45 years (~400 000 hours)	All modules	no	no
neg 40 C to + 55 C (Ambient) operation	All modules	no	no
Temperature indication	All radios	Home/General	no
Non-condensing (Indoor/outdoor), weather protected form factor/packaging	All modules	no	no
<b>Element Management System (Prizm) Features</b>			
Current Prizm to manage all elements of the system (including Mot Backhaul)			
Up to 1000 APs, plus 100 devices/AP); minimal storage / minimal polling			
Redundant configuration for additional storage/reporting capability			
Commercial Off the Shelf (COTS) Platform and OS support (e.g. Intel, Linux, Windows)			
COTS Database support (e.g. MySQL, PostgreSQL, MS SQL Server, etc..); Oracle optional			

## 10.1 ACTIVATING FEATURES

A Canopy feature is active if the software that allows the feature to be turned on or off (enabled or disabled) is present.

### 10.1.1 Fixed License Keys

Some features are activated by loading a fixed license key into the radio. Such a key arrives from Motorola as a *filename.url* file. When you double-click on this file, your browser opens and the location bar is populated by a lengthy string. This URL string begins with `http://<ModuleIPAddress>/`. If you need to load a key into a module whose IP address has changed since Motorola issued the key, perform the following steps.

#### Procedure 1: Modifying a fixed license key for a module IP address

1. Right-click on the license key filename.
2. Select **Properties**.
3. Select the **Web Document** tab.
4. At **URL**, substitute the current IP address for the original IP address in the URL.
5. Click **OK**.
6. Double-click on the license key filename.  
*RESULT:* The key loads into the module.



7. Open the Configuration web page of the module.
8. Review parameter settings and enable the feature if you wish to do so at this time (see next section).

===== end of procedure =====

## 10.2 ENABLING FEATURES

A Canopy feature is enabled (functioning) if the feature is both active and enabled. For example, Transmit Frame Spreading is active (*can be* enabled) in any AP or BHM that operates on Release 8. However, Transmit Frame Spreading functions only if the **Enable** selection for the **Transmit Frame Spreading** parameter is checked in the Radio tab of the Configuration web page in the module.



## 11 ACQUIRING PROFICIENCIES

Designing and operating a Canopy network requires fundamental knowledge of radio frequency transmission and reception, Internet Protocol addressing schemes, experimentation with Canopy equipment, and for most operators participation in some forms of Canopy training.

### 11.1 UNDERSTANDING RF FUNDAMENTALS

Canopy training and user interfaces presume an understanding of RF fundamentals. Excellent written sources for these fundamentals are available. One such source is *Deploying License-Free Wireless Wide-Area Networks* by Jack Unger (ISBN 1-58705-069-2), published by Cisco Press.

### 11.2 UNDERSTANDING IP FUNDAMENTALS

Canopy training and user interfaces also presume an understanding of Internet Protocol (IP) fundamentals. Excellent written sources for these fundamentals are available. One such source is *Sams Teach Yourself TCP/IP in 24 Hours* by Joe Casad (ISBN 0-672-32085-1), published by Sams Publishing.



**NOTE:**

The default IP address of each Canopy component is 169.254.1.1.

### 11.3 ACQUIRING A CANOPY DEMONSTRATION KIT

Canopy Demonstration Kits are available through your Canopy representative.

#### 11.3.1 900-MHz with Integrated Antenna and Band-pass Filter Demonstration Kit

Each 900-MHz with integrated antenna and band-pass filter Demonstration Kit contains

- 2 9000SM SMs
- 1 9000APF AP
- 1 300SS Surge Suppressor
- 3 ACPSSW-02 90- to 230-V AC 50- to 60-Hz Power Supplies
- 3 CBL-0562 Straight-through Category 5 Cables
- 1 UGTK-0002 Trial Kit Quick Start Guide
- 1 CPT001-CD02EN Sales Overview on CD
- 1 CPT002-CD03EN Technical Overview on CD
- 1 CPT003-CD03EN Canopy User Guides on CD

Part numbers for Demonstration Kits are provided in [Table 30](#).

### 11.3.2 900-MHz with Connectorized Antenna Demonstration Kit

Each 900-MHz with connectorized (external) antenna Demonstration Kit contains

- 2 9000SMC SMs
- 1 9000APC AP
- 3 AN900 60° 9-dBi Antennas
- 1 300SS Surge Suppressor
- 1 SMMB2 Universal Heavy Duty Mounting Bracket
- 3 ACPSSW-02 90- to 230-V AC 50- to 60-Hz Power Supplies
- 3 CBL-0562 Straight-through Category 5 Cables
- 1 UGTK-0002 Trial Kit Quick Start Guide
- 1 CPT001-CD02EN Sales Overview on CD
- 1 CPT002-CD03EN Technical Overview on CD
- 1 CPT003-CD03EN Canopy User Guides on CD

Part numbers for Demonstration Kits are provided in [Table 30](#).

### 11.3.3 2.4-GHz with Adjustable Power Set to Low Demonstration Kit

Each 2.4-GHz with adjustable power set to low Demonstration Kit contains

- 1 2400SMWL SM
- 1 2450SMWL Advantage SM
- 1 2450APWL Advantage AP
- 1 300SS Surge Suppressor
- 1 SMMB1 Universal Mounting Bracket
- 3 ACPSSW-02 90- to 230-V AC 50- to 60-Hz Power Supplies
- 3 CBL-0562 Straight-through Category 5 Cables
- 1 UGTK-0002 Trial Kit Quick Start Guide
- 1 CPT001-CD02EN Sales Overview on CD
- 1 CPT002-CD03EN Technical Overview on CD
- 1 CPT003-CD03EN Canopy User Guides on CD

Part numbers for Demonstration Kits are provided in [Table 30](#).

### 11.3.4 2.4-GHz with Adjustable Power Set to High Demonstration Kit

Each 2.4-GHz with adjustable power set to high Demonstration Kit contains

- 1 2400SM SM
- 1 2450SM Advantage SM
- 1 2450AP Advantage AP
- 1 300SS Surge Suppressor
- 1 SMMB1 Universal Mounting Bracket
- 3 ACPSSW-02 90- to 230-V AC 50- to 60-Hz Power Supplies
- 3 CBL-0562 Straight-through Category 5 Cables
- 1 UGTK-0002 Trial Kit Quick Start Guide
- 1 CPT001-CD02EN Sales Overview on CD

- 1 CPT002-CD03EN Technical Overview on CD
- 1 CPT003-CD03EN Canopy User Guides on CD

Part numbers for Demonstration Kits are provided in [Table 30](#).

#### **11.3.5 5.1-GHz Demonstration Kit**

Each 5.1-GHz Demonstration Kit contains

- 1 5202SM SM
- 1 5252SM Advantage SM
- 1 5252AP Advantage AP
- 1 300SS Surge Suppressor
- 1 SMMB1 Universal Mounting Bracket
- 3 ACPSSW-02 90- to 230-V AC 50- to 60-Hz Power Supplies
- 3 CBL-0562 Straight-through Category 5 Cables
- 1 UGTK-0002 Trial Kit Quick Start Guide
- 1 CPT001-CD02EN Sales Overview on CD
- 1 CPT002-CD03EN Technical Overview on CD
- 1 CPT003-CD03EN Canopy User Guides on CD

Part numbers for Demonstration Kits are provided in [Table 30](#).

#### **11.3.6 5.2-GHz Demonstration Kit**

Each 5.2-GHz Demonstration Kit contains

- 1 5200SM SM
- 1 5250SM Advantage SM
- 1 5250AP Advantage AP
- 1 300SS Surge Suppressor
- 1 SMMB1 Universal Mounting Bracket
- 3 ACPSSW-02 90- to 230-V AC 50- to 60-Hz Power Supplies
- 3 CBL-0562 Straight-through Category 5 Cables
- 1 UGTK-0002 Trial Kit Quick Start Guide
- 1 CPT001-CD02EN Sales Overview on CD
- 1 CPT002-CD03EN Technical Overview on CD
- 1 CPT003-CD03EN Canopy User Guides on CD

Part numbers for Demonstration Kits are provided in [Table 30](#).

#### **11.3.7 5.4-GHz Demonstration Kit**

Each 5.4-GHz Demonstration Kit contains

- 1 5400SM SM
- 1 5450SM Advantage SM
- 1 5450AP Advantage AP
- 1 300SS Surge Suppressor

- 1 SMMB1 Universal Mounting Bracket
- 3 ACPSSW-02 90- to 230-V AC 50- to 60-Hz Power Supplies
- 3 CBL-0562 Straight-through Category 5 Cables
- 1 UGTK-0002 Trial Kit Quick Start Guide
- 1 CPT001-CD02EN Sales Overview on CD
- 1 CPT002-CD03EN Technical Overview on CD
- 1 CPT003-CD03EN Canopy User Guides on CD

Part numbers for Demonstration Kits are provided in [Table 30](#).

### **11.3.8 5.7-GHz with Integrated Antenna Demonstration Kit**

Each 5.7-GHz with integrated antenna Demonstration Kit contains

- 1 5700SM SM
- 1 5750SM Advantage SM
- 1 5750AP Advantage AP
- 1 300SS Surge Suppressor
- 1 SMMB1 Universal Mounting Bracket
- 3 ACPSSW-02 90- to 230-V AC 50- to 60-Hz Power Supplies
- 3 CBL-0562 Straight-through Category 5 Cables
- 1 UGTK-0002 Trial Kit Quick Start Guide
- 1 CPT001-CD02EN Sales Overview on CD
- 1 CPT002-CD03EN Technical Overview on CD
- 1 CPT003-CD03EN Canopy User Guides on CD

Part numbers for Demonstration Kits are provided in [Table 30](#).

### **11.3.9 5.7-GHz with Connectorized Antenna and Adjustable Power Set to Low**

Each 5.7-GHz with connectorized antenna and adjustable power set to low Demonstration Kit contains

- 1 5700SMC SM
- 1 5750SMC Advantage SM
- 1 5750APC Advantage AP
- 1 300SS Surge Suppressor
- 1 SMMB2 Universal Heavy Duty Mounting Bracket
- 3 ACPSSW-02 90- to 230-V AC 50- to 60-Hz Power Supplies
- 3 CBL-0562 Straight-through Category 5 Cables
- 1 UGTK-0002 Trial Kit Quick Start Guide
- 1 CPT001-CD02EN Sales Overview on CD
- 1 CPT002-CD03EN Technical Overview on CD
- 1 CPT003-CD03EN Canopy User Guides on CD

Part numbers for Demonstration Kits are provided in [Table 30](#).

### **11.3.10 Demonstration Kit Part Numbers**

The part numbers for ordering Canopy demonstration kits are provided in [Table 30](#).

**Table 30: Demonstration Kit part numbers**

<b>Frequency Band Range</b>	<b>Part Number</b>
900 MHz integrated antenna with band-pass filter	TK10290
900 MHz connectorized antenna	TK10290C
2.4 GHz adjustable power set to low	TK10250
2.4 GHz adjustable power set to high	TK10251
5.1 GHz	TK10253
5.2 GHz	TK10252
5.4 GHz	TK10254
5.7 GHz	TK10257
5.7 GHz connectorized adjustable power set to low	TK10257C

## 11.4 ACQUIRING A CANOPY STARTER KIT

Canopy Starter Kits are also available through your Canopy representative.

### 11.4.1 900-MHz with Integrated Antenna and Band-pass Filter Starter Kit

Each 900-MHz with integrated antenna and band-pass filters Starter Kit contains

- 20 9000SM SMs
- 3 9000APF Advantage APs
- 1 1070CK CMMmicro
- 21 300SS Surge Suppressors
- 1 UGSK-0003 Quick Start Guide
- 1 CPT003-CD03EN Canopy User Guides on CD

Power supplies and SM mounting brackets *are not* included in this kit. Part numbers for Starter Kits are provided in [Table 31](#).

#### 11.4.2 900-MHz with Connectorized Antenna Starter Kit

Each 900-MHz with connectorized (external) antenna Starter Kit contains

- 20 9000SMC SMs
- 3 9000APC Advantage APs
- 23 AN900 60° 9-dBi Antennas
- 1 1070CK CMMmicro
- 21 300SS Surge Suppressors
- 20 SMMB2 Universal Heavy Duty Mounting Brackets
- 1 UGSK-0003 Quick Start Guide
- 1 CPT003-CD03EN Canopy User Guides on CD

Power supplies *are not* included in this kit. Part numbers for Starter Kits are provided in [Table 31](#).

#### 11.4.3 2.4-GHz with Adjustable Power Set to Low Starter Kit

Each 2.4-GHz with adjustable power set to low Starter Kit contains

- 30 2400SMWL SMs
- 6 2450APWL Advantage APs
- 1 1070CK CMMmicro
- 31 300SS Surge Suppressors
- 30 SMMB1 Universal Mounting Brackets
- 1 UGSK-0003 Quick Start Guide
- 1 CPT003-CD03EN Canopy User Guides on CD

Power supplies *are not* included in this kit. Part numbers for Starter Kits are provided in [Table 31](#).

#### 11.4.4 2.4-GHz with Adjustable Power Set to High Starter Kit

Each 2.4-GHz adjustable power set to high Starter Kit contains

- 30 2400SM SMs
- 6 2450AP Advantage APs
- 1 1070CK CMMmicro
- 31 300SS Surge Suppressors
- 30 SMMB1 Universal Mounting Brackets
- 1 UGSK-0003 Quick Start Guide
- 1 CPT003-CD03EN Canopy User Guides on CD

Power supplies *are not* included in this kit. Part numbers for Starter Kits are provided in [Table 31](#).



#### 11.4.5 5.1-GHz Starter Kit

Each 5.1-GHz adjustable power set to high Starter Kit contains

- 30 5202SM SMs
- 6 5252AP Advantage APs
- 1 1070CK CMMmicro
- 31 300SS Surge Suppressors
- 30 SMMB1 Universal Mounting Brackets
- 1 UGSK-0003 Quick Start Guide
- 1 CPT003-CD03EN Canopy User Guides on CD

Power supplies *are not* included in this kit. Part numbers for Starter Kits are provided in [Table 31](#).

#### 11.4.6 5.2-GHz Starter Kit

Each 5.2-GHz Starter Kit contains

- 30 5200SM SMs
- 6 5250AP Advantage APs
- 1 1070CK CMMmicro
- 31 300SS Surge Suppressors
- 30 SMMB1 Universal Mounting Brackets
- 1 UGSK-0003 Quick Start Guide
- 1 CPT003-CD03EN Canopy User Guides on CD

Power supplies *are not* included in this kit. Part numbers for Starter Kits are provided in [Table 31](#).

#### 11.4.7 5.4-GHz Starter Kit

Each 5.4-GHz Starter Kit contains

- 30 5400SM SMs
- 6 5450AP Advantage APs
- 1 1070CK CMMmicro
- 31 300SS Surge Suppressors
- 30 SMMB1 Universal Mounting Brackets
- 1 UGSK-0003 Quick Start Guide
- 1 CPT003-CD02EN Canopy System User Guide on CD

Power supplies *are not* included in this kit. Part numbers for Starter Kits are provided in [Table 31](#).

#### 11.4.8 5.7-GHz with Integrated Antenna Starter Kit

Each 5.7-GHz with integrated antenna Starter Kit contains

- 30 5700SM SMs
- 6 5750AP Advantage APs
- 1 1070CK CMMmicro
- 31 300SS Surge Suppressors
- 30 SMMB1 Universal Mounting Brackets
- 1 UGSK-0003 Quick Start Guide
- 1 CPT003-CD03EN Canopy User Guides on CD

Power supplies *are not* included in this kit. Part numbers for Starter Kits are provided in [Table 31](#).

#### 11.4.9 5.7-GHz with Connectorized Antenna and Adjustable Power Set to Low

Each 5.7-GHz with connectorized antenna and adjustable power set to low Starter Kit contains

- 30 5700SMC SMs
- 6 5750APC Advantage APs
- 1 1070CK CMMmicro
- 31 300SS Surge Suppressors
- 30 SMMB1 Universal Mounting Brackets
- 1 UGSK-0003 Quick Start Guide
- 1 CPT003-CD03EN Canopy User Guides on CD

Power supplies *are not* included in this kit. Part numbers for Starter Kits are provided in [Table 31](#).

#### 11.4.10 Starter Kit Part Numbers

The part numbers for ordering Canopy Starter kits are provided in [Table 31](#).

**Table 31: Starter Kit part numbers**

Frequency Band Range	Part Number
900 MHz integrated antenna with band-pass filter	TK10190
900 MHz connectorized	TK10190C
2.4 GHz adjustable power set to low	TK10150
2.4 GHz adjustable power set to high	TK10151
5.1 GHz	TK10153
5.2 GHz	TK10152
5.4 GHz	TK10154

Frequency Band Range	Part Number
5.7 GHz	TK10157
5.7 GHz connectorized adjustable power set to low	TK10157C

## 11.5 EVALUATING CANOPY TRAINING OPTIONS

Canopy and its distributors make technical training available to customers. For information on this training, either

- send email inquiries to [training@canopywireless.com](mailto:training@canopywireless.com).
- visit <http://www.motorola.com/canopy>. Under Contact Us, select **Request Product Info**, select **Product Info**, then under Support, select **Training**.

## 11.6 ATTENDING ON-LINE KNOWLEDGE SESSIONS

Irregularly but often, Canopy presents a knowledge session over the Internet about a new product offering. Some of these knowledge sessions provide the opportunity for participants to interact in real time with the leader of the session.

The knowledge session

- provides a high-level understanding of the technology that the new product introduces.
- announces any subtleties and caveats.
- typically includes a demonstration of the product.
- is usually recorded for later viewing by those who could not attend in real time.

To participate in upcoming knowledge sessions, ask your Canopy representative to ensure that you receive email notifications.



# PLANNING GUIDE



## 12 ENGINEERING YOUR RF COMMUNICATIONS

Before diagramming network layouts, the wise course is to

- anticipate the correct amount of signal loss for your fade margin calculation (as defined below).
- recognize all permanent and transient RF signals in the environment.
- identify obstructions to line of sight reception.

### 12.1 ANTICIPATING RF SIGNAL LOSS

The C/I (Carrier-to-Interference) ratio defines the strength of the intended signal relative to the collective strength of all other signals. Canopy modules typically do not require a C/I ratio greater than

- 3 dB or less at 10-Mbps modulation and -65 dBm for 1X operation. The C/I ratio that you achieve must be even greater as the received power approaches the nominal sensitivity (-85 dBm for 1X operation).
- 10 dB or less at 10-Mbps modulation and -65 dBm for 2X operation. The C/I ratio that you achieve must be even greater as the received power approaches the nominal sensitivity (-79 dBm for 2X operation).
- 10 dB or less at 20-Mbps modulation.

#### 12.1.1 Understanding Attenuation

An RF signal in space is attenuated by atmospheric and other effects as a function of the distance from the initial transmission point. The further a reception point is placed from the transmission point, the weaker is the received RF signal.

#### 12.1.2 Calculating Free Space Path Loss

The attenuation that distance imposes on a signal is the free space path loss. [PathLossCalcPage.xls](#) calculates free space path loss.

#### 12.1.3 Calculating Rx Signal Level

The Rx sensitivity of each module is provided at [http://motorola.canopywireless.com/prod\\_specs.php](http://motorola.canopywireless.com/prod_specs.php). The determinants in Rx signal level are illustrated in Figure 37.

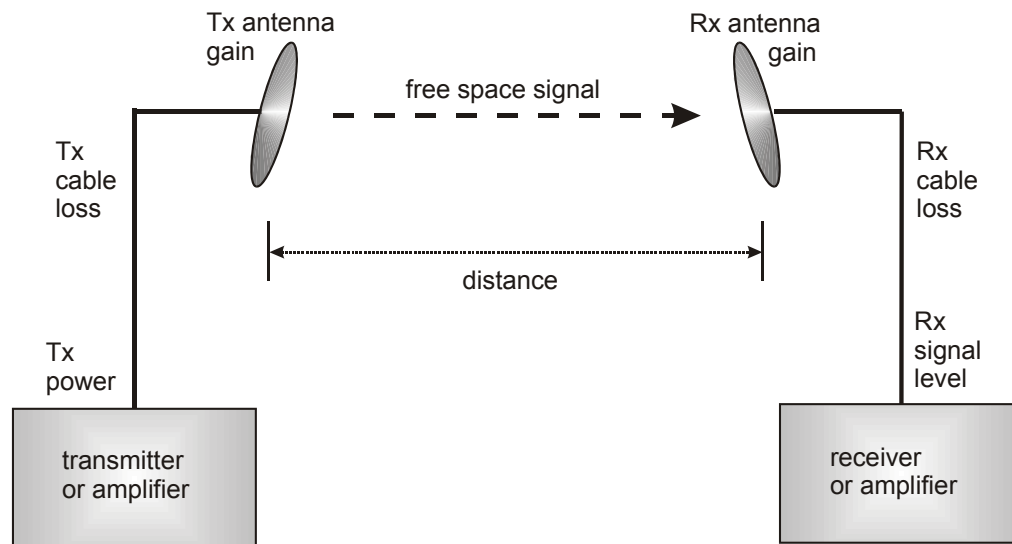


Figure 37: Determinants in Rx signal level

Rx signal level is calculated as follows:

$$\text{Rx signal level dB} = \text{Tx power} - \text{Tx cable loss} + \text{Tx antenna gain} \\ - \text{free space path loss} + \text{Rx antenna gain} - \text{Rx cable loss}$$

**NOTE:**

This Rx signal level calculation presumes that a clear line of sight is established between the transmitter and receiver and that no objects encroach in the Fresnel zone.

#### 12.1.4 Calculating Fade Margin

Free space path loss is a major determinant in Rx (received) signal level. Rx signal level, in turn, is a major factor in the system operating margin (fade margin), which is calculated as follows:

$$\text{system operating margin (fade margin) dB} = \text{Rx signal level dB} - \text{Rx sensitivity dB}$$

Thus, fade margin is the difference between strength of the received signal and the strength that the receiver requires for maintaining a reliable link. A higher fade margin is characteristic of a more reliable link.



## 12.2 ANALYZING THE RF ENVIRONMENT

An essential element in RF network planning is the analysis of spectrum usage and the strength of the signals that occupy the spectrum you are planning to use. Regardless of how you measure and log or chart the results you find (through the Spectrum Analyzer in SM and BHS feature or by using a spectrum analyzer), you should do so

- at various times of day.
- on various days of the week.
- periodically into the future.

As new RF neighbors move in or consumer devices in your spectrum proliferate, this will keep you aware of the dynamic possibilities for interference with your network.

### 12.2.1 Mapping RF Neighbor Frequencies

Canopy modules allow you to

- use an SM or BHS (or a BHM reset to a BHS), or an AP that is temporarily transformed into an SM, as a spectrum analyzer.
- view a graphical display that shows power level in RSSI and dBm at 5-MHz increments throughout the frequency band range, regardless of limited selections in the **Custom Radio Frequency Scan Selection List** parameter of the SM.
- select an AP channel that minimizes interference from other RF equipment.

The SM measures only the spectrum of its manufacture. So if, for example, you wish to analyze an area for both 2.4- and 5.7-GHz activity, take both a 2.4- and 5.7-GHz SM to the area. To enable this functionality, perform the following steps:



#### **CAUTION!**

The following procedure causes the SM to drop any active RF link. If a link is dropped when the spectrum analysis begins, the link can be re-established when either a 15-minute interval has elapsed or the spectrum analyzer feature is disabled.

#### **Procedure 2: Analyzing the spectrum**

1. Predetermine a power source and interface that will work for the SM or BHS in the area you want to analyze.
2. Take the SM or BHS, power source, and interface device to the area.
3. Access the Tools web page of the SM or BHS.  
*RESULT:* The Tools page opens to its Spectrum Analyzer tab. An example of this tab is shown in [Figure 143](#).
4. Click **Enable**.  
*RESULT:* The feature is enabled.

5. Click **Enable** again.  
*RESULT:* The system measures RSSI and dBm for each frequency in the spectrum.
6. Travel to another location in the area.
7. Click **Enable** again.  
*RESULT:* The system provides a new measurement of RSSI and dBm for each frequency in the spectrum.  
*NOTE:* Spectrum analysis mode times out 15 minutes after the mode was invoked.
8. Repeat Steps 6 and 7 until the area has been adequately scanned and logged.

===== **end of procedure** =====

As with any other data that pertains to your business, a decision today to put the data into a retrievable database may grow in value to you over time.



**RECOMMENDATION:**

Wherever you find the measured noise level is greater than the sensitivity of the radio that you plan to deploy, use the noise level (rather than the link budget) for your link feasibility calculations.

### 12.2.2 Anticipating Reflection of Radio Waves

In the signal path, any object that is larger than the wavelength of the signal can reflect the signal. Such an object can even be the surface of the earth or of a river, bay, or lake. The wavelength of the signal is approximately

- 2 inches for 5.2- and 5.7-GHz signals.
- 5 inches for 2.4-GHz signals.
- 12 inches for 900-MHz signals.

A reflected signal can arrive at the antenna of the receiver later than the non-reflected signal arrives. These two or more signals cause the condition known as multipath. When multipath occurs, the reflected signal cancels part of the effect of the non-reflected signal so, overall, attenuation beyond that caused by link distance occurs. This is problematic at the margin of the link budget, where the standard operating margin (fade margin) may be compromised.

### 12.2.3 Noting Possible Obstructions in the Fresnel Zone

The Fresnel (pronounced *fre-NEL*) Zone is a theoretical three-dimensional area around the line of sight of an antenna transmission. Objects that penetrate this area can cause the received strength of the transmitted signal to fade. Out-of-phase reflections and absorption of the signal result in signal cancellation.

The foliage of trees and plants in the Fresnel Zone can cause signal loss. Seasonal density, moisture content of the foliage, and other factors such as wind may change the amount of loss. Plan to perform frequent and regular link tests if you must transmit through foliage.

#### 12.2.4 Radar Signature Detection and Shutdown

With Release 8.1, Canopy meets ETSI EN 301 893 v1.2.3 for Dynamic Frequency Selection (DFS). DFS is a requirement in certain countries of the EU for systems like Canopy to detect interference from other systems, notably radar systems, and to avoid co-channel operation with these systems. All 5.4 GHz modules and all 5.7 GHz Connectorized modules running Release 8.1 have DFS. Other modules running Release 8.1 do not. With Release 8.1, Canopy SMs and BHSs as well as Canopy APs and BHM will detect radar systems.

When an AP or BHM enabled for DFS boots, it receives for 1 minute, watching for the radar signature, without transmitting. If no radar pulse is detected during this minute, the module then proceeds to normal beacon transmit mode. If it does detect radar, it waits for 30 minutes without transmitting, then watches the 1 minute, and will wait again if it detects radar. If while in operation, the AP or BHM detects the radar signature, it will cease transmitting for 30 minutes and then begin the 1 minute watch routine. Since an SM or BHS only transmits if it is receiving beacon from an AP or BHM, the SMs in the sector or BHS are also not transmitting when the AP or BHM is not transmitting.

When an SM or BHS with DFS boots, it scans to see if an AP or BHM is present (if it can detect a Canopy beacon). If an AP or BHM is found, the SM or BHS receives on that frequency for 1 minute to see if the radar signature is present. For an SM, if no radar pulse is detected during this 1 minute, the SM proceeds through normal steps to register to an AP. For a BHS, if no radar pulse is detected during this 1 minute, it registers, and as part of registering and ranging watches for the radar signature for another 1 minute. If the SM or BH does detect radar, it locks out that frequency for 30 minutes and continues scanning other frequencies in its scan list.

Note, after an SM or BHS has seen a radar signature on a frequency and locked out that frequency, it may connect to a different AP or BHM, if color codes, transmitting frequencies, and scanned frequencies support that connection.

For all modules, the module displays its DFS state on its General Status page. You can read the DFS status of the radio in the General Status tab of the Home page as one of the following:

- Normal Transmit
- Radar Detected Stop Transmitting for  $n$  minutes, where  $n$  counts down from 30 to 1.
- Checking Channel Availability Remaining time  $n$  seconds, where  $n$  counts down from 60 to 1. This indicates that a 30-minute shutdown has expired and the one-minute re-scan that follows is in progress.

DFS can be enabled or disabled on a module's Radio page: Configuration > Radio > DFS.

Operators in countries with regulatory requirements for DFS must not disable the feature and must ensure it is enabled after a module is reset to factory defaults.

Operators in countries without regulatory requirements for DFS will most likely not want to use the feature, as it adds no value if not required, and adds an additional 1 minute to the connection process for APs, BHM, and SMs, and 2 minutes for BHSs.

–

**RECOMMENDATION:**

Where regulations require that radar sensing and radio shutdown is enabled, you can most effectively share the spectrum with satellite services if you perform spectrum analysis and select channels that are distributed evenly across the frequency band range.

A connectorized 5.7-GHz module provides an **Antenna Gain** parameter. When you indicate the gain of your antenna in this field, the algorithm calculates the appropriate sensitivity to radar signals, and this reduces the occurrence of false positives (wherever the antenna gain is less than the maximum).

### 12.3 USING JITTER TO CHECK RECEIVED SIGNAL QUALITY

The General Status tab in the Home page of the Canopy SM and BHS displays current values for **Jitter**. This is an index of overall received signal quality. Interpret the jitter value as indicated in [Table 32](#).

**Table 32: Signal quality levels indicated by jitter**

Signal Modulation	Correlation of Highest Seen Jitter to Signal Quality		
	High Quality	Questionable Quality	Poor Quality
1X operation (2-level FSK)	0 to 4	5 to 14	15
2X operation (4-level FSK)	0 to 9	10 to 14	15

In your lab, an SM whose jitter value is constant at 14 may have an incoming packet efficiency of 100%. However, a deployed SM whose jitter value is 14 is likely to have even higher jitter values as interfering signals fluctuate in strength over time. So, *do not* consider 14 to be acceptable. Avoiding a jitter value of 15 should be the highest priority in establishing a link. At 15, jitter causes fragments to be dropped and link efficiency to suffer.

Canopy modules calculate jitter based on both interference and the modulation scheme. For this reason, values on the low end of the jitter range that are significantly higher in 2X operation can still be indications of a high quality signal. For example, where the amount of interference remains constant, an SM with a jitter value of 3 in 1X operation can display a jitter value of 7 when enabled for 2X operation.

However, on the high end of the jitter range, *do not* consider the higher values in 2X operation to be acceptable. This is because 2X operation is much more susceptible to problems from interference than is 1X. For example, where the amount of interference remains constant, an SM with a jitter value of 6 in 1X operation can display a jitter value of 14 when enabled for 2X operation. As indicated in [Table 32](#), these values are unacceptable.

## 12.4 USING LINK EFFICIENCY TO CHECK RECEIVED SIGNAL QUALITY

A link test, available in the Link Capacity Test tab of the Tools web page in an AP or BH, provides a more reliable indication of received signal quality, particularly if you launch tests of varying duration. However, a link test interrupts traffic and consumes system capacity, so *do not* routinely launch link tests across your networks.

### 12.4.1 Comparing Efficiency in 1X Operation to Efficiency in 2X Operation

Efficiency of at least 98 to 100% indicates a high quality signal. Check the signal quality numerous times, at various times of day and on various days of the week (as you checked the RF environment a variety of times by spectrum analysis before placing radios in the area). Efficiency less than 90% in 1X operation or less than 60% in 2X operation indicates a link with problems that require action.

### 12.4.2 When to Switch from 2X to 1X Operation Based on 60% Link Efficiency

In the above latter case (60% in 2X operation), the link experiences worse latency (from packet resends) than it would in 1X operation, but still greater capacity, if the link remains stable at 60% Efficiency. Downlink Efficiency and Uplink Efficiency are measurements produced by running a link test from either the SM or the AP. Examples of what action should be taken based on Efficiency in 2X operation are provided in [Table 33](#).

**Table 33: Recommended courses of action based on Efficiency in 2X operation**

Module Types	Further Investigation	Result	Recommended Action
Advantage AP with Advantage SM	Check the General Status tab of the Advantage SM. <sup>1</sup> See <a href="#">Checking the Status of 2X Operation</a> on Page 94.	Uplink and downlink are both $\geq 60\%$ Efficiency. <sup>2</sup>	Rerun link tests.
	Rerun link tests.	Uplink and downlink are both $\geq 60\%$ Efficiency.	Optionally, re-aim SM, add a reflector, or otherwise mitigate interference. In any case, continue 2X operation up and down.

Module Types	Further Investigation	Result	Recommended Action
Advantage AP with Canopy SM	Check the General Status tab of the Canopy SM. <sup>1</sup> See <a href="#">Checking the Status of 2X Operation</a> on Page 94.	Uplink and downlink are both $\geq 60\%$ Efficiency. <sup>2</sup>	Rerun link tests.
	Rerun link tests.	Uplink and downlink are both $\geq 60\%$ Efficiency.	Optionally, re-aim SM, add a reflector, or otherwise mitigate interference. In any case, continue 2X operation up and down.
		Results are inconsistent and range from 20% to 80% Efficiency.	Monitor the Session Status tab in the Advantage AP.
	Monitor the Session Status tab in the Advantage AP.	Link fluctuates between 2X and 1X operation. <sup>3</sup>	Optionally, re-aim SM, add a reflector, or otherwise mitigate interference. Then rerun link tests.
	Rerun link tests.	No substantial improvement with consistency is seen.	On the General tab of the SM, disable 2X operation. Then rerun link tests.
	Rerun link tests.	Uplink and downlink are both $\geq 90\%$ Efficiency.	Continue 1X operation up and down.

**NOTES:**

1. Or check Session Status page of the Advantage AP, where a sum of greater than 7,000,000 bps for the up- and downlink indicates 2X operation up and down (for 2.4- or 5.x-GHz modules).
2. For throughput to the SM, this is equivalent to 120% Efficiency in 1X operation, with less capacity used at the AP.
3. This link is problematic.

## 12.5 CONSIDERING FREQUENCY BAND ALTERNATIVES

For 5.2-, 5.4-, and 5.7-GHz modules, 20-MHz wide channels are centered every 5 MHz. For 2.4-GHz modules, 20-MHz wide channels are centered every 2.5 MHz. This allows the operator to customize the channel layout for interoperability where other Canopy equipment is collocated.

Cross-band deployment of APs and BH is the recommended alternative (for example, a 5.2-GHz AP collocated with 5.7-GHz BH).



### **IMPORTANT!**

Regardless of whether 2.4-, 5.2-, 5.4-, or 5.7-GHz modules are deployed, channel separation between modules should be at least 20 MHz for 1X operation or 25 MHz for 2X.

### 12.5.1 900-MHz Channels

#### 900-MHz Single AP Available Channels

A single 900-MHz AP can operate with the 8-MHz wide channel centered on any of the following frequencies:

(All Frequencies in MHz)					
906	909	912	915	918	922
907	910	913	916	919	923
908	911	914	917	920	924

#### 900-MHz AP Cluster Recommended Channels

Three non-overlapping channels are recommended for use in a 900-MHz AP cluster:

(All Frequencies in MHz)		
906	915	924

This recommendation allows 9 MHz of separation between channel centers. You can use the Spectrum Analysis feature in an SM, or use a standalone spectrum analyzer, to evaluate the RF environment. In any case, ensure that the 8-MHz wide channels you select *do not* overlap.

### 12.5.2 2.4-GHz Channels

#### 2.4-GHz BH and Single AP Available Channels

A BH or a single 2.4-GHz AP can operate in the following channels, which are separated by only 2.5-MHz increments.

(All Frequencies in GHz)			
2.4150	2.4275	2.4400	2.4525
2.4175	2.4300	2.4425	2.4550
2.4200	2.4325	2.4450	2.4575
2.4225	2.4350	2.4475	
2.4250	2.4375	2.4500	

The channels of *adjacent* 2.4-GHz APs should be separated by at least 20 MHz.



#### **IMPORTANT!**

In the 2.4-GHz frequency band, an SM can register to an AP that transmits on a frequency 2.5 MHz higher than the frequency that the SM receiver locks when the scan terminates as successful. This establishes a poor-quality link. To prevent this, select frequencies that are at least 5 MHz apart.

### 2.4-GHz AP Cluster Recommended Channels

Three non-overlapping channels are recommended for use in a 2.4-GHz AP cluster:

(All Frequencies in GHz)  
2.4150 2.4350 2.4575

This recommendation allows 20 MHz of separation between one pair of channels and 22.5 MHz between the other pair. You can use the Spectrum Analysis feature in an SM or BHS, or use a standalone spectrum analyzer, to evaluate the RF environment. Where spectrum analysis identifies risk of interference for any of these channels, you can compromise this recommendation as follows:

- Select 2.4375 GHz for the middle channel
- Select 2.455 GHz for the top channel
- Select 2.4175 GHz for the bottom channel

In any case, ensure that your plan allows at least 20 MHz of separation between channels.

### 12.5.3 5.2-GHz Channels

Channel selections for the AP in the 5.2-GHz frequency band range depend on whether the AP is deployed in cluster.

#### 5.2-GHz BH and Single AP Available Channels

A BH or a single 5.2-GHz AP can operate in the following channels, which are separated by 5-MHz increments.

(All Frequencies in GHz)  
5.275 5.290 5.305 5.320  
5.280 5.295 5.310 5.325  
5.285 5.300 5.315

The channels of *adjacent* APs should be separated by at least 20 MHz. However, 25 MHz of separation is advised.



### 5.2-GHz AP Cluster Recommended Channels

Three non-overlapping channels are recommended for use in a 5.2-GHz AP cluster:

(All Frequencies in GHz)  
5.275 5.300 5.325

### 12.5.4 5.4-GHz Channels

Channel selections for the AP in the 5.4-GHz frequency band range depend on whether the AP is deployed in cluster.

#### 5.4-GHz BH and Single AP Available

A BH or single 5.4-GHz AP can operate in the following channels, which are separated by 5-MHz.

(All Frequencies in GHz)

5495	5515	5535	5555	5575	5595	5615	5635	5655	5675	5695
5500	5520	5540	5560	5580	5600	5620	5640	5660	5680	5700
5505	5525	5545	5565	5585	5605	5625	5645	5665	5685	5705
5510	5530	5550	5570	5590	5610	5630	5650	5670	5690	

The channels of *adjacent* APs should be separated by at least 20 MHz.

#### 5.4-GHz AP Cluster Recommended Channels

The fully populated cluster requires only three channels, each reused by the module that is mounted 180° opposed. In this frequency band range, the possible sets of three non-overlapping channels are numerous. As many as 11 non-overlapping 20-MHz wide channels are available for 1X operation. Fewer 25-MHz wide channels are available for 1X operation, where this greater separation is recommended for interference avoidance.

#### 5.4-GHz AP Cluster Limit Case

In the limit, the 11 channels could support all of the following, vertically stacked on the same mast:

- 3 full clusters, each cluster using 3 channels
- a set of 4 APs, the set using the 2 channels that no AP in any of the 3 full clusters is using



#### **IMPORTANT!**

Where regulations require you to have Dynamic Frequency Selection (DFS) enabled, analyze the spectrum, then spread your channel selections as evenly as possible throughout this frequency band range, appropriately sharing it with satellite services.

### 12.5.5 5.7-GHz Channels

Channel selections for the AP in the 5.7-GHz frequency band range depend on whether the AP is deployed in cluster.

#### 5.7-GHz BH and Single AP Available ISM/U-NII Channels

A BH or a single 5.7-GHz AP enabled for ISM/U-NII frequencies can operate in the following channels, which are separated by 5-MHz increments.

(All Frequencies in GHz)			
5.735	5.765	5.795	5.825
5.740	5.770	5.800	5.830
5.745	5.775	5.805	5.835
5.750	5.780	5.810	5.840
5.755	5.785	5.815	
5.760	5.790	5.820	

The channels of *adjacent* APs should be separated by at least 20 MHz. However, 25 MHz of separation is advised.

#### 5.7-GHz AP Cluster Recommended ISM/U-NII Channels

Six non-overlapping ISM/U-NII channels are recommended for use in a 5.7-GHz AP cluster:

(All Frequencies in GHz)		
5.735	5.775	5.815
5.755	5.795	5.835

The fully populated cluster requires only three channels, each reused by the module that is mounted 180° offset. The six channels above are also used for backhaul point-to-point links.

As noted above, a 5.7-GHz AP enabled for ISM/U-NII frequencies can operate on a frequency as high as 5.840 GHz. Where engineering plans allow, this frequency can be used to provide an additional 5-MHz separation between AP and BH channels.

### 12.5.6 Channels Available for OFDM Backhaul Modules

Channel selections for BHs in the OFDM series are quoted in the user guides that are dedicated to those products. However, these BHs dynamically change channels when the signal substantially degrades. Since the available channels are in the 5.4- and 5.7-GHz frequency band ranges, carefully consider the potential effects of deploying these products into an environment where traffic in this range pre-exists.

### 12.5.7 Example Channel Plans for AP Clusters

Examples for assignment of frequency channels and sector IDs are provided in the following tables. Each frequency is reused on the sector that is at a 180° offset. The entry in the Symbol column of each table refers to the layout in [Figure 38](#) on Page 145.

**NOTE:**

The operator specifies the sector ID for the module as described under [Sector ID](#) on Page 445.

**Table 34: Example 900-MHz channel assignment by sector**

Direction of Access Point Sector	Frequency	Sector ID	Symbol
North (0°)	906 MHz	0	A
Northeast (60°)	915 MHz	1	B
Southeast (120°)	924 MHz	2	C
South (180°)	906 MHz	3	A
Southwest (240°)	915 MHz	4	B
Northwest (300°)	924 MHz	5	C

**Table 35: Example 2.4-GHz channel assignment by sector**

Direction of Access Point Sector	Frequency	Sector ID	Symbol
North (0°)	2.4150 GHz	0	A
Northeast (60°)	2.4350 GHz	1	B
Southeast (120°)	2.4575 GHz	2	C
South (180°)	2.4150 GHz	3	A
Southwest (240°)	2.4350 GHz	4	B
Northwest (300°)	2.4575 GHz	5	C

**Table 36: Example 5.2-GHz channel assignment by sector**

Direction of Access Point Sector	Frequency	Sector ID	Symbol
North (0°)	5.275 GHz	0	A
Northeast (60°)	5.300 GHz	1	B
Southeast (120°)	5.325 GHz	2	C
South (180°)	5.275 GHz	3	A
Southwest (240°)	5.300 GHz	4	B
Northwest (300°)	5.325 GHz	5	C

**Table 37: Example 5.4-GHz channel assignment by sector**

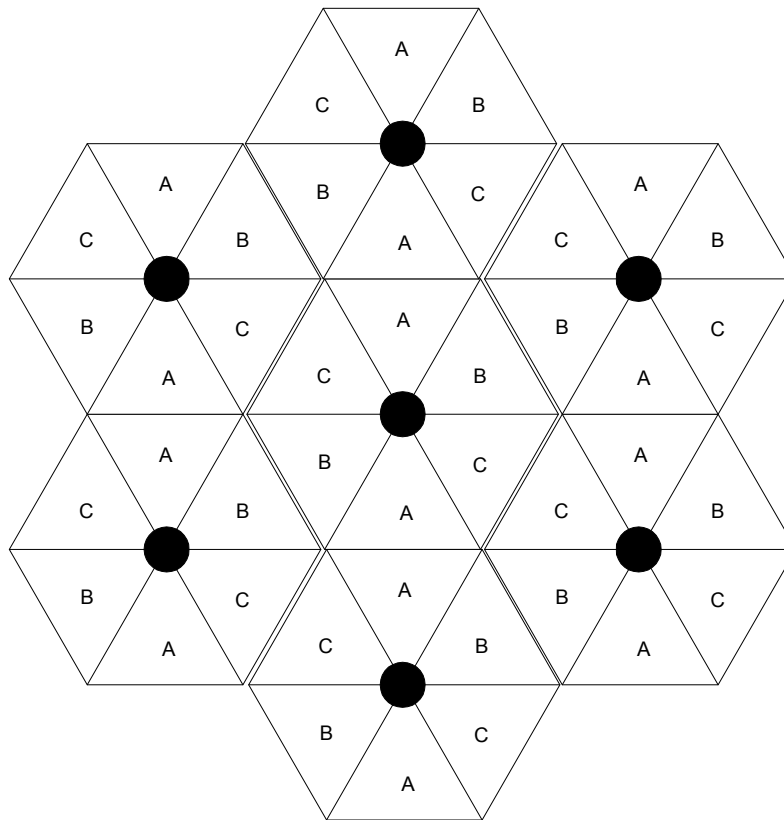
Direction of Access Point Sector	Frequency	Sector ID	Symbol
North (0°)	5.580 GHz	0	A
Northeast (60°)	5.620 GHz	1	B
Southeast (120°)	5.660 GHz	2	C
South (180°)	5.580 GHz	3	A
Southwest (240°)	5.620 GHz	4	B
Northwest (300°)	5.660 GHz	5	C

**Table 38: Example 5.7-GHz channel assignment by sector**

Direction of Access Point Sector	Frequency	Sector ID	Symbol
North (0°)	5.735 GHz	0	A
Northeast (60°)	5.755 GHz	1	B
Southeast (120°)	5.775 GHz	2	C
South (180°)	5.735 GHz	3	A
Southwest (240°)	5.755 GHz	4	B
Northwest (300°)	5.775 GHz	5	C

### 12.5.8 Multiple Access Points Clusters

When deploying multiple AP clusters in a dense area, consider aligning the clusters as shown in [Figure 38](#). However, this is only a recommendation. An installation may dictate a different pattern of channel assignments.



**Figure 38: Example layout of 7 Access Point clusters**

## 12.6 SELECTING SITES FOR NETWORK ELEMENTS

The Canopy APs must be positioned

- with hardware that the wind and ambient vibrations cannot flex or move.
- where a tower or rooftop is available or can be erected.
- where a grounding system is available.
- with lightning arrestors to transport lightning strikes away from equipment.
- at a proper height:
  - higher than the tallest points of objects immediately around them (such as trees, buildings, and tower legs).
  - at least 2 feet (0.6 meters) below the tallest point on the tower, pole, or roof (for lightning protection).
- away from high-RF energy sites (such as AM or FM stations, high-powered antennas, and live AM radio towers).
- in line-of-sight paths
  - to the SMs and BH.
  - that will not be obstructed by trees as they grow or structures that are later built.

**NOTE:**

Visual line of sight does not guarantee radio line of sight.

### 12.6.1 Resources for Maps and Topographic Images

Mapping software is available from sources such as the following:

- <http://www.microsoft.com/streets/default.asp>
  - Microsoft Streets & Trips (with Pocket Streets)
- <http://www.delorme.com/software.htm>
  - DeLorme Street Atlas USA
  - DeLorme Street Atlas USA Plus
  - DeLorme Street Atlas Handheld

Topographic maps are available from sources such as the following:

- <http://www.delorme.com/software.htm>
  - DeLorme Topo USA
  - DeLorme 3-D TopoQuads
- <http://www.usgstopomaps.com>
  - Timely Discount Topos, Inc. authorized maps

Topographic maps with waypoints are available from sources such as the following:

- <http://www.topografix.com>
  - TopoGrafix EasyGPS
  - TopoGrafix Panterra
  - TopoGrafix ExpertGPS

Topographic images are available from sources such as the following:

- <http://www.keyhole.com/body.php?h=products&t=keyholePro>
  - keyhole PRO
- <http://www.digitalglobe.com>
  - various imagery

### 12.6.2 Surveying Sites

Factors to survey at potential sites include

- what pre-existing wireless equipment exists at the site. (Perform spectrum analysis.)
- whether available mounting positions exist near the lowest elevation that satisfies line of site, coverage, and other link criteria.
- whether you will always have the right to decide who climbs the tower to install and maintain your equipment, and whether that person or company can climb at any hour of any day.

- whether you will have collaborative rights and veto power to prevent interference to your equipment from wireless equipment that is installed at the site in the future.
- whether a pre-existing grounding system (path to Protective Earth ↓) exists, and what is required to establish a path to it.
- who is permitted to run any indoor lengths of cable.

### 12.6.3 Assuring the Essentials

In the 2.4-, 5.2-, 5.4-, and 5.7-GHz frequency band ranges, an unobstructed line of sight (LOS) must exist and be maintainable between the radios that are involved in each link.

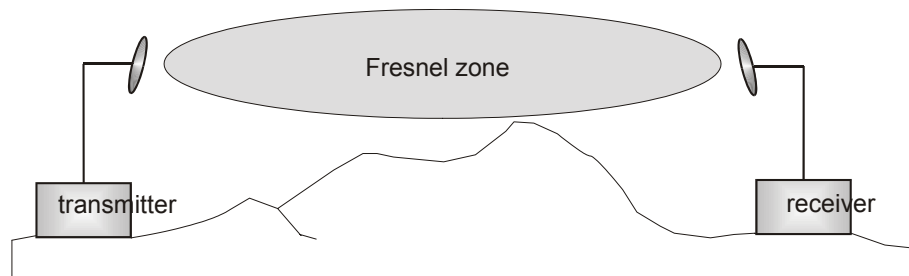
#### Line of Sight (LOS) Link

In these ranges, a line of sight link is both

- an unobstructed straight line from radio to radio.
- an unobstructed zone surrounding that straight line.

#### Fresnel Zone Clearance

An unobstructed line of sight is important, but is not the *only* determinant of adequate placement. Even where the path has a clear line of sight, obstructions such as terrain, vegetation, metal roofs, or cars may penetrate the Fresnel zone and cause signal loss. [Figure 39](#) illustrates an ideal Fresnel zone.



**Figure 39: Fresnel zone**

[FresnelZoneCalcPage.xls](#) calculates the Fresnel zone clearance that is required between the visual line of sight and the top of an obstruction that would protrude into the link path.

#### Non-Line of Sight (NLOS) Link

The Canopy 900-MHz modules have a line of sight (LOS) range of 40 miles (more than 64 km) and greater non-line of sight (NLOS) range than Canopy modules of other frequency bands. NLOS range depends on RF considerations such as foliage, topography, obstructions.

### 12.6.4 Finding the Expected Coverage Area

The transmitted beam in the vertical dimension covers more area beyond than in front of the beam center. [BeamwidthRadiiCalcPage.xls](#) calculates the radii of the beam coverage area.

### 12.6.5 Clearing the Radio Horizon

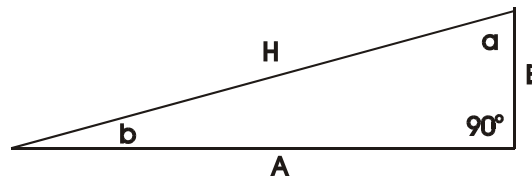
Because the surface of the earth is curved, higher module elevations are required for greater link distances. This effect can be critical to link connectivity in link spans that are greater than 8 miles (12 km). [AntennaElevationCalcPage.xls](#) calculates the minimum antenna elevation for these cases, presuming no landscape elevation difference from one end of the link to the other.

### 12.6.6 Calculating the Aim Angles

The appropriate angle of AP downward tilt is derived from both the distance between transmitter and receiver and the difference in their elevations. [DowntiltCalcPage.xls](#) calculates this angle.

The proper angle of tilt can be calculated as a factor of both the difference in elevation and the distance that the link spans. Even in this case, a plumb line and a protractor can be helpful to ensure the proper tilt. This tilt is typically minimal.

The number of degrees to offset (from vertical) the mounting hardware leg of the support tube is equal to the angle of elevation from the lower module to the higher module (<B in the example provided in [Figure 40](#)).



#### **LEGEND**

- b**      Angle of elevation.  
**B**      Vertical difference in elevation.  
**A**      Horizontal distance between modules.

**Figure 40: Variables for calculating angle of elevation (and depression)**

#### **Calculating the Angle of Elevation**

To use metric units to find the angle of elevation, use the following formula:

$$\tan b = \frac{B}{1000A}$$

where

B is expressed in meters

A is expressed in kilometers.



To use English standard units to find the angle of elevation, use the following formula:

$$\tan b = \frac{B}{5280A}$$

where

B is expressed in feet

A is expressed in miles.

The angle of depression from the higher module is identical to the angle of elevation from the lower module.

## 12.7 COLLOCATING CANOPY MODULES

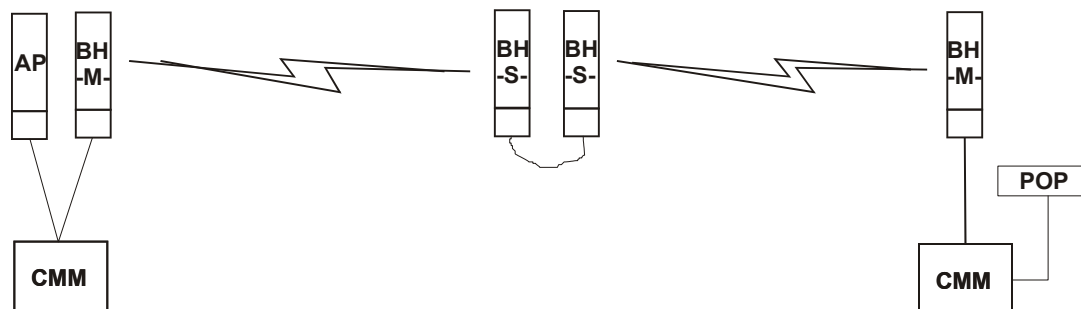
A BH and an AP or AP cluster on the same tower require a CMM. The CMM properly synchronizes the *transmit start* times of all Canopy modules to prevent interference and desensing of the modules. At closer distances without sync from a CMM, the frame structures cause self interference.

Furthermore, a BH and an AP on the same tower require that the effects of their differing *receive start* times be mitigated by either

- 100 vertical feet (30 meters) or more and as much spectral separation as possible within the same frequency band range.
- the use of the frame calculator to tune the **Downlink Data** parameter in each, so that the receive start time in each is the same. See [Using the Frame Calculator Tool \(All\)](#) on Page 446.

Canopy APs and a BHS can be collocated at the same site only if they operate in different frequency band ranges.

Where a single BH air link is insufficient to cover the distance from an AP cluster to your point of presence (POP), you can deploy two BHSs, connected to one another by Ethernet, on a tower that is between a BHM collocated with the AP cluster and another BHM collocated with the POP. This deployment is illustrated in [Figure 41](#).



**Figure 41: Double-hop backhaul links**

However, the BHSs can be collocated at the same site *only if* one is on a different frequency band range from that of the other or one of the following conditions applies:

- They are vertically separated on a structure by at least 100 feet (30 m).
- They are vertically separated on a structure by less distance, but either
  - an RF shield isolates them from each other.
  - the uplink and downlink data parameters and control channels match (the **Downlink Data** parameter is set to **50%**).

The constraints for collocated modules in the same frequency band range are to avoid self-interference that would occur between them. Specifically, unless the uplink and downlink data percentages match, intervals exist when one is transmitting while the other is receiving, such that the receiving module cannot receive the signal from the far end.

The interference is less a problem during low throughput periods and intolerable during high. Typically, during low throughput periods, sufficient time exists for the far end to retransmit packets lost because of interference from the collocated module.

## 12.8 DEPLOYING A REMOTE AP

In cases where the subscriber population is widely distributed, or conditions such as geography restrict network deployment, you can add a Remote AP to

- provide high-throughput service to near LoS business subscribers.
- reach around obstructions or penetrate foliage with non-LoS throughput.
- reach new, especially widely distributed, residential subscribers with broadband service.
- pass sync to an additional RF hop.

In the remote AP configuration, a Canopy AP is collocated with a Canopy SM. The remote AP distributes the signal over the last mile to SMs that are logically behind the collocated SM. A remote AP deployment is illustrated in [Figure 42](#).

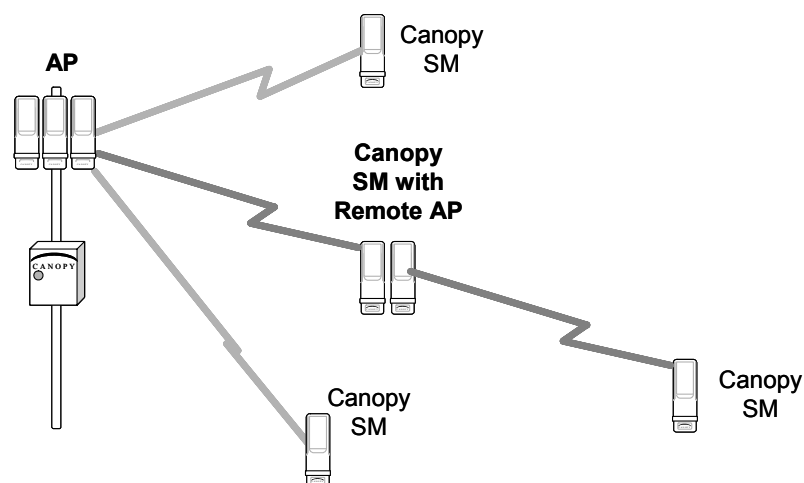


Figure 42: Remote AP deployment

The collocated SM receives data in one frequency band, and the remote AP must redistribute the data in a different frequency band. Base your selection of frequency band ranges on regulatory restrictions, environmental conditions, and throughput requirements.

**IMPORTANT!**

Each relay hop (additional daisy-chained remote AP) adds latency to the link as follows:

- approximately 6 msec where hardware scheduling is enabled.
- approximately 15 msec where software scheduling is enabled.

### 12.8.1 Remote AP Performance

The performance of a remote AP is identical to the AP performance in cluster. Throughputs, ranges, and patch antenna coverage are identical. Canopy Advantage and Canopy modules can be deployed in tandem in the same sector to meet customer bandwidth demands.

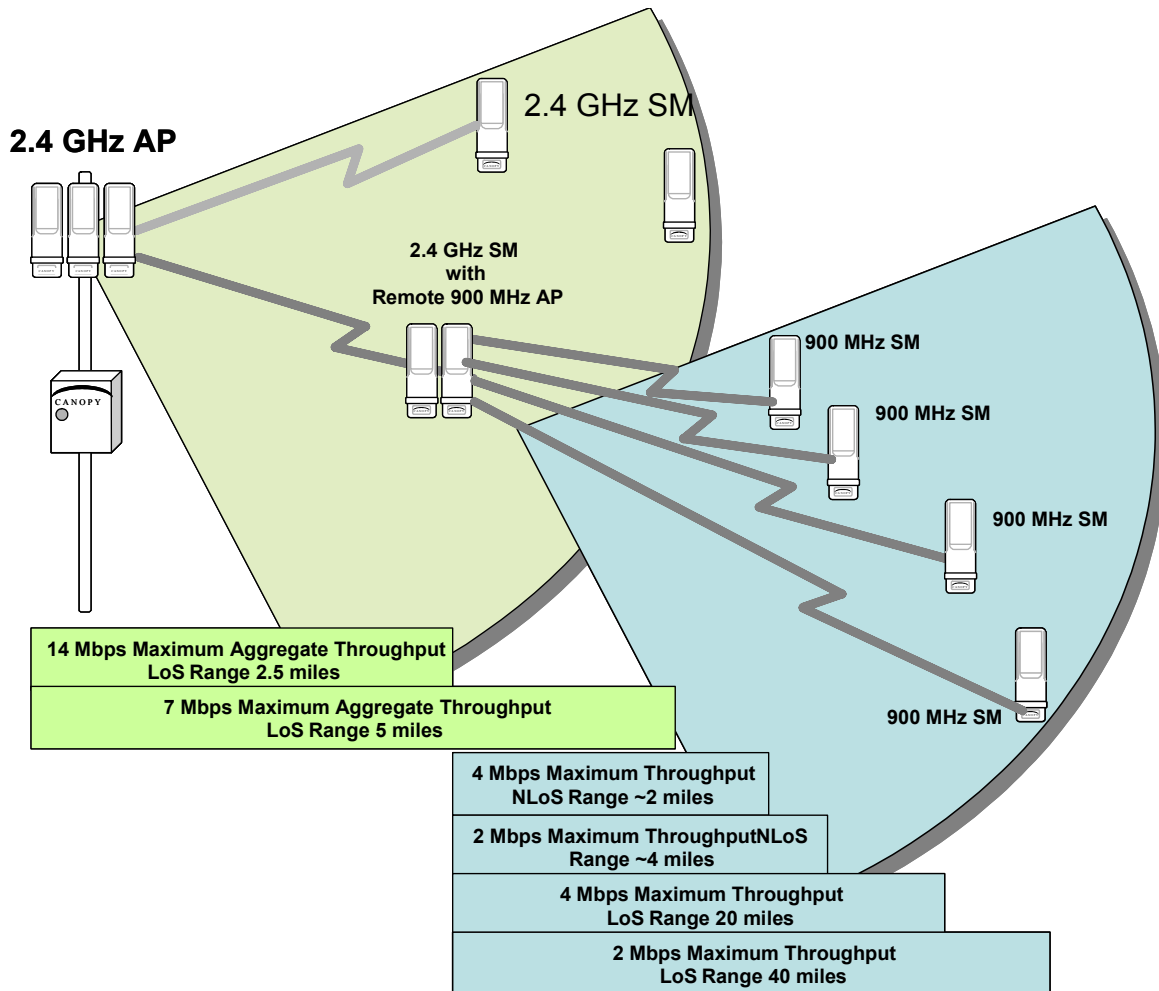
As with all equipment operating in the unlicensed spectrum, Motorola *strongly* recommends that you perform site surveys before you add network elements. These will indicate that spectrum is available in the area where you want to grow. Keep in mind that

- non-LoS ranges heavily depend on environmental conditions.
- in most regions, not all frequencies are available.
- your deployments must be consistent with local regulatory restrictions.

### 12.8.2 Example Use Case for RF Obstructions

A remote AP can be used to provide last-mile access to a community where RF obstructions prevent SMs from communicating with the higher-level AP in cluster. For example, you may be able to use 900 MHz for the last mile between a remote AP and the outlying SMs where these subscribers cannot form good links to a higher-level 2.4-GHz AP. In this case, the short range of the 900-MHz remote AP is sufficient, and the ability of the 900-MHz wavelength to be effective around foliage at short range solves the foliage penetration problem.

An example of this use case is shown in [Figure 43](#).



**Figure 43: Example 900-MHz remote AP behind 2.4-GHz SM**

The 2.4 GHz modules provide a sustained aggregate throughput of up to 14 Mbps to the sector. One of the SMs in the sector is wired to a 900-MHz remote AP, which provides NLoS sustained aggregate throughput<sup>5</sup> of

- 4 Mbps to 900-MHz SMs up to 2 miles away in the sector.
- 2 Mbps to 900-MHz SMs between 2 and 4 miles away in the sector.

### 12.8.3 Example Use Case for Passing Sync

All Canopy radios support the remote AP functionality. The BHS and the SM can reliably pass the sync pulse, and the BHM and AP can reliably receive it. Examples of passing sync over cable are shown under [Passing Sync in an Additional Hop](#) on Page 97. The sync cable is described under [Cables](#) on Page 59.

<sup>5</sup> NLoS ranges depend on environmental conditions. Your results may vary from these.

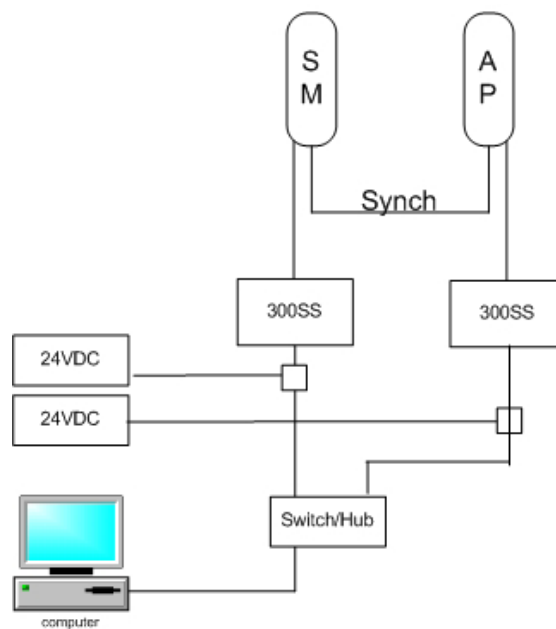
The sync is passed in a cable that connects Pins 1 and 6 of the RJ-11 timing ports of the two modules. When you connect modules in this way, you must also adjust configuration parameters to ensure that

- the AP is set to properly receive sync.
- the SM will not propagate sync to the AP if the SM itself ceases to receive sync.

Perform [Procedure 35: Extending network sync](#) on Page 375.

#### 12.8.4 Physical Connections Involving the Remote AP

The SM to which you wire a remote AP can be either an SM that serves a customer or an SM that simply serves as a relay. Where the SM serves a customer, wire the remote AP to the SM as shown in [Figure 44](#).



**Figure 44: Remote AP wired to SM that also serves a customer**

Where the SM simply serves as a relay, you must use a straight-through RJ-45 female-to-female coupler, and wire the SM to the remote AP as shown in [Figure 45](#).

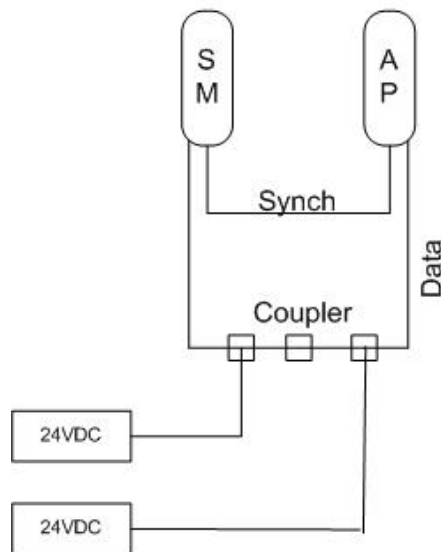


Figure 45: Remote AP wired to SM that serves as a relay

## 12.9 DIAGRAMMING NETWORK LAYOUTS

### 12.9.1 Accounting for Link Ranges and Data Handling Requirements

For aggregate throughput correlation to link distance in both point-to-multipoint and point-to-point links, see

- [Link Performance and Encryption Comparisons](#) on Page 63.
- all regulations that apply in your region and nation(s).

### 12.9.2 Avoiding Self Interference

For 5.2-, 5.4-, and 5.7-GHz modules, 20-MHz wide channels are centered every 5 MHz. For 2.4-GHz modules, 20-MHz wide channels are centered every 2.5 MHz. This allows you to customize the channel layout for interoperability where other Canopy equipment is collocated.



#### **CAUTION!**

Regardless of whether 2.4-, 5.2-, 5.4-, or 5.7-GHz modules are deployed, channel separation between modules should be at least 20 MHz for 1X operation or 25 MHz for 2X.

#### **Physical Proximity**

A BH and an AP on the same tower require a CMM. The CMM properly synchronizes the *transmit start* times of all Canopy modules to prevent interference and desensing of the modules. At closer distances without sync from a CMM, the frame structures cause self interference.

Furthermore, a BH and an AP on the same tower require that the effects of their differing *receive start* times be mitigated by either

- 100 vertical feet (30 meters) or more and as much spectral separation as possible within the same frequency band range.
- the use of the frame calculator to tune the Downlink Data % parameter in each, so that the receive start time in each is the same. See [Using the Frame Calculator Tool \(All\)](#) on Page 446.

### Spectrum Analysis

You can use an SM or BHS as a spectrum analyzer. See [Mapping RF Neighbor Frequencies](#) on Page 133. Through a toggle of the **Device Type** parameter, you can temporarily transform an AP into an SM to use it as a spectrum analyzer.

### Power Reduction to Mitigate Interference

Where any module (SM, AP, BH timing master, or BH timing slave) is close enough to another module that self-interference is possible, you can set the SM to operate at less than full power. To do so, perform the following steps.



#### CAUTION!

A low setting of the **Transmitter Output Power** parameter can cause a link to a distant module to drop. A link that drops for this reason can be re-established by only Ethernet access.

### Procedure 3: Invoking the low power mode

1. Access the Radio tab of the module.
2. In the **Transmitter Output Power** parameter, reduce the setting.
3. Click **Save Changes**.
4. Click **Reboot**.
5. Access the Session Status tab in the Home web page of the SM.
6. Assess whether the link achieves good **Power Level** and **Jitter** values.  
*NOTE:* The received **Power Level** is shown in dBm and should be maximized. **Jitter** should be minimized. However, better/lower jitter should be favored over better/higher dBm. For historical reasons, **RSSI** is also shown and is the unitless measure of power. The best practice is to use **Power Level** and ignore **RSSI**, which implies more accuracy and precision than is inherent in its measurement.
7. Access the Link Capacity Test tab in the Tools web page of the module.
8. Assess whether the desired links for this module achieve
  - uplink efficiency greater than 90%.
  - downlink efficiency greater than 90%.
9. If the desired links fail to achieve any of the above measurement thresholds, then
  - a. access the module by direct Ethernet connection.
  - b. access the Radio tab in the Configuration web page of the module.
  - c. in the **Transmitter Output Power** parameter, increase the setting.

- d. click **Save Changes**.
- e. click **Reboot**.

===== end of procedure =====

### 12.9.3 Avoiding Other Interference

Where signal strength cannot dominate noise levels, the network experiences

- bit error corrections.
- packet errors and retransmissions.
- lower throughput (because bandwidth is consumed by retransmissions) and high latency (due to resends).

Be especially cognitive of these symptoms for 900-MHz links. Where you see these symptoms, attempt the following remedies:

- Adjust the position of the SM.
- Deploy a band-pass filter at the AP.
- Consider adding a remote AP closer to the affected SMs. (See [Deploying a Remote AP](#) on Page 150.)

Certain other actions, which may seem to be potential remedies, *do not* resolve high noise level problems:

- *Do not* deploy an omnidirectional or vertically polarized antenna.
- *Do not* set the antenna gain above the recommended level.
- *Do not* deploy a band-pass filter in the expectation that this can mitigate interband interference.



## 13 ENGINEERING YOUR IP COMMUNICATIONS

### 13.1 UNDERSTANDING ADDRESSES

A basic understanding of Internet Protocol (IP) address and subnet mask concepts is required for engineering your IP network.

#### 13.1.1 IP Address

The IP address is a 32-bit binary number that has four parts (octets). This set of four octets has two segments, depending on the class of IP address. The first segment identifies the network. The second identifies the hosts or devices on the network. The subnet mask marks a boundary between these two sub-addresses.

### 13.2 DYNAMIC OR STATIC ADDRESSING

For any computer to communicate with a Canopy module, the computer must be configured to either

- use DHCP (Dynamic Host Configuration Protocol). In this case, when not connected to the network, the computer derives an IP address on the 169.254 network within two minutes.
- have an assigned static IP address (for example, 169.254.1.5) on the 169.254 network.



#### **IMPORTANT!**

If an IP address that is set in the module is not the 169.254.x.x network address, then the network operator must assign the computer a static IP address in the same subnet.

#### 13.2.1 When a DHCP Server is Not Found

To operate on a network, a computer requires an IP address, a subnet mask, and possibly a gateway address. Either a DHCP server automatically assigns this configuration information to a computer on a network or an operator must input these items.

When a computer is brought on line and a DHCP server is not accessible (such as when the server is down or the computer is not plugged into the network), Microsoft and Apple operating systems default to an IP address of 169.254.x.x and a subnet mask of 255.255.0.0 (169.254/16, where /16 indicates that the first 16 bits of the address range are identical among all members of the subnet).

## 13.3 NETWORK ADDRESS TRANSLATION (NAT)

### 13.3.1 NAT, DHCP Server, DHCP Client, and DMZ in SM

The Canopy system provides NAT (network address translation) for SMs in the following combinations of NAT and DHCP (Dynamic Host Configuration Protocol):

- NAT Disabled (as in earlier releases)
- NAT with DHCP Client and DHCP Server
- NAT with DHCP Client
- NAT with DHCP Server
- NAT without DHCP

#### NAT

NAT isolates devices connected to the Ethernet/wired side of an SM from being seen directly from the wireless side of the SM. With NAT enabled, the SM has an IP address for transport traffic (separate from its address for management), terminates transport traffic, and allows you to assign a range of IP addresses to devices that are connected to the Ethernet/wired side of the SM.

In the Canopy system, NAT supports many protocols, including HTTP, ICMP (Internet Control Message Protocols), and FTP (File Transfer Protocol). For virtual private network (VPN) implementation, L2TP over IPsec (Level 2 Tunneling Protocol over IP Security) is supported, but PPTP (Point to Point Tunneling Protocol) *is not* supported. See [NAT and VPNs](#) on Page 163.

#### DHCP

DHCP enables a device to be assigned a new IP address and TCP/IP parameters, including a default gateway, whenever the device reboots. Thus DHCP reduces configuration time, conserves IP addresses, and allows modules to be moved to a different network within the Canopy system.

In conjunction with the NAT features, each SM provides

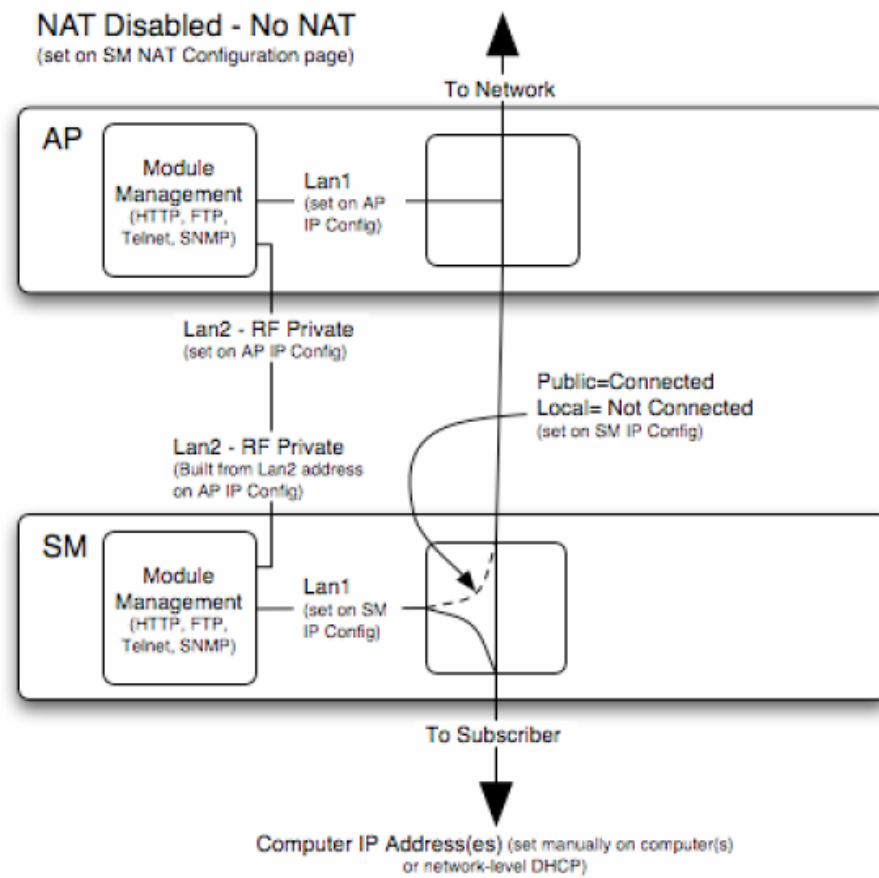
- a DHCP server that assigns IP addresses to computers connected to the SM by Ethernet protocol.
- a DHCP client that receives an IP address for the SM from a network DHCP server.

#### DMZ

In conjunction with the NAT features, a DMZ (demilitarized zone) allows the assignment of one IP address behind the SM for a device to logically exist outside the firewall and receive network traffic. The first three octets of this IP address must be identical to the first three octets of the NAT private IP address.

**NAT Disabled**

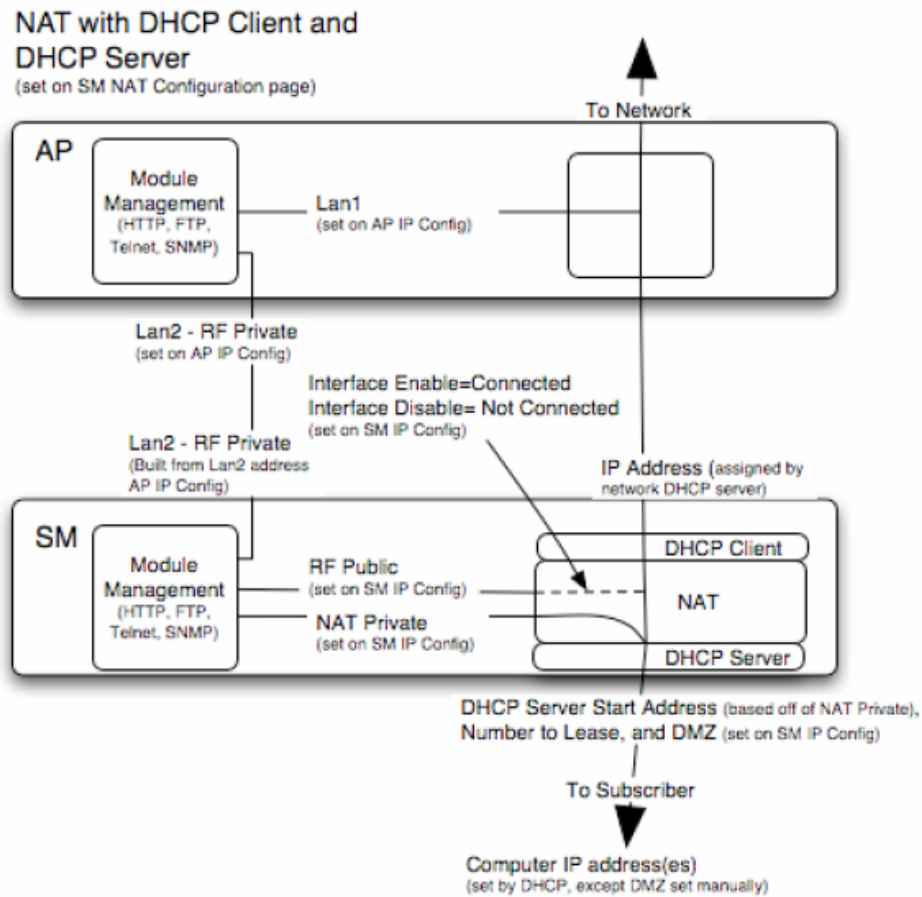
The NAT Disabled implementation is illustrated in [Figure 46](#).



**Figure 46: NAT Disabled implementation**

### NAT with DHCP Client and DHCP Server

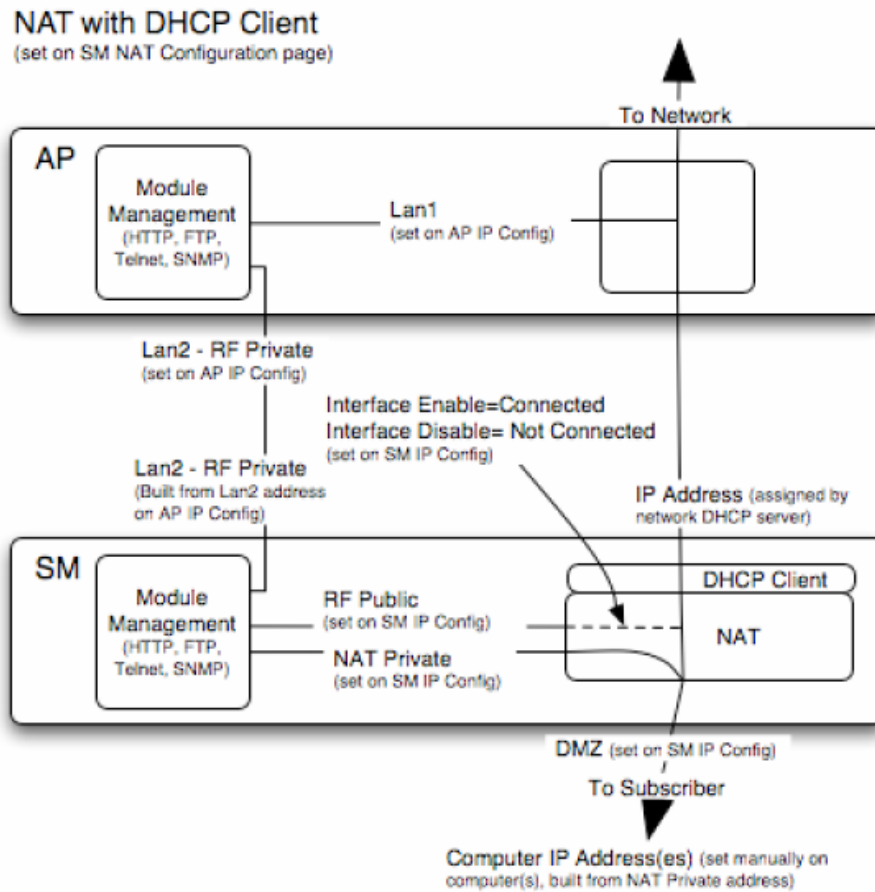
The NAT with DHCP Client and DHCP Server implementation is illustrated in [Figure 47](#).



**Figure 47: NAT with DHCP Client and DHCP Server implementation**

### NAT with DHCP Client

The NAT with DHCP Client implementation is illustrated in Figure 48.



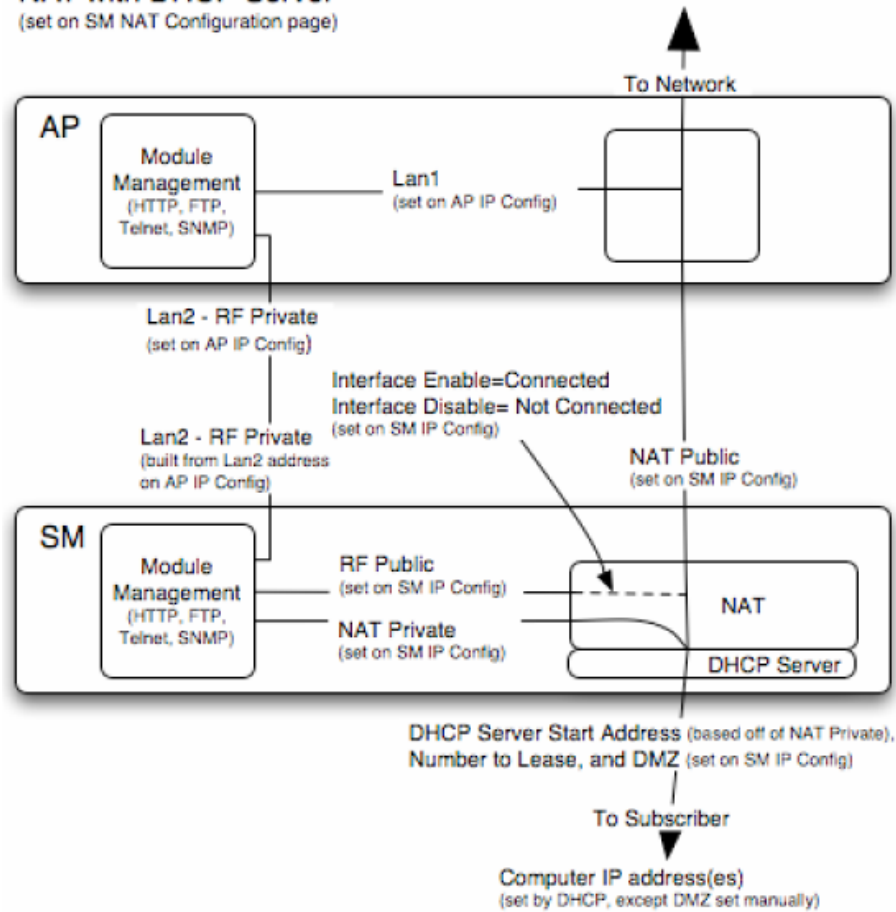
**Figure 48: NAT with DHCP Client implementation**

**NAT with DHCP Server**

The NAT with DHCP Server implementation is illustrated in [Figure 49](#).

**NAT with DHCP Server**

(set on SM NAT Configuration page)



**Figure 49: NAT with DHCP Server implementation**

### NAT without DHCP

The NAT without DHCP implementation is illustrated in Figure 50.

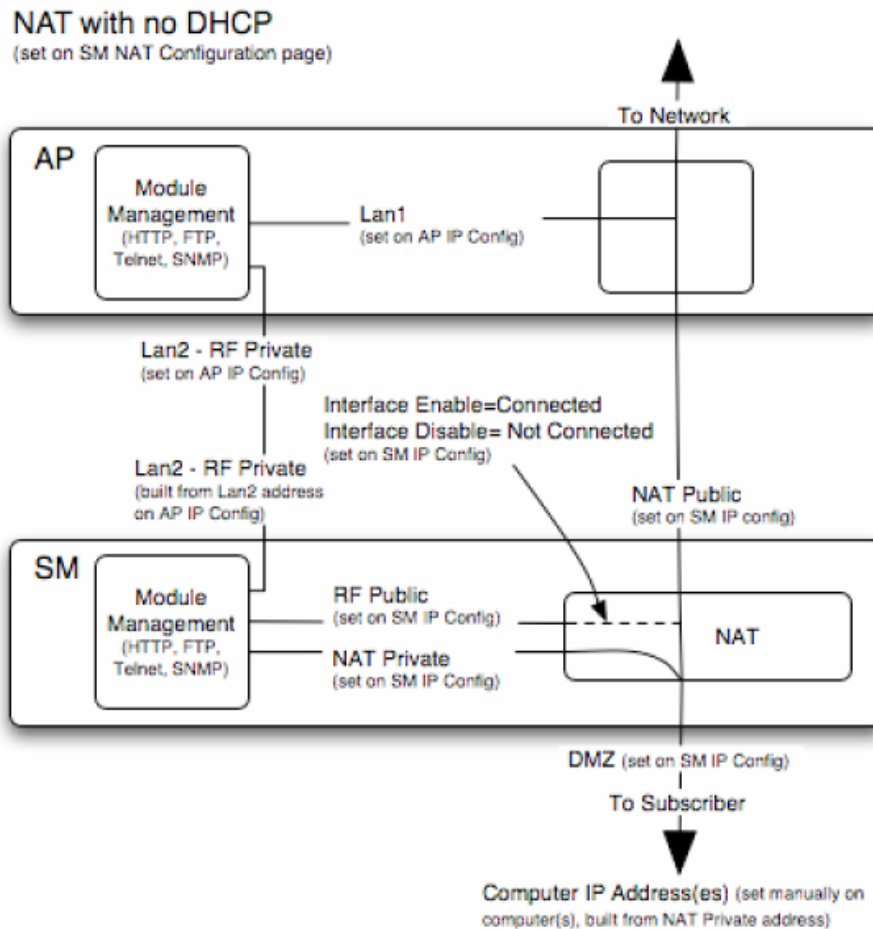


Figure 50: NAT without DHCP implementation

### 13.3.2 NAT and VPNs

VPN technology provides the benefits of a private network during communication over a public network. One typical use of a VPN is to connect remote employees, who are at home or in a different city, to their corporate network over the public Internet. Any of several VPN implementation schemes is possible. By design, NAT translates or changes addresses, and thus interferes with a VPN that is not specifically supported by a given NAT implementation.

With NAT enabled, SMs support L2TP over IPSec (Level 2 Tunneling Protocol over IP Security) VPNs, but *do not* support PPTP (Point to Point Tunneling Protocol) VPNs. With NAT disabled, SMs support all types of VPNs.

## 13.4 DEVELOPING AN IP ADDRESSING SCHEME

Canopy network elements are accessed through IP Version 4 (IPv4) addressing. A proper IP addressing method is critical to the operation and security of a Canopy network.

Each Canopy module requires an IP address on the network. This IP address is for only management purposes. For security, you should either

- assign an unroutable IP address.
- assign a routable IP address only if a firewall is present to protect the module.

You will assign IP addresses to computers and network components by either *static* or *dynamic* IP addressing. You will also assign the appropriate subnet mask and network gateway to each module.

### 13.4.1 Address Resolution Protocol

As previously stated, the MAC address identifies a Canopy module in

- communications between modules.
- the data that modules store about each other.
- the data that BAM or Prizm applies to manage authentication and bandwidth.

The IP address is essential for data delivery through a router interface. Address Resolution Protocol (ARP) correlates MAC addresses to IP addresses.

For communications to outside the network segment, ARP reads the network gateway address of the router and translates it into the MAC address of the router. Then the communication is sent to MAC address (physical network interface card) of the router.

For each router between the sending module and the destination, this sequence applies. The ARP correlation is stored until the ARP cache times out.

### 13.4.2 Allocating Subnets

The subnet mask is a 32-bit binary number that filters the IP address. Where a subnet mask contains a bit set to 1, the corresponding bit in the IP address is part of the network address.

#### Example IP Address and Subnet Mask

In [Figure 51](#), the first 16 bits of the 32-bit IP address identify the network:

	Octet 1	Octet 2	Octet 3	Octet 4
IP address 169.254.1.1	10101001	11111110	00000001	00000001
Subnet mask 255.255.0.0	11111111	11111111	00000000	00000000

**Figure 51: Example of IP address in Class B subnet**

In this example, the network address is 169.254, and  $2^{16}$  (65,536) hosts are addressable.



### 13.4.3 Selecting Non-routable IP Addresses

The factory default assignments for Canopy network elements are

- unique MAC address
- IP address of 169.254.1.1, except for an OFDM series BHM, whose IP address is 169.254.1.2 by default
- subnet mask of 255.255.0.0
- network gateway address of 169.254.0.0

For each Canopy radio and CMMmicro, assign an IP address that is both consistent with the IP addressing plan for your network and cannot be accessed from the Internet. IP addresses within the following ranges are not routable from the Internet, regardless of whether a firewall is configured:

- 10.0.0.0 – 10.255.255.255
- 172.16.0.0 – 172.31.255.255
- 192.168.0.0 – 192.168.255.255

You can also assign a subnet mask and network gateway for each CMMmicro.



## 14 ENGINEERING VLANS

Canopy radios support VLAN functionality as defined in the 802.1Q (*Virtual LANs*) specification, except for the following aspects of that specification:

- the following protocols:
  - Generic Attribute Registration Protocol (GARP) GARV
  - Spanning Tree Protocol (STP)
  - Multiple Spanning Tree Protocol (MSTP)
  - GARP Multicast Registration Protocol (GMRP)
- priority encoding (802.1P) before Release 7.0
- embedded source routing (ERIF) in the 802.1Q header
- multicast pruning
- flooding unknown unicast frames in the downlink

As an additional exception, the Canopy AP *does not* flood downward the unknown unicast frames to the Canopy SM.

A VLAN configuration in Layer 2 establishes a logical group within the network. Each computer in the VLAN, regardless of initial or eventual physical location, has access to the same data. For the network operator, this provides flexibility in network segmentation, simpler management, and enhanced security.

### 14.1 SM MEMBERSHIP IN VLANS

With the supported VLAN functionality, Canopy radios determine bridge forwarding on the basis of not only the destination MAC address, but also the VLAN ID of the destination. This provides flexibility in how SMs are used:

- Each SM can be a member in its own VLAN, whose other members can be APs in other sectors. This case would allow movement of the SM from sector to sector without requiring a reconfiguration of the VLAN.
- Each SM can be in its own broadcast domain, such that only the radios that are members of the VLAN can see multicast traffic to and from the SM. In most cases, this can significantly conserve bandwidth at the SMs.
- The network operator can define a work group of SMs, regardless of the AP(s) to which they register.

Canopy point-to-multipoint modules provide the VLAN frame filters that are described in [Table 39](#).

Table 39: VLAN filters in point-to-multipoint modules

Where VLAN is active, if this parameter value is selected ...	then a frame is discarded if...		because of this VLAN filter in the Canopy software:
	<i>entering</i> the bridge/ NAT switch through...		
	Ethernet...	TCP/IP...	
any combination of VLAN parameter settings	with a VID not in the membership table		Ingress
any combination of VLAN parameter settings		with a VID not in the membership table	Local Ingress
<b>Allow Frame Types: Tagged Frames Only</b>	with no 802.1Q tag		Only Tagged
<b>Allow Frame Types: Untagged Frames Only</b>	with an 802.1Q tag, regardless of VID		Only Untagged
<b>Local SM Management: Disable</b> in the SM, or <b>All Local SM Management: Disable</b> in the AP	with an 802.1Q tag and a VID in the membership table		Local SM Management
	<i>leaving</i> the bridge/ NAT switch through...		
	Ethernet...	TCP/IP...	
any combination of VLAN parameter settings	with a VID not in the membership table		Egress
any combination of VLAN parameter settings		with a VID not in the membership table	Local Egress

## 14.2 PRIORITY ON VLANS (802.1p)

Canopy radios can prioritize traffic based on the eight priorities described in the IEEE 802.1p specification. When the high-priority channel is enabled on an SM, regardless of whether VLAN is enabled on the AP for the sector, packets received with a priority of 4 through 7 in the 802.1p field are forwarded onto the high-priority channel.

VLAN settings in a Canopy module can also cause the module to convert received non-VLAN packets into VLAN packets. In this case, the 802.1p priority in packets leaving the module is set to the priority established by the DiffServ configuration.

If you enable VLAN, *immediately* monitor traffic to ensure that the results are as desired. For example, high-priority traffic may block low-priority.

For more information on the Canopy high priority channel, see [High-priority Bandwidth](#) on Page 88.

# INSTALLATION AND CONFIGURATION GUIDE



## 15 AVOIDING HAZARDS

Use simple precautions to protect staff and equipment. Hazards include exposure to RF waves, lightning strikes, and power surges. This section specifically recommends actions to abate these hazards.

### 15.1 PREVENTING OVEREXPOSURE TO RF ENERGY

To protect from overexposure to RF energy, install Canopy radios so as to provide and maintain the minimum separation distances from all persons shown in [Table 40](#).

**Table 40: Exposure separation distances**

Canopy module	Minimum separation distance from all persons	
Antenna of 900-MHz AP or SM	60 cm	24 in
2.4-, 5.2-, 5.4-, or 5.7-GHz radio with no reflector	20 cm	8 in
2.4-, 5.4-, or 5.7-GHz radio with a reflector	1.5 m	60 in (5 ft)

At these and greater separation distances, the power density from the RF field is below generally accepted limits for the general population.



**NOTE:**

These are conservative distances that include compliance margins. In the case of the reflector, the distance is even more conservative because the equation used models the reflector as a point source and ignores its physical dimensions.

#### 15.1.1 Details of Calculations for Separation Distances and Power Compliance Margins

Limits and guidelines for RF exposure come from:

- US FCC limits for the general population. See the FCC web site at <http://www.fcc.gov>, and the policies, guidelines, and requirements in Part 1 of Title 47 of the Code of Federal Regulations, as well as the guidelines and suggestions for evaluating compliance in FCC OET Bulletin 65.
- Health Canada limits for the general population. See the Health Canada web site at <http://www.hc-sc.gc.ca/rpb> and Safety Code 6.
- ICNIRP (International Commission on Non-Ionizing Radiation Protection) guidelines for the general public. See the ICNIRP web site at <http://www.icnirp.de/> and Guidelines for Limiting Exposure to Time-Varying Electric, Magnetic, and Electromagnetic Fields.

The applicable power density exposure limits from the documents referenced above are

- 6 W/m<sup>2</sup> for RF energy in the 900-MHz frequency band in the US and Canada.
- 10 W/m<sup>2</sup> for RF energy in the 2.4-, 5.2-, 5.4-, and 5.7-GHz frequency bands.

Peak power density in the far field of a radio frequency point source is calculated as follows:

$$S = \frac{P \cdot G}{4 \pi d^2}$$

where

$S$  = power density in W/m<sup>2</sup>

$P$  = RMS transmit power capability of the radio, in W

$G$  = total Tx gain as a factor, converted from dB

$d$  = distance from point source, in m

Rearranging terms to solve for distance yields

$$d = \sqrt{\frac{P \cdot G}{4 \pi S}}$$

#### Calculated Distances and Power Compliance Margins

Table 41 shows calculated minimum separation distances  $d$ , recommended distances and resulting power compliance margins for each frequency band and antenna combination.

**Table 41: Calculated distances and power compliance margins**

Frequency Band	Antenna	Variable			$d$ (Calculated)	Recommended Distance	Power Compliance Margin
		$P$	$G$	$S$			
900 MHz	external	0.4 W (26 dBm)	10.0 (10 dB)	6 W/m <sup>2</sup>	0.23 m	60 cm (24 in)	7
2.4 GHz	internal	0.34 W (25 dBm)	6.3 (8 dB)	10 W/m <sup>2</sup>	0.13 m	20 cm (8 in)	2.3
	internal plus reflector	0.34 W (25 dBm)	79.4 (19 dB)	10 W/m <sup>2</sup>	0.46 m	1.5 m (5 ft)	10
5.2 GHz	internal	0.2 W (23 dBm)	5.0 (7 dB)	10 W/m <sup>2</sup>	0.09 m	20 cm (8 in)	5
	internal plus reflector	0.0032 W (5 dBm)	316 (25 dB)	10 W/m <sup>2</sup>	0.09 m	1.5 m (5 ft)	280



Frequency Band	Antenna	Variable			<i>d</i> (Calculated)	Recommended Distance	Power Compliance Margin
		<i>P</i>	<i>G</i>	<i>S</i>			
5.4 GHz	internal	0.2 W (23 dBm)	5.0 (7 dB)	10 W/m <sup>2</sup>	0.09 m	20 cm (8 in)	5
	internal plus reflector	0.0032 W (5 dBm)	316 (25 dB)	10 W/m <sup>2</sup>	0.09 m	1.5 m (5 ft)	280
5.7 GHz	internal	0.2 W (23 dBm)	5.0 (7 dB)	10 W/m <sup>2</sup>	0.09 m	20 cm (8 in)	5
	internal plus reflector	0.2 W (23 dBm)	316 (25 dB)	10 W/m <sup>2</sup>	0.71 m	1.5 m (5 ft)	4.5

## 15.2 GROUNDING CANOPY EQUIPMENT

Effective lightning protection diverts lightning current safely to ground, Protective Earth (PE) ↓. It neither attracts nor prevents lightning strikes.



### **WARNING!**

Lightning damage *is not* covered under the Canopy warranty. The recommendations in Canopy guides give the installer the knowledge to protect the installation from the harmful effects of ESD and lightning. These recommendation must be thoroughly and correctly performed. However, complete protection is neither implied or possible.

### 15.2.1 Grounding Infrastructure Equipment

To protect both your staff and your infrastructure equipment, implement lightning protection as follows:

- Observe all local and national codes that apply to grounding for lightning protection.
- Before you install your Canopy modules, perform the following steps:
  - Engage a grounding professional if you need to do so.
  - Install lightning arrestors to transport lightning strikes away from equipment. For example, install a lightning rod on a tower leg other than the leg to which you mount your module.
  - Connect your lightning rod to ground.
  - Use a Canopy 300SS Surge Suppressor (or Transtector ALPU-ORTs for OFDM BH installations) on the Ethernet cable where the cable enters any structure. (Instructions for installing a Canopy 300SS Surge Suppressor are provided in [Procedure 28](#) on Page 351.)
- Install your modules at least 2 feet (0.6 meters) below the tallest point on the tower, pole, or roof.

### 15.2.2 Grounding Canopy 30/60- and 150/300-Mbps Backhaul Modules

For grounding the Canopy OFDM series backhaul modules, see the details, caveats, and wiring schemes provided in the following documents:

- *Canopy 30 Mbps 60 Mbps Backhaul User Guide*
- *Lightning Arrestor Alert Notice*
- *Canopy 30/60 & 150/300 Mbps OFDM Backhaul Lightning Arrestor Guide.*

### 15.2.3 Grounding SMs

This section provides lightning protection guidelines for SMs to satisfy the National Electrical Code (NEC) of the United States. The requirements of the NEC focus on the safety aspects of electrical shock to personnel and on minimizing the risk of fire at a dwelling. The NEC does not address the survivability of electronic products that are exposed to lightning surges.

The statistical incidence of current levels from lightning strikes is summarized in [Table 42](#).

**Table 42: Statistical incidence of current from lightning strikes**

Percentage of all strikes	Peak Current (amps)
<2	>140,000
25	>35,000
>50	>20,000
>80	>8,500

At peak, more than one-half of all surges due to direct lightning strikes exceed 20,000 amps. However, only one-quarter exceed 35,000 amps, and less than two percent exceed 140,000 amps. Thus, the recommended Surge Suppressor (300SS) provides a degree of lightning protection to electronic devices inside a dwelling.

#### Summary of Grounding Recommendations

Motorola recommends that you ground each SM as follows:

- Extend the SM mounting bracket extend to the top of the SM or higher.
- Ground the SM mounting bracket via a 10-AWG (6 mm<sup>2</sup>) copper wire connected by the most direct path either to an eight foot-deep ground rod or to the ground bonding point of the AC power service utility entry. This provides the best assurance that
  - lightning takes the ground wire route
  - the ground wire does not fuse open
  - your grounding system complies with NEC 810-15.
- Ground the Canopy Surge Suppressor 300SS ground lug to the same ground bonding point as above, using at least a 10-AWG (6 mm<sup>2</sup>) copper wire. This provides the best assurance that your grounding system complies with NEC 810-21.

### Grounding Scheme

The proper overall antenna grounding scheme per the NEC is illustrated in [Figure 134](#) on [Page 352](#). In most television antenna or dish installations, a coaxial cable connects the outdoor electronics with the indoor electronics. To meet NEC 810-20, one typically uses a coaxial cable feed-through block that connects the outdoor coax to the indoor coax and also has a screw for attaching a ground wire. This effectively grounds the outer shield of the coax. The block should be mounted on the outside of the building near the AC main panel such that the ground wire of the block can be bonded to the primary grounding electrode system of the structure.

For residential installs, in most cases an outdoor rated *unshielded* twisted pair (UTP) cable is sufficient. To comply with the NEC, Motorola provides the antenna discharge unit, 300SS, for each conductor of the cable. This 300SS must be

- positioned
  - outside the building.
  - as near as practicable to the power service entry panel of the building and attached to the AC main power ground electrode, or attached to a grounded water pipe.<sup>6</sup>
  - far from combustible material.
- grounded in accordance with NEC 810-21, with the grounding wire attached to the screw terminal.

The metal structural elements of the antenna mast also require a separate grounding conductor. Section 810-15 of the NEC states:

*Masts and metal structures supporting antennas shall be grounded in accordance with Section 810-21.*

As shown in [Figure 134](#) on [Page 352](#), the Motorola recommendation for grounding the metal structural element of the Canopy mounting bracket (SMMB1) is to route the grounding wire from the SMMB1 down to the same ground attachment point as is used for the 300SS discharge unit.

### Use 10-AWG (6 mm<sup>2</sup>) Copper Grounding Wire

According to NEC 810-21 3(h), either a 16-AWG copper clad steel wire or a 10-AWG copper wire may be used. This specification appears to be based on mechanical strength considerations and *not* on lightning current handling capabilities.

For example, analysis shows that the two wire types are not equivalent when carrying a lightning surge that has a 1-microsecond rise by 65-microsecond fall:

- The 16-AWG copper clad steel wire has a peak fusing current of 35,000 amps and can carry 21,000 amps peak, at a temperature just below the ignition point for paper (454° F or 234° C).
- The 10-AWG copper wire has a peak fusing current of 220,000 amps and can carry 133,000 amps peak, at the same temperature.

---

<sup>6</sup> It is *insufficient* to merely use the green wire ground in a duplex electrical outlet box for grounding of the antenna discharge unit.

Based on the electrical/thermal analysis of these wires, Motorola recommends 10-AWG copper wire for *all* grounding conductors. Although roughly double the cost of 16-AWG copper clad steel wire, 10-AWG copper wire handles six times the surge current from lightning.

### Shielding is not Grounding

In part, NEC 810-21 states:

*A lightning arrester is not required if the lead-in conductors are enclosed in a continuous metal shield, such as rigid or intermediate metal conduit, electrical metallic tubing, or any metal raceway or metal-shielded cable that is effectively grounded. A lightning discharge will take the path of lower impedance and jump from the lead-in conductors to the metal raceway or shield rather than take the path through the antenna coil of the receiver.*

However, Motorola does not recommend relying on shielded twisted pair cable for lightning protection for the following reasons:

- Braid-shielded 10Base-T cable is uncommon, if existent, and may be unsuitable anyway.
- At a cost of about two-thirds more than 10-AWG copper UTP, CAT 5 100Base-TX foil-shielded twisted pair (FTP) cable provides a 24-AWG drain wire. If this wire melts open during a lightning surge, then the current may follow the twisted pair into the building.

More than 80 percent of all direct lightning strikes have current that exceeds 8,500 amps (see [Table 42](#) on [Page 174](#)). A 24-AWG copper wire melts open at 8,500 amps from a surge that has a 1-microsecond by 70-microsecond waveform. Hence, reliance on 24-AWG drain wire to comply with the intent of NEC 810-21 is questionable.

Shielded twisted pair cable may be useful for mitigation of interference in some circumstances, but installing surge suppressors and implementing the ground recommendations constitute the most effective mitigation against lightning damage.

### NEC Reference

NEC Article 810, *Radio and Television Equipment*, and associated documents and discussions are available from <http://www.neccode.com/index.php?id=homegeneral>, <http://www.constructionbook.com/xq/ASP/national-electrical-code-2005/id.370/subID.746/qx/default2.htm>, and other sources.

## 15.3 CONFORMING TO REGULATIONS

For all electrical purposes, ensure that your network conforms to applicable country and local codes, such as the NEC (National Electrical Code) in the U.S.A. If you are uncertain of code requirements, engage the services of a licensed electrician.

## 15.4 PROTECTING CABLES AND CONNECTIONS

Cables that move in the wind can be damaged, impart vibrations to the connected device, or both. At installation time, prevent these problems by securing all cables with cable ties, cleats, or PVC tape.

Over time, moisture can cause a cable connector to fail. You can prevent this problem by

- using cables that are filled with a dielectric gel or grease.
- including a drip loop where the cable approach to the module (typically a CMM2 or CMMmicro) is from above.
- wrapping the cable with weather-resistant tape.

On a module with an external antenna, use accepted industry practices to wrap the connector to prevent water ingress. Although the male and female N-type connectors form a gas-tight seal with each other, the point where the cable enters each connector can allow water ingress and eventual corrosion. Wrapping and sealing is critical to long-term reliability of the connection.

Possible sources of material to seal that point include

- the antenna manufacturer (material may have been provided in the package with the antenna).
- Universal Electronics (whose web site is <http://www.coaxseal.com>), who markets a weather-tight wrap named Coax-Seal.

Perform the following steps to wrap the cable.

#### **Procedure 4: Wrapping the cable**

1. Start the wrap on the cable 0.5 to 2 inches (about 1.5 to 5 cm) from the connection.
2. Wrap the cable to a point 0.5 to 2 inches (about 1.5 to 5 cm) above the connection.
3. Squeeze the wrap to compress and remove any trapped air.
4. Wrap premium vinyl electrical tape over the first wrap where desired for abrasion resistance or appearance.
5. Tie the cable to minimize sway from wind.

===== end of procedure =====



## 16 TESTING THE COMPONENTS

Before you install any component into your Canopy network, allow yourself the opportunity to discover that the component is defective. If you always follow the preliminary steps in this section, you will save

- installation and removal costs for a component that will not function.
- time in the process of replacing the defective component.

The best practice is to connect all the components—BHs, APs, GPS antenna, and CMM2 or CMMmicro—in a test setting and initially configure and verify them before deploying them to an installation. However, circumstances or local practice may require a different practice. In this case, appropriately modify the following procedures.

### 16.1 UNPACKING COMPONENTS

When you receive Canopy products, carefully inspect all shipping boxes for signs of damage. If you find damage, immediately notify the transportation company.

As you unpack the equipment, verify that all the components that you ordered have arrived. Save all the packing materials to use later, as you transport the equipment to and from installation sites.

### 16.2 CONFIGURING FOR TEST

You can use either of two methods to configure an AP or BHM:

- Use the Quick Start feature of the product. For more information on Quick Start, see [Quick Start Page of the AP](#) on Page 187.
- Manually set each parameter.

After you change any configuration parameter, to put the change into effect, you must do both of the following:

1. Click the **Save** button to temporarily save the change(s).
2. Click the **Reboot** button to reboot the module and implement the change(s).

#### 16.2.1 Configuring the Computing Device for Test

If your computer is configured for Dynamic Host Configuration Protocol (DHCP), disconnect the computer from the network. If your computer is instead configured for static IP addressing

- set the static address in the 169.254 network
- set the subnet mask to 255.255.0.0.

### 16.2.2 Default Module Configuration

From the factory, the Canopy AP, SM, and BH are all configured to *not transmit* on any frequency. This configuration ensures that you do not accidentally turn on an unsynchronized module. Site synchronization of modules is required because

- Canopy modules
  - cannot transmit and receive signals at the same time.
  - use TDD (Time Division Duplexing) to distribute signal access of the downlink and uplink frames.
- when one module transmits while an unintended module nearby receives signal, the transmitting module may interfere with or desense the receiving module. In this context, interference is self-interference (within the same Canopy network).

### 16.2.3 Component Layout

As shown in [Figure 52](#), the base cover of the module snaps off when you depress a lever on the back of the base cover. This exposes the Ethernet and GPS sync connectors and diagnostic LEDs.

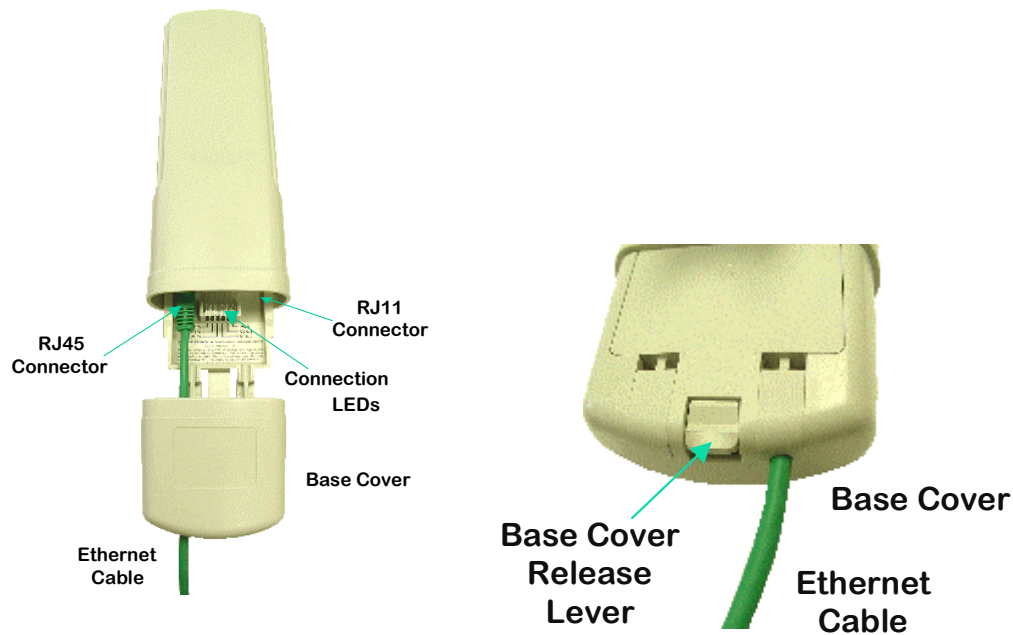


Figure 52: Canopy base cover, attached and detached



### 16.2.4 Diagnostic LEDs

The diagnostic LEDs report the following information about the status of the module. [Table 43](#) and [Table 44](#) identify the LEDs in order of their left-to-right position as the cable connections face downward.



**NOTE:**

The LED color helps you distinguish position of the LED. The LED color *does not* indicate any status.

**Table 43: LEDs in AP and BHM**

Label	Color when Active	Status Information Provided	Notes
LNK/5	green	Ethernet link	Continuously lit when link is present.
ACT/4	orange	Presence of data activity on the Ethernet link	Flashes during data transfer. Frequency of flash is not a diagnostic indication.
GPS/3	red	Pulse of sync	Continuously lit as pulse as AP receives pulse.
SES/2	green	<i>Unused on the AP</i>	SES is the session indicator on the CMM.
SYN/1	orange	Presence of sync	Always lit on the AP.
PWR	red	DC power	Always lit when power is correctly supplied.

**Table 44: LEDs in SM and BHS**

Label	Color when Active	Status if Registered	Notes	
			Operating Mode	Aiming Mode
LNK/5	green	Ethernet link	Continuously lit when link is present.	These five LEDs act as a bar graph to indicate the relative quality of alignment. As power level and jitter improve during alignment, more of these LEDs are lit.
ACT/4	orange	Presence of data activity on the Ethernet link	Flashes during data transfer. Frequency of flash is not a diagnostic indication.	
GPS/3	red	<i>Unused</i>	If this module is not registered to another, then these three LEDs cycle on and off from left to right.	
SES/2	green	<i>Unused</i>		
SYN/1	orange	Presence of sync		
PWR	red	DC power	Always lit when power is correctly supplied.	Always lit when power is correctly supplied.

### 16.2.5 CMM2 Component Layout

As shown in [Figure 131](#) on Page 346, the CMM2 comprises four assemblies:

- Ethernet switch
- Power transformer
- Interconnect board
- GPS receiver.

Some CMM2s that were sold earlier had four openings in the bottom plate, as shown in [Figure 53](#). Currently available CMM2s have two *additional* Ethernet cable and GPS sync cable openings to allow use of thicker, shielded cables.

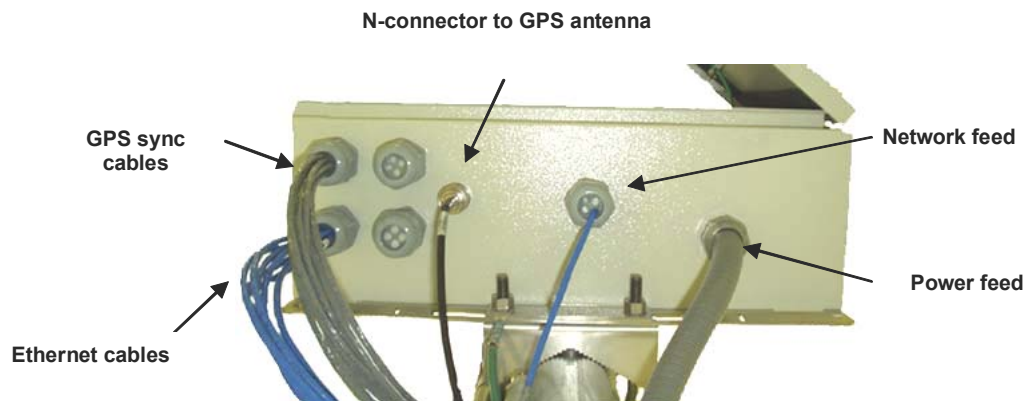
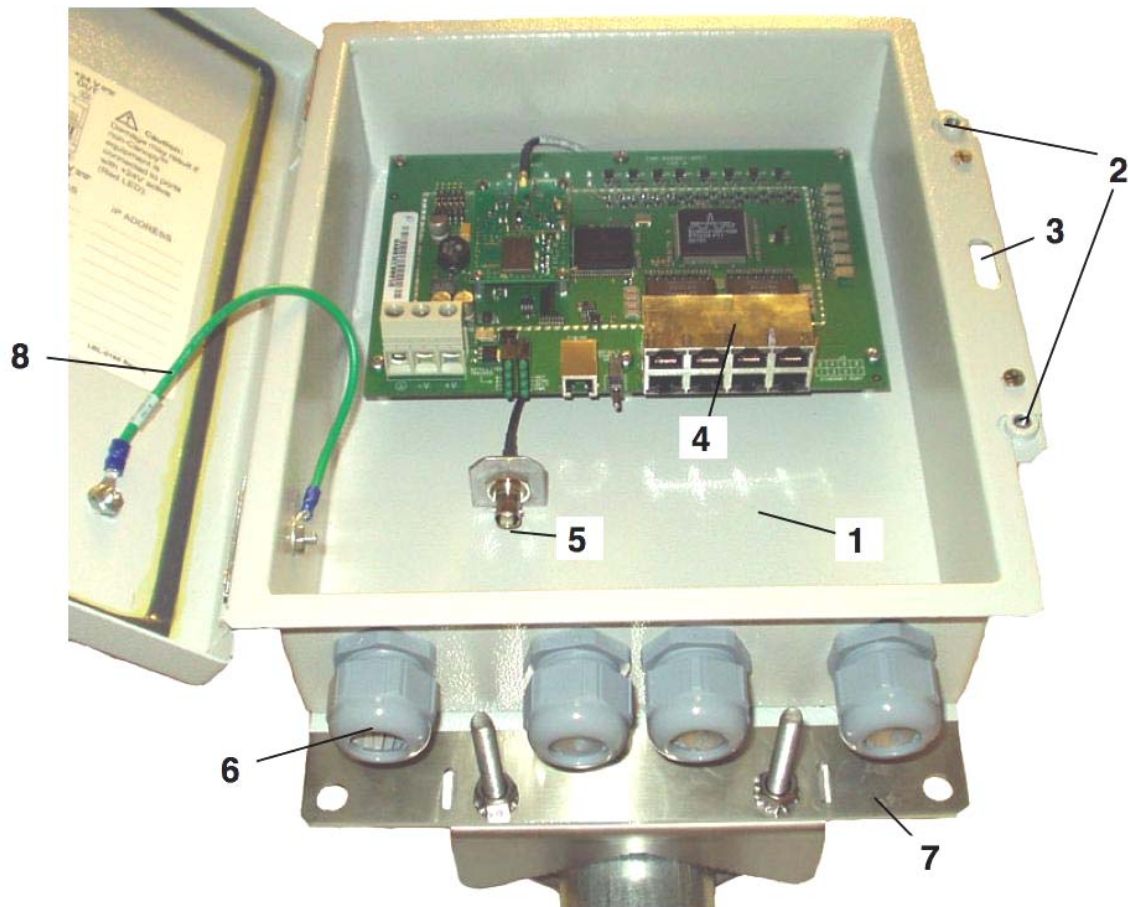


Figure 53: Canopy CMM2, bottom view

### 16.2.6 CMMmicro Component Layout

The layout of the CMMmicro is shown in [Figure 54](#).



#### LEGEND

- |   |  |
|---|--|
| 1. Weatherized enclosure  | 8. Ground strap (for grounding door to enclosure)  |
| 2. Thumb-screw/slot-screwdriver door fasteners  | 9. 100-W 115/230-V AC to 24-V DC power converter, with 10 ft (3 m) of DC power cable (not shown) |
| 3. Punch-out for padlock  | 10. 6-ft (1.8-m) AC power cord for 24 V power converter (not shown)                              |
| 4. Ethernet switch and power module   |  |
| 5. Female BNC connector   |  |
| 6. Water-tight bulkhead connectors  |  |
| 7. Flange for attachment (stainless steel for grounding to tower or building) using U bolts (provided) or other hardware such as screws, lag bolts, or attachment straps (not provided) |  |

**Figure 54: Cluster Management Module micro**

### 16.2.7 Standards for Wiring

Canopy modules automatically sense whether the Ethernet cable in a connection is wired as straight-through or crossover. You may use either straight-through or crossover cable to connect a network interface card (NIC), hub, router, or switch to these modules. For a straight-through cable, use the EIA/TIA-568B wire color-code standard on both ends. For a crossover cable, use the EIA/TIA-568B wire color-code standard on one end, and the EIA/TIA-568A wire color-code standard on the other end.

Where you use the Canopy AC wall adapter

- the power supply output is +24 VDC.
- the power input to the SM is +11.5 VDC to +30 VDC.
- the maximum Ethernet cable run is 328 feet (100 meters).

### 16.2.8 Best Practices for Cabling

The following practices are essential to the reliability and longevity of cabled connections:

- Use only shielded cables to resist interference.
- For vertical runs, provide cable support and strain relief.
- Include a 2-ft (0.6-m) service loop on each end of the cable to allow for thermal expansion and contraction and to facilitate terminating the cable again when needed.
- Include a drip loop to shed water so that most of the water does not reach the connector at the device.
- Properly crimp all connectors.
- Use dielectric grease on all connectors to resist corrosion.
- Use only shielded connectors to resist interference and corrosion.

### 16.2.9 Recommended Tools for Wiring Connectors

The following tools may be needed for cabling the AP:

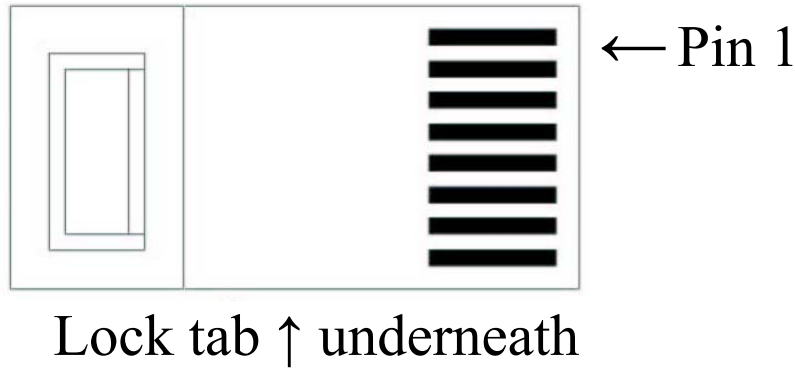
- RJ-11 crimping tool
- RJ-45 crimping tool
- electrician scissors
- wire cutters
- cable testing device.

### 16.2.10 Wiring Connectors

The following diagrams correlate pins to wire colors and illustrate crossovers where applicable.

#### Location of Pin 1

Pin 1, relative to the lock tab on the connector of a straight-through cable is located as shown below.



#### RJ-45 Pinout for Straight-through Ethernet Cable

Pin 1 → white / orange	← Pin 1	Pin	RJ-45 Straight-thru	Pin
Pin 2 → orange	← Pin 2	TX+ 1		1 RX+
Pin 3 → white / green	← Pin 3	TX- 2		2 RX-
Pin 4 → blue	← Pin 4	RX+ 3		3 TX+
Pin 5 → white / blue	← Pin 5	+V return 4		4 +V return
Pin 6 → green	← Pin 6	5		5
Pin 7 → white / brown	← Pin 7	RX- 6		6 TX-
Pin 8 → brown	← Pin 8	+V 7		7 +V
Pins 7 and 8 carry power to the modules.		8		8

Figure 55: RJ-45 pinout for straight-through Ethernet cable

#### RJ-45 Pinout for Crossover Ethernet Cable

Pin 1 → white / orange	← Pin 3	Pin	RJ-45 Crossover	Pin
Pin 2 → orange	← Pin 6	TX+ 1		3 RX+
Pin 3 → white / green	← Pin 1	TX- 2		6 RX-
Pin 4 → blue	← Pin 4	RX+ 3		1 TX+
Pin 5 → white / blue	← Pin 5	+V return 4		4 +V return
Pin 6 → green	← Pin 2	5		5
Pin 7 → white / brown	← Pin 7	RX- 6		2 TX-
Pin 8 → brown	← Pin 8	+V 7		7 +V
Pins 7 and 8 carry power to the modules.		8		8

Figure 56: RJ-45 pinout for crossover Ethernet cable

#### RJ-11 Pinout for Straight-through Sync Cable

The Canopy system uses a utility cable with RJ-11 connectors between the AP or BH and synchronization pulse. Presuming CAT 5 cable and 6-pin RJ-11 connectors, the following diagram shows the wiring of the cable for sync.

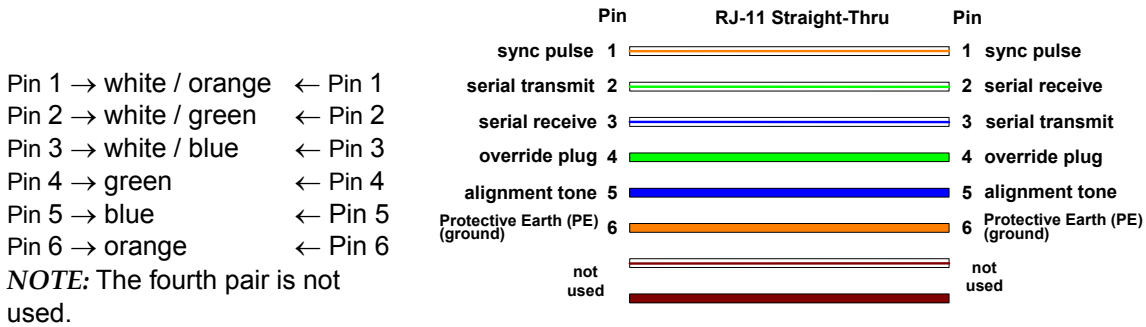


Figure 57: RJ-11 pinout for straight-through sync cable

### 16.2.11 Alignment Tone—Technical Details

The alignment tone output from a Canopy module is available on Pin 5 of the RJ-11 connector, and ground is available on Pin 6. Thus the load at the listening device should be between Pins 5 and 6. The listening device may be a headset, earpiece, or battery-powered speaker.

## 16.3 CONFIGURING A POINT-TO-MULTIPOINT LINK FOR TEST

Perform the following steps to begin the test setup.

### Procedure 5: Setting up the AP for Quick Start

1. In one hand, securely hold the top (larger shell) of the AP. With the other hand, depress the lever in the back of the base cover (smaller shell). Remove the base cover.
2. Plug one end of a CAT 5 Ethernet cable into the AP.
3. Plug the Ethernet cable connector labeled To Radio into the jack in the pig tail that hangs from the power supply.



### **WARNING!**

From this point until you remove power from the AP, stay at least as far from the AP as the minimum separation distance specified under [Preventing Overexposure to RF](#) on Page 171.

4. Plug the other connector of the pig tail (this connector labeled To Computer) into the Ethernet jack of the computing device.
5. Plug the power supply into an electrical outlet.
6. Power up the computing device.
7. Start the browser in the computing device.

===== end of procedure =====

The Canopy AP interface provides a series of web pages to configure and monitor the unit. You can access the web-based interface through a computing device that is either directly connected or connected through a network to the AP. If the computing device is not connected to a network when you are configuring the module in your test environment, and if the computer has used a proxy server address and port to configure a Canopy module, then you may need to first disable the proxy setting in the computer.

Perform the following procedure to toggle the computer to *not* use the proxy setting.

**Procedure 6: Bypassing proxy settings to access module web pages**

1. Launch Microsoft Internet Explorer.
2. Select **Tools→Internet Options→Connections→LAN Settings**.
3. Uncheck the **Use a proxy server...** box.

*NOTE:* If you use an alternate web browser, the menu selections differ from the above.

===== end of procedure =====

In the address bar of your browser, enter the IP address of the AP. (For example, enter **http://169.254.1.1** to access the AP through its default IP address). The AP responds by opening the General Status tab of its Home page.

### 16.3.1 Quick Start Page of the AP

To proceed with the test setup, click the **Quick Start** button on the left side of the General Status tab. The AP responds by opening the Quick Start page. The Quick Start tab of that page is displayed in [Figure 58](#).



**NOTE:**

If you cannot find the IP address of the AP, see [Override Plug](#) on Page 60.

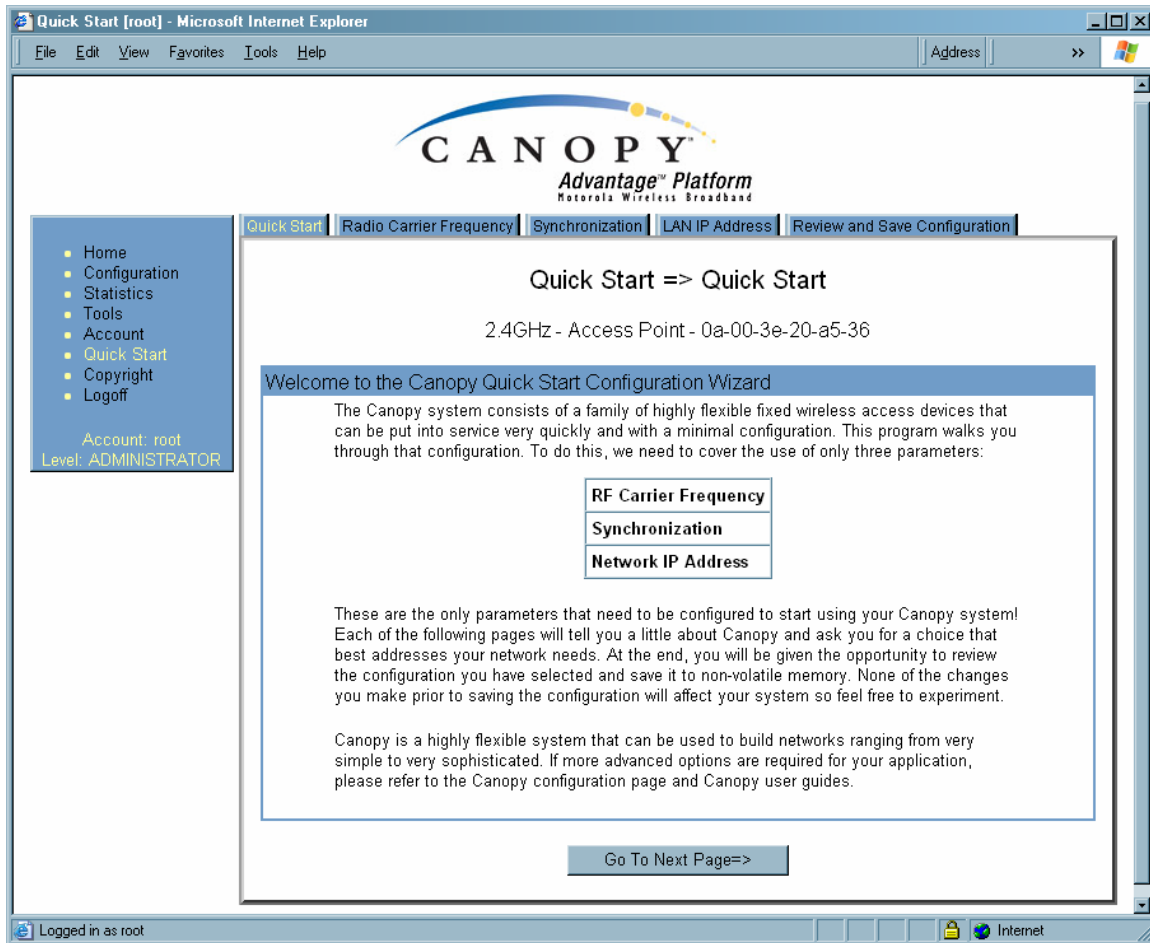


Figure 58: Quick Start tab of AP, example

Quick Start is a wizard that helps you to perform a basic configuration that places an AP into service. Only the following parameters must be configured:

- **RF Carrier Frequency**
- **Synchronization**
- **Network IP Address**

In each Quick Start tab, you can

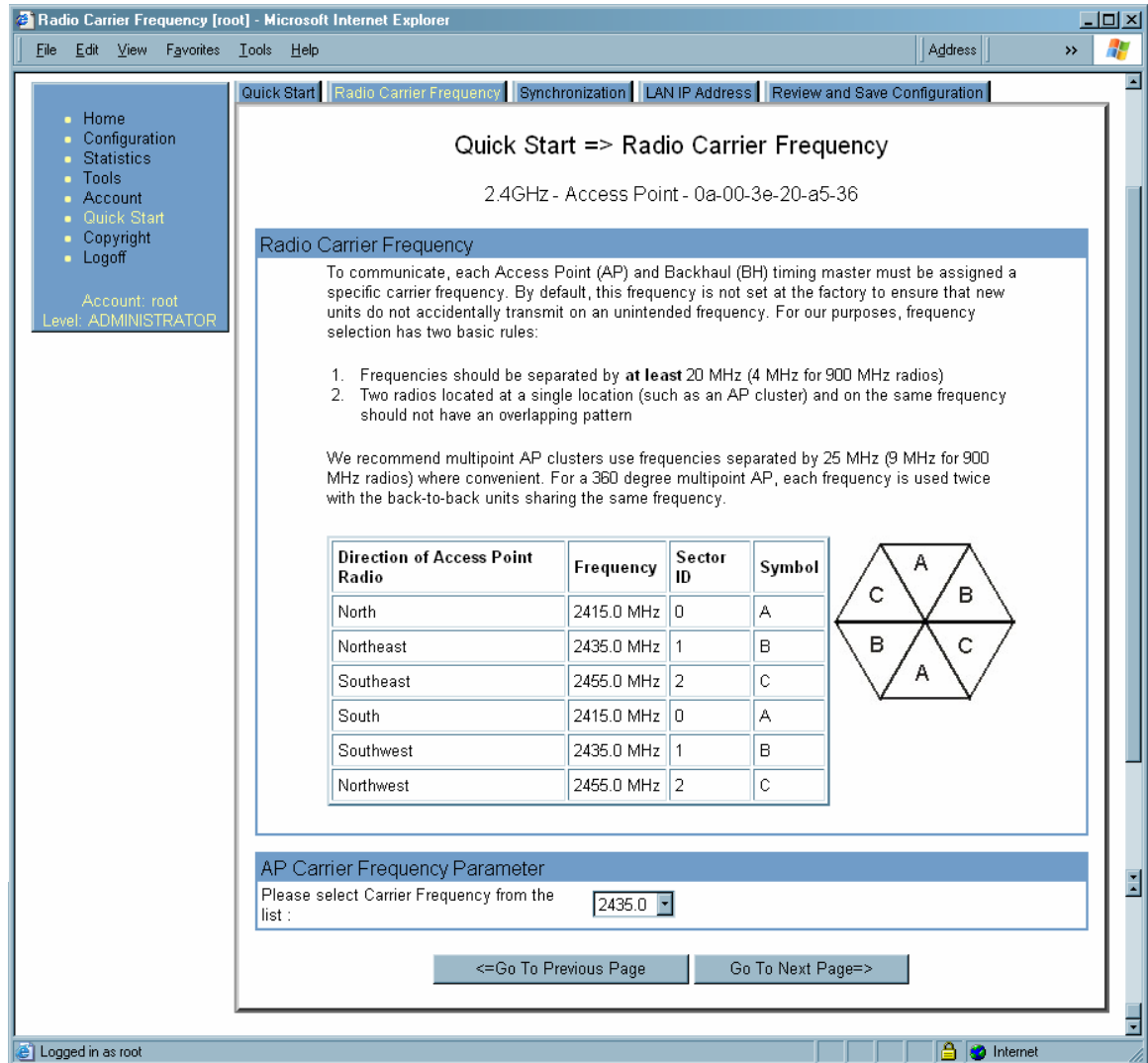
- specify the settings to satisfy the requirements of the network.
- review the configuration selected.
- save the configuration to non-volatile memory.

Proceed with the test setup as follows.



**Procedure 7: Using Quick Start to configure a standalone AP for test**

1. At the bottom of the Quick Start tab, click the **Go To Next Page =>** button.  
**RESULT:** The AP responds by opening the RF Carrier Frequency tab.  
 An example of this tab is shown in [Figure 59](#).

**Figure 59: Radio Frequency Carrier tab of AP, example**

2. From the pull-down menu in the lower left corner of this tab, select a frequency for the test.
3. Click the **Go To Next Page =>** button.  
**RESULT:** The AP responds by opening the Synchronization tab. An example of this tab is shown in [Figure 60](#).

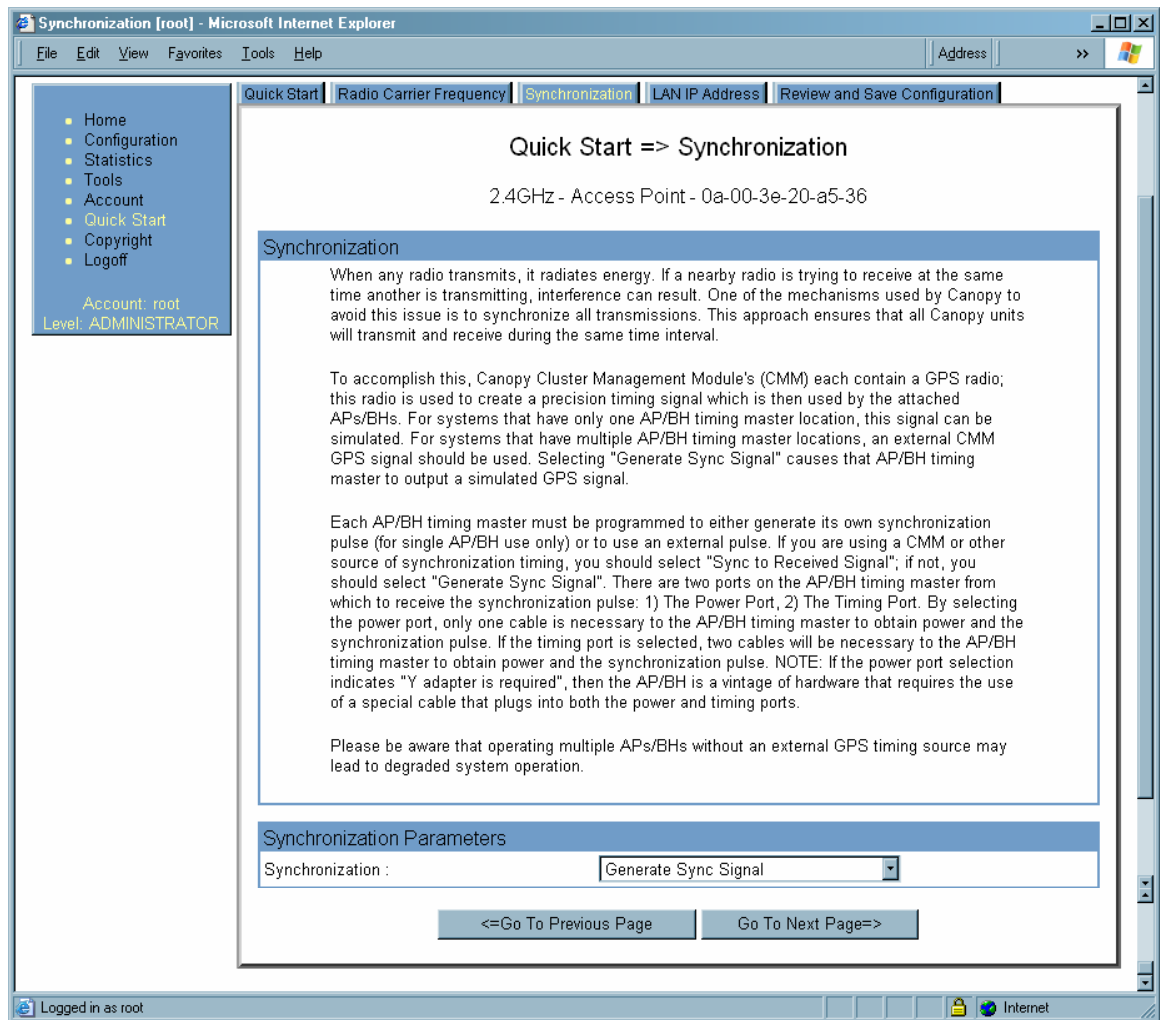


Figure 60: Synchronization tab of AP, example

4. At the bottom of this tab, select **Generate Sync Signal**.
  5. Click the **Go To Next Page =>** button.
- RESULT:** The AP responds by opening the LAN IP Address tab. An example of this tab is shown in [Figure 61](#).

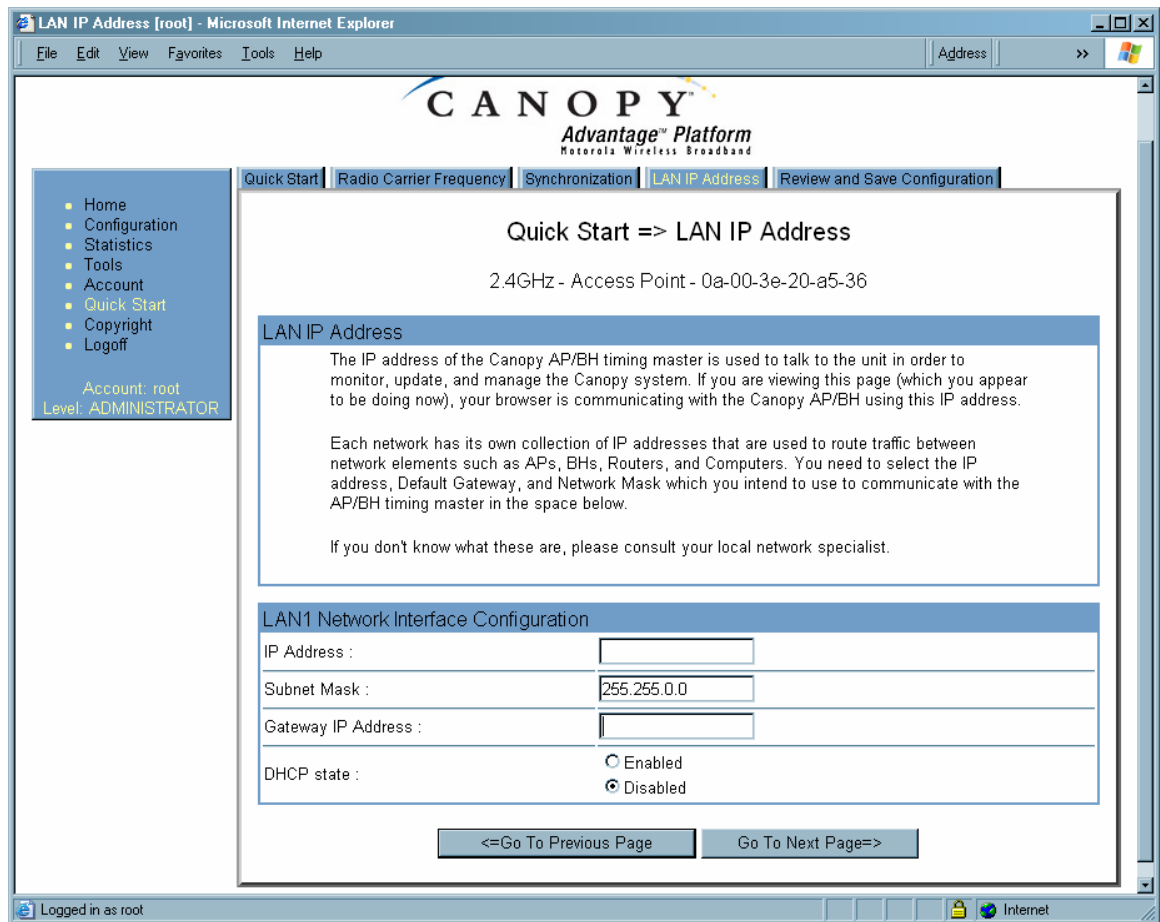


Figure 61: LAN IP Address tab of AP, example

6. At the bottom of this tab, either
  - specify an **IP Address**, a **Subnet Mask**, and a **Gateway IP Address** for management of the AP and leave the **DHCP state** set to **Disabled**.
  - set the **DHCP state** to **Enabled** to have the IP address, subnet mask, and gateway IP address automatically configured by a domain name server (DNS).
7. Click the **Go To Next Page =>** button.  
**RESULT:** The AP responds by opening the Review and Save Configuration tab. An example of this tab is shown in [Figure 62](#).

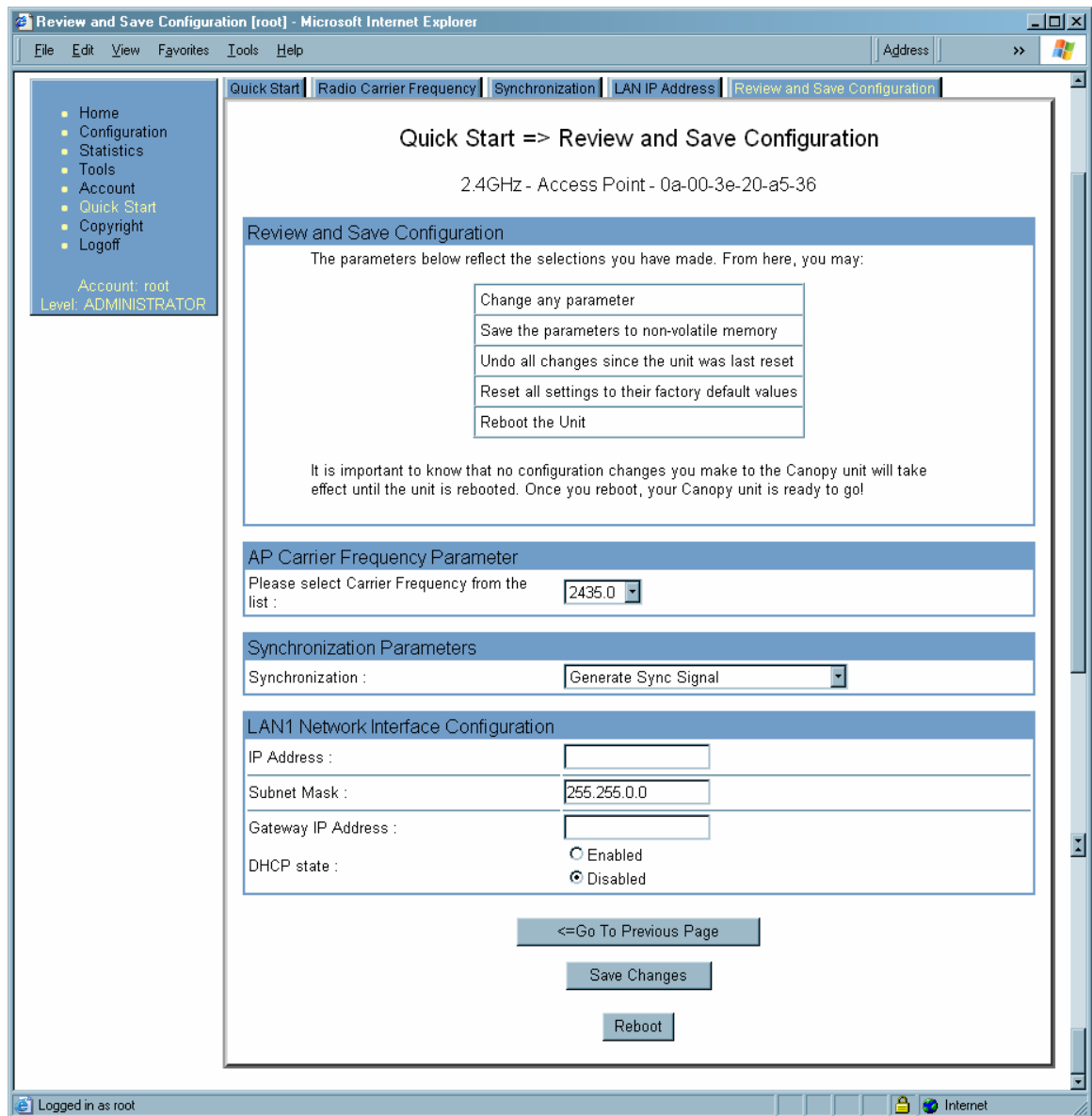


Figure 62: Review and Save Configuration tab of AP, example

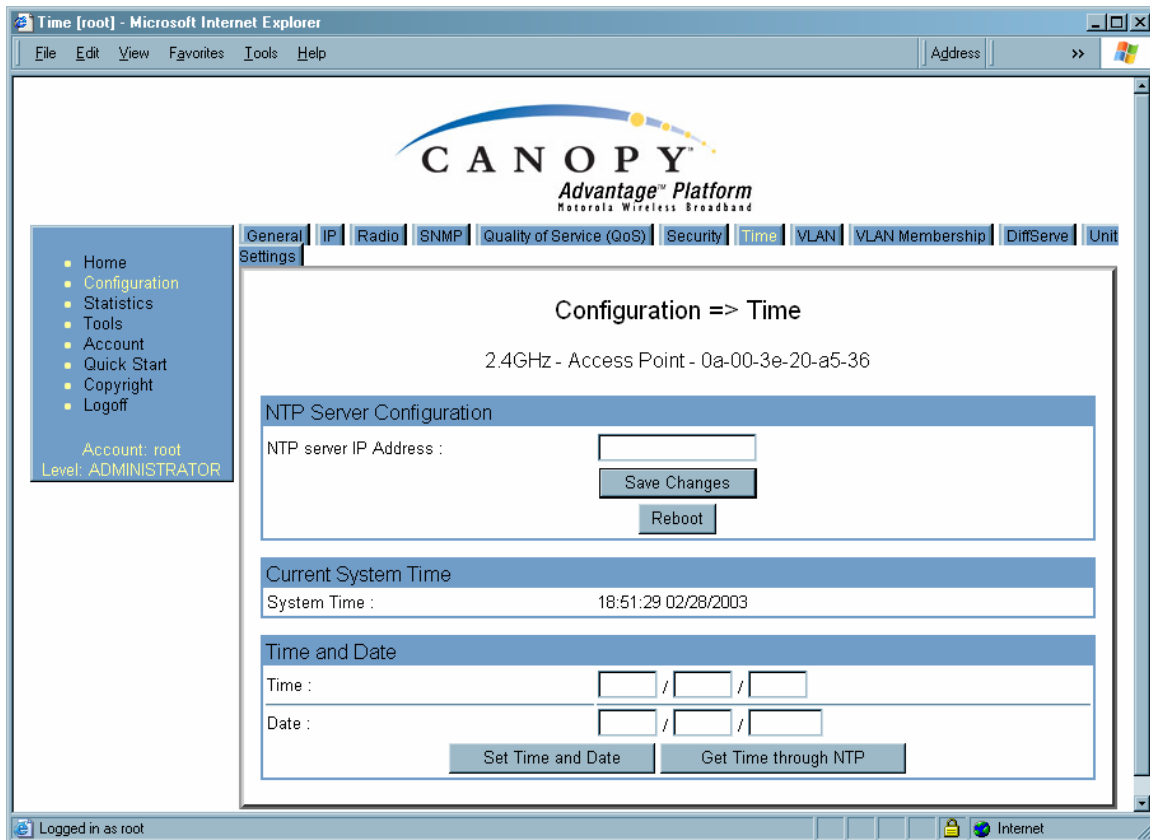
8. Ensure that the initial parameters for the AP are set as you intended.
  9. Click the **Save Changes** button.
  10. Click the **Reboot** button.
- RESULT:** The AP responds with the message **Reboot Has Been Initiated...**
11. Wait until the indicator LEDs are not red.
  12. Trigger your browser to refresh the page until the AP redisplay the General Status tab.
  13. Wait until the red indicator LEDs are not lit.

===== end of procedure =====

Canopy encourages you to experiment with the interface. Unless you save a configuration and reboot the AP after you save the configuration, none of the changes are effected.

### 16.3.2 Time Tab of the AP

To proceed with the test setup, click the **Configuration** link on the left side of the General Status tab. When the AP responds by opening the Configuration page to the General tab, click the Time tab. An example of this tab is displayed in [Figure 63](#).



**Figure 63: Time tab of AP, example**

To have each log in the AP correlated to a meaningful time and date, either a reliable network element must pass time and date to the AP or you must set the time and date whenever a power cycle of the AP has occurred. A network element passes time and date in any of the following scenarios:

- A connected CMM2 passes time and date (GPS time and date, if received).
- A connected CMMmicro passes the time and date (GPS time and date, if received), but only if both the CMMmicro is operating on CMMmicro Release 2.1 or later release. (These releases include an NTP server functionality.)
- A separate NTP server is addressable from the AP.

If the AP should obtain time and date from either a CMMmicro or a separate NTP server, enter the IP address of the CMMmicro or NTP server on this tab. To force the AP to

obtain time and date before the first (or next) 15-minute interval query of the NTP server, click **Get Time through NTP**.

If you enter a time and date, the format for entry is

Time :	<i>hh</i>	/	<i>mm</i>	/	<i>ss</i>
Date :	<i>MM</i>	/	<i>dd</i>	/	<i>yyyy</i>

where

*hh* represents the two-digit hour in the range 00 to 24  
*mm* represents the two-digit minute  
*ss* represents the two-digit second  
*MM* represents the two-digit month  
*dd* represents the two-digit day  
*yyyy* represents the four-digit year

Proceed with the test setup as follows.

- Enter the appropriate information in the format shown above.
  - Then click the **Set Time and Date** button.
- NOTE:** The time displayed at the top of this page is static unless your browser is set to automatically refresh.

#### Procedure 8: Setting up the SM for test

1. In one hand, securely hold the top (larger shell) of the SM. With the other hand, depress the lever in the back of the base cover (smaller shell). Remove the base cover.
2. Plug one end of a CAT 5 Ethernet cable into the SM RJ-45 jack.
3. Plug the other end of the Ethernet cable into the jack in the pig tail that hangs from the power supply.
4. Roughly aim the SM toward the AP.



#### **WARNING!**

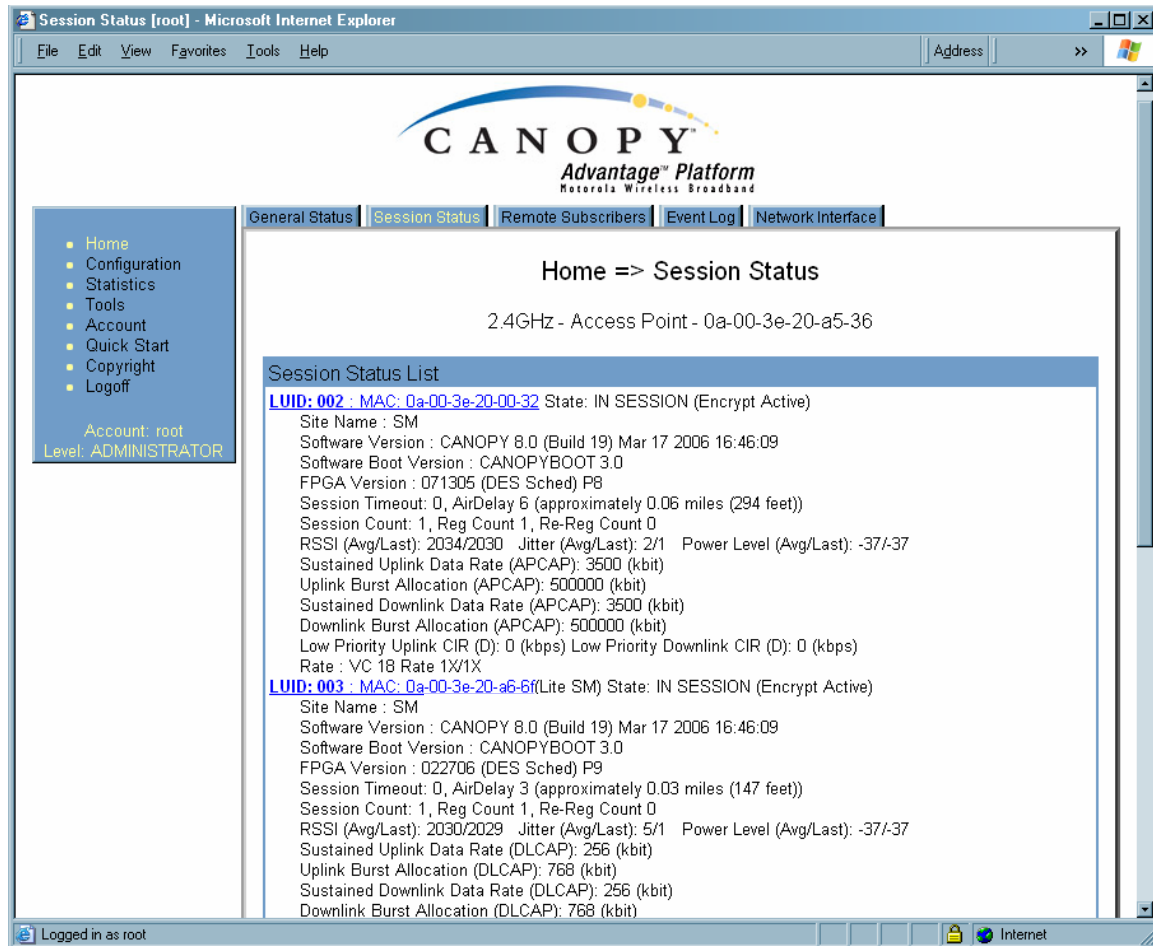
From this point until you remove power from the SM, stay at least as far from the SM as the minimum separation distance specified under [Preventing Overexposure to RF](#) on Page 171.

5. Plug the power supply into an electrical outlet.
6. Repeat the foregoing steps for each SM that you wish to include in the test.
7. Back at the computing device, on the left side of the Time & Date tab, click **Home**.
8. Click the Session Status tab.

===== end of procedure =====

### 16.3.3 Session Status Tab of the AP

An example of the AP Session Status tab is displayed in Figure 64.



**Figure 64: Session Status tab data from AP, example**

If no SMs are registered to this AP, then the Session Status tab displays the simple message **No sessions**. In this case, try the following steps.

#### Procedure 9: Retrying to establish a point-to-multipoint link

1. More finely aim the SM or SMs toward the AP.
2. Recheck the Session Status tab of the AP for the presence of LUIDs.
3. If still no LUIDs are reported on the Session Status tab, click the **Configuration** button on the left side of the Home page.  
*RESULT:* The AP responds by opening the AP Configuration page.
4. Click the Radio tab.
5. Find the **Color Code** parameter and note the setting.
6. In the same sequence as you did for the AP directly under [Configuring a Point-to-Multipoint Link for Test](#) on Page 186, connect the SM to a computing device and to power.

7. On the left side of the SM Home page, click the **Configuration** button.  
*RESULT:* The Configuration page of the SM opens.
8. Click the Radio tab.
9. If the transmit frequency of the AP is not selected in the **Custom Radio Frequency Scan Selection List** parameter, select the frequency that matches.
10. If the **Color Code** parameter on this page is not identical to the **Color Code** parameter you noted from the AP, change one of them so that they match.
11. At the bottom of the Radio tab for the SM, click the **Save Changes** button.
12. Click the **Reboot** button.
13. Allow several minutes for the SM to reboot and register to the AP.
14. Return to the computing device that is connected to the AP.
15. Recheck the Session Status tab of the AP for the presence of LUIDs.

===== end of procedure =====

The Session Status tab provides information about each SM that has registered to the AP. This information is useful for managing and troubleshooting a Canopy system. All information that you have entered in the **Site Name** field of the SM displays in the Session Status tab of the linked AP.

The Session Status tab also includes the current active values on each SM (LUID) for MIR, CIR, and VLAN, as well as the source of these values (representing the SM itself, BAM, or the AP and cap, if any—for example, APCAP as shown in [Figure 64](#) above). L indicates a Canopy Lite SM, and D indicates from the device. As an SM registers to the AP, the configuration source that this page displays for the associated LUID may change. After registration, however, the displayed source is stable and can be trusted.

The Session Status tab of the AP provides the following parameters.

### LUID

This field displays the LUID (logical unit ID) of the SM. As each SM registers to the AP, the system assigns an LUID of 2 or a higher unique number to the SM. If an SM loses registration with the AP and then regains registration, the SM will retain the same LUID.



#### NOTE:

The LUID association is lost when a power cycle of the AP occurs.

### MAC

This field displays the MAC address (or electronic serial number) of the SM.

### State

This field displays the current status of the SM as either

- **IN SESSION** to indicate that the SM is currently registered to the AP.
- **IDLE** to indicate that the SM was registered to the AP at one time, but now is not.

This field also indicates whether the encryption scheme in the module is enabled.



**Site Name**

This field indicates the name of the SM. You can assign or change this name on the Configuration web page of the SM. This information is also set into the *sysName* SNMP MIB-II object and can be polled by an SNMP management server.

**Software Version**

This field displays the software release that operates on the SM, the release date and time of the software.

**Software Boot Version**

This field indicates the CANOPYBOOT version number.

**FPGA Version**

This field displays the version of FPGA that runs on the SM.

**Session Timeout**

This field displays the timeout in seconds for management sessions via HTTP, telnet, or ftp access to the SM. 0 indicates that no limit is imposed.

**AirDelay**

This field displays the distance of the SM from the AP. To derive the distance in meters, multiply the displayed number by 0.3048. At close distances, the value in this field is unreliable.

**Session Count**

This field displays how many sessions the SM has had with the AP. Typically, this is the sum of Reg Count and Re-Reg Count. However, the result of internal calculation may display here as a value that slightly differs from the sum.

If the number of sessions is significantly greater than the number for other SMs, then this may indicate a link problem or an interference problem.

**Reg Count**

When an SM makes a registration request, the AP checks its local data to see whether it considers the SM to be already registered. If the AP concludes that the SM is not, then the request increments the value of this field.

**Re-Reg Count**

When an SM makes a registration request, the AP checks its local data to see whether it considers the SM to be already registered. If the AP concludes that the SM is not, then the request increments the value of this field. Typically, a Re-Reg is the case where both

- an SM attempts to reregister for having lost communication with the AP.
- the AP has not yet observed the link to the SM as being down.

A high number in this field is often an indication of link instability or interference problems.

**RSSI, Jitter, and Power Level (Avg/Last)**

The Session Status tab shows the received **Power Level** in dBm and **Jitter**. Proper alignment maximizes **Power Level** and minimizes **Jitter**. As you refine alignment, you should favor lower jitter over higher dBm. For example, if coarse alignment gives an SM a power level of -75 dBm and a jitter measurement of 5, and further refining

the alignment drops the power level to -78 dBm and the jitter to 2 or 3, use the refined alignment, with the following caveats:

- When the receiving link is operating at 1X, the **Jitter** scale is 0 to 15 with desired jitter between 0 and 4.
- When the receiving link is operating at 2X, the **Jitter** scale is 0 to 15 with desired jitter between 0 and 9.

For historical relevance, the Session Status tab also shows the **RSSI**, the unitless measure of power. Use **Power Level** and ignore **RSSI**. **RSSI** implies more accuracy and precision than is inherent in its measurement.

### Sustained Uplink Data Rate

This field displays the value that is currently in effect for the SM, with the source of that value in parentheses. This is the specified rate at which each SM registered to this AP is replenished with credits for transmission. The configuration source of the value is indicated in parentheses. See

- [Maximum Information Rate \(MIR\) Parameters](#) on Page 86
- [Interaction of Burst Allocation and Sustained Data Rate Settings](#) on Page 88
- [Setting the Configuration Source](#) on Page 297.

### Uplink Burst Allocation

This field displays the value that is currently in effect for the SM, with the source of that value in parentheses. This is the specified maximum amount of data that each SM is allowed to transmit before being recharged at the **Sustained Uplink Data Rate** with credits to transmit more. The configuration source of the value is indicated in parentheses. See

- [Maximum Information Rate \(MIR\) Parameters](#) on Page 86
- [Interaction of Burst Allocation and Sustained Data Rate Settings](#) on Page 88
- [Setting the Configuration Source](#) on Page 297.

### Sustained Downlink Data Rate

This field displays the value that is currently in effect for the SM, with the source of that value in parentheses. This is the specified the rate at which the AP should be replenished with credits (tokens) for transmission to each of the SMs in its sector. The configuration source of the value is indicated in parentheses. See

- [Maximum Information Rate \(MIR\) Parameters](#) on Page 86
- [Interaction of Burst Allocation and Sustained Data Rate Settings](#) on Page 88
- [Setting the Configuration Source](#) on Page 297.

### Downlink Burst Allocation

This field displays the value that is currently in effect for the SM, with the source of that value in parentheses. This is the maximum amount of data to allow the AP to transmit to any registered SM before the AP is replenished with transmission credits at the **Sustained Downlink Data Rate**. The configuration source of the value is indicated in parentheses. See

- [Maximum Information Rate \(MIR\) Parameters](#) on Page 86
- [Interaction of Burst Allocation and Sustained Data Rate Settings](#) on Page 88

- [Setting the Configuration Source](#) on Page 297.

### Low Priority Uplink CIR

This field displays the value that is currently in effect for the SM, with the source of that value in parentheses. The configuration source of the value is indicated in parentheses. See

- [Committed Information Rate](#) on Page 88
- [Setting the Configuration Source](#) on Page 297.

### Low Priority Downlink CIR

This field displays the value that is currently in effect for the SM, with the source of that value in parentheses. The configuration source of the value is indicated in parentheses. See

- [Committed Information Rate](#) on Page 88
- [Setting the Configuration Source](#) on Page 297.

### Rate

This field displays whether the high-priority channel is enabled in the SM and the status of 1X or 2X operation in the SM. See [Checking the Status of 2X Operation](#) on Page 94.

## 16.3.4 Beginning the Test of Point-to-Multipoint Links

To begin the test of links, perform the following steps:

1. In the Session Status tab of the AP, note the LUID associated with the MAC address of any SM you wish to involve in the test.
2. Click the Remote Subscribers tab.

## 16.3.5 Remote Subscribers Tab of the AP

An example of a Remote Subscribers tab is displayed in [Figure 65](#).

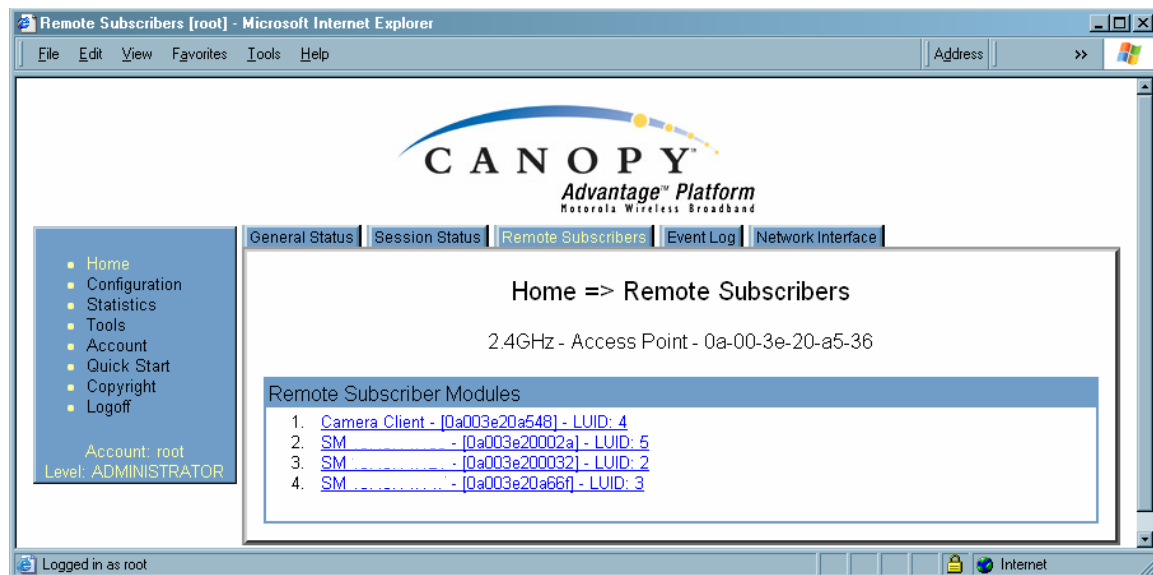
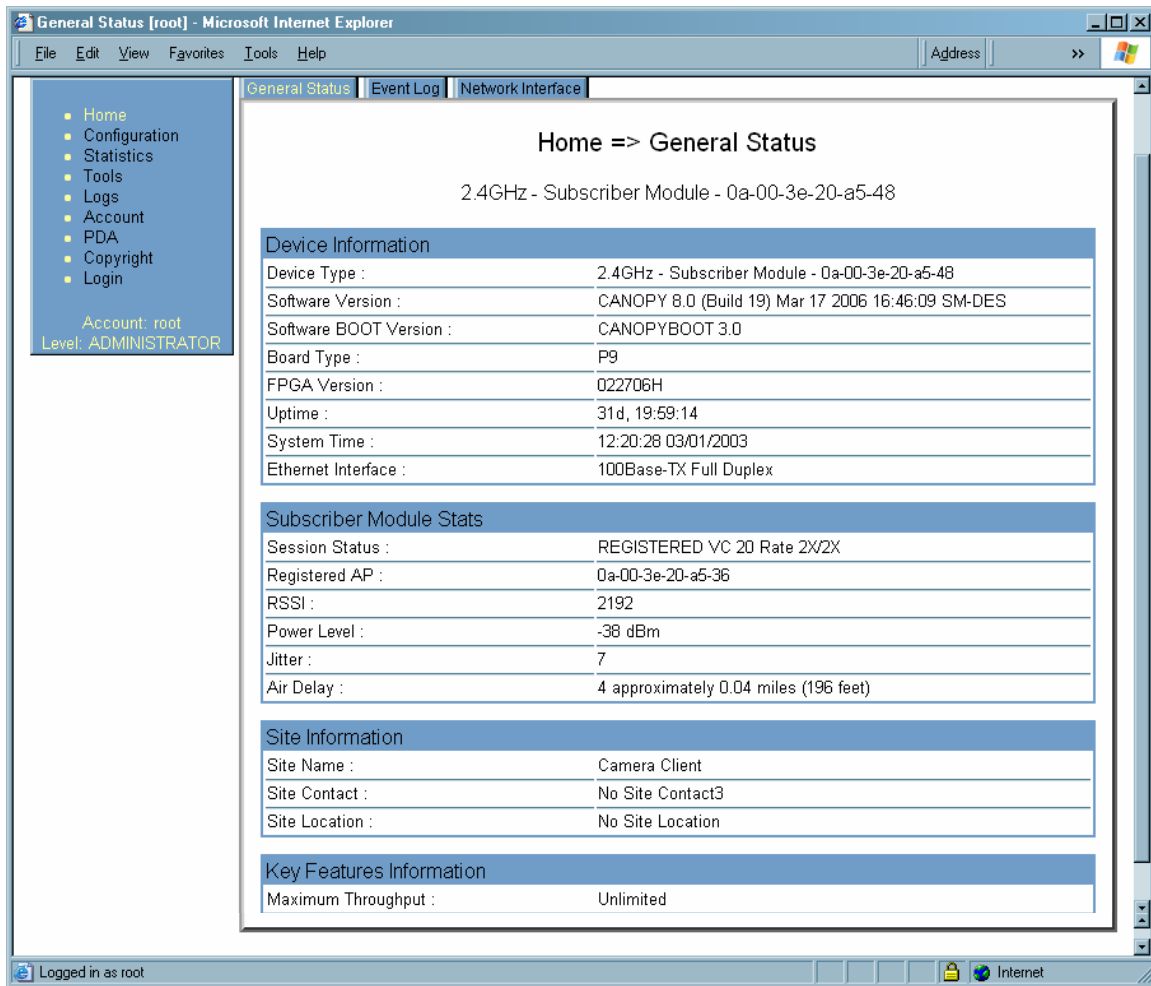


Figure 65: Remote Subscribers tab of AP, example

This tab allows you to view the web pages of registered SMs over the RF link. To view the pages for a selected SM, click its link. The General Status tab of the SM opens.

### 16.3.6 General Status Tab of the SM

An example of the General Status tab of an SM is displayed in [Figure 66](#).



**Figure 66: General Status tab of SM, example**

The General Status tab provides information on the operation of this SM. This is the tab that opens by default when you access the GUI of the SM. The General Status tab provides the following read-only fields.

#### Device Type

This field indicates the type of the Canopy module. Values include the frequency band of the SM, its module type, and its MAC address.

**Software Version**

This field indicates the Canopy system release, the time and date of the release, and whether communications involving the module are secured by DES or AES encryption (see [Encrypting Canopy Radio Transmissions](#) on Page 377). If you request technical support, provide the information from this field.

**Software BOOT Version**

This field indicates the version of the CANOPYBOOT file. If you request technical support, provide the information from this field.

**Board Type**

This field indicates the series of hardware. See [Designations for Hardware in Radios](#) on Page 373.

**FPGA Version**

This field indicates the version of the field-programmable gate array (FPGA) on the module. When you request technical support, provide the information from this field.

**Uptime**

This field indicates how long the module has operated since power was applied.

**System Time**

This field provides the current time. Any SM that registers to an AP inherits the system time, which is displayed in this field as GMT (Greenwich Mean Time).

**Ethernet Interface**

This field indicates the speed and duplex state of the Ethernet interface to the SM.

**Session Status**

This field displays the following information about the current session:

- **Scanning** indicates that this SM currently cycles through the radio frequencies that are selected in the Radio tab of the Configuration page.
- **Syncing** indicates that this SM currently attempts to receive sync.
- **Registering** indicates that this SM has sent a registration request message to the AP and has not yet received a response.
- **Registered** indicates that this SM is both
  - registered to an AP.
  - ready to transmit and receive data packets.
- **Alignment** indicates that this SM is in an aiming mode. See [Table 44](#) on Page 181.

**Registered AP**

This field displays the MAC address of the AP to which this SM is registered.

**RSSI, Power Level, and Jitter**

The General Status tab shows the received **Power Level** in dBm and **Jitter**. Proper alignment maximizes **Power Level** and minimizes **Jitter**. As you refine alignment, you should favor lower jitter over higher dBm. For example, if coarse alignment gives an SM a power level of -75 dBm and a jitter measurement of 5, and further refining

the alignment drops the power level to -78 dBm and the jitter to 2 or 3, use the refined alignment, with the following caveats:

- When the receiving link is operating at 1X, the **Jitter** scale is 0 to 15 with desired jitter between 0 and 4.
- When the receiving link is operating at 2X, the **Jitter** scale is 0 to 15 with desired jitter between 0 and 9.

For historical relevance, the General Status tab also shows the **RSSI**, the unitless measure of power. Use **Power Level** and ignore **RSSI**. **RSSI** implies more accuracy and precision than is inherent in its measurement.



**NOTE:**

Unless the page is set to auto-refresh, the values displayed are from the instant the General Status tab was selected. To keep a current view of the values, refresh the browser screen or set to auto-refresh.

### Air Delay

This field displays the distance in feet between this SM and the AP. To derive the distance in meters, multiply the value of this parameter by 0.3048. Distances reported as less than 200 feet (61 meters) are unreliable.

### Site Name

This field indicates the name of the physical module. You can assign or change this name in the SNMP tab of the SM Configuration page. This information is also set into the *sysName* SNMP MIB-II object and can be polled by an SNMP management server.

### Site Contact

This field indicates contact information for the physical module. You can provide or change this information in the SNMP tab of the SM Configuration page. This information is also set into the *sysName* SNMP MIB-II object and can be polled by an SNMP management server.

### Site Location

This field indicates site information for the physical module. You can provide or change this information in the SNMP tab of the SM Configuration page.

### Maximum Throughput

This field indicates the limit of aggregate throughput for the SM and is based on the default (factory) limit of the SM and any floating license that is currently assigned to it.

### 16.3.7 Continuing the Test of Point-to-Multipoint Links

To resume the test of links, perform the following steps.

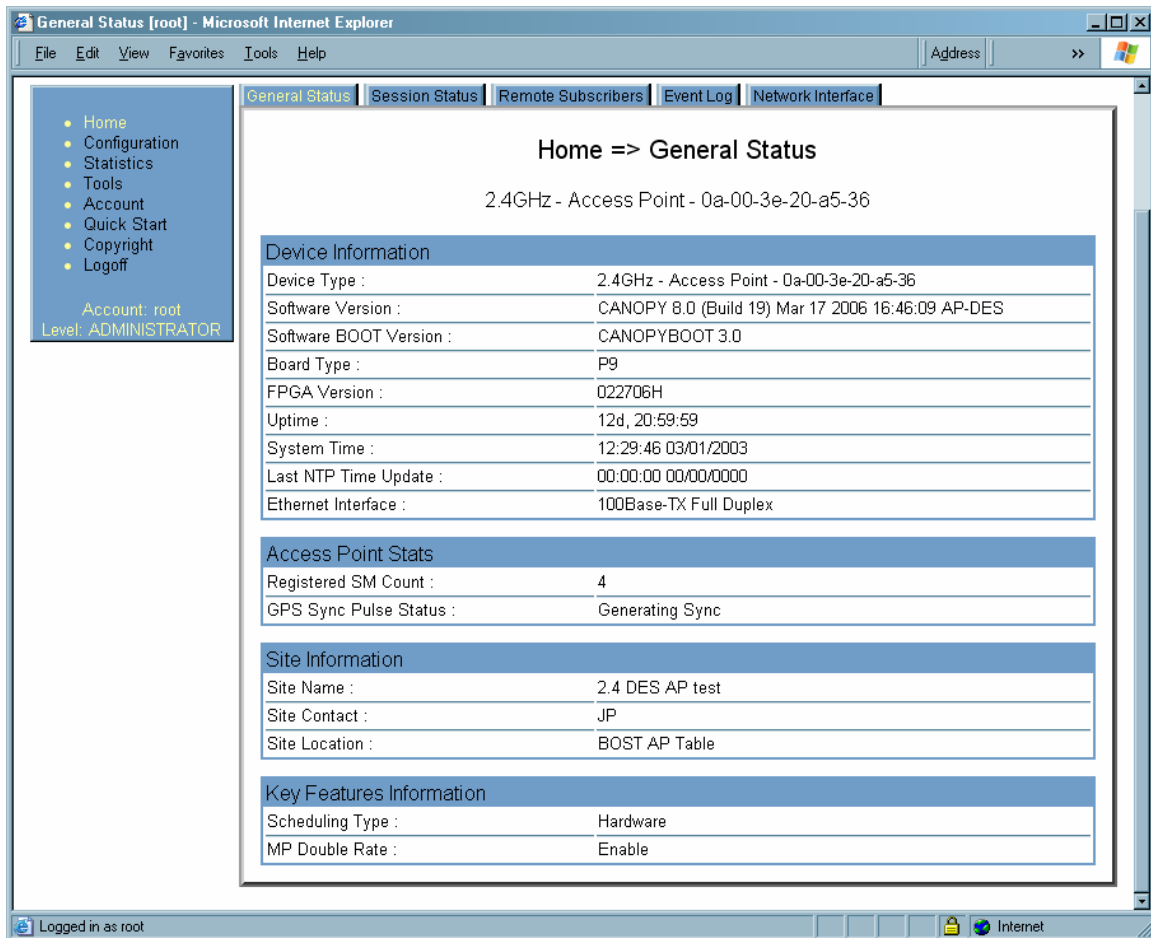
#### Procedure 10: Verifying and recording information from SMs

1. Verify that the **Session Status** field of the General Status tab in the SM indicates **REGISTERED**.
2. While you view the General Status tab in the SM, note (or print) the values of the following fields:
  - **Device type**
  - **Software Version**
  - **Software BOOT Version**
  - **Board Type**
  - **FPGA Version**
3. Systematically ensure that you can retrieve this data (from a database, for example) when you later prepare to deploy the SM to subscriber premises.
4. Return you to the Remote Subscribers tab of the AP.
5. Click the link of the next SM that you wish to test.
6. Repeat the test procedure from that point. When you have tested all of the SMs that you intend to test, return your browser to the General Status tab of the AP.

===== end of procedure =====

### 16.3.8 General Status Tab of the AP

An example of an AP General Status tab is displayed in [Figure 67](#).



**Figure 67: General Status tab of AP, example**

The General Status tab provides information on the operation of this AP. This is the tab that opens by default when you access the GUI of the AP. The General Status tab provides the following read-only fields.

#### Device Type

This field indicates the type of the Canopy module. Values include the frequency band of the AP, its module type, and its MAC address.

#### Software Version

This field indicates the Canopy system release, the time and date of the release, and whether communications involving the module are secured by DES or AES encryption (see [Encrypting Canopy Radio Transmissions](#) on Page 377). If you request technical support, provide the information from this field.

#### Software BOOT Version

This field indicates the version of the CANOPYBOOT file. If you request technical support, provide the information from this field.



**Board Type**

This field indicates the series of hardware. See [Designations for Hardware in Radios](#) on Page 373.

**FPGA Version**

This field indicates the version of the field-programmable gate array (FPGA) on the module. When you request technical support, provide the information from this field.

**Uptime**

This field indicates how long the module has operated since power was applied.

**System Time**

This field provides the current time. If the AP is connected to a CMM, then this field provides GMT (Greenwich Mean Time). Any SM that registers to the AP inherits the system time.

**Last NTP Time Update**

This field displays when the AP last used time sent from an NTP server. If the AP has not been configured in the Time tab of the Configuration page to request time from an NTP server, then this field is populated by 00:00:00 00/00/00.

**Ethernet Interface**

This field indicates the speed and duplex state of the Ethernet interface to the AP.

**Registered SM Count**

This field indicates how many SMs are registered to the AP.

**GPS Sync Pulse Status**

This field indicates the status of synchronization as follows:

- **Generating sync** indicates that the module is set to *generate* the sync pulse.
- **Receiving Sync** indicates that the module is set to *receive* a sync pulse from an outside source and is receiving the pulse.
- **ERROR: No Sync Pulse** indicates that the module is set to *receive* a sync pulse from an outside source and is not receiving the pulse.

**NOTE:**

When this message is displayed, the AP transmitter is turned off to avoid self-interference within the Canopy system.

**Site Name**

This field indicates the name of the physical module. You can assign or change this name in the SNMP tab of the AP Configuration page. This information is also set into the *sysName* SNMP MIB-II object and can be polled by an SNMP management server.

**Site Contact**

This field indicates contact information for the physical module. You can provide or change this information in the SNMP tab of the AP Configuration page. This information is also set into the *sysName* SNMP MIB-II object and can be polled by an SNMP management server.

**Site Location**

This field indicates site information for the physical module. You can provide or change this information in the SNMP tab of the AP Configuration page.

**Scheduling Type**

This field indicates the type of frame scheduler that is active in the AP.

**MP Double Rate**

This field indicates whether 2X modulation rate is enabled for the sector.

**16.3.9 Concluding the Test of Point-to-Multipoint Links**

To conclude the test, perform the following steps.

**Procedure 11: Verifying and recording information from the AP**

1. Confirm that the **GPS Sync Pulse Status** field indicates **Generating Sync**.  
*NOTE:* This indication confirms that the AP is properly functional.
2. While your browser is directed to this General Status tab, note (or print) the values of the following fields:
  - **Device type**
  - **Software Version**
  - **Software BOOT Version**
  - **Board Type**
  - **FPGA Version**
3. Systematically ensure that you can retrieve this data when you prepare to deploy the AP.

===== end of procedure =====

**16.4 CONFIGURING A POINT-TO-POINT LINK FOR TEST****NOTE:**

This section supports the Canopy 10- and 20-Mbps Backhaul Modules. To find setup and configuration guides that support the OFDM Series Backhaul Modules, refer to [Products Not Covered by This User Guide](#) on Page 34.

Perform the following steps to begin the test setup.

**Procedure 12: Setting up the BH for Quick Start**

1. In one hand, securely hold the top (larger shell) of the BH that you intend to deploy as a timing master. With the other hand, depress the lever in the back of the base cover (smaller shell). Remove the base cover.
2. Plug one end of a CAT 5 Ethernet cable into the timing master.
3. Plug the other end of the Ethernet cable into the jack in the pig tail that hangs from the power supply.
4. Plug the other connector of the pig tail into the Ethernet jack of the computing device.

**WARNING!**

From this point until you remove power from the BH, stay at least as far from the BH as the minimum separation distance specified under [Preventing Overexposure to RF](#) on Page 171.

5. Plug the power supply into an electrical outlet.
6. Power up the computing device.
7. Start the browser in the computing device.

===== end of procedure =====

The Canopy BH interface provides a series of web pages to configure and monitor the unit. These screens are subject to change by subsequent software releases.

You can access the web-based interface through only a computing device that is either directly connected or connected through a network to the BH. If the computing device is not connected to a network when you are configuring the module in your test environment, and if the computer has used a proxy server address and port to configure a Canopy module, then you may need to first disable the proxy setting in the computer.

To toggle the computer to *not* use the proxy setting, perform [Procedure 6](#) on Page 187.

In the address bar of your browser, enter the IP address of the BHM (default is 169.254.1.1). The BHM responds by opening the General Status tab of its Home page.

**16.4.1 Quick Start Page of the BHM**

To proceed with the test setup, click the **Quick Start** button on the left side of the General Status tab. The BHM responds by opening the Quick Start tab of the Quick Start page. An example of this tab is displayed in [Figure 68](#).

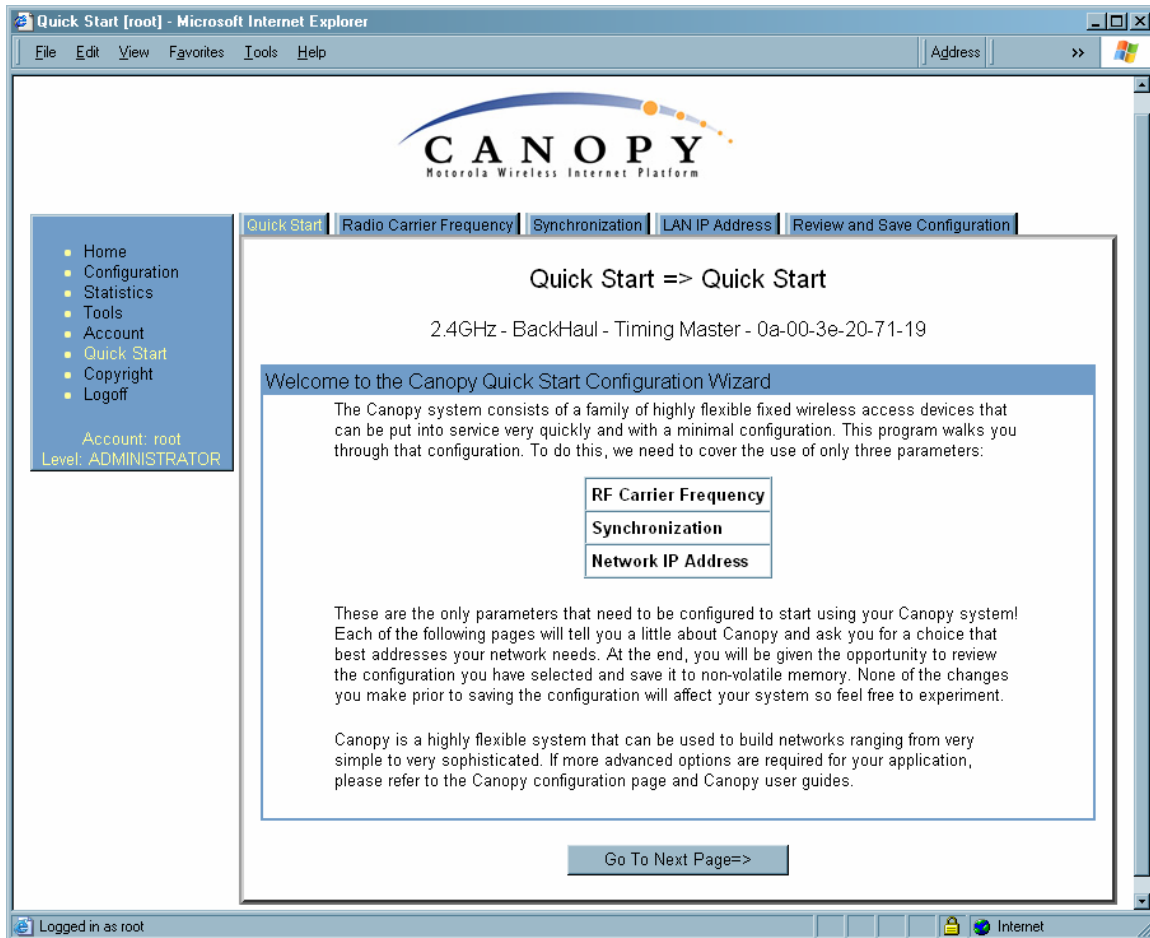


Figure 68: Quick Start tab of BHM, example

Quick Start is a wizard that helps you to perform a basic configuration that places a BHM into service. Only the following variables must be configured:

- **RF Carrier Frequency**
- **Synchronization**
- **Network IP Address**

In each page under Quick Start, you can

- specify the settings to satisfy the requirements of the network.
- review the configuration selected.
- save the configuration to non-volatile memory.

Proceed with the test setup as follows.

**Procedure 13: Using Quick Start to configure the BHs for test**

1. At the bottom of the Quick Start tab, click the **Go To Next Page =>** button.  
*RESULT:* The BHM responds by opening the RF Carrier Frequency tab.
2. From the pull-down menu in the lower left corner of this page, select a frequency for the test.
3. Click the **Go To Next Page =>** button.  
*RESULT:* The BHM responds by opening the Synchronization tab.
4. At the bottom of this page, select **Generate Sync Signal**.
5. Click the **Go To Next Page =>** button.  
*RESULT:* The BHM responds by opening the LAN IP Address tab.
6. At the bottom of this tab, either
  - specify an **IP Address**, **Subnet Mask**, and **Gateway IP Address** for management of the BHM and leave the **DHCP State** set to **Disabled**.
  - set the **DHCP State** to **Enabled** to have the IP address, subnet mask, and gateway IP address automatically configured by a domain name server (DNS).
7. Click the **Go To Next Page =>** button.  
*RESULT:* The BHM responds by opening the Review and Save Configuration tab.
8. Ensure that the initial parameters for the BHM are set as you intended.
9. Click the **Save Changes** button.
10. On the left side of the tab, click the **Configuration** button.  
*RESULT:* The BH responds by opening the General tab of its Configuration page.
11. In the **Timing Mode** parameter, select **Timing Master**.
12. Click the **Save Changes** button.
13. Click the **Reboot** button.  
*RESULT:* The BHM responds with the message **Reboot Has Been Initiated....** This BH is now forced to provide sync for the link and has a distinct set of web interface pages, tabs, and parameters for the role of BHM.
14. Wait until the indicator LEDs are not red.
15. Trigger your browser to refresh the page until the BHM redisplay the General Status tab of its Home page.
16. Repeat these steps to configure the other BH in the pair to be a BHS, selecting **Timing Slave** in Step 11.

===== end of procedure =====

Canopy encourages you to experiment with the interface. Unless you save a configuration and reboot the BHM after you save the configuration, none of the changes are effected.

**16.4.2 Time Tab of the BHM**

To proceed with the test setup, in the BHM, click the **Configuration** button on the left side of the General Status tab. The BHM responds by opening its Configuration page to the General tab. Click the Time tab. An example of this tab is displayed in [Figure 69](#).

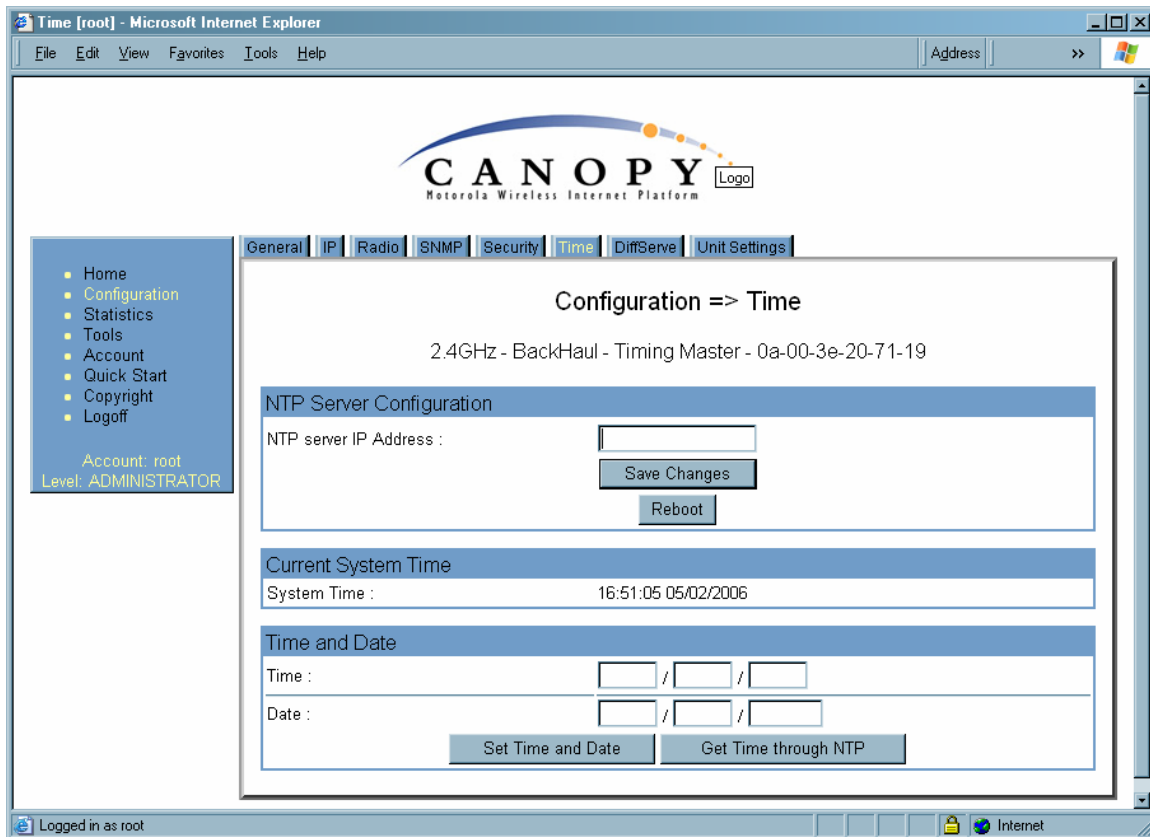


Figure 69: Time tab of BHM, example

To have each log in the BHM correlated to a meaningful time and date, either a reliable network element must pass time and date to the BHM or you must set the time and date whenever a power cycle of the BHM has occurred. A network element passes time and date in any of the following scenarios:

- A connected CMM2 passes time and date (GPS time and date, if received).
- A connected CMMmicro passes the time and date (GPS time and date, if received), but only if the CMMmicro is operating on CMMmicro Release 2.1 or later release. (These releases include an NTP server functionality.)
- A separate NTP server is addressable from the BHM.

If the BHM should derive time and date from either a CMMmicro or a separate NTP server, enter the IP address of the CMMmicro or NTP server on this tab. To force the BHM to derive time and date before the first (or next) 15-minute interval query of the NTP server, click **Get Time through NTP**.

If you enter a time and date, the format for entry is

Time :	<i>hh</i>	/	<i>mm</i>	/	<i>ss</i>
Date :	<i>MM</i>	/	<i>dd</i>	/	<i>yyyy</i>

where

*hh* represents the two-digit hour in the range 00 to 24  
*mm* represents the two-digit minute  
*ss* represents the two-digit second  
*MM* represents the two-digit month  
*dd* represents the two-digit day  
*yyyy* represents the four-digit year

Proceed with the test setup as follows.

#### Procedure 14: Setting up the BHS for test

1. Enter the appropriate information in the format shown above.
2. Click the **Set Time and Date** button.  
*NOTE:* The time displayed at the top of this page is static unless your browser is set to automatically refresh.
3. In one hand, securely hold the top (larger shell) of the BH that you intend to deploy as a timing slave. With the other hand, depress the lever in the back of the base cover (smaller shell). Remove the base cover.
4. Plug one end of a CAT 5 Ethernet cable into the BHS.
5. Plug the other end of the Ethernet cable into the jack in the pig tail that hangs from the power supply.
6. Roughly aim the BHS toward the BHM.

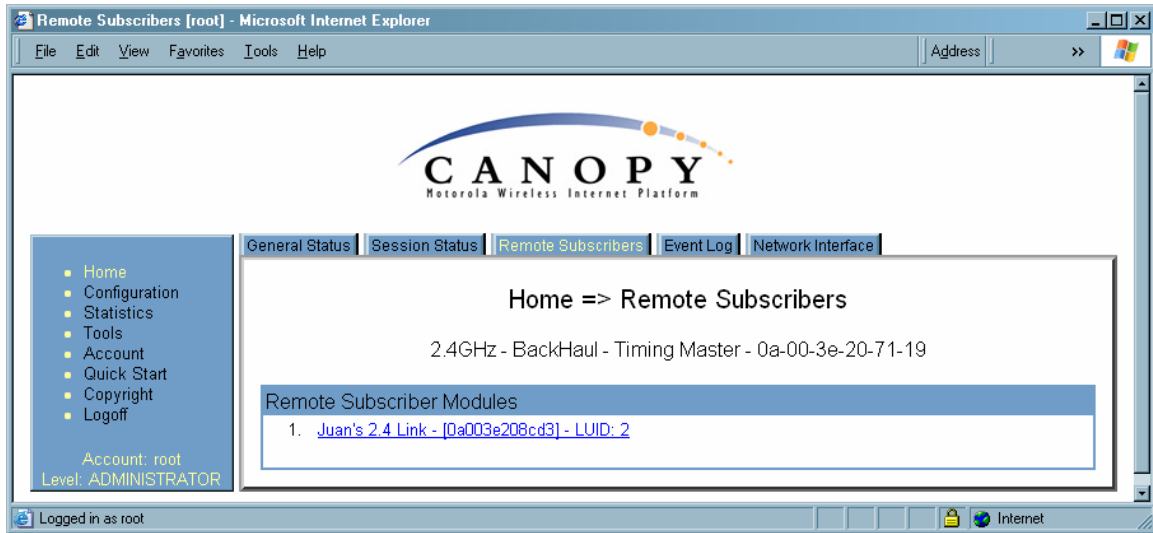


#### **WARNING!**

From this point until you remove power from the BHS, stay at least as far from the BHS as the minimum separation distance specified under [Preventing Overexposure to RF](#) on Page 171.

7. Plug the power supply into an electrical outlet.
8. Back at the computing device, on the left side of the BHM Time tab, click the **Home** button. When the Home page opens to the General Status tab, click the **Remote Subscribers** tab.  
*RESULT:* The BHM opens the Remote Subscribers tab. An example of this tab is shown in [Figure 70](#).

===== end of procedure =====



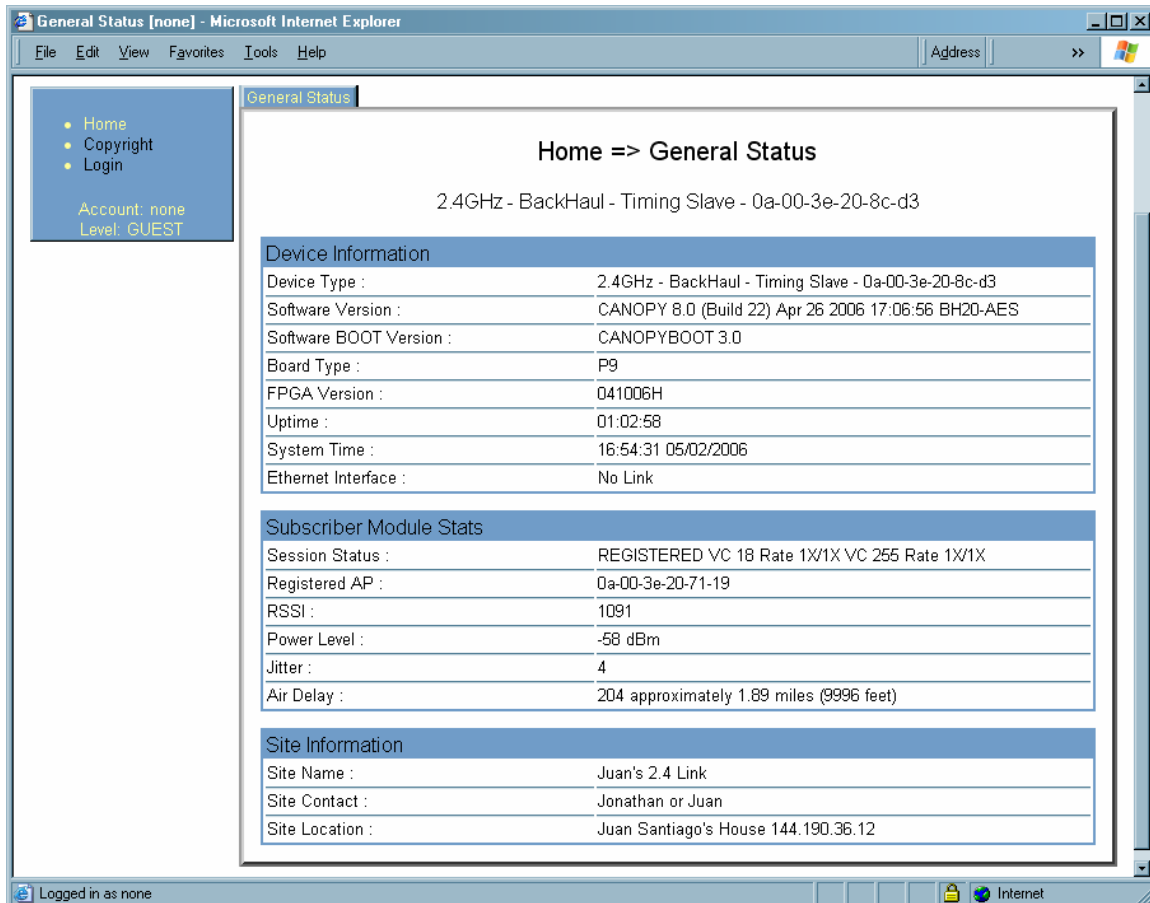
**Figure 70: Remote Subscribers tab of BHM, example**



### 16.4.3 Beginning the Test of Point-to-Point Links

To begin the test of your BH link, in the Remote Subscribers tab of the BHM, click the link to the BHS. The BHS GUI opens to the General Status tab of its Home page.

An example of the BHS General Status tab is displayed in [Figure 71](#).



**Figure 71: General Status tab of BHS, example**

The General Status tab provides information on the operation of this BHS. This is the tab that opens by default when you access the GUI of the BHS. The General Status tab provides the following read-only fields.

#### Device Type

This field indicates the type of the Canopy module. Values include the frequency band of the BHS, its module type, and its MAC address.

#### Software Version

This field indicates the Canopy system release, the time and date of the release, the modulation rate, and whether communications involving the module are secured by DES or AES encryption (see [Encrypting Canopy Radio Transmissions](#) on Page 377). If you request technical support, provide the information from this field.

**Software BOOT Version**

This field indicates the version of the CANOPYBOOT file. If you request technical support, provide the information from this field.

**Board Type**

This field indicates the series of hardware. See [Designations for Hardware in Radios](#) on Page 373.

**FPGA Version**

This field indicates the version of the field-programmable gate array (FPGA) on the module. When you request technical support, provide the information from this field.

**Uptime**

This field indicates how long the module has operated since power was applied.

**System Time**

This field provides the current time. When a BHS registers to a BHM, it inherits the system time, which is displayed in this field as GMT (Greenwich Mean Time).

**Ethernet Interface**

This field indicates the speed and duplex state of the Ethernet interface to the BHS.

**Session Status**

This field displays the following information about the current session:

- **Scanning** indicates that this SM currently cycles through the RF frequencies that are selected in the Radio tab of the Configuration page.
- **Syncing** indicates that this SM currently attempts to receive sync.
- **Registering** indicates that this SM has sent a registration request message to the AP and has not yet received a response.
- **Registered** indicates that this SM is both
  - registered to an AP.
  - ready to transmit and receive data packets.
- **Alignment** indicates that this SM is in an aiming mode. See [Table 44](#) on Page 181.

**Registered AP**

This field displays the MAC address of the BHM to which this BHS is registered.

**RSSI, Power Level, and Jitter**

The General Status tab shows the received **Power Level** in dBm and **Jitter**. Proper alignment maximizes **Power Level** and minimizes **Jitter**. As you refine alignment, you should favor lower jitter over higher dBm. For example, if coarse alignment gives the BHS a power level of -75 dBm and a jitter measurement of 5, and further refining the alignment drops the power level to -78 dBm and the jitter to 2 or 3, use the refined alignment, with the following caveats:

- When the receiving link is operating at 1X, the **Jitter** scale is 0 to 15 with desired jitter between 0 and 4.

- When the receiving link is operating at 2X, the **Jitter** scale is 0 to 15 with desired jitter between 0 and 9.

For historical relevance, the General Status tab also shows the **RSSI**, the unitless measure of power. Use **Power Level** and ignore **RSSI**. **RSSI** implies more accuracy and precision than is inherent in its measurement.



**NOTE:**

Unless the page is set to auto-refresh, the values displayed are from the instant the General Status tab was selected. To keep a current view of the values, refresh the browser screen or set to auto-refresh.

### Air Delay

This field displays the distance in feet between the BHS and the BHM. To derive the distance in meters, multiply the value of this parameter by 0.3048. Distances reported as less than 200 feet (61 meters) are unreliable.

### Site Name

This field indicates the name of the physical module. You can assign or change this name in the SNMP tab of the BHS Configuration page. This information is also set into the *sysName* SNMP MIB-II object and can be polled by an SNMP management server.

### Site Contact

This field indicates contact information for the physical module. You can provide or change this information in the SNMP tab of the BHS Configuration page. This information is also set into the *sysName* SNMP MIB-II object and can be polled by an SNMP management server.

### Site Location

This field indicates site information for the physical module. You can provide or change this information in the SNMP tab of the BHS Configuration page.

## 16.4.4 Continuing the Test of Point-to-Point Links

To resume the test, perform the following steps.

### Procedure 15: Verifying and recording information from the BHS

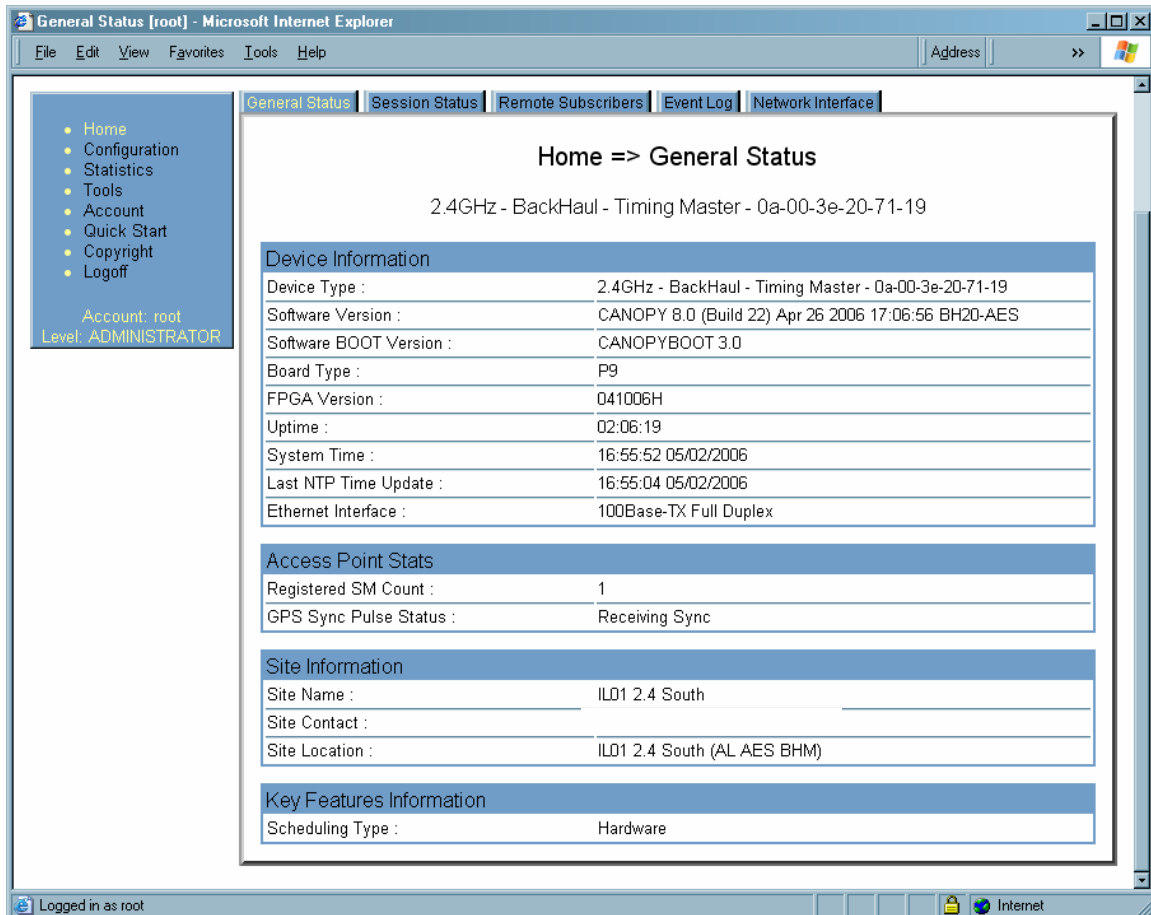
1. Verify that the **Session Status** field of the General Status tab in the BHS indicates **REGISTERED**.  
*NOTE:* This indication confirms that the BHS is properly functional.
2. While your browser is set to the General Status tab, note (or print) the values of the following fields:
  - **Device type**
  - **Software Version**
  - **Software BOOT Version**
  - **Board Type**
  - **FPGA Version**

3. Systematically ensure that you can retrieve this data when you prepare to deploy the BHS.
4. Return your browser to the General Status tab of the BHM.

===== end of procedure =====

### 16.4.5 General Status Tab of the BHM

An example of a BHM General Status tab is displayed in [Figure 72](#).



**Figure 72: General Status tab of BHM, example**

The Status page provides information on the operation of the module. This is the default web page for the module. The Status page provides the following fields.

#### Device Type

This field indicates the type of the Canopy module. Values include the frequency band of the module, the module type, timing mode, and the MAC address of the module.

#### Software Version

This field indicates the software release that is operated on the module, the release date and time of the software release, the modulation rate capability, and whether the module

is secured by DES or AES encryption (see [Encrypting Canopy Radio Transmissions](#) on Page 377). When you request technical support, provide the information from this field.

**Software BOOT Version**

This field indicates the version of the CANOPYBOOT file. If you request technical support, provide the information from this field.

**Board Type**

This field indicates the series of hardware. See [Designations for Hardware in Radios](#) on Page 373.

**FPGA Version**

This field indicates the version of the field-programmable gate array (FPGA) on the module. When you request technical support, provide the information from this field.

**Uptime**

This field indicates how long the module has operated since power was applied.

**System Time**

This field provides the current time. If the BHM is connected to a CMM, then this field provides GMT (Greenwich Mean Time). The BHS that registers to the BHM inherits the system time.

**Last NTP Time Update**

If the Time & Date page of the module specifies that time should be received from an NTP server, then this field indicates when the time was last updated by a Network Time Protocol (NTP) server.

**Ethernet Interface**

This field indicates the speed and duplex state of the Ethernet interface to the module.

**Registered SM Count**

This field confirms that only one BHS is registered to the BHM.

**GPS Sync Pulse Status**

This field indicates the status of synchronization as follows:

- **Generating sync** indicates that the module is set to *generate* the sync pulse.
- **Receiving Sync** indicates that the module is set to *receive* a sync pulse from an outside source and is receiving the pulse.
- **ERROR: No Sync Pulse** indicates that the module is set to *receive* a sync pulse from an outside source and is not receiving the pulse.

**NOTE:**

When this message is displayed, the BHM transmitter is turned off to avoid self-interference within the Canopy system.

**Site Name**

This field indicates the name of the physical module. You can assign or change this name in the SNMP tab of the BHM Configuration page. This information is also set into the *sysName* SNMP MIB-II object and can be polled by an SNMP management server.

**Site Contact**

This field indicates contact information for the physical module. You can provide or change this information in the SNMP tab of the BHM Configuration page. This information is also set into the *sysName* SNMP MIB-II object and can be polled by an SNMP management server.

**Site Location**

This field indicates site information for the physical module. You can provide or change this information in the SNMP tab of the BHM Configuration page.

**Scheduling Type**

This field indicates the type of frame scheduler that is active in the BHM.

**16.4.6 Concluding the Test of Point-to-Point Links**

To conclude the test, perform the following steps.

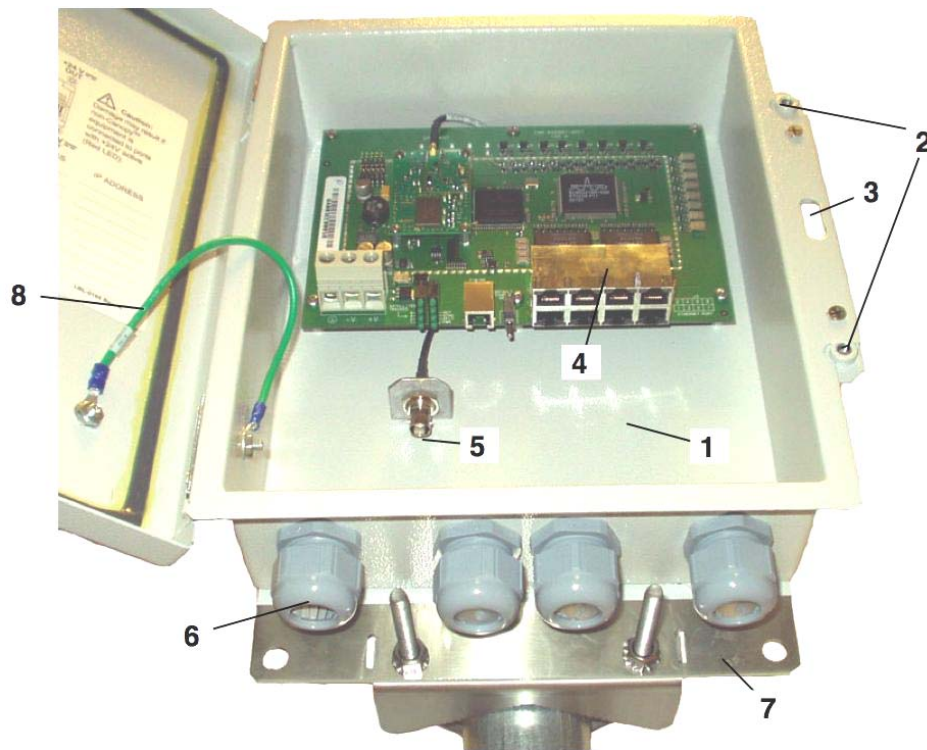
**Procedure 16: Verifying and recording information from the BHM**

1. Confirm that the **GPS Sync Pulse Status** field indicates **Generating Sync**.  
*NOTE:* This indication confirms that the BHM is properly functional.
2. While your browser is set to this BHM Status page, note (or print) the values of the following fields:
  - **Device type**
  - **Software Version**
  - **Software BOOT Version**
  - **Board Type**
  - **FPGA Version**
3. Systematically ensure that you can retrieve this data when you prepare to deploy the BHM.

===== end of procedure =====

### 16.4.7 Setting up a CMMmicro

The layout of the CMMmicro is as shown in [Figure 73](#).



- 1 Weatherized enclosure
- 2 Thumb-screw/slot-screwdriver door fasteners
- 3 Punch-out for padlock
- 4 Ethernet switch and power module
- 5 Female BNC connector
- 6 Water-tight bulkhead connectors
- 7 Flange for attachment (stainless steel so it grounds to tower or building) using U bolts (provided) or other hardware such as screws or lag bolts or attachment straps (not provided).
- 8 Ground strap to ground door to enclosure

**Figure 73: CMMmicro layout**

Perform the following procedure to set up the CMMmicro.



**IMPORTANT!**

Start with the 24-V DC power converter *unconnected* to AC.

**Procedure 17: Setting up a CMMmicro**

1. Connect the converter lead whose insulation has a white stripe to +V on the CMMmicro terminal block.
2. Connect the converter lead whose insulation is solid black to -V on the CMMmicro terminal block.
3. Connect the power converter to an AC receptacle using the AC power cord.
4. Wait until the green LED labeled RDY flashes.  
*NOTE:* This should occur in less than one minute and will indicate that the CMMmicro has transitioned from booting to normal operation.
5. Observe which, if any, Ethernet ports are powered, as indicated by a lit red LED to the right of the Ethernet port.  
*NOTE:* The position of this +24-V OUT LED is shown in [Figure 74](#) on [Page 221](#).



**CAUTION!**

Never connect any devices other than Canopy APs and BHs to a powered port. Powered ports are indicated by a red LED to the right of the port. (See Item 7 in [Figure 75](#) on [Page 222](#).) A powered port has 24-V DC on Pins 7 and 8 and 24-V return on Pins 4 and 5. This can damage other networking equipment, such as a computer or a router.

6. On the 8-port Ethernet block of the CMMmicro, use either a straight-through or crossover Ethernet cable to connect any *unpowered* port (*without* the red LED lit) to a browser-equipped computer.  
*NOTE:* The CMMmicro auto-senses the cable type.
7. Verify these CMMmicro connections against [Figure 76](#) on [Page 223](#).
8. Configure the computer to use DHCP, with no proxy in your network settings.
9. Open the browser.
10. In the address bar, enter 169.254.1.1 (the default IP address of the CMMmicro).  
*RESULT:* The browser displays the CMMmicro Status page.

===== end of procedure =====



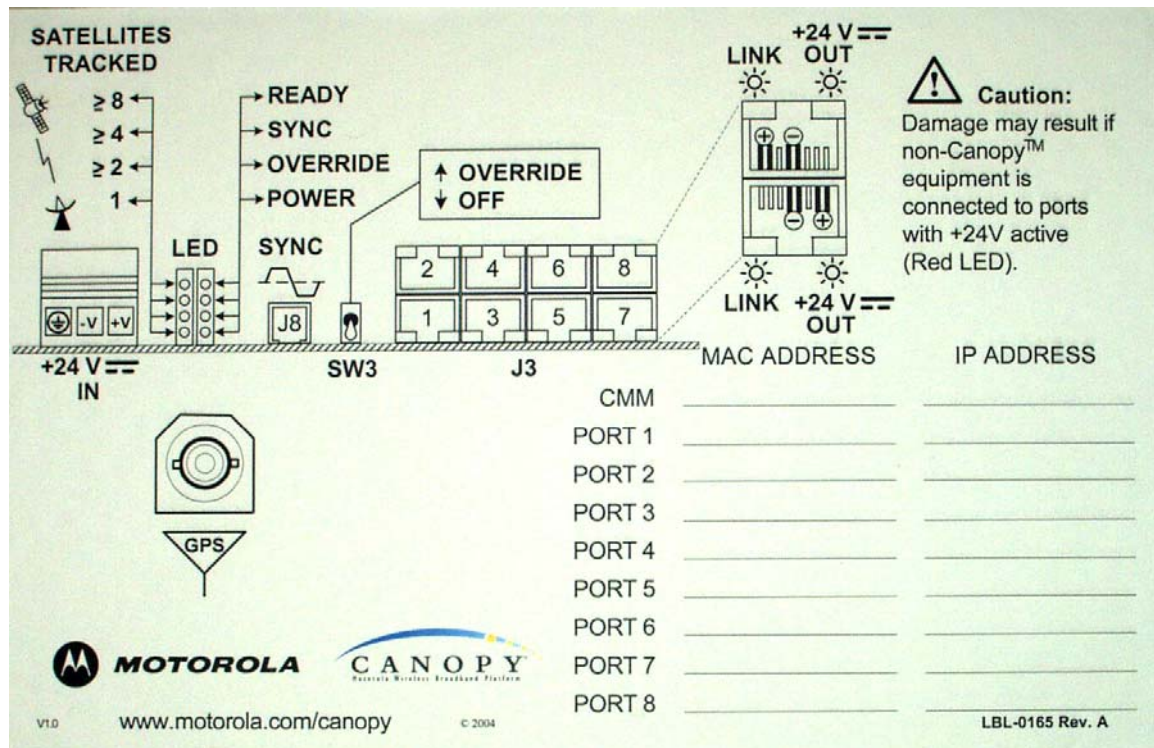
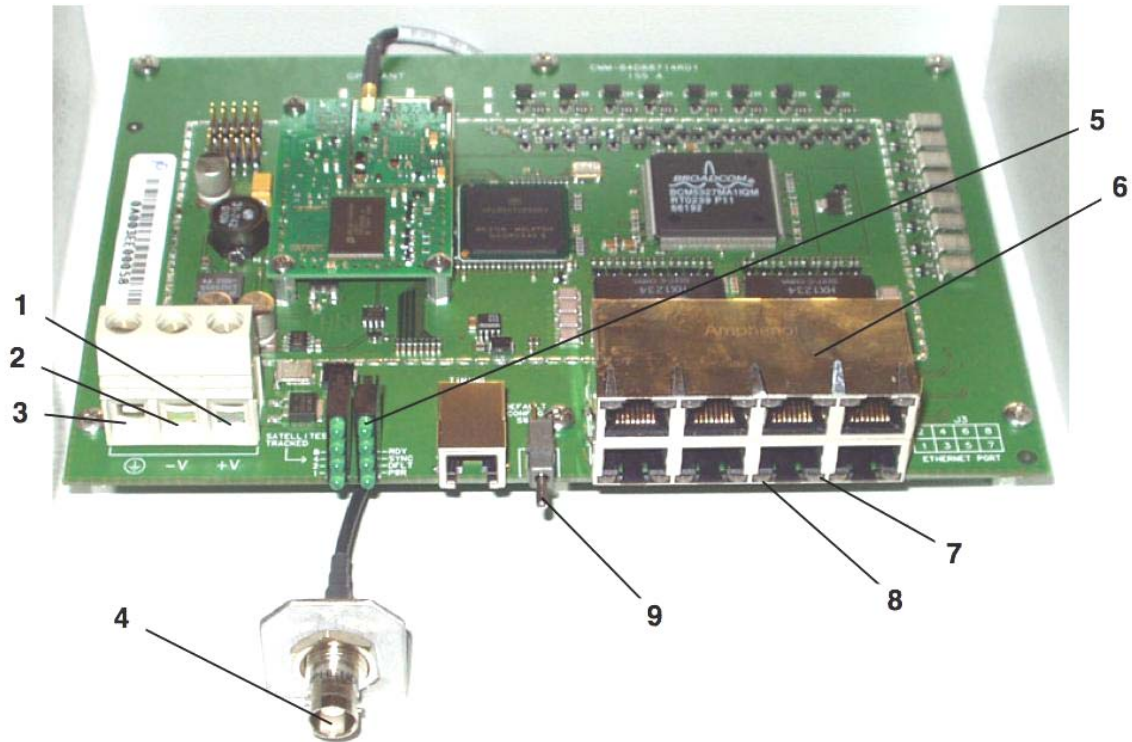


Figure 74: CMMmicro door label



- 1 24 V DC power connection on terminal block (+V).
- 2 24 V DC ground connection on terminal block (-V).
- 3 Ground bonding point for CMMmicro. Ground connection on terminal block, for grounding to Protective Earth (PE) ↓.
- 4 Female BNC connector for connecting to coax cable from GPS antenna.
- 5 Status display of eight green LEDs. The left LEDs show the number of satellites visible to the CMMmicro (1, 2,  $\geq 4$ , and  $\geq 8$ ), and the right LEDs show status:
  - RDY (Ready) – Flashing LED indicates CMMmicro software has booted and is operational. LED continues to flash during normal operation.
  - SYNC – Constant LED indicates CMMmicro is receiving signal from the GPS antenna and is able to derive sync.
  - DFLT (default) – Constant LED indicates CMMmicro has booted with Override Switch in down/override position, and therefore with default IP address (169.254.1.1) and no password.
  - PWR (power) – Constant LED indicates CMMmicro has power.
- 6 8-port Ethernet connection block with 2 LEDs per port indicating port status.
- 7 Constant red LED to the right of each port indicates the port is powered with 24 V DC (controlled by the CMMmicro Configuration page).
- 8 Constant green LED to the left of each port indicates the port is detecting Ethernet connectivity.
- 9 Override toggle switch, for overriding a lost or unknown IP address or password. Down is normal position, while rebooting in the up position brings the CMMmicro up with the default IP address (169.254.1.1) and no password required.

**Figure 75: CMMmicro circuit board**

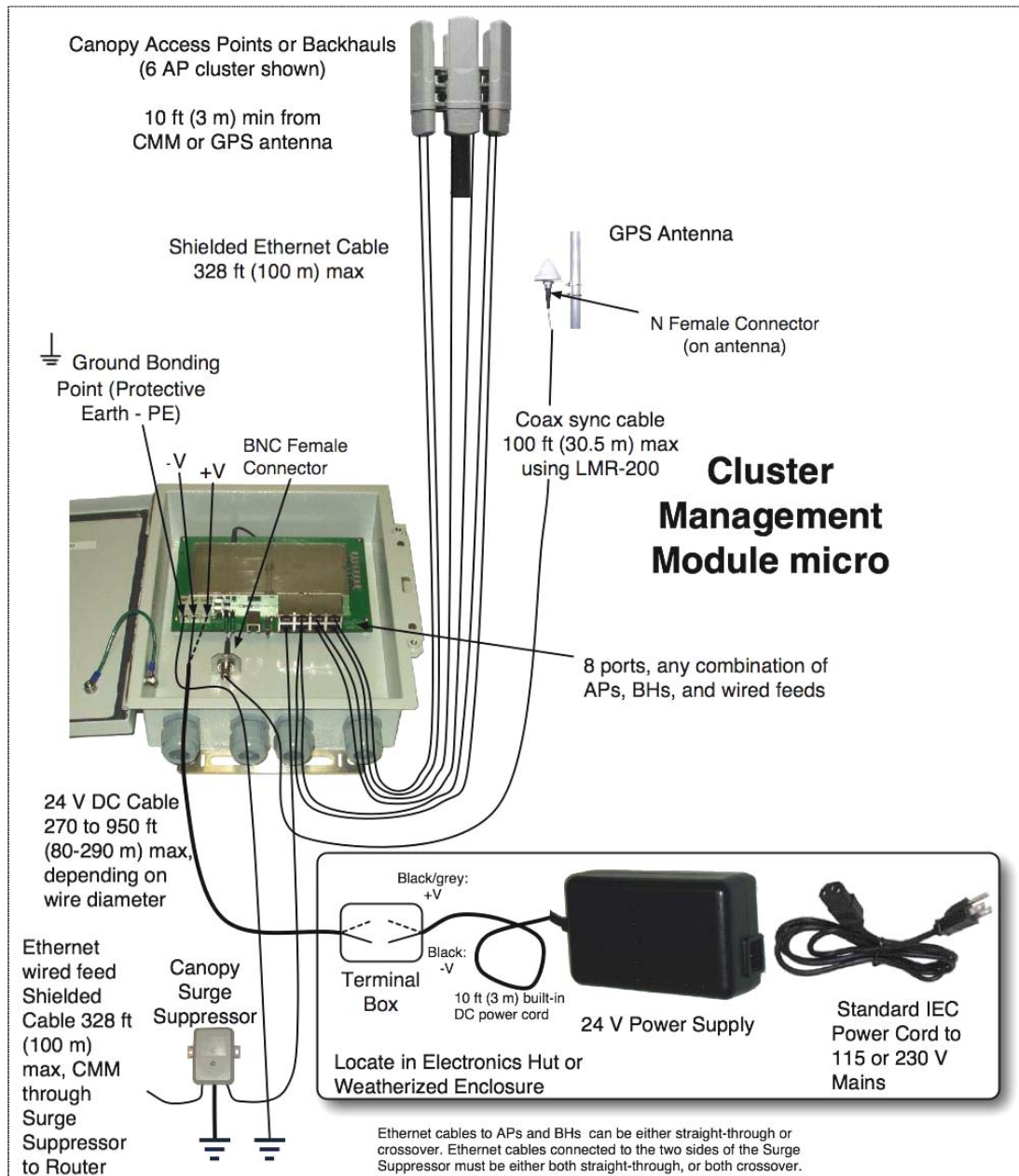


Figure 76: CMMmicro connections

### 16.4.8 Status Page of the CMMmicro

An example of a CMMmicro Status page is displayed in Figure 77.

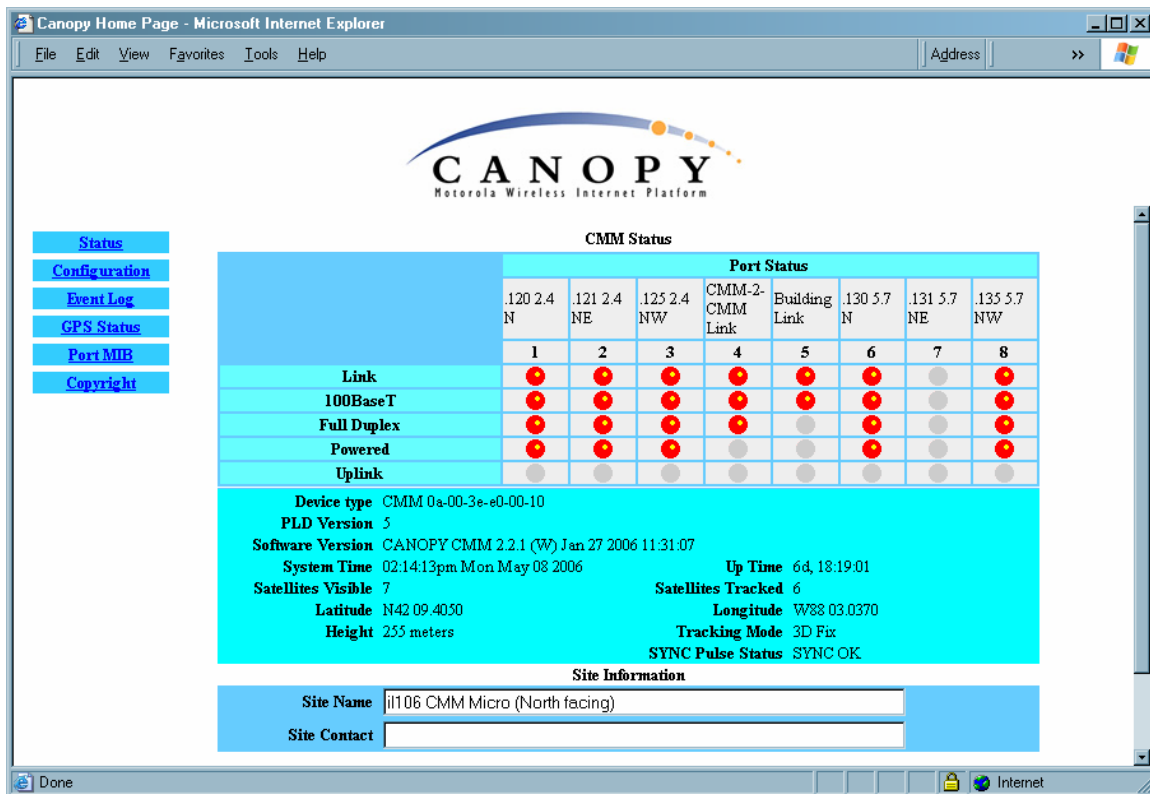


Figure 77: Status page of CMMmicro, example

The Status page provides information on the operation of this CMMmicro. This is the default web page for the CMMmicro. The Status page provides the following fields.

#### Link

A red dot indicates that the port is active and detects Ethernet traffic. A grey dot indicates that the port is not active and no traffic is detected.

#### 100BaseT

A red dot indicates that the port has auto-negotiated to a 100Base-T connection. A grey dot indicates that the port has auto-negotiated to a 10Base-T connection. (This convention is also used on many routers and network interface cards.) If the far end (an AP, a BH, a router) has been set to auto-negotiate, then the CMMmicro links at 100Base-T.

#### Full Duplex

A red dot indicates that the port has auto-negotiated to a Full Duplex connection. A grey dot indicates that the port has auto-negotiated to a Half Duplex connection. (This convention is also used on many routers and network interface cards.)

**Powered**

A red dot indicates that the port is powered with 24 V DC to provide power to an AP or BH. A grey dot indicates that the port is not powered. Port power is turned on and off in the **Port Power Control** parameter of the Configuration page. A CMMmicro comes from the factory with no Ethernet ports powered.

**CAUTION!**

Never connect any devices other than Canopy APs and BHs to a powered port. Powered ports are indicated by a red LED to the right of the port. (See Item 7 in [Figure 75](#) on Page 222.) A powered port has 24-V DC on Pins 7 and 8 and 24-V return on Pins 4 and 5. This can damage other networking equipment, such as a computer or a router.

**Uplink**

A red dot indicates this link has been configured as an uplink using the CMMmicro's Configuration page.

**Device Type**

This field displays the MAC address of the CMMmicro.

**PLD Version**

This field displays the version of the PLD (Programmable Logic Device) that is installed in the module. Before you request technical support, note this information.

**Software Version**

This field displays the version of the software that is installed in the module. Before you request technical support, note this information.

**System Time**

This field displays the current time. If the CMMmicro receives the signal from a GPS antenna, then this field expresses the time in Greenwich Mean Time (GMT).

**Satellites Visible**

This field displays how many satellites the GPS antenna sees.

**NOTE:**

This differs from the **Satellites Tracked** field (described below).

**Latitude**

If the CMMmicro receives the signal from a GPS antenna, then this field displays the latitude of the site.

**Height**

If the CMMmicro receives the signal from a GPS antenna, then this field displays the elevation (above sea level) of the GPS antenna.

**Uptime**

This field displays how much time has elapsed since the last boot of the CMMmicro.

**Satellites Tracked**

This field displays how many satellites the CMMmicro is tracking.

**Longitude**

If the CMMmicro receives the signal from a GPS antenna, then this field displays the longitude of the site.

**Tracking Mode**

If the CMMmicro receives the signal from a GPS antenna, then this field describes how the CMMmicro is tracking satellites.

**Sync Pulse Status**

This field indicates the status of sync pulse that the CMMmicro is currently able to provide to connected modules.

**Site Name**

This field displays administrative information that has been entered on the Configuration page of the CMMmicro.

**Site Contact**

This field displays administrative information that has been entered on the Configuration page of the CMMmicro.



### 16.4.9 Configuration Page of the CMMmicro

An example of the CMMmicro Configuration page is displayed in Figure 78.

[Status](#)  
[Configuration](#)  
[Event Log](#)  
[GPS Status](#)  
[Port MIB](#)  
[Copyright](#)

#### Configuration

GPS Timing  
Pulse ☒ Master ☐ Slave  
Lan1 IP  
Lan1 Subnet 255.255.255.0  
Mask  
Default Gateway

Port	Port 1	Port 2	Port 3	Port 4	Port 5	Port 6	Port 7	Port 8
Port Configuration	Auto	Auto	Auto	Auto	Auto	Auto	Auto	Auto
Description	120 2.4 N	121 2.4 NE	125 2.4 NW	CMM-2-CMM Lin	Building Link	130 5.7 N	131 5.7 NE	135 5.7 NW
Port Power Control	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>
	Reset	Reset	Reset			Reset		Reset

Display-Only Password:  
Access Password:  
Full Access Password:  
Webpage Auto Update 5 Seconds (0 = Disable Auto Update)

#### SNMP

SNMP Community String  
Accessing Subnet 0.0.0.0 / 0  
Trap Address 0.0.0.0 0.0.0.0 0.0.0.0 0.0.0.0 0.0.0.0  
Permission ☐ Read Only

#### Site Information

Site Name i106 CMM Micro (North facing)  
Site Contact  
Site Location IL-106

#### 802.1Q VLAN Tagging

Enable 802.1Q Tagging ☐  
802.1Q VLAN ID 1  
1-4095

#### Uplink/VLAN Port Configuration

	Port 1	Port 2	Port 3	Port 4	Port 5	Port 6	Port 7	Port 8
Uplink Port	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>
Note: If any port is selected as an Uplink Port, the VLAN Port configuration table will be filled out to reflect this configuration. If you want more control over VLAN Port configuration, uncheck all Uplink Port boxes and fill in the VLAN Port Configuration table below.								
VLAN Port Configuration Note: This is NOT 802.1Q VLAN tagging. This is port based VLAN switching only.	N/A	Port 1 <input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	Port 1 <input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	Port 1 <input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	Port 1 <input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	Port 1 <input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	Port 1 <input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	Port 1 <input checked="" type="checkbox"/>
	Port 2 <input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	N/A	Port 2 <input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	Port 2 <input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	Port 2 <input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	Port 2 <input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	Port 2 <input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	Port 2 <input checked="" type="checkbox"/>
	Port 3 <input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	Port 3 <input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	N/A	Port 3 <input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	Port 3 <input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	Port 3 <input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	Port 3 <input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	Port 3 <input checked="" type="checkbox"/>
	Port 4 <input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	Port 4 <input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	Port 4 <input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	N/A	Port 4 <input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	Port 4 <input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	Port 4 <input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	Port 4 <input checked="" type="checkbox"/>
	Port 5 <input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	Port 5 <input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	Port 5 <input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	Port 5 <input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	N/A	Port 5 <input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	Port 5 <input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	Port 5 <input checked="" type="checkbox"/>
	Port 6 <input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	Port 6 <input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	Port 6 <input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	Port 6 <input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	Port 6 <input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	N/A	Port 6 <input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	Port 6 <input checked="" type="checkbox"/>
	Port 7 <input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	Port 7 <input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	Port 7 <input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	Port 7 <input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	Port 7 <input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	Port 7 <input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	N/A	Port 7 <input checked="" type="checkbox"/>
	Port 8 <input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	Port 8 <input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	Port 8 <input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	Port 8 <input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	Port 8 <input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	Port 8 <input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	Port 8 <input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	N/A
		Clear	Clear	Clear	Clear	Clear	Clear	Clear
	Default	Default	Default	Default	Default	Default	Default	Default

Clear All Default All

Check the box(es) in each column that you wish to allow the given port to egress data. For example, to allow communication between only ports 1 and 2, check the Port 2 box in column 1 and the Port 1 box in column 2.

**NOTE: If any Uplink Port box is checked, any changes to VLAN Configuration will be discarded and the Uplink Port settings will override.**

Save Changes Set to Defaults Undo Saved Changes

Reboot

Figure 78: Configuration page of CMMmicro, example

The Configuration web page contains all of the configurable parameters that define how the CMMmicro operates. The first line of information on the Configuration screen echoes the **Device Type** from the Status web page.



### **IMPORTANT!**

Changes that are made to the following parameters become effective when you click the **Save Changes** button:

- **Port Configuration**
- **Description**
- **Power Port Control**
- **Webpage Auto Update**

When these parameters listed above have become effective, if you click the **Undo Saved Changes** button, the previous values *are not* restored.

Changes that are made to all other parameters become effective only after all of the following have occurred:

- you have clicked the **Save Changes** button.
- you click the **Reboot** button.
- the CMMmicro reboots.

### **Procedure 18: Setting CMMmicro parameters for test**

To continue the test setup, configure

1. the **GPS Timing Pulse** parameter.
2. the **Lan1 IP** parameter.
3. the **Lan1 Subnet Mask** parameter.
4. the **Default Gateway** parameter.
5. the **Port Power Control** parameter.

===== end of procedure =====

### **GPS Timing Pulse**

Select **Master**. (**Slave** is for future use.)



### **IMPORTANT!**

If the GPS Timing Pulse is set to **Slave**, the CMMmicro GPS receiver is disabled.



**Lan1 IP**

Enter the IP address to be associated with the Ethernet connection on this CMMmicro. The default address is 169.254.1.1. If you set and then forget this parameter, then you must both

1. physically access the module.
2. use the CMMmicro override toggle switch to electronically access the module configuration parameters at 169.254.1.1. See [Overriding Forgotten IP Addresses or Passwords on CMMmicro](#) on Page 383.

**RECOMMENDATION:**

Note or print the IP settings from this page. Ensure that you can readily associate these IP settings both with the module and with the other data that you store about the module.

**LAN Subnet Mask**

Enter the appropriate subnet mask for the module to communicate on the network. The default value for this parameter is 255.255.255.0.

**Default Gateway**

Enter the appropriate gateway for the module to communicate on the network. The default for this parameter is 169.254.0.0.

**Port Configuration**

If you wish to force a port to a speed or duplex state, or to return the module to auto-negotiating speed and duplex state, change the selection for the port. The range of selections are defined in [Table 45](#).

**Table 45: Port Configuration selections for CMMmicro**

Selection	Result
Auto	The port attempts to auto-negotiate speed and duplex state. (This is the default and recommended setting.)
100FDX	The port is forced to 100 Mbps and full duplex.
100HDX	The port is forced to 100 Mbps and half duplex.
10FDX	The port is forced to 10 Mbps and full duplex.
10HDX	The port is forced to 10 Mbps and half duplex.

If you change this value for a port and then click **Save Changes**, then the change becomes effective immediately and the previous value is lost.

**Description**

You can enter text in this parameter (for example, text that helps you to associate the port number with the connected device.) If you change this value for a port and then click **Save Changes**, then the change becomes effective immediately and the previous value is lost.

### Power Port Control

Ensure that power is off for every port that connects to a router, computer, or other network equipment. Turn on 24-V DC power for ports that connect to Canopy APs or BHs.



#### CAUTION!

Never connect any devices other than Canopy APs and BHs to a powered port. Powered ports are indicated by a red LED to the right of the port. (See Item 7 in [Figure 75](#) on Page 222.) A powered port has 24-V DC on Pins 7 and 8 and 24-V return on Pins 4 and 5. This can damage other networking equipment, such as a computer or a router.

If you change this value for a port and then click **Save Changes**, then the change becomes effective immediately and the previous value is lost.

### Display-Only Access

To set this password, enter the same expression in both **Display-Only Access** fields for verification. When the web-based interface prompts for this password, no user name is required. However, when a telnet or FTP session prompts for this password, you must enter the user name `root` in addition to the password.

If you set and then forget the **Display-Only Access** password, then you must both

1. physically access the module.
2. use the CMMmicro override toggle switch to electronically access the module configuration parameters at 169.254.1.1. See [Overriding Forgotten IP Addresses or Passwords on CMMmicro](#) on Page 383.

### Full Access

If you set the **Full Access** password, this password will allow

- telnet and FTP access to the module.
- *viewing or changing* the parameters of the module.

To set this password, enter the same expression in both **Full Access** fields for verification. When the web-based interface prompts for this password, no user name is required. However, when a telnet or FTP session prompts for this password, you must enter the user name `root` in addition to the password.

If you set and then forget the **Full Access** password, then you must both

1. physically access the module.
2. use the CMMmicro override toggle switch to electronically access the module configuration parameters at 169.254.1.1. See [Overriding Forgotten IP Addresses or Passwords on CMMmicro](#) on Page 383.

**NOTE:**

You can unset either password (revert the access to no password required). To do so, type a space into the field and reboot the module. You must enter any password twice to allow the system to verify that the password is not mistyped. After any password is set and a reboot of the module has occurred, a **Password Set** indicator appears to the right of the field.

**RECOMMENDATION:**

Note the passwords that you enter. Ensure that you can readily associate these passwords both with the module and with the other data that you store about the module.

**Webpage Auto Update**

Enter the frequency (in seconds) for the web browser to automatically refresh the web-based interface. The default setting is 0. The 0 setting causes the web-based interface to never be automatically refreshed.

If you change this value and then click **Save Changes**, then the change becomes effective immediately and the previous value is lost.

**SNMP Community String**

Specify a control string that allows an Network Management Station (NMS) to access SNMP information. No spaces are allowed in this string. The default string is **Canopy**.

The **SNMP Community String** value is clear text and is readable by a packet monitor. Additional security derives from the configuration of the **SNMP Accessing Subnet**, **Trap Address**, and **Permission** parameters.

**SNMP Accessing Subnet**

Specify the addresses that are allowed to send SNMP requests to this CMMmicro. The NMS has an address that is among these addresses (this subnet). You must enter both

- The network IP address in the form xxx.xxx.xxx.xxx
- The CIDR (Classless Interdomain Routing) prefix length in the form /xx

For example

- the /16 in 198.32.0.0/16 specifies a subnet mask of 255.255.0.0 (the first 16 bits in the address range are identical among all members of the subnet).
- 192.168.102.0 specifies that any device whose IP address is in the range 192.168.102.0 to 192.168.102.254 can send SNMP requests to the CMMmicro, presuming that the device supplies the correct **SNMP Community String** value.

**RECOMMENDATION:**

For more information on CIDR, execute an Internet search on “Classless Interdomain Routing.”

The default treatment is to allow all networks access.

**Trap Address**

Specify the IP address (xxx.xxx.xxx.xxx) of one to ten servers (Prizm or NMS) to which trap information should be sent. Trap information informs the monitoring systems that something has occurred. For example, trap information is sent

- after a reboot of the module.
- when Prizm or an NMS attempts to access agent information but either
  - supplied an inappropriate community string or SNMP version number.
  - is associated with a subnet to which access is disallowed.

**Permission**

Select **Read Only** if you wish to disallow any parameter changes by Prizm or an NMS.

**Site Name**

Specify a string to associate with the physical module. This parameter is written into the *sysName* SNMP MIB-II object and can be polled by an NMS. The buffer size for this field is 128 characters.

**Site Contact**

Enter contact information for the module administrator. This parameter is written into the *sysContact* SNMP MIB-II object and can be polled by an NMS. The buffer size for this field is 128 characters.

**Site Location**

Enter information about the physical location of the module. This parameter is written into the *sysLocation* SNMP MIB-II object and can be polled by an NMS. The buffer size for this field is 128 characters.

The CMMmicro Configuration page also provides the following buttons.

**Enable 802.1Q Tagging**

Once 802.1Q Tagging is enabled and an 802.1Q VLAN ID is set, only frames that are VLAN tagged with the configured tag value will be accepted by the management controller of the CMMmicro. All frames outgoing from the management controller of the CMMmicro will have an 802.1Q VLAN tag, set to the configured VLAN ID.

**802.1Q VLAN ID**

Once 802.1Q Tagging is enabled and an 802.1Q VLAN ID is set, only frames that are VLAN tagged with the configured tag value will be accepted by the management controller of the CMMmicro. All frames outgoing from the management controller of the CMMmicro will have an 802.1Q VLAN tag, set to the configured VLAN ID.

### VLAN Port Configuration

Each column in the VLAN Port Configuration section of [Figure 78](#) corresponds to a port. Checkboxes in each column control which ports can transmit traffic that arrives on the (column) port. For example, in the first column if only Port 2 is checked, then Port 1 (column 1) will only be allowed to send data out on Port 2 (checked box). Port 2 (second column) is able to send data out on all other ports. All other ports, meanwhile, are only allowed to send data out on Port 2. This configuration is also known as an Uplink configuration for Port 2.

Each direction (for example, port 1 to port 2 versus port 2 to port 1) must be configured separately. It is possible to configure a port to send data to a second port, but not allow the second port to send data back to the first port (for example, check Port 8 in the Port 2 column, but do not check Port 2 in the Port 8 column). These settings should be changed with caution, and with two-way communication in mind.

In all cases, even when not checked, all ports will still be able to communicate with the CMMmicro management controller.

Setting (checking) any Uplink Port checkboxes (see [Figure 78](#)) will override VLAN Port Configuration settings. If you desire complete control on a port-by-port basis using VLAN Port Configuration, all Uplink Port boxes must be unchecked in the Uplink Port section.

### Save Changes, Undo Saved Changes, Set to Defaults, Reboot

The effects of clicking these buttons are defined in [Table 46](#).

**Table 46: When changes become effective in CMMmicro**

For these parameters...	clicking this button...	has this effect.
<b>Port Configuration</b> <b>Description</b> <b>Power Port Control</b> <b>Webpage Auto Update</b>	<b>Save Changes</b>	Any change becomes effective immediately and any previous setting is lost.
	<b>Undo Saved Changes</b>	No change is undone, and no previous setting is restored.
	<b>Set to Defaults</b>	The default setting is not restored.
	<b>Reboot</b>	No change that is not already effective becomes effective.
Any other parameter	<b>Save Changes</b>	Any change is recorded into flash memory but does not become effective immediately, and any previous setting can be restored.
	<b>Undo Saved Changes</b>	Any change recorded into flash memory is undone, and the previous setting is restored.
	<b>Set to Defaults</b>	The default setting is restored.
	<b>Reboot</b>	Any change recorded in flash memory (and not later undone) becomes effective.

In addition, when you click **Reboot**, the following events occur and are logged:

- The CMMmicro reboots.
- Any AP or BH that receives power from the CMMmicro loses power and thus also reboots.
- Any AP or BH that does not receive power but receives sync from the CMMmicro loses and then regains sync.

#### 16.4.10 Configuring Modules for Connection to CMMmicro

After configuring the CMMmicro, configure the APs and BHs as follows. In each AP or BH that connects to a CMMmicro, you must set the **Sync Input** parameter of the Configuration page of that module to **Sync to Received Signal (Power Port)**. See

- [Sync Input](#) on Page 241.
- [Sync Input](#) on Page 301.

#### 16.4.11 Event Log Page of the CMMmicro

This page may contain information that can be useful under the guidance of Canopy technical support. For this reason, the operator *should not* clear the contents of this page before contacting technical support.

#### 16.4.12 GPS Status Page of the CMMmicro

An example of the CMMmicro GPS Status page is displayed in [Figure 79](#).

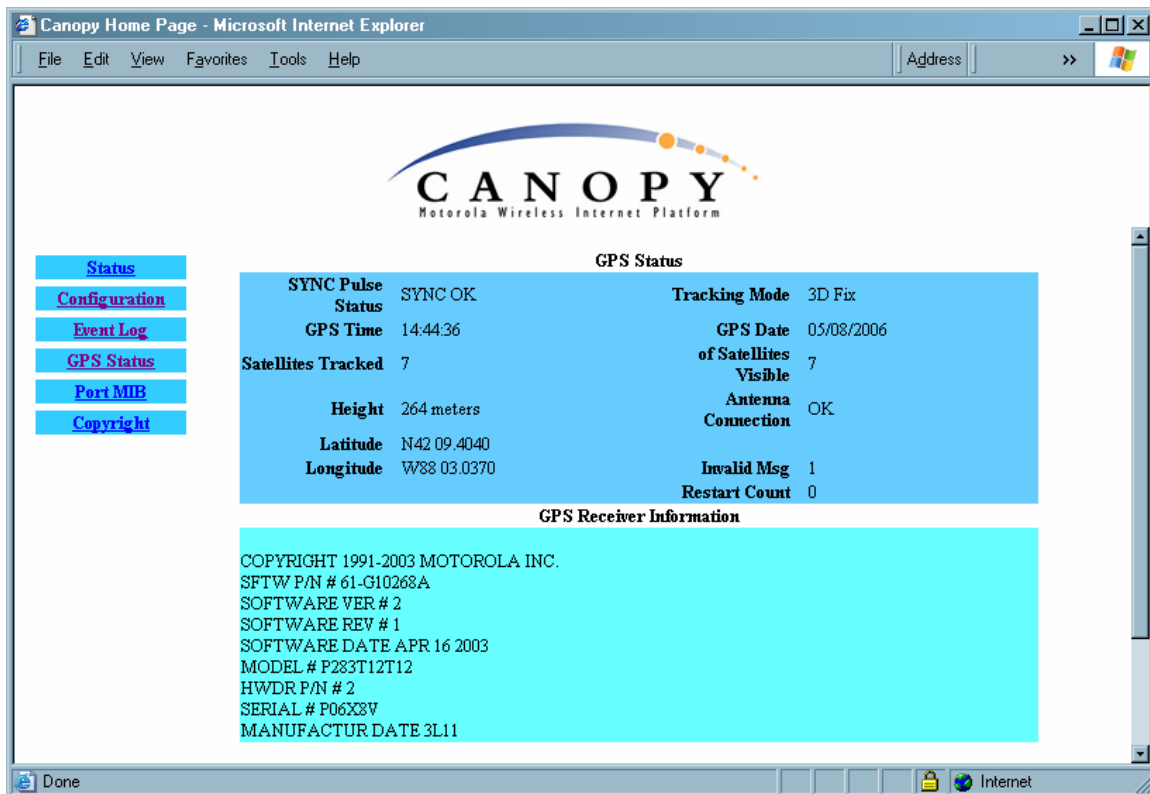


Figure 79: GPS Status page of CMMmicro, example

The GPS Status page provides information from the GPS antenna and information about the GPS receiver in the CMMmicro.

### Antenna Connection

This field displays the status of the signal from the antenna as follows:

- **OK** indicates that the GPS interface board is detecting an incoming signal on the coaxial cable from the GPS antenna.
- **No Antenna** indicates the GPS interface board is not detecting any incoming signal.

The other GPS Status fields are described under [Satellites Visible](#) on Page 225.

### GPS Receiver Information

This field displays information about the GPS interface board.

## 16.4.13 Port MIB Page of the CMMmicro

An example of the Port MIB (Ethernet statistics) web page is displayed in [Figure 80](#).

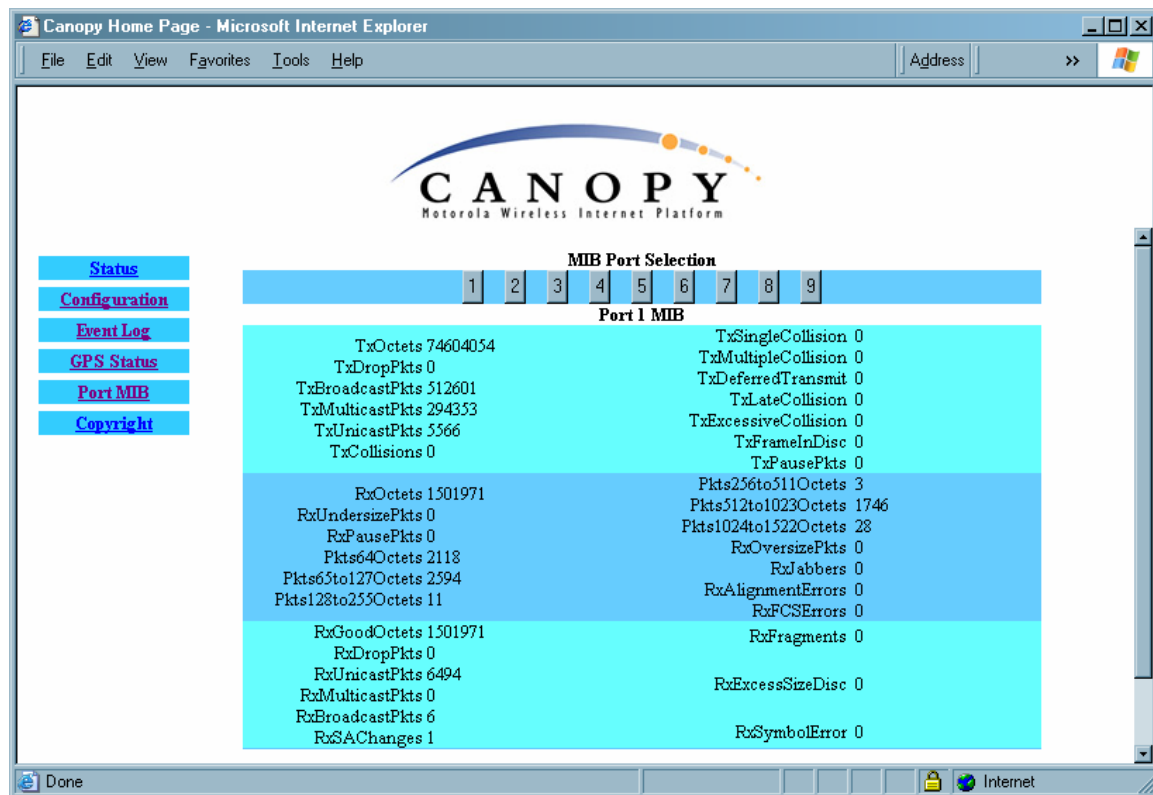


Figure 80: Port MIB page of CMMmicro, example

The Port MIB page displays Ethernet statistics and traffic information for the ports on the managed switch. To display the port statistics, click on a port number.

Ports 1 through 8 are the regular ports, connected to APs, BHs, or other network elements. Port 9 is the connection between the managed switch and the CMMmicro processor. Thus, updates to interface pages, SNMP activities, and FTP and telnet sessions create traffic on Port 9.

These Ethernet statistics can also be retrieved from the CMMmicro by a Network Management Station using SNMP. During advanced troubleshooting, this information can be useful as you see the activity on a single port or as you compare activity between ports of the CMMmicro.



## 17 PREPARING COMPONENTS FOR DEPLOYMENT

Your test of the modules not only verified that they are functional, but also yielded data that you have stored about them. Most efficiently preparing modules for deployment involves

- retrieving that data.
- systematically collecting the data into a single repository, while keeping a strong (quick) association between the data and the module.
- immediately merging module access data into this previously stored data.

### 17.1 CORRELATING COMPONENT-SPECIFIC INFORMATION

You can use the data that you noted or printed from the Status pages of the modules to

- store modules for future deployment.
- know, at a glance, how well-stocked you are for upcoming network expansions.
- efficiently draw modules from stock for deployment.
- plan any software updates that you
  - wish to perform to acquire features.
  - need to perform to have the feature set be consistent among all modules in a network expansion.

You can make these tasks even easier by collecting this data into a sortable database.

### 17.2 ENSURING CONTINUING ACCESS TO THE MODULES

As you proceed through the steps under [Configuring for the Destination](#) on Page 239, you will set values for parameters that specify the sync source, data handling characteristics, security measures, management authorities, and other variables for the modules. While setting these, you will also tighten access to the module, specifically in

- the **Color Code** parameter of Configuration page
- the **Display-Only Access** and **Full Access** password parameters of the Configuration page.
- the addressing parameters of the IP Configuration page.

Before you set these, consider whether and how you may want to set these by a self-devised scheme. A password scheme can help you when you have forgotten or misfiled a password. An IP addressing scheme may be essential to the operation of your network and to future expansions of your network.

As you set these, note the color code and note or print the parameters you set on the Configuration page tabs. Immediately associate them with the following previously stored data about the modules:

- device type, frequency band, and MAC address
- software version and encryption type
- software boot version
- FPGA version



## 18 CONFIGURING FOR THE DESTINATION

### 18.1 CONFIGURING AN AP FOR THE DESTINATION

If an ADMINISTRATOR-level password has been set in the AP, you must log into the module before you can configure its parameters. See [Managing Module Access by Passwords](#) on Page 379.

#### 18.1.1 General Tab of the AP

An example of an AP General tab is displayed in [Figure 81](#).

General [root] - Microsoft Internet Explorer

File Edit View Favorites Tools Help

Address

General Settings IP Radio SNMP Quality of Service (QoS) Security Time VLAN VLAN Membership DiffServe Unit

Configuration => General

2.4GHz - Access Point - 0a-00-3e-20-a5-36

Device Type

Device Setting : ☒ AP ☐ SM

Link Speeds

Link Speeds : ☒ 10 Base T Half Duplex ☒ 10 Base T Full Duplex ☒ 100 Base T Half Duplex ☒ 100 Base T Full Duplex

Multiple selections enable Auto Negotiation

Bandwidth Configuration Source

Configuration Source : BAM

Sync Setting

Sync Input : Generate Sync Signal

Web Page Configuration

Webpage Auto Update : 15 Seconds (0 = Disable Auto Update)

Bridge Configuration

Bridge Entry Timeout : 25 Minutes (Range : 25 -- 1440 Minutes)

Translation Bridging : ☐ Enabled ☒ Disabled

Send Untranslated ARP : ☐ Enabled ☒ Disabled

SM Isolation : Disable SM Isolation

Update Application Information

Update Application Address :

MAC Control Parameters

2X Rate : ☒ Enabled ☐ Disabled

TCP Settings

Prioritize TCP ACK : ☒ Enabled ☐ Disabled

Save Changes

Reboot

Logged in as root

Internet

Figure 81: General tab of AP, example

The General tab of the AP contains many of the configurable parameters that define how the AP and the SMs in the sector operate. As shown in [Figure 81](#), you may set the Configuration page parameters as follows.

### Device Setting

You can temporarily transform an AP into an SM and thereby use the spectrum analyzer functionality. See [Using the AP as a Spectrum Analyzer](#) on Page 372. Otherwise, the selection for this parameter is **AP**.

### Link Speeds

Specify the type of link speed for the Ethernet connection. The default for this parameter is that all speeds are selected. The recommended setting is a single speed selection for all APs, BHs, and SMs in the operator network.

### Configuration Source

See [Setting the Configuration Source](#) on Page 297.



#### **CAUTION!**

Do not set this parameter to **BAM** where both

- a BAM release earlier than 2.1 is implemented.
- the **All Local SM Management** parameter (in the VLAN Configuration page of the AP) is set to **Enable**.

This combination causes the SMs to become unmanageable, until you gain direct access with an Override Plug and remove this combination from the AP configuration.

### Sync Input

Specify the type of synchronization for this AP to use:

- Select **Sync to Received Signal (Power Port)** to set this AP to receive sync from a connected CMMmicro.
- Select **Sync to Received Signal (Timing Port)** to set this AP to receive sync from a connected CMM2, an AP in the cluster, an SM, or a BH timing slave.
- Select **Generate Sync Signal** where the AP does not receive sync, and no other AP or BHM is active within the link range.

### Webpage Auto Update

Enter the frequency (in seconds) for the web browser to automatically refresh the web-based interface. The default setting is 0. The 0 setting causes the web-based interface to never be automatically refreshed.

### Bridge Entry Timeout

Specify the appropriate bridge timeout for correct network operation with the existing network infrastructure. The Bridge Entry Timeout should be a longer period than the ARP (Address Resolution Protocol) cache timeout of the router that feeds the network.

**CAUTION!**

An inappropriately low Bridge Entry Timeout setting may lead to temporary loss of communication with some end users.

**Translation Bridging**

If you want the Translation Bridging feature, select **Enabled**. This has numerous implications. For a full description of them, see [Uplink Frame Contents](#) on Page 83.

**Send Untranslated ARP**

If the **Translation Bridging** parameter is set to **Enabled**, then the **Send Untranslated ARP** parameter can be

- disabled, so that the AP will overwrite the MAC address in Address Resolution Protocol (ARP) packets before forwarding them.
- enabled, so that the AP will forward ARP packets regardless of whether it has overwritten the MAC address.

See [Uplink Frame Contents](#) on Page 83 and [Address Resolution Protocol](#) on Page 164.

If the **Translation Bridging** parameter is set to **Disabled**, then the **Send Untranslated ARP** parameter has no effect.

**SM Isolation**

Prevent or allow SM-to-SM communication by selecting from the following drop-down menu items:

- **Disable SM Isolation** (the default selection). This allows full communication between SMs.
- **Block SM Packets from being forwarded**. This prevents both multicast/broadcast and unicast SM-to-SM communication.
- **Block and Forward SM Packets to Backbone**. This not only prevents multicast/broadcast and unicast SM-to-SM communication but also sends the packets, which otherwise would have been handled SM to SM, through the Ethernet port of the AP.

**Update Application Address**

Enter the address of the server to access for software updates on this AP and registered SMs.

**2X Rate**

See [2X Operation](#) on Page 92.

**Prioritize TCP ACK**

To reduce the likelihood of TCP acknowledgement packets being dropped, set this parameter to Enabled. This can improve throughput that the end user perceives during transient periods of congestion on the link that is carrying acknowledgements. See [AP-SM Links](#) on Page 101.

The General tab also provides the following buttons.

### Save Changes

When you click this button, any changes that you made on the this tab are recorded in flash memory. However, these changes *do not* apply until the next reboot of the module.

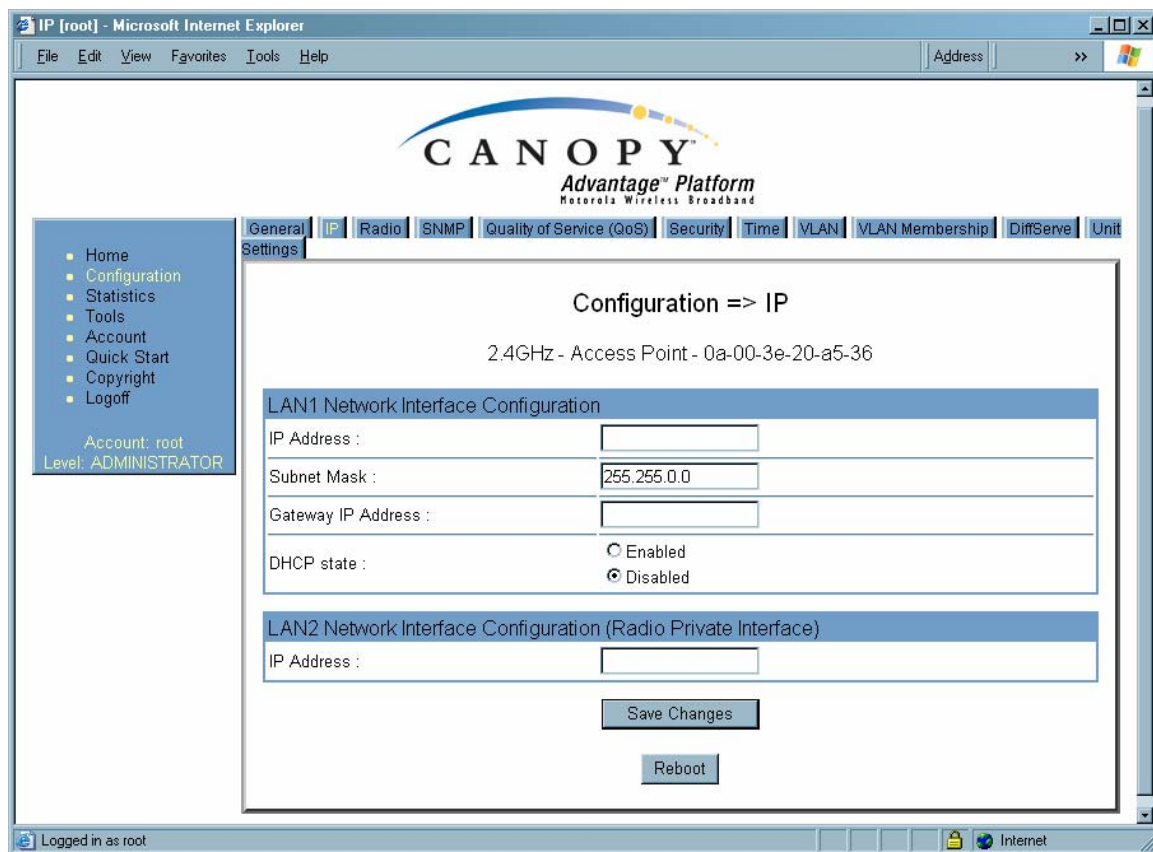
### Reboot

When you click this button

1. the module reboots.
2. any changes that you saved by a click of the **Save Changes** button are implemented.

## 18.1.2 IP Tab of the AP

An example of the IP tab of the AP is displayed in [Figure 82](#).



**Figure 82: IP tab of AP, example**

You may set the IP tab parameters as follows.

### LAN1 Network Interface Configuration, IP Address

Enter the *non-routable* IP address to associate with the Ethernet connection on this AP. (The default IP address from the factory is 169.254.1.1.) If you set and then forget this parameter, then you must both

1. physically access the module.
2. use an override plug to electronically access the module configuration parameters at 169.254.1.1. See [Overriding Forgotten IP Addresses or Passwords on AP, SM, or BH](#) on Page 383.



#### RECOMMENDATION:

Note or print the IP settings from this page. Ensure that you can readily associate these IP settings both with the module and with the other data that you store about the module.

### LAN1 Network Interface Configuration, Subnet Mask

Enter an appropriate subnet mask for the AP to communicate on the network. The default subnet mask is 255.255.0.0. See [Allocating Subnets](#) on Page 164.

### LAN1 Network Interface Configuration, Gateway IP Address

Enter the appropriate gateway for the AP to communicate with the network. The default gateway is 169.254.0.0.

The values of these four LAN1 network interface configuration parameters are displayed read only along with the Ethernet speed and duplex state on the Network Interface tab of the Home page in the AP.

### LAN1 Network Interface Configuration, DHCP State

If you select **Enabled**, the DHCP server automatically assigns the IP configuration (IP address, subnet mask, and gateway IP address) and the values of those individual parameters (above) are not used. The setting of this DHCP state parameter is also viewable, but not settable, in the Network Interface tab of the Home page.

### LAN2 Network Interface Configuration (RF Private Interface), IP Address

You should not change this parameter from the default AP private IP address of 192.168.101.1. A /24 CIDR subnet is used to communicate with each of the SMs that are registered. The AP uses a combination of the private IP and the LUID (logical unit ID) of the SM.

For example, if an SM is the first to register in an AP, and another SM registers later, then the AP whose Private IP address is 192.168.101.1 uses the following SM Private IP addresses to communicate to each:

SM	LUID	Private IP
First SM registered	2	192.168.101.2
Second SM registered	3	192.168.101.3



**NOTE:**

Where space is limited for subnet allocation, be advised that an SM *need not* have an operator-assigned IP address. The SM is directly accessible without an LUID if either the SM **Color Code** parameter is set to 0 or the AP has a direct Ethernet connection to the SM.

The IP Configuration page also provides the following buttons.

**Save Changes**

When you click this button, any changes that you made on this tab are recorded in flash memory. However, these changes *do not* apply until the next reboot of the module.

**Reboot**

When you click this button

1. the module reboots.
2. any changes that you saved by a click of the **Save Changes** button are implemented.

**18.1.3 Radio Tab of the AP**

An example of the Radio tab of the AP is shown in [Figure 83](#).

**Figure 83: Radio tab of AP (900 MHz), example**

The Radio tab of the AP contains some of the configurable parameters that define how the AP operates. As shown in [Figure 83](#), you may set the Radio tab parameters as follows.

### Radio Frequency Carrier

Specify the frequency for the module to transmit. The default for this parameter is **None**. (The selection labeled **Factory** requires a special software key file for implementation.) For a list of channels in the band, see the drop-down list or [Considering Frequency Band Alternatives](#) on Page 138.

### Color Code

Specify a value from 0 to 254. For registration to occur, the color code of the SM and the AP *must* match. Color code is not a security feature. Instead, color code is a management feature, typically for assigning each sector a different color code.

Color code allows you to force an SM to register to only a specific AP, even where the SM can communicate with multiple APs. On all Canopy modules, the default setting for the color code value is 0. This value matches only the color code of 0 (*not* all 255 color codes).



#### RECOMMENDATION:

Note the color code that you enter. Ensure that you can readily associate this color code both with the module and with the other data that you store about the module.

### Sector ID

Specify a number in the range 1 to 6 to associate with this AP. The Sector ID setting does not affect the operation of the AP. On the AP Evaluation tab of the Tools page in the SM, the **Sector ID** field identifies the AP that the SM sees. The following steps may be useful:

- Assign a unique Sector ID to each sector in an AP cluster.
- Repeat the assignment pattern throughout the entire Canopy system.

### Max Range

Enter a number of miles (or kilometers divided by 1.61, then rounded to an integer) for the furthest distance from which an SM is allowed to register to this AP. Do not set the distance to any greater number of miles. A greater distance

- does not increase the power of transmission from the AP.
- can reduce aggregate throughput. See [Table 27](#) on Page 102.

Regardless of this distance, the SM must meet the minimum requirements for an acceptable link. If the AP is in cluster, then you *must* set this parameter on all other APs in the cluster exactly the same, except as described in the NOTE admonition below. The default value of this parameter is 2 miles (3.2 km).

For APs in the non 900-MHz frequency band ranges, although the typical maximum range where an SM is deployed with a reflector is 15 miles (24 km), you can set this parameter to as far as 30 miles (48 km). Without increasing the power or sensitivity of the

AP or SM, the greater value allows you to attempt greater distance where the RF environment and Fresnel zone<sup>7</sup> are especially clear.

A value of 15 for this parameter decreases the number of available data slots by 1. With a higher value, the number is further decreased as the AP compensates for the expected additional air delay.



**NOTE:**

In a cluster where at least one AP has **Scheduling** set to **Software** and at least one to **Hardware**, you must use the Frame Calculator web page to coordinate the transmit and receive times and you may further need to adjust the value of the **Max Range** parameter for individual APs in the cluster to avoid self interference. See [Using the Frame Calculator Tool \(All\)](#) on Page 446.

### Downlink Data

Specify the percentage of the aggregate throughput for the downlink (frames transmitted from the AP to the subscriber). For example, if the aggregate (uplink and downlink total) throughput on the AP is 6 Mb, then 75% specified for this parameter allocates 4.5 Mb for the downlink and 1.5 Mb for the uplink. The default for this parameter is 75%.



**CAUTION!**

You must set this parameter exactly the same for all APs in a cluster.

### Control Slots

The recommended number of control slots is as stated in [Table 47](#).

**Table 47: Control slot settings for all APs in cluster**

Number of SMs that Register to the AP	Number of Control Slots Recommended
1 to 10	0
11 to 50	1
51 to 150	2
151 to 200	3

Slots reserved for control are used for only SM service requests. For data, the hardware scheduler uses unreserved slots first, then any unused slots are available with any reserved slots to the SMs for service requests.

<sup>7</sup> See [Noting Possible Obstructions in the Fresnel Zone](#) on Page 134.

If too few reserved control slots are specified, then latency increases in high traffic periods. If too many are specified, then the maximum capacity is unnecessarily reduced.

### External Filters Delay

This parameter is present in only 900-MHz modules and can have effect in only those that have interference mitigation filter(s). Leave this value set to **0**, regardless of whether the AP has an interference mitigation filter.

### Transmit Frame Spreading

Where multiple AP clusters operate in the same frequency band range and same geographical area, select **Enable**. Then SMs between two APs can register in the assigned AP (do not register in another AP).

Where multiple AP clusters *do not* operate in the same frequency band range and same geographical area, select **Disable**, but observe the following caveat.



#### **IMPORTANT!**

SM throughput is 10% greater with this feature disabled. However, if you disable **Transmit Frame Spreading** where this feature was previously enabled, monitor the zone for interference over a period of days to ensure that this action has not made any SMs sensitive to the wrong beacon.

With this selection enabled, the AP does not transmit a beacon in each frame, but rather transmits a beacon in only pseudo-random frames in which the SM expects the beacon. This allows multiple APs to send beacons to multiple SMs in the same range without interference.

### Transmitter Output Power

Nations and regions may regulate transmitter output power. For example

- Both 900-MHz and 5.7-GHz modules are available as connectorized radios, which require the operator to adjust power to ensure regulatory compliance. In addition to setting the power in the 5.7-GHz connectorized module, the operator must set the antenna gain/cable loss such that the module can accurately report received power at the antenna.
- Legal maximum allowable transmitter output power and EIRP (Equivalent Isotropic Radiated Power) in the 2.4-GHz frequency band varies by country and region. The output power of Series P9 2.4-GHz modules can be adjusted to meet these national or regional regulatory requirements.
- Countries and regions that permit the use of the 5.4-GHz frequency band (CEPT member states, for example), generally require equipment using the band to have adjustable power.

The professional installer of Canopy equipment has the responsibility to

- maintain awareness of applicable regulations.
- calculate the permissible transmitter output power for the module.
- confirm that the initial power setting is compliant with national or regional regulations.

- confirm that the power setting is compliant following any reset of the module to factory defaults.

For information on how to calculate the permissible transmitter output power to enter in this parameter, see [Adjusting Transmitter Output Power](#) on Page 332.

The Radio tab also provides the following buttons.

### **Save Changes**

When you click this button, any changes that you made on this tab are recorded in flash memory. However, these changes *do not* apply until the next reboot of the module.

### **Reboot**

When you click this button

1. the module reboots.
2. any changes that you saved by a click of the **Save Changes** button are implemented.

### 18.1.4 SNMP Tab of the AP

An example of the SNMP tab of the AP is displayed in Figure 84.

The screenshot shows a web browser window titled "SNMP [root] - Microsoft Internet Explorer". The browser's address bar is empty. The page has a navigation menu on the left with links: Home, Configuration, Statistics, Tools, Account, Quick Start, Copyright, and Logoff. Below the menu, it says "Account: root" and "Level: ADMINISTRATOR". The main content area has tabs: General, IP, Radio, SNMP (selected), Quality of Service (QoS), Security, Time, VLAN, VLAN Membership, DiffServe, and Unit Settings. The title of the configuration page is "Configuration => SNMP". Below the title, it says "2.4GHz - Access Point - 0a-00-3e-20-a5-36". The configuration is divided into several sections:   
1. **SNMP IP**: Community String is "Canopy.BOST", and Accessing Subnet is "0.0.0.0 / 0".   
2. **Trap Addresses**: A table with 10 rows. Trap Address 1 is "10.40.0.254", Trap Address 2 is "192.168.1.253", Trap Address 3 is "10.40.0.7", Trap Address 4 is "10.40.0.254", Trap Address 5 is "0.0.0.0", Trap Address 6 is "0.0.0.0", Trap Address 7 is "0.0.0.0", Trap Address 8 is "0.0.0.0", Trap Address 9 is "0.0.0.0", and Trap Address 10 is "192.168.1.253".   
3. **Trap Enable**: Sync Status is "Enabled" (radio button selected), and Session Status is "Enabled" (radio button selected).   
4. **Permissions**: Read Permissions is "Read / Write" (radio button selected).   
5. **Site Information**: Site Name is "2.4 DES AP test", Site Contact is "JP", and Site Location is "BOST AP Table".   
At the bottom of the configuration area, there are two buttons: "Save Changes" and "Reboot". The browser's status bar at the bottom shows "Logged in as root" and "Internet".

Figure 84: SNMP tab of AP, example

You may set the SNMP tab parameters as follows.

### Community String

Specify a control string that allows an Network Management Station (NMS) to access SNMP information. No spaces are allowed in this string. The default string is **Canopy**.

The **Community String** value is clear text and is readable by a packet monitor. Additional security derives from the configuration of the **Accessing Subnet**, **Trap Address**, and **Permission** parameters.

### Accessing Subnet

Specify the addresses that are allowed to send SNMP requests to this AP. The NMS has an address that is among these addresses (this subnet). You must enter both

- The network IP address in the form xxx.xxx.xxx.xxx
- The CIDR (Classless Interdomain Routing) prefix length in the form /xx

For example

- the /16 in 198.32.0.0/16 specifies a subnet mask of 255.255.0.0 (the first 16 bits in the address range are identical among all members of the subnet).
- 192.168.102.0 specifies that any device whose IP address is in the range 192.168.102.0 to 192.168.102.254 can send SNMP requests to the AP, presuming that the device supplies the correct **Community String** value.

The default treatment is to allow all networks access. For more information on CIDR, execute an Internet search on “Classless Interdomain Routing.”

### Trap Address 1 to 10

Specify ten or fewer IP addresses (xxx.xxx.xxx.xxx) to which SNMP traps should be sent. Traps inform Prizm or an NMS that something has occurred. For example, trap information is sent

- after a reboot of the module.
- when an NMS attempts to access agent information but either
  - supplied an inappropriate community string or SNMP version number.
  - is associated with a subnet to which access is disallowed.

### Trap Enable, Sync Status

If you want sync status traps (sync lost and sync regained) sent to Prizm or an NMS, select **Enabled**. If you want these traps suppressed, select **Disabled**.

### Trap Enable, Session Status

If you want session status traps sent to Prizm or an NMS, select **Enabled**. For the names and descriptions of session status traps, see [Traps Provided in the Canopy Enterprise MIB](#) on Page 412. If you want these traps suppressed, select **Disabled**.

### Read Permissions

Select **Read Only** if you wish to disallow any parameter changes through SNMP (for example, from Prizm or an NMS).

**Site Name**

Specify a string to associate with the physical module. This parameter is written into the *sysName* SNMP MIB-II object and can be polled by PrizmEMS or an NMS. The buffer size for this field is 128 characters.

**Site Contact**

Enter contact information for the module administrator. This parameter is written into the *sysContact* SNMP MIB-II object and can be polled by PrizmEMS or an NMS. The buffer size for this field is 128 characters.

**Site Location**

Enter information about the physical location of the module. This parameter is written into the *sysLocation* SNMP MIB-II object and can be polled by PrizmEMS or an NMS. The buffer size for this field is 128 characters.

The SNMP tab also provides the following buttons.

**Save Changes**

When you click this button, any changes that you made on this tab are recorded in flash memory. However, these changes *do not* apply until the next reboot of the module.

**Reboot**

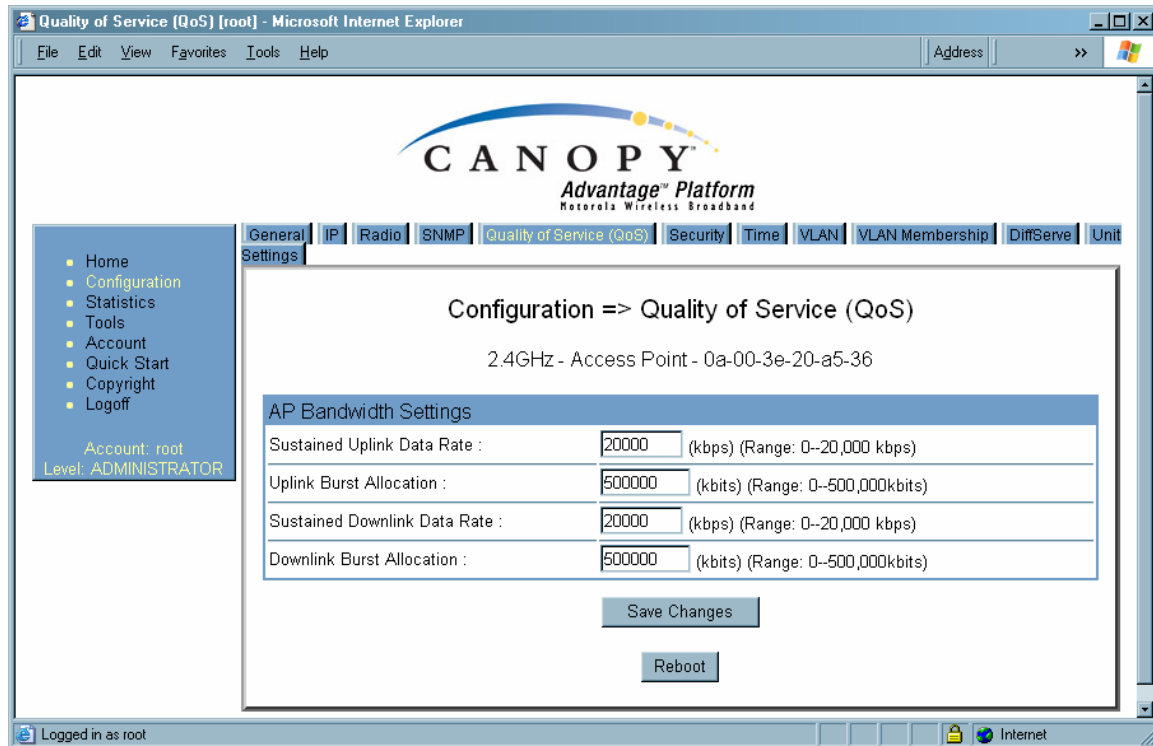
When you click this button

1. the module reboots.
2. any changes that you saved by a click of the **Save Changes** button are implemented.



### 18.1.5 Quality of Service (QoS) Tab of the AP

An example of the Quality of Service (QoS) tab of the AP is displayed in [Figure 85](#).



**Figure 85: Quality of Service (QoS) tab of AP, example**

In the Quality of Service (QoS) tab, you may set AP bandwidth parameters as follows.

#### Sustained Uplink Data Rate

Specify the rate that each SM registered to this AP is replenished with credits for transmission. This default imposes no restriction on the uplink. See

- [Maximum Information Rate \(MIR\) Parameters](#) on Page 86
- [Interaction of Burst Allocation and Sustained Data Rate Settings](#) on Page 88
- [Setting the Configuration Source](#) on Page 297.

#### Uplink Burst Allocation

Specify the maximum amount of data to allow each SM to transmit before being recharged at the **Sustained Uplink Data Rate** with credits to transmit more. See

- [Maximum Information Rate \(MIR\) Parameters](#) on Page 86
- [Interaction of Burst Allocation and Sustained Data Rate Settings](#) on Page 88
- [Setting the Configuration Source](#) on Page 297.

**Sustained Downlink Data Rate**

Specify the rate at which the AP should be replenished with credits (tokens) for transmission to each of the SMs in its sector. This default imposes no restriction on the uplink. See

- [Maximum Information Rate \(MIR\) Parameters](#) on Page 86
- [Interaction of Burst Allocation and Sustained Data Rate Settings](#) on Page 88
- [Setting the Configuration Source](#) on Page 297.

**Downlink Burst Allocation**

Specify the maximum amount of data to allow the AP to transmit to any registered SM before the AP is replenished with transmission credits at the **Sustained Downlink Data Rate**. See

- [Maximum Information Rate \(MIR\) Parameters](#) on Page 86
- [Interaction of Burst Allocation and Sustained Data Rate Settings](#) on Page 88
- [Setting the Configuration Source](#) on Page 297.

The Quality of Server (QoS) tab also provides the following buttons.

**Save Changes**

When you click this button, any changes that you made on this tab are recorded in flash memory. However, these changes *do not* apply until the next reboot of the module.

**Reboot**

When you click this button

1. the module reboots.
2. any changes that you saved by a click of the **Save Changes** button are implemented.

### 18.1.6 Security Tab of the AP

An example of the Security tab of the AP is displayed in [Figure 86](#).

Security [root] - Microsoft Internet Explorer

File Edit View Favorites Tools Help

Address >>

General IP Radio SNMP Quality of Service (QoS) **Security** Time VLAN VLAN Membership DiffServe Unit

Settings

Home  
Configuration  
Statistics  
Tools  
Account  
Quick Start  
Copyright  
Logoff

Account: root  
Level: ADMINISTRATOR

### Configuration => Security

2.4GHz - Access Point - 0a-00-3e-20-a5-36

#### Authentication Server Settings

Authentication Mode : ☐ Authentication Required  
☒ Authentication Disabled

Authentication Server 1 :

Authentication Server 2 :

Authentication Server 3 :

#### Airlink Security

Encryption : ☒ Enabled  
☐ Disabled

#### Encrypted Downlink Broadcast Configuration

Encrypt Downlink Broadcast : ☐ Enabled  
☒ Disabled

#### AP Evaluation Configuration

SM Display of AP Evaluation Data : ☐ Disable Display  
☒ Enable Display

#### Session Timeout

Web, Telnet, FTP Session Timeout :  Seconds

#### IP Access Filtering

IP Access Control : ☐ IP Access Filtering Enabled - Only allow access from IP addresses specified below  
☒ IP Access Filtering Disabled - Allow access from all IP addresses

Allowed Source IP 1 :

Allowed Source IP 2 :

Allowed Source IP 3 :

Save Changes

Reboot

Logged in as root

Internet

**Figure 86: Security tab of AP, example**

In the Security tab of the AP, you may set the following parameters.

**Authentication Mode**

If the AP has authentication capability, then you can use this field to select from among the following authentication modes:

- **Authentication Disabled**—the AP requires no SMs to authenticate.
- **Authentication Required**—the AP requires any SM that attempts registration to be authenticated in BAM or Prizm before registration.

If the AP *does not* have authentication capability, then this parameter displays **Authentication Not Available**.

**Authentication Server 1 to 3**

If either BAM or the BAM subsystem in Prizm is implemented and the AP has authentication capability, enter the IP address of one or more BAM servers that perform authentication for SMs registered to this AP. Enter these in order of primary, secondary, then tertiary.

**Encryption**

Specify the type of air link security to apply to this AP:

- **Encryption Disabled** provides no encryption on the air link. This is the default mode.
- **Encryption Enabled** provides encryption, using a factory-programmed secret key that is unique for each module.

**Encrypt Downlink Broadcast**

When **Encryption Enabled** is selected in the **Airlink Security** parameter (described above) and **Enable** is selected in the **Encrypt Downlink Broadcast** parameter, the AP encrypts downlink broadcast packets as

- DES where the AP is DES capable.
- AES where the AP is AES capable.

For more information about the Encrypt Downlink Broadcast feature, see [Encrypting Downlink Broadcasts](#) on Page 386.

**SM Display of AP Evaluation Data**

You can use this field to suppress the display of data about this AP on the AP Evaluation tab of the Tools page in all SMs that register.

**Web, Telnet, FTP Session Timeout**

Enter the expiry in seconds for remote management sessions via HTTP, telnet, or ftp access to the AP.

**IP Access Control**

You can permit access to the AP from any IP address (**IP Access Filtering Disabled**) or limit it to access from only one, two, or three IP addresses that you specify (**IP Access Filtering Enabled**). If you select **IP Access Filtering Enabled**, then you must populate at least one of the three **Allowed Source IP** parameters or have no access permitted from any IP address, including access and management by Prizm.

**Allowed Source IP 1 to 3**

If you selected **IP Access Filtering Enabled** for the **IP Access Control** parameter, then you must populate at least one of the three **Allowed Source IP** parameters or have no access permitted to the AP from any IP address. You may populate as many as all three.

If you selected **IP Access Filtering Disabled** for the **IP Access Control** parameter, then no entries in this parameter are read, and access from all IP addresses is permitted.

The Security tab of the AP also provides the following buttons.

**Save Changes**

When you click this button, any changes that you made on this tab are recorded in flash memory. However, these changes *do not* apply until the next reboot of the module.

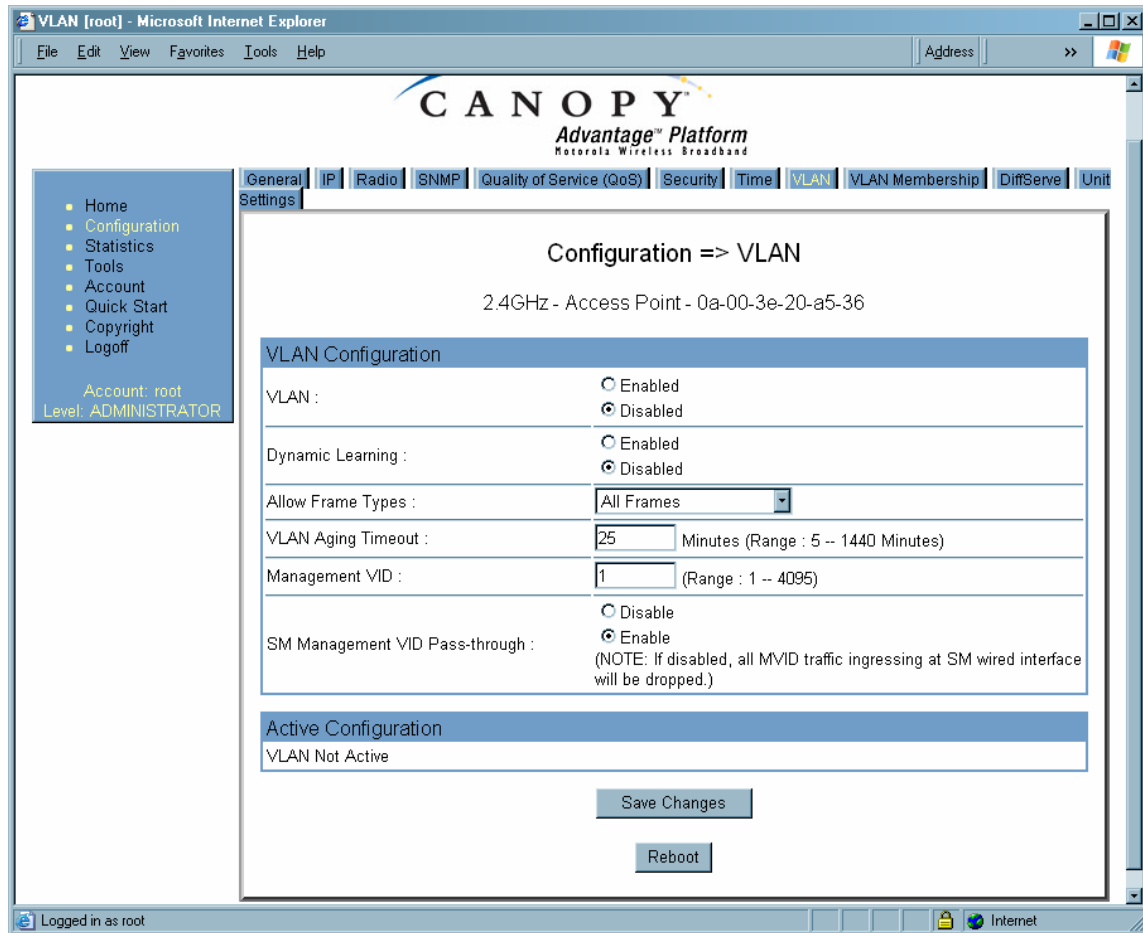
**Reboot**

When you click this button

1. the module reboots.
2. any changes that you saved by a click of the **Save Changes** button are implemented.

### 18.1.7 VLAN Tab of the AP

An example of the AP VLAN tab is displayed in [Figure 87](#).



**Figure 87: VLAN tab of AP, example**

In the VLAN tab of the AP, you may set the following parameters.

#### VLAN

Specify whether VLAN functionality for the AP and all linked SMs should (**Enabled**) or should not (**Disabled**) be allowed. The default value is **Disabled**.

#### Dynamic Learning

Specify whether the AP should (**Enabled**) or should not (**Disabled**) add the VLAN IDs (VIDs) of upstream frames to the VID table. (The AP passes frames with VIDs that are stored in the table both upstream and downstream.) The default value is **Enabled**.

#### Allow Frame Types

Select the type of arriving frames that the AP should tag, using the VID that is stored in the **Untagged Ingress VID** parameter. The default value is **All Frames**.

### VLAN Aging Timeout

Specify how long the AP should keep dynamically learned VLANs. The range of values is 5 to 1440 (minutes). The default value is **25** (minutes).



**NOTE:**

VLANs that you enter for the **Management VLAN** and **VLAN Membership** parameters do not time out.

### Management VLAN

Enter the VLAN that the operator wishes to use to communicate with the module manager. The range of values is 1 to 4095. The default value is **1**.

### SM Management VLAN Pass-through

Specify whether to allow the SM (**Enable**) or the AP (**Disable**) to control the VLAN settings of this SM. The default value is **Enable**.



**CAUTION!**

Do not set this parameter to **Enable** where both

- a BAM release earlier than 2.1 is implemented.
- the **Configuration Source** parameter in the AP is set to **BAM**.

This combination causes the SMs to become unmanageable, until you gain direct access with an override plug and remove this combination from the AP configuration.

### Save Changes

When you click this button, any changes that you made on this tab are recorded in flash memory. However, these changes *do not* apply until the next reboot of the module.

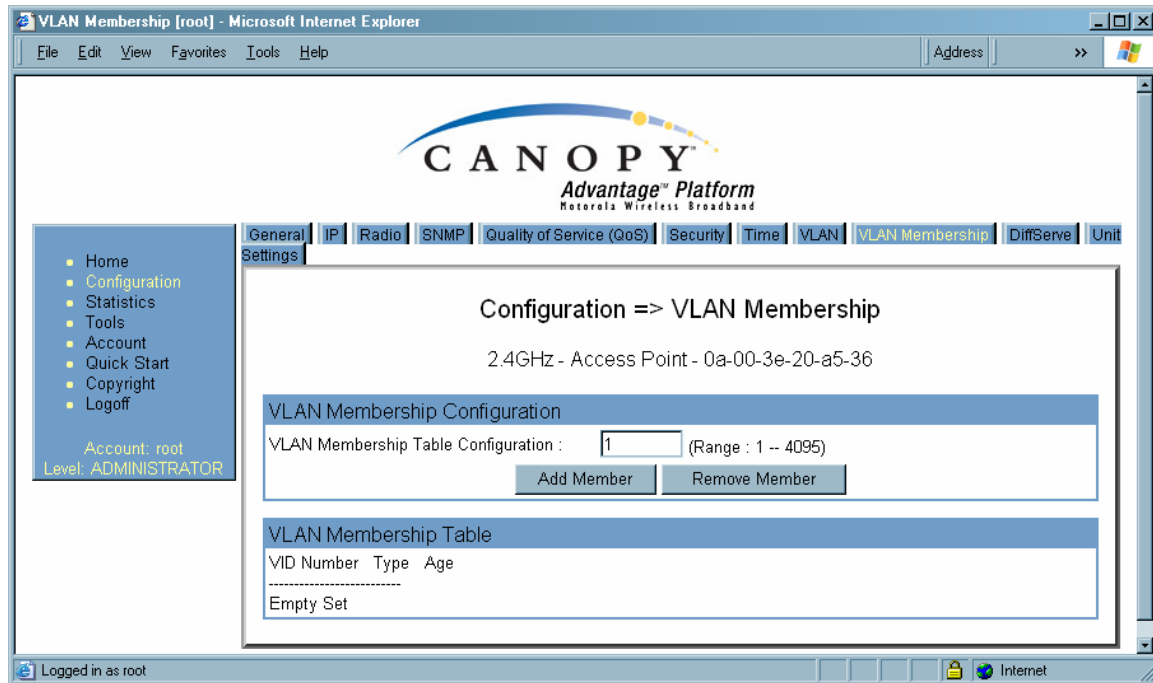
### Reboot

When you click this button

1. the module reboots.
2. any changes that you saved by a click of the **Save Changes** button are implemented.

### 18.1.8 VLAN Membership Tab of the AP

An example of the VLAN Membership tab of the AP is displayed in [Figure 88](#).



**Figure 88: VLAN Membership tab of AP, example**

You may set the VLAN Membership tab parameter as follows.

#### **VLAN Membership Table Configuration**

For each VLAN in which you want the AP to be a member, enter the VLAN ID and then click the **Add Member** button. Similarly, for any VLAN in which you want the AP to no longer be a member, enter the VLAN ID and then click the **Remove Member** button.



### 18.1.9 DiffServe Tab of the AP

An example of the DiffServe tab of the AP is displayed in [Figure 89](#).

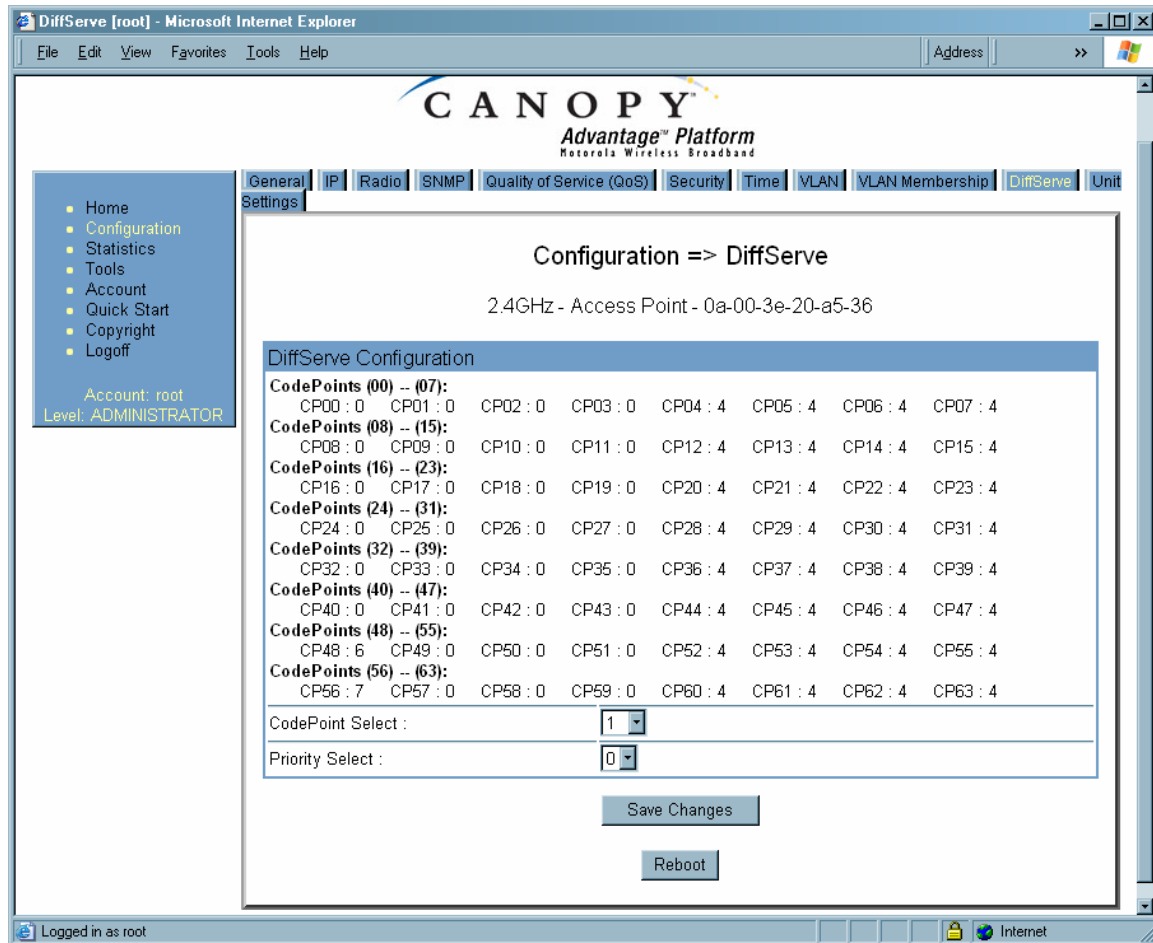


Figure 89: DiffServe tab of AP, example

You may set the following DiffServe tab parameters.

**CodePoint 1  
through  
CodePoint 47**

The default priority value for each settable CodePoint is shown in [Figure 119](#). Priorities of 0 through 3 map to the low-priority channel; 4 through 7 to the high-priority channel. The mappings are the same as 802.1p VLAN priorities.

Consistent with RFC 2474

**CodePoint 49  
through  
CodePoint 55**

- **CodePoint 0** is predefined to a fixed priority value of **0** (low-priority channel).
- **CodePoint 48** is predefined to a fixed priority value of **6** (high-priority channel).
- **CodePoint 56** is predefined to a fixed priority value of **7** (high-priority channel).

**CodePoint 57  
through  
CodePoint 63**

You cannot change any of these three fixed priority values. Among the settable parameters, the priority values (and therefore the handling of packets in the high- or low-priority channel) are set in the AP for all downlinks within the sector and in the SM for each uplink. See [DSCP Field](#) on Page 89.

The DiffServe tab also contains the following buttons.

**Save Changes**

When you click this button, any changes that you made on all tabs are recorded in flash memory. However, these changes *do not* apply until the next reboot of the module.

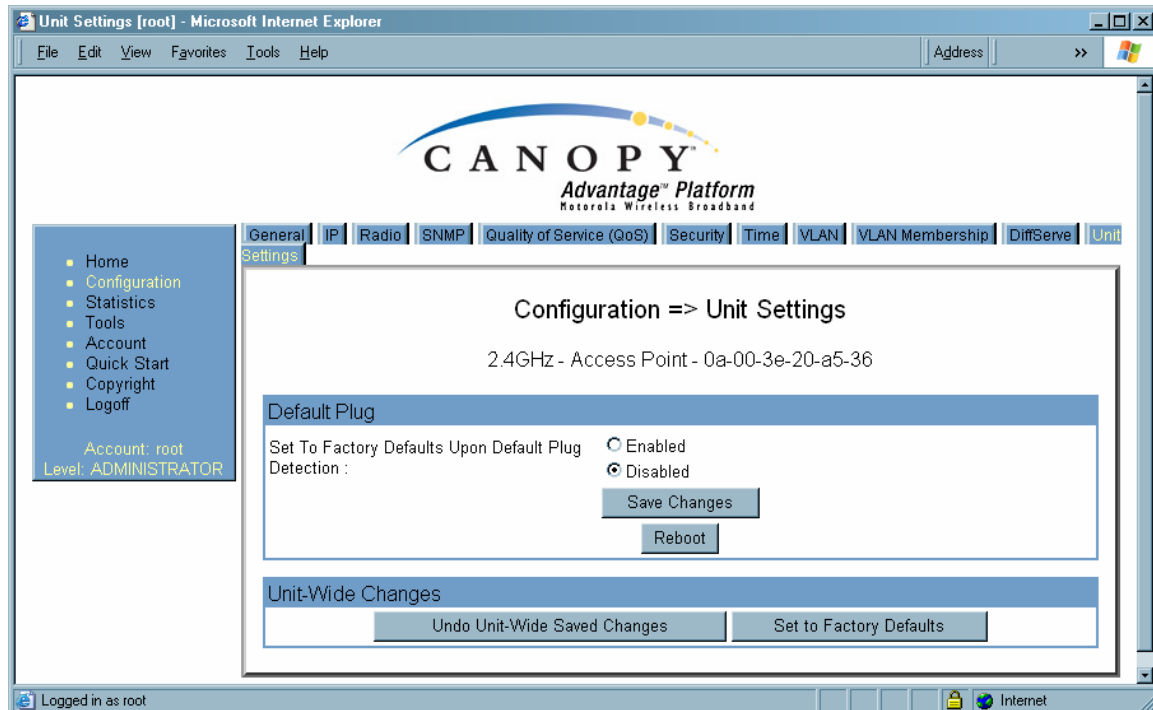
**Reboot**

When you click this button

1. the module reboots.
2. any changes that you saved by a click of the **Save Changes** button are implemented.

### 18.1.10 Unit Settings Tab of the AP

An example of the Unit Settings tab of the AP is shown in [Figure 90](#).



**Figure 90: Unit Settings tab of AP, example**

The Unit Settings tab of the AP contains an option for how the AP should react when it detects a connected override plug. You may set this option as follows.

#### Set to Factory Defaults Upon Default Plug Detection

If **Enabled** is checked, then an override/default plug functions as a default plug. When the module is rebooted with the plug inserted, it can be accessed at the IP address 169.254.1.1 and no password, and all parameter values are reset to defaults.

A subscriber, technician, or other person who gains physical access to the module and uses an override/default plug *cannot* see or learn the settings that were previously configured in it. When the module is later rebooted with no plug inserted, the module uses the new values for any parameters that were changed and the default values for any that were not.

If **Disabled** is checked, then an override/default plug functions as an override plug. When the module is rebooted with the plug inserted, it can be accessed at the IP address 169.254.1.1 and no password, and all previously configured parameter values remain and are displayed. A subscriber, technician, or other person who gains physical access to the module and uses an override/default plug *can* see and learn the settings. When the module is later rebooted with no plug inserted, the module uses the new values for any parameters that were changed and the previous values for any that were not.

See [Overriding Forgotten IP Addresses or Passwords on AP, SM, or BH](#) on Page 381.

The Unit Settings tab also contains the following buttons.

**Save Changes**

When you click this button, any changes that you made on all tabs are recorded in flash memory. However, these changes *do not* apply until the next reboot of the module.

**Reboot**

When you click this button

1. the module reboots.
2. any changes that you saved by a click of the **Save Changes** button are implemented.

**Undo Unit-Wide Saved Changes**

When you click this button, any changes that you made in any tab but did not commit by a reboot of the module are undone.

**Set to Factory Defaults**

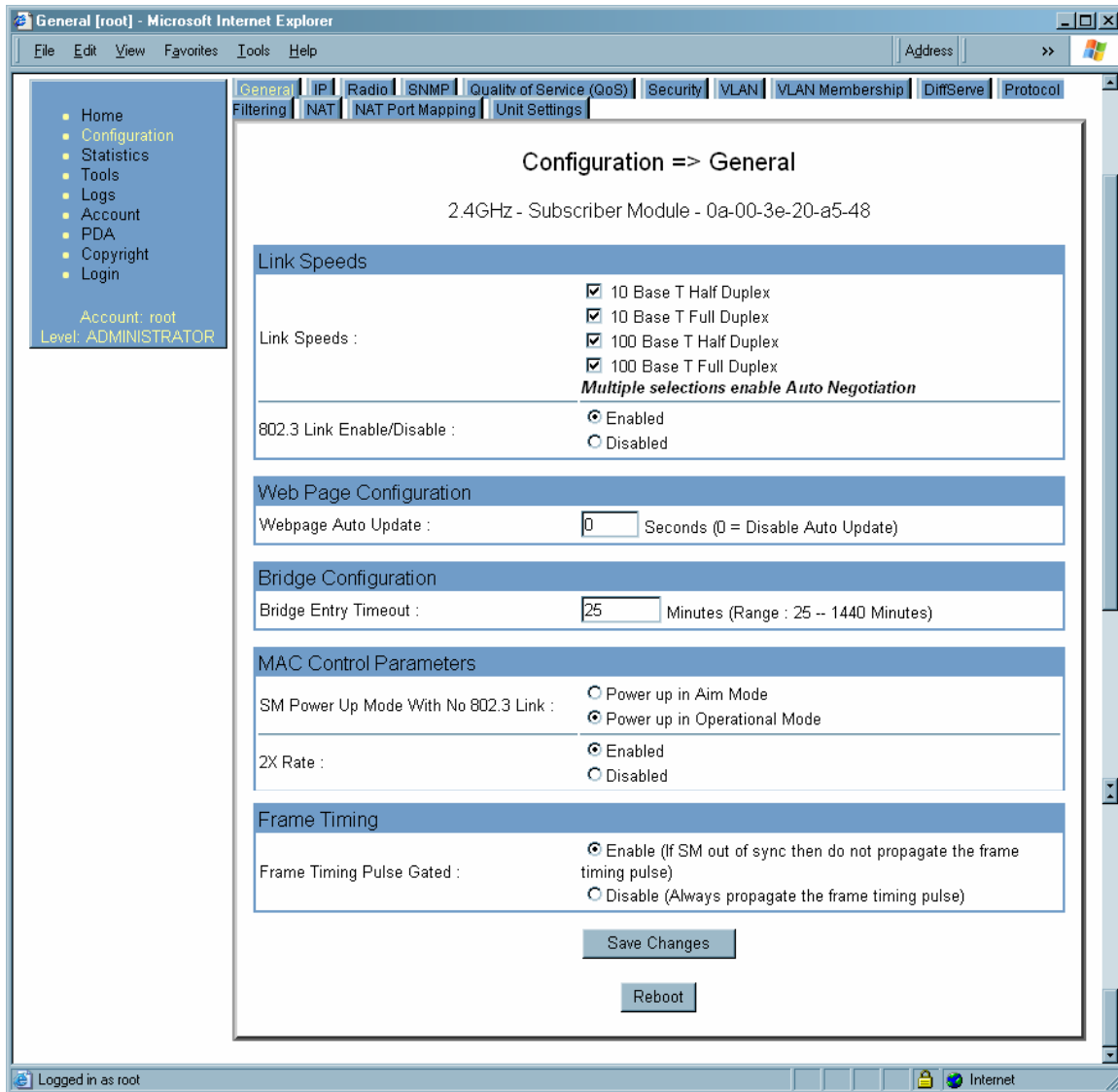
When you click this button, *all configurable parameters on all tabs* are reset to the factory settings.

## 18.2 CONFIGURING AN SM FOR THE DESTINATION

If an ADMINISTRATOR-level password has been set in the SM, you must log into the module before you can configure its parameters. See [Managing Module Access by Passwords](#) on Page 379.

### 18.2.1 General Tab of the SM

An example of a General tab in the SM is displayed in [Figure 91](#).



**Figure 91: General tab of SM, example**

In the General tab of the SM, you may set the following parameters.

#### Link Speeds

Specify the type of link speed for the Ethernet connection. The default for this parameter is that all speeds are selected. The recommended setting is a single speed selection for all APs, BHs, and SMs in the operator network.

### 802.3 Link Enable/Disable

Specify whether to enable or disable Ethernet/802.3 connectivity on the wired port of the SM. This parameter has no effect on the wireless link. When you select **Enable**, this feature allows traffic on the Ethernet/802.3 port. This is the factory default state of the port. When you select **Disable**, this feature prevents traffic on the port. Typical cases of when you may want to select **Disable** include:

- The subscriber is delinquent with payment(s).
- You suspect that the subscriber is sending or flooding undesired broadcast packets into the network, such as when
  - a virus is present in the subscriber's computing device.
  - the subscriber's home router is improperly configured.

### Webpage Auto Update

Enter the frequency (in seconds) for the web browser to automatically refresh the web-based interface. The default setting is 0. The 0 setting causes the web-based interface to never be automatically refreshed.

### Bridge Entry Timeout

Specify the appropriate bridge timeout for correct network operation with the existing network infrastructure. Timeout occurs when the AP encounters no activity with the SM (whose MAC address is the bridge entry) within the interval that this parameter specifies. The Bridge Entry Timeout should be a longer period than the ARP (Address Resolution Protocol) cache timeout of the router that feeds the network.

This parameter governs the timeout interval, even if a router in the system has a longer timeout interval. The default value of this field is 25 minutes.



#### **CAUTION!**

An inappropriately low **Bridge Entry Timeout** setting may lead to temporary loss of communication with some end users.

### SM Power Up Mode With No 802.3 Link

Specify the default mode in which this SM will power up when the SM senses no Ethernet link. Select either

- **Power Up in Aim Mode**—the SM boots in an aiming mode. When the SM senses an Ethernet link, this parameter is automatically reset to Power Up in Operational Mode. When the module senses no Ethernet link within 15 minutes after power up, the SM carrier shuts off.
- **Power Up in Operational Mode**—the SM boots in Operational mode. The module attempts registration. Unlike in previous releases, this is the default selection in Release 8.

### 2X Rate

Disable this parameter to facilitate initial aiming from the destination. Then see [2X Operation](#) on Page 92.

**Frame Timing Pulse Gated**

If this SM extends the sync pulse to a BH master or an AP, select either

- **Enable**—If this SM loses sync from the AP, then *do not* propagate a sync pulse to the BH timing master or other AP. This setting prevents interference in the event that the SM loses sync.
- **Disable**—If this SM loses sync from the AP, then propagate the sync pulse to the BH timing master or other AP.

See [Wiring to Extend Network Sync](#) on Page 375.

The General tab also contains the following buttons.

**Save Changes**

When you click this button, any changes that you made on all tabs are recorded in flash memory. However, these changes *do not* apply until the next reboot of the module.

**Reboot**

When you click this button

1. the module reboots.
2. any changes that you saved by a click of the **Save Changes** button are implemented.

**18.2.2 NAT and IP Tabs of the SM with NAT Disabled**

An example of the NAT tab in an SM with NAT disabled is displayed in [Figure 92](#).

<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Home</li> <li>Configuration</li> <li>Statistics</li> <li>Tools</li> <li>Logs</li> <li>Account</li> <li>PDA</li> <li>Copyright</li> <li>Logoff</li> </ul> <p>Account: root Level: ADMINISTRATOR</p>	<p>General   IP   Radio   SNMP   Quality of Service (QoS)   Security   VLAN   VLAN Membership   DmServ   Protocol Filtering   <b>NAT</b></p> <p>NAT Port Mapping   ISM Frequencies   Unit Settings</p>
	<p align="center"><b>Configuration =&gt; NAT</b></p> <p align="center">5.7GHz - Subscriber Module - 0a-00-3e-f0-08-09</p>
	<p><b>NAT Enable</b></p> <p>NAT Enable/Disable : <input type="radio"/> Enabled <input checked="" type="radio"/> Disabled</p>
	<p><b>NAT Private Network Interface Configuration</b></p> <p>IP Address : <input type="text" value="xxx.xxx.xxx.1"/></p> <p>Subnet Mask : <input type="text" value="255.255.255.xxx"/></p>
	<p><b>DMZ Host Interface Configuration</b></p> <p>IP Address : <input type="text" value="xxx.xxx.xxx.52"/></p> <p>DMZ Enable : <input checked="" type="radio"/> Enabled <input type="radio"/> Disabled</p>
	<p><b>NAT Public Network Interface Configuration</b></p> <p>IP Address : <input type="text" value="0.0.0.0"/></p> <p>Subnet Mask : <input type="text" value="255.255.255.0"/></p> <p>Gateway IP Address : <input type="text" value="0.0.0.0"/></p>
	<p><b>DHCP Server Network Interface Configuration</b></p> <p>DHCP Start IP : <input type="text" value="xxx.xxx.xxx.2"/></p> <p>Number of IP's to Lease : <input type="text" value="50"/></p>
	<p><b>Radio Public Network Interface Configuration</b></p> <p>IP Address : <input type="text" value="10.40.12.104"/></p> <p>Interface Enable/Disable : <input checked="" type="radio"/> Enabled <input type="radio"/> Disabled</p> <p>Subnet Mask : <input type="text" value="255.255.0.0"/></p> <p>Gateway IP Address : <input type="text" value="10.40.255.254"/></p> <p>DHCP state : <input checked="" type="radio"/> Enabled <input type="radio"/> Disabled</p>
	<p><b>Generic NAT Parameters</b></p> <p>ARP Cache Timeout : <input type="text" value="20"/> Minutes (Range : 1 -- 30)</p> <p>TCP Session Garbage Timeout : <input type="text" value="1440"/> Minutes (Range : 4 -- 1440)</p> <p>UDP Session Garbage Timeout : <input type="text" value="4"/> Minutes (Range : 1 -- 1440)</p>
	<p><b>DHCP Generic Parameters</b></p> <p>DHCP Client Enable/Disable : <input checked="" type="radio"/> Enabled <input type="radio"/> Disabled</p> <p>DHCP Server Enable/Disable : <input checked="" type="radio"/> Enabled <input type="radio"/> Disabled</p> <p>DHCP Server Lease Timeout : <input type="text" value="30"/> Days (Range : 1 -- 30)</p>
<p><b>DNS Server Parameters</b></p> <p>DNS IP Address : <input checked="" type="radio"/> Obtain Automatically <input type="radio"/> Set Manually</p> <p>Preferred DNS IP Address : <input type="text" value="0.0.0.0"/></p> <p>Alternate DNS IP Address : <input type="text" value="0.0.0.0"/></p>	
<p><input type="button" value="Save Changes"/></p> <p><input type="button" value="Reboot"/></p>	

**Figure 92: NAT tab of SM with NAT disabled, example**

This implementation is illustrated in [Figure 46](#) on [Page 159](#). In the NAT tab of an SM with NAT disabled, you may set the following parameters.



**NAT Enable/Disable**

This parameter enables or disabled the Network Address Translation (NAT) feature for the SM. NAT isolates devices connected to the Ethernet/wired side of an SM from being seen directly from the wireless side of the SM. With NAT enabled, the SM has an IP address for transport traffic separate from its address for management, terminates transport traffic, and allows you to assign a range of IP addresses to devices that are connected to the Ethernet/wired side of the SM. For further information, see [Network Address Translation \(NAT\)](#) on Page 158 and [NAT and IP Tabs of the SM with NAT Enabled](#) on Page 273.

**NAT Private Network Interface Configuration, IP Address**

This parameter is not configurable when NAT is disabled.

**NAT Private Network Interface Configuration, Subnet Mask**

This parameter is not configurable when NAT is disabled.

**DMZ Host Interface Configuration, IP Address**

This parameter is not configurable when NAT is disabled.

**DMZ Enable**

This parameter is not configurable when NAT is disabled.

**NAT Public Network Interface Configuration, IP Address**

This field displays the IP address for the SM. DHCP Server *will not* automatically assign this address when NAT is disabled.

**NAT Public Network Interface Configuration, Subnet Mask**

This field displays the subnet mask for the SM. DHCP Server *will not* automatically assign this address when NAT is disabled.

**NAT Public Network Interface Configuration, Gateway IP Address**

This field displays the gateway IP address for the SM. DHCP Server *will not* automatically assign this address when NAT is disabled.

**DHCP Start IP**

This parameter is not configurable when NAT is disabled.

**Number of IPs to Lease**

This parameter is not configurable when NAT is disabled.

**Radio Public Network Interface Configuration, IP Address**

This parameter is not configurable when NAT is disabled.

**Radio Public Network Interface Configuration, Interface Enable/Disable**

This parameter is not configurable when NAT is disabled.

**Radio Public Network Interface Configuration, Subnet Mask**

This parameter is not configurable when NAT is disabled.

**Radio Public Network Interface Configuration, Gateway IP Address**

This parameter is not configurable when NAT is disabled.

**Radio Public Network Interface Configuration, DHCP State**

This parameter is not configurable when NAT is disabled.

**ARP Cache Timeout**

If a router upstream has an ARP cache of longer duration (as some use 30 minutes), enter a value of longer duration than the router ARP cache. The default value of this field is 20 minutes.

**TCP Session Garbage Timeout**

Where a large network exists behind the SM, you can set this parameter to lower than the default value of 1440 minutes (24 hours). This action makes additional resources available for greater traffic than the default value accommodates.

**UDP Session Garbage Timeout**

You may adjust this parameter in the range of 1 to 1440 minutes, based on network performance. The default value of this parameter is 4 minutes.

**DHCP Client Enable/Disable**

This parameter is not configurable when NAT is disabled.

**DHCP Server Enable/Disable**

This parameter is not configurable when NAT is disabled.

**DHCP Server Lease Timeout**

This parameter is not configurable when NAT is disabled.

**DNS IP Address**

This parameter is not configurable when NAT is disabled.

**Preferred DNS IP Address**

This parameter is not configurable when NAT is disabled.

**Alternate DNS IP Address**

This parameter is not configurable when NAT is disabled.

The NAT tab also contains the following buttons.

**Save Changes**

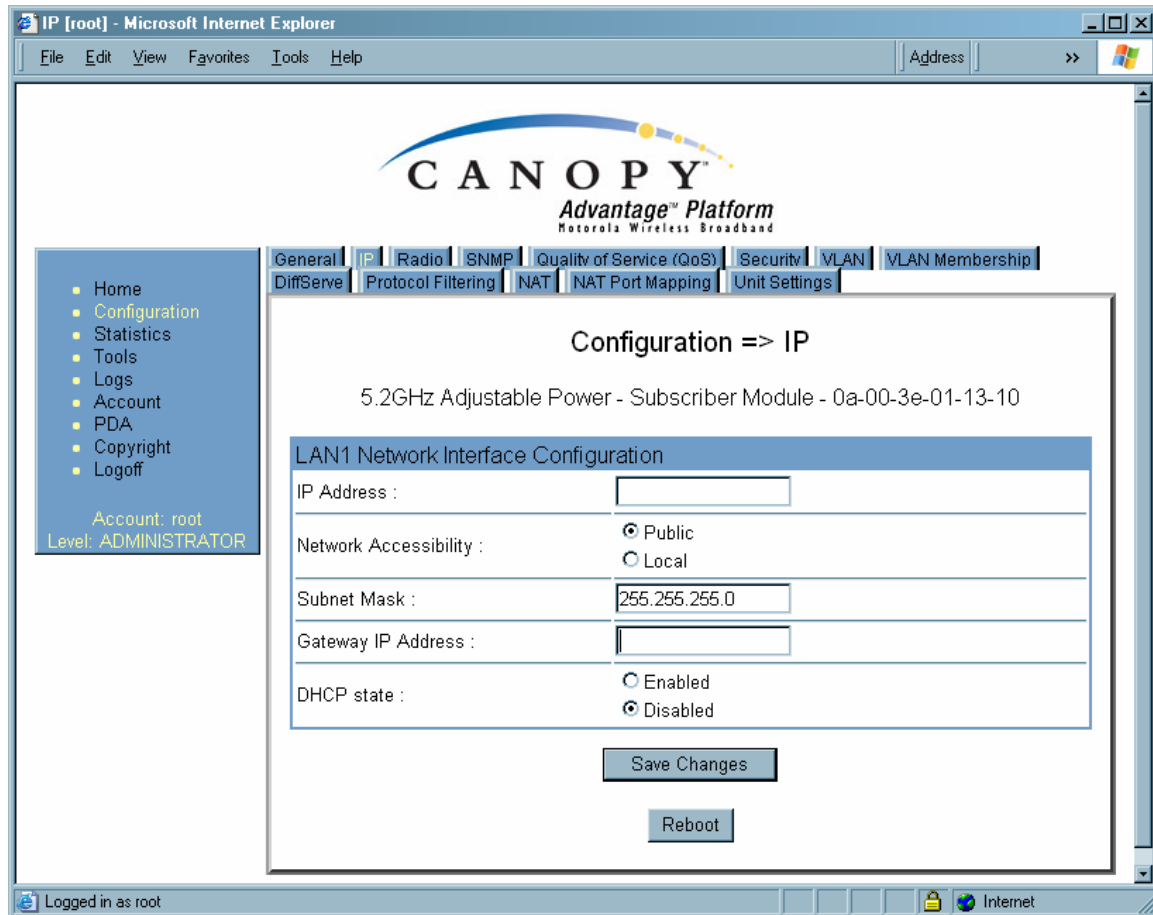
When you click this button, any changes that you made on all tabs are recorded in flash memory. However, these changes *do not* apply until the next reboot of the module.

**Reboot**

When you click this button

1. the module reboots.
2. any changes that you saved by a click of the **Save Changes** button are implemented.

An example of the IP tab in an SM with NAT disabled is displayed in [Figure 93](#).



**Figure 93: IP tab of SM with NAT disabled, example**

This implementation is illustrated in [Figure 46](#) on [Page 159](#). In the IP tab of an SM with NAT disabled, you may set the following parameters.

#### **LAN1 Network Interface Configuration, IP Address**

Enter the *non-routable* IP address to associate with the Ethernet connection on this SM. (The default IP address from the factory is 169.254.1.1.) If you set and then forget this parameter, then you must both

1. physically access the module.
2. use an override plug to electronically access the module configuration parameters at 169.254.1.1. See [Overriding Forgotten IP Addresses or Passwords on AP, SM, or BH](#) on [Page 383](#).



#### **RECOMMENDATION:**

Note or print the IP settings from this page. Ensure that you can readily associate these IP settings both with the module and with the other data that you store about the module.

**LAN1 Network Interface Configuration, Network Accessibility**

Specify whether the IP address of the SM should be visible to only a device connected to the SM by Ethernet (**Local**) or should be visible to the AP as well (**Public**).

**LAN1 Network Interface Configuration, Subnet Mask**

Enter an appropriate subnet mask for the SM to communicate on the network. The default subnet mask is 255.255.0.0. See [Allocating Subnets](#) on Page 164.

**LAN1 Network Interface Configuration, Gateway IP Address**

Enter the appropriate gateway for the SM to communicate with the network. The default gateway is 169.254.0.0.

**LAN1 Network Interface Configuration, DHCP State**

If you select **Enabled**, the DHCP server automatically assigns the IP configuration (IP address, subnet mask, and gateway IP address) and the values of those individual parameters (above) are not used. The setting of this DHCP state parameter is also viewable, but not settable, in the Network Interface tab of the Home page.

In this tab, DHCP State is settable only if the **Network Accessibility** parameter in the IP tab is set to **Public**. This parameter is also settable in the NAT tab of the Configuration web page, but only when NAT is enabled.

The IP tab also contains the following buttons.

**Save Changes**

When you click this button, any changes that you made on all tabs are recorded in flash memory. However, these changes *do not* apply until the next reboot of the module.

**Reboot**

When you click this button

1. the module reboots.
2. any changes that you saved by a click of the **Save Changes** button are implemented.

### 18.2.3 NAT and IP Tabs of the SM with NAT Enabled

An example of the NAT tab in an SM with NAT enabled is displayed in [Figure 94](#).

Configuration => NAT

5.7GHz - Subscriber Module - 0a-00-3e-f0-09-c7

**NAT Enable**

NAT Enable/Disable : ☒ Enabled  
☐ Disabled

**NAT Private Network Interface Configuration**

IP Address : 169.254.1.1

Subnet Mask : 255.255.255.0

**DMZ Host Interface Configuration**

IP Address : 169.254.1.52

DMZ Enable : ☐ Enabled  
☒ Disabled

**NAT Public Network Interface Configuration**

IP Address : 0.0.0.0

Subnet Mask : 255.255.255.0

Gateway IP Address : 0.0.0.0

**DHCP Server Network Interface Configuration**

DHCP Start IP : 169.254.1.2

Number of IP's to Lease : 50

**Radio Public Network Interface Configuration**

IP Address : 10.40.12.112

Interface Enable/Disable : ☒ Enabled  
☐ Disabled

Subnet Mask : 255.255.0.0

Gateway IP Address : 10.40.255.254

DHCP state : ☐ Enabled  
☒ Disabled

**Generic NAT Parameters**

ARP Cache Timeout : 20 Minutes (Range : 1 -- 30)

TCP Session Garbage Timeout : 120 Minutes (Range : 4 -- 1440)

UDP Session Garbage Timeout : 4 Minutes (Range : 1 -- 1440)

**DHCP Generic Parameters**

DHCP Client Enable/Disable : ☒ Enabled  
☐ Disabled

DHCP Server Enable/Disable : ☒ Enabled  
☐ Disabled

DHCP Server Lease Timeout : 30 Days (Range : 1 -- 30)

**DNS Server Parameters**

DNS IP Address : ☒ Obtain Automatically  
☐ Set Manually

Preferred DNS IP Address : 0.0.0.0

Alternate DNS IP Address : 0.0.0.0

Save Changes

Reboot

**Figure 94: NAT tab of SM with NAT enabled, example**

In the NAT tab of an SM with NAT enabled, you may set the following parameters.

**NAT Enable/Disable**

This parameter enables or disabled the Network Address Translation (NAT) feature for the SM. NAT isolates devices connected to the Ethernet/wired side of an SM from being seen directly from the wireless side of the SM. With NAT enabled, the SM has an IP address for transport traffic separate from its address for management, terminates transport traffic, and allows you to assign a range of IP addresses to devices that are connected to the Ethernet/wired side of the SM. For further information, see [Network Address Translation \(NAT\)](#) on Page 158 and [NAT and IP Tabs of the SM with NAT Enabled](#) on Page 273.

**NAT Private Network Interface Configuration, IP Address**

Assign an IP address for SM management through Ethernet access to the SM. Set only the first three bytes. The last byte is permanently set to 1. This address becomes the base for the range of DHCP-assigned addresses.

**NAT Private Network Interface Configuration, Subnet Mask**

Assign a subnet mask of 255.255.255.0 or a more restrictive subnet mask. Set only the last byte of this subnet mask. Each of the first three bytes is permanently set to 255.

**DMZ Host Interface Configuration, IP Address**

If you will be enabling DMZ in the next parameter, set the last byte of the DMZ host IP address to use for this SM when DMZ is enabled. Only one such address is allowed. The first three bytes are identical to those of the NAT private IP address. Ensure that the device that should receive network traffic behind this SM is assigned this address. The system provides a warning if you enter an address within the range that DHCP can assign.

**DMZ Enable**

Either enable or disable DMZ for this SM. See [DMZ](#) on Page 158.

**NAT Public Network Interface Configuration, IP Address**

This field displays the IP address of the SM. If DHCP Client is enabled, then the DHCP server automatically assigns this address.

**NAT Public Network Interface Configuration, Subnet Mask**

This field displays the subnet mask of the SM. If DHCP Client is enabled, then the DHCP server automatically assigns this subnet mask.

**NAT Public Network Interface Configuration, Gateway IP Address**

This field displays the gateway IP address for the SM. If DHCP Client is enabled, then the DHCP server automatically assigns this gateway IP address.

**DHCP Start IP**

If you will be enabling DHCP Server below, set the last byte of the starting IP address that the DHCP server will assign. The first three bytes are identical to those of the NAT private IP address.

**Number of IPs to Lease**

Enter how many IP addresses the DHCP server is allowed to assign. The default value is 50 addresses.

**Radio Public Network Interface Configuration, IP Address**

If DHCP Client is enabled, then the DHCP server automatically assigns this address. Otherwise, assign the IP address for over-the-air management of the SM when the radio public interface is enabled in the next parameter.

**Radio Public Network Interface Configuration, Interface Enable/Disable**

If you want over-the-air management capability for the SM, select **Enabled**. If you want to limit management of the SM to its Ethernet interface, select **Disabled**.

**Radio Public Network Interface Configuration, Subnet Mask**

If DHCP Client is enabled, then the DHCP server automatically assigns this subnet mask. Otherwise, assign the subnet mask for over-the-air management of the SM when the radio public interface is enabled.

**Radio Public Network Interface Configuration, Gateway IP Address**

If DHCP Client is enabled, then the DHCP server automatically assigns this gateway IP address. Otherwise, assign the gateway IP address for over-the-air management of the SM when the radio public network interface is enabled.

**RECOMMENDATION:**

Note or print the IP settings from this page. Ensure that you can readily associate these IP settings both with the module and with the other data that you store about the module.

**Radio Public Network Interface Configuration, DHCP State**

If you select **Enabled**, the DHCP server automatically assigns the IP configuration (IP address, subnet mask, and gateway IP address) and the values of those individual parameters (above) are not used. The setting of this DHCP state parameter is also viewable, but not settable, in the Network Interface tab of the Home page.

**ARP Cache Timeout**

If a router upstream has an ARP cache of longer duration (as some use 30 minutes), enter a value of longer duration than the router ARP cache. The default value of this field is 20 minutes.

**TCP Session Garbage Timeout**

Where a large network exists behind the SM, you can set this parameter to lower than the default value of 1440 minutes (24 hours). This action makes additional resources available for greater traffic than the default value accommodates. The default value of this parameter is 120 minutes.

**UDP Session Garbage Timeout**

You may adjust this parameter in the range of 1 to 1440 minutes, based on network performance. The default value of this parameter is 4 minutes.

**DHCP Client Enable/Disable**

Select either

- **Enabled** to allow the network DHCP server to assign IP addresses, subnet masks, and gateway IP addresses to devices that are attached to the SM.
- **Disabled** to
  - disable DHCP server assignment of this address.
  - enable the operator to assign this address.

The implementation of NAT with DHCP client is illustrated in [Figure 48](#) on Page 161. The implementation of NAT with DHCP client and DHCP server is illustrated in [Figure 47](#) on Page 160. The implementation of NAT without DHCP is illustrated in [Figure 50](#) on Page 163.

**DHCP Server Enable/Disable**

Select either

- **Enabled** to
  - allow this SM to assign IP addresses, subnet masks, and gateway IP addresses to attached devices.
  - assign a start address for DHCP.
  - designate how many IP addresses may be temporarily used (leased).
- **Disabled** to disallow the SM to assign addresses to attached devices.

The implementation of NAT with DHCP server is illustrated in [Figure 49](#) on Page 50. The implementation of NAT with DHCP client and DHCP server is illustrated in [Figure 47](#) on Page 160. The implementation of NAT without DHCP is illustrated in [Figure 50](#) on Page 163.

**DHCP Server Lease Timeout**

Based on network performance, enter the number of days between when the DHCP server assigns an IP address and when that address expires. The range of values for this parameter is 1 to 30 days. The default value is 30 days.

**DNS IP Address**

Select either

- **Obtain Automatically** to allow the system to set the IP address of the DNS server.
- **Set Manually** to enable yourself to set both a preferred and an alternate DNS IP address.

**Preferred DNS IP Address**

Enter the preferred DNS IP address to use when the **DNS IP Address** parameter is set to **Set Manually**.

**Alternate DNS IP Address**

Enter the DNS IP address to use when the **DNS IP Address** parameter is set to **Set Manually** and no response is received from the preferred DNS IP address.

The NAT tab also contains the following buttons.



### Save Changes

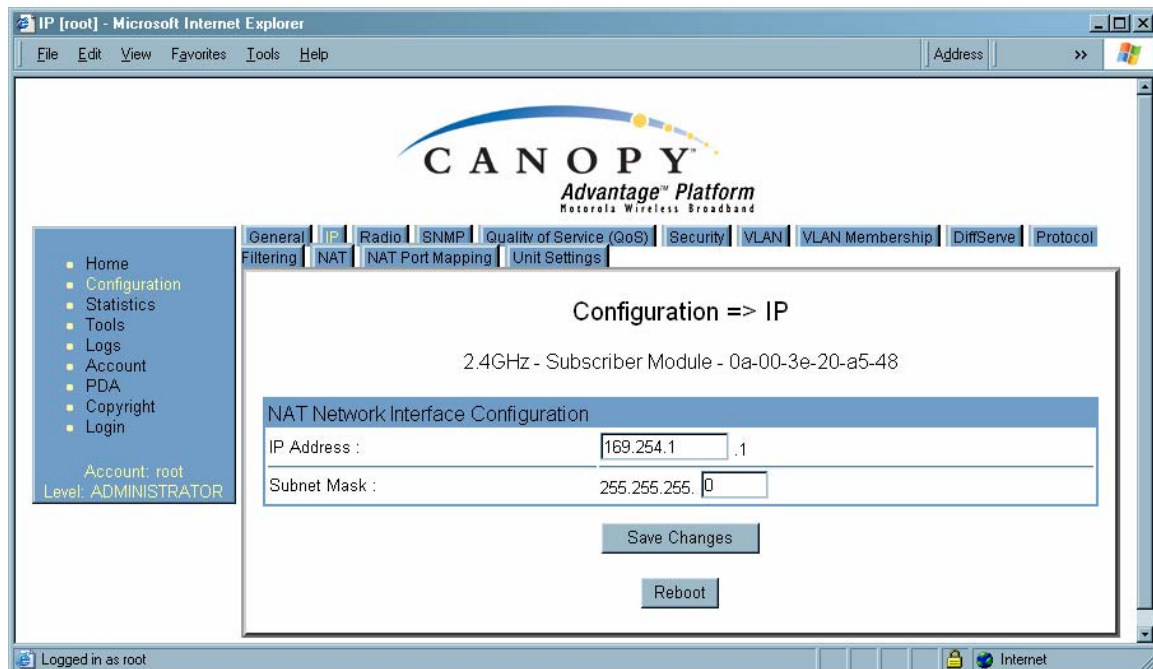
When you click this button, any changes that you made on all tabs are recorded in flash memory. However, these changes *do not* apply until the next reboot of the module.

### Reboot

When you click this button

1. the module reboots.
2. any changes that you saved by a click of the **Save Changes** button are implemented.

An example of the IP tab in an SM with NAT enabled is displayed in [Figure 95](#).



**Figure 95: IP tab of SM with NAT enabled, example**

In the IP tab of an SM with NAT enabled, you may set the following parameters.

#### NAT Network Interface Configuration, IP Address

Assign an IP address for SM management through Ethernet access to the SM. Set only the first three bytes. The last byte is permanently set to 1. This address becomes the base for the range of DHCP-assigned addresses.

#### NAT Network Interface Configuration, Subnet Mask

Assign a subnet mask of 255.255.255.0 or a more restrictive subnet mask. Set only the last byte of this subnet mask. Each of the first three bytes is permanently set to 255.

The IP tab also contains the following buttons.

### Save Changes

When you click this button, any changes that you made on all tabs are recorded in flash memory. However, these changes *do not* apply until the next reboot of the module.

## Reboot

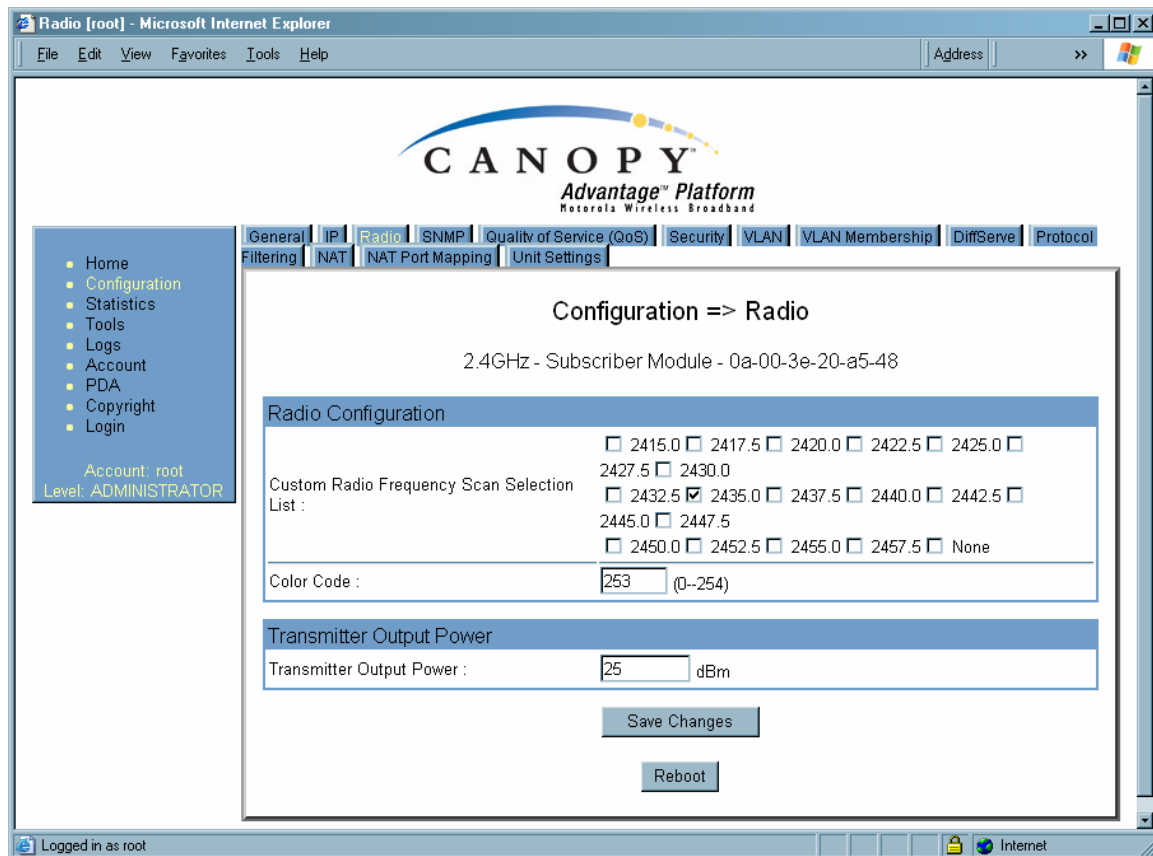
When you click this button

1. the module reboots.
2. any changes that you saved by a click of the **Save Changes** button are implemented.

An example of the IP tab in an SM with NAT enabled is displayed in [Figure 95](#).

### 18.2.4 Radio Tab of the SM

An example of the Radio tab in the SM is displayed in [Figure 96](#).



**Figure 96: Radio tab of SM, example**

In the Radio tab of the SM, you may set the following parameters.

#### Custom Radio Frequency Scan Selection List

Check any frequency that you want the SM to scan for AP transmissions. The frequency *band* of the SM affects what channels you should select.

**IMPORTANT!**

In the 2.4-GHz frequency band, the SM can register to an AP that transmits on a frequency 2.5 MHz higher than the frequency that the SM receiver locks when the scan terminates as successful. This establishes a poor-quality link. To prevent this, select frequencies that are at least 5 MHz apart.

In a 2.4-GHz SM, this parameter displays all available channels, but has only three recommended channels selected by default. See [2.4-GHz AP Cluster Recommended Channels](#) on Page 140.

In a 5.2- or 5.4-GHz SM, this parameter displays only ISM frequencies. In a 5.7-GHz SM, this parameter displays both ISM and U-NII frequencies. If you select all frequencies that are listed in this field (default selections), then the SM scans for a signal on any channel. If you select only one, then the SM limits the scan to that channel. Since the frequencies that this parameter offers for each of these two bands are 5 MHz apart, a scan of *all* channels does not risk establishment of a poor-quality link as in the 2.4-GHz band.

A list of channels in the band is provided in [Considering Frequency Band Alternatives](#) on Page 138.

(The selection labeled **Factory** requires a special software key file for implementation.)

**Color Code**

Color code allows you to force the SM to register to only a specific AP, even where the SM can communicate with multiple APs. For registration to occur, the color code of the SM and the AP *must* match. Specify a value from 0 to 254.

Color code is not a security feature. Instead, color code is a management feature, typically for assigning each sector a different color code. On all Canopy modules, the default setting for the color code value is 0. This value matches only the color code of 0 (*not* all 255 color codes).

**RECOMMENDATION:**

Note the color code that you enter. Ensure that you can readily associate this color code both with the module and with the other data that you store about the module.

**External Filters Delay**

This parameter is present in only 900-MHz modules and can have effect in only those that have interference mitigation filter(s). If this value is present, leave it set to **0**, regardless of whether the SM has an interference mitigation filter.

### Transmitter Output Power

Nations and regions may regulate transmitter output power. For example

- Both 900-MHz and 5.7-GHz modules are available as connectorized radios, which require the operator to adjust power to ensure regulatory compliance. In addition to setting the power in the 5.7-GHz connectorized module, the operator must set the antenna gain/cable loss such that the module can accurately report received power at the antenna.
- Legal maximum allowable transmitter output power and EIRP (Equivalent Isotropic Radiated Power) in the 2.4-GHz frequency band varies by country and region. The output power of Series P9 2.4-GHz modules can be adjusted to meet these national or regional regulatory requirements.
- Countries and regions that permit the use of the 5.4-GHz frequency band (CEPT member states, for example), generally require equipment using the band to have adjustable power.

The professional installer of Canopy equipment has the responsibility to

- maintain awareness of applicable regulations.
- calculate the permissible transmitter output power for the module.
- confirm that the initial power setting is compliant with national or regional regulations.
- confirm that the power setting is compliant following any reset of the module to factory defaults.

For information on how to calculate the permissible transmitter output power to enter in this parameter, see [Adjusting Transmitter Output Power](#) on Page 332.

The Radio tab also contains the following buttons.

### Save Changes

When you click this button, any changes that you made on all tabs are recorded in flash memory. However, these changes *do not* apply until the next reboot of the module.

### Reboot

When you click this button

1. the module reboots.
2. any changes that you saved by a click of the **Save Changes** button are implemented.

### 18.2.5 SNMP Tab of the SM

An example of the SNMP tab in an SM is displayed in [Figure 97](#).

**Figure 97: SNMP tab of SM, example**

In the SNMP tab of the SM, you may set the following parameters.

#### Community String

Specify a control string that allows Prizm or an NMS (Network Management Station) to access MIB information about this SM. No spaces are allowed in this string. The default string is **Canopy**.

The **Community String** value is clear text and is readable by a packet monitor. Additional security derives from the configuration of the **Accessing Subnet**, **Trap Address**, and **Permission** parameters.

### Accessing Subnet

Specify the addresses that are allowed to send SNMP requests to this SM. Prizm or the NMS has an address that is among these addresses (this subnet). You must enter both

- The network IP address in the form xxx.xxx.xxx.xxx
- The CIDR (Classless Interdomain Routing) prefix length in the form /xx

For example

- the /16 in 198.32.0.0/16 specifies a subnet mask of 255.255.0.0 (the first 16 bits in the address range are identical among all members of the subnet).
- 192.168.102.0 specifies that any device whose IP address is in the range 192.168.102.0 to 192.168.102.254 can send SNMP requests to the SM, presuming that the device supplies the correct **Community String** value.

The default treatment is to allow all networks access (set to 0). For more information on CIDR, execute an Internet search on “Classless Interdomain Routing.”



#### **RECOMMENDATION:**

The subscriber can access the SM by changing the subscriber device to the accessing subnet. This hazard exists because the **Community String** and **Accessing Subnet** are both visible parameters. To avoid this hazard, configure the SM to filter (block) SNMP requests. See [Filtering Protocols and Ports](#) on Page 384.

### Trap Address 1 to 10

Specify ten or fewer IP addresses (xxx.xxx.xxx.xxx) to which trap information should be sent. Trap information informs Prizm or an NMS that something has occurred. For example, trap information is sent

- after a reboot of the module.
- when Prizm or an NMS attempts to access agent information but either
  - supplied an inappropriate community string or SNMP version number.
  - is associated with a subnet to which access is disallowed.

### Read Permissions

Select **Read Only** if you wish to disallow Prizm or NMS SNMP access to configurable parameters and read-only fields of the SM.

### Site Name

Specify a string to associate with the physical module. This parameter is written into the *sysName* SNMP MIB-II object and can be polled by Prizm or an NMS. The buffer size for this field is 128 characters.

**Site Contact**

Enter contact information for the module administrator. This parameter is written into the *sysContact* SNMP MIB-II object and can be polled by Prizm or an NMS. The buffer size for this field is 128 characters.

**Site Location**

Enter information about the physical location of the module. This parameter is written into the *sysLocation* SNMP MIB-II object and can be polled by Prizm or an NMS. The buffer size for this field is 128 characters.

The SNMP tab also provides the following buttons.

**Save Changes**

When you click this button, any changes that you made on the Configuration page are recorded in flash memory. However, these changes *do not* apply until the next reboot of the module.

**Reboot**

When you click this button

1. the module reboots.
2. any changes that you saved by a click of the **Save Changes** button are implemented.

### 18.2.6 Quality of Service (QoS) Tab of the SM

An example of the Quality of Service (QoS) tab in the SM is displayed in [Figure 98](#).

**Figure 98: Quality of Service (QoS) tab of SM, example**

In the Quality of Service (QoS) tab of the SM, you may set the following parameters.

#### Sustained Uplink Data Rate

Specify the rate that this SM is replenished with credits for transmission. This default imposes no restriction on the uplink. See

- [Maximum Information Rate \(MIR\) Parameters](#) on Page 86
- [Interaction of Burst Allocation and Sustained Data Rate Settings](#) on Page 88
- [Setting the Configuration Source](#) on Page 297.

#### Sustained Downlink Data Rate

Specify the rate at which the AP should be replenished with credits (tokens) for transmission to this SM. This default imposes no restriction on the uplink. See

- [Maximum Information Rate \(MIR\) Parameters](#) on Page 86
- [Interaction of Burst Allocation and Sustained Data Rate Settings](#) on Page 88
- [Setting the Configuration Source](#) on Page 297.



**Uplink Burst Allocation**

Specify the maximum amount of data to allow this SM to transmit before being recharged at the **Sustained Uplink Data Rate** with credits to transmit more. See

- [Maximum Information Rate \(MIR\) Parameters](#) on Page 86
- [Interaction of Burst Allocation and Sustained Data Rate Settings](#) on Page 88
- [Setting the Configuration Source](#) on Page 297.

**Downlink Burst Allocation**

Specify the maximum amount of data to allow the AP to transmit to this SM before the AP is replenished at the **Sustained Downlink Data Rate** with transmission credits. See

- [Maximum Information Rate \(MIR\) Parameters](#) on Page 86
- [Interaction of Burst Allocation and Sustained Data Rate Settings](#) on Page 88
- [Setting the Configuration Source](#) on Page 297.

**Low Priority Uplink CIR**

See

- [Committed Information Rate](#) on Page 88
- [Setting the Configuration Source](#) on Page 297.

**Low Priority Downlink CIR**

See

- [Committed Information Rate](#) on Page 88
- [Setting the Configuration Source](#) on Page 297.

**Hi Priority Channel**

See

- [High-priority Bandwidth](#) on Page 88
- [Setting the Configuration Source](#) on Page 297.

**Hi Priority Uplink CIR**

See

- [High-priority Bandwidth](#) on Page 88
- [Committed Information Rate](#) on Page 88
- [Setting the Configuration Source](#) on Page 297.

**Hi Priority Downlink CIR**

See

- [High-priority Bandwidth](#) on Page 88
- [Committed Information Rate](#) on Page 88
- [Setting the Configuration Source](#) on Page 297.

The Quality of Service (QoS) tab also provides the following buttons.

**Save Changes**

When you click this button, any changes that you made in this tab are recorded in flash memory. However, these changes *do not* apply until the next reboot of the module.

**Reboot**

When you click this button

1. the module reboots.
2. any changes that you saved by a click of the **Save Changes** button are implemented.

### 18.2.7 Security Tab of the SM

An example of the Security tab in an SM is displayed in [Figure 99](#).

The screenshot shows a web browser window titled "Security [none] - Microsoft Internet Explorer". The browser's address bar is empty. The page has a navigation menu on the left with links: Home, Configuration, Statistics, Tools, Logs, Account, PDA, Copyright, and Login. Below the menu, it says "Account: none" and "Level: ADMINISTRATOR". The main content area has a tabbed interface with tabs: General, IP, Radio, SNMP, Quality of Service (QoS), Security (selected), VLAN, and VLAN Membership. Below the tabs, there are sub-tabs: DiffServe, Protocol Filtering, NAT, NAT Port Mapping, Unit Settings, and a button for "Unit Settings". The main content area is titled "Configuration => Security" and shows the configuration for a "2.4GHz - Subscriber Module - 0a-00-3e-20-a5-48".

**Authentication Key Settings**

Authentication Key :  (Using All 0xFF's Key)

Select Key : ☐ Use Key above ☒ Use Default Key

**Session Timeout**

Web, Telnet, FTP Session Timeout :  Seconds

**Ethernet Access Control - Control access to SM via Ethernet Interface.**

Ethernet Access Control : ☐ Ethernet Access Disabled ☒ Ethernet Access Enabled

**IP Access Filtering**

IP Access Control : ☐ IP Access Filtering Enabled - Only allow access from IP addresses specified below ☒ IP Access Filtering Disabled - Allow access from all IP addresses

Allowed Source IP 1 :

Allowed Source IP 2 :

Allowed Source IP 3 :

Logged in as none

**Figure 99: Security tab of SM, example**

In the Security tab of the SM, you may set the following parameters.

### Authentication Key

Only if the AP to which this SM will register requires authentication, specify the key that the SM should use when authenticating. For alpha characters in this hex key, use only upper case.

### Select Key

The **Use Default Key** selection specifies the predetermined key for authentication in BAM or Prizm. See [Authentication Manager Capability](#) on Page 391.

The **Use Key above** selection specifies the 32-digit hexadecimal key that is permanently stored on both the SM and the BAM or Prizm database.



#### NOTE:

The SM and BAM or Prizm pad the key of any length by the addition of leading zeroes, and if the entered keys match, authentication attempts succeed. However, Canopy recommends that you enter 32 characters to achieve the maximal security from this feature.

### Web, Telnet, FTP Session Timeout

Enter the expiry in seconds for remote management sessions via HTTP, telnet, or ftp access to the SM.

### Ethernet Access Control

If you want to prevent any device that is connected to the Ethernet port of the SM from accessing the management interface of the SM, select **Ethernet Access Disabled**. This selection disables access through this port to via http (the GUI), SNMP, telnet, ftp, and tftp. With this selection, management access is available through only the RF interface via either an IP address (if **Network Accessibility** is set to **Public** on the SM) or the Session Status or Remote Subscribers tab of the AP.



#### NOTE:

This setting does not prevent a device connected to the Ethernet port from accessing the management interface of *other SMs* in the network. To prevent this, use the **IP Access Filtering Enabled** selection in the **IP Access Control** parameter of the SMs in the network. See **IP Access Control** below.

If you want to allow management access through the Ethernet port, select **Ethernet Access Enabled**. This is the factory default setting for this parameter.

**IP Access Control**

You can permit access to the SM from any IP address (**IP Access Filtering Disabled**) or limit it to access from only one, two, or three IP addresses that you specify (**IP Access Filtering Enabled**). If you select **IP Access Filtering Enabled**, then you must populate at least one of the three **Allowed Source IP** parameters or have no access permitted from any IP address, including access and management by Prizm.

**Allowed Source IP 1 to 3**

If you selected **IP Access Filtering Enabled** for the **IP Access Control** parameter, then you must populate at least one of the three **Allowed Source IP** parameters or have no access permitted to the SM from any IP address. You may populate as many as all three.

If you selected **IP Access Filtering Disabled** for the **IP Access Control** parameter, then no entries in this parameter are read, and access from all IP addresses is permitted.

The Security tab of the SM also provides the following buttons.

**Save Changes**

When you click this button, any changes that you made on this tab are recorded in flash memory. However, these changes *do not* apply until the next reboot of the module.

**Reboot**

When you click this button

1. the module reboots.
2. any changes that you saved by a click of the **Save Changes** button are implemented.

**18.2.8 VLAN Tab of the SM**

An example of the VLAN tab in an SM is displayed in [Figure 100](#).

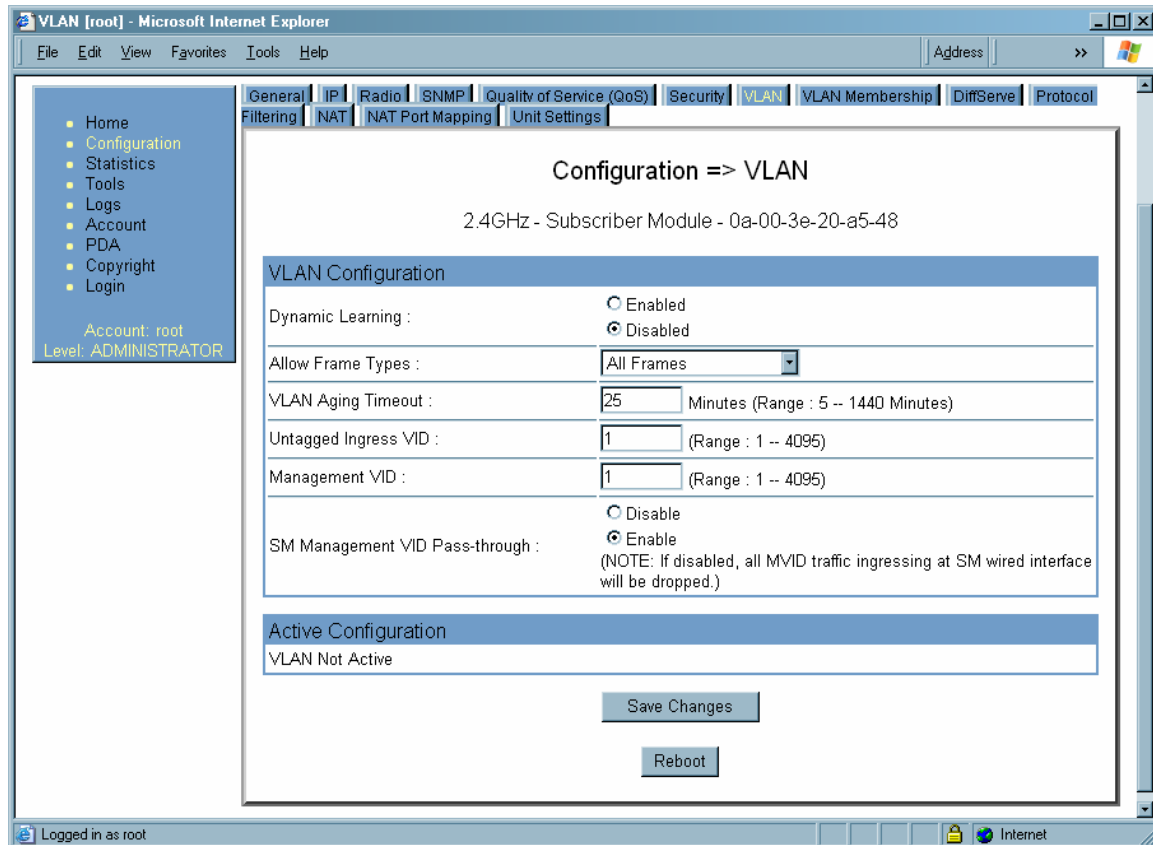


Figure 100: VLAN tab of SM, example

In the VLAN tab of an SM, you may set the following parameters.

### Dynamic Learning

Specify whether the SM should (**Enable**) or should not (**Disable**) add the VIDs of upstream frames (that enter the SM through the wired Ethernet interface) to the VID table. The default value is **Enable**.

### Allow Frame Types

Select the type of arriving frames that the SM should tag, using the VID that is stored in the **Untagged Ingress VID** parameter. The default value is **All Frames**.

### VLAN Aging Timeout

Specify how long the SM should keep dynamically learned VIDs. The range of values is 5 to 1440 (minutes). The default value is **25** (minutes).



#### NOTE:

VIDs that you enter for the **Untagged Ingress VID** and **Management VID** parameters do not time out.

**Untagged Ingress VID**

Enter the VID that the SM(s) should use to tag frames that arrive at the SM(s) untagged. The range of values is 1 to 4095. The default value is **1**.

**Management VID**

Enter the VID that the SM should share with the AP. The range of values is 1 to 4095. The default value is **1**.

**SM Management VID Pass-through**

Specify whether to allow the SM (**Enable**) or the AP (**Disable**) to control the VLAN settings of this SM. The default value is **Enable**.

The VLAN tab also provides the following buttons.

**Save Changes**

When you click this button, any changes that you made on this tab are recorded in flash memory. However, these changes *do not* apply until the next reboot of the module.

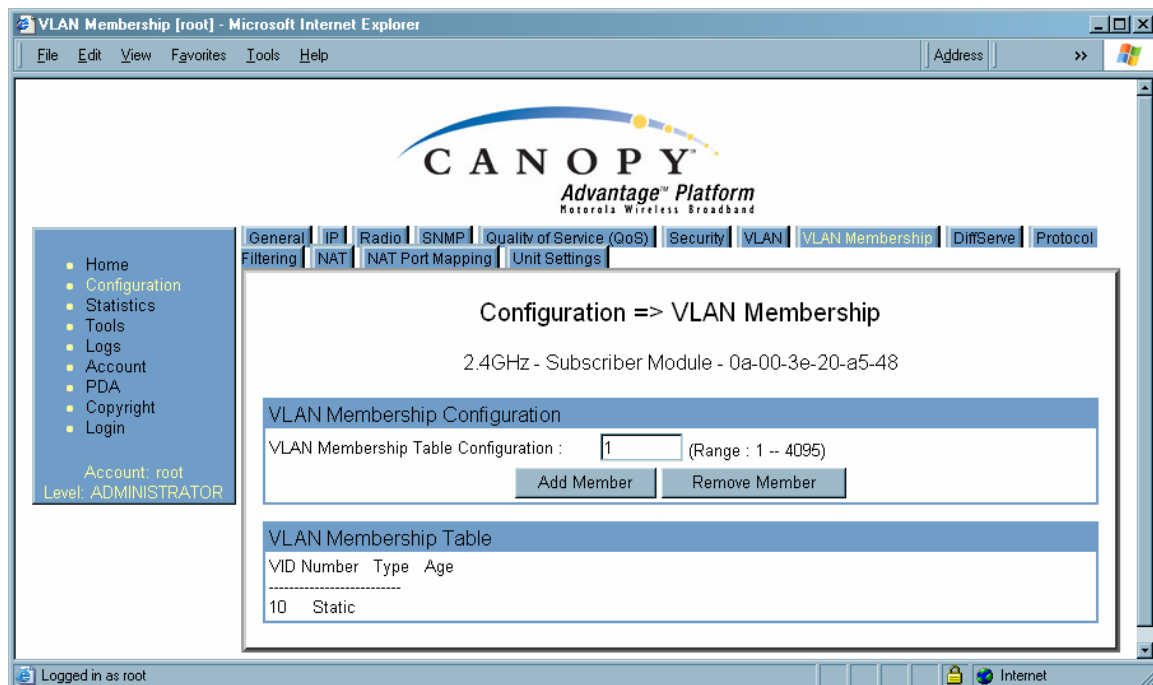
**Reboot**

When you click this button

1. the module reboots.
2. any changes that you saved by a click of the **Save Changes** button are implemented.

**18.2.9 VLAN Membership Tab of the SM**

An example of the VLAN Membership tab in an SM is displayed in [Figure 101](#).



**Figure 101: VLAN Membership tab of SM, example**

In the VLAN Membership tab, you may set the following parameter.

### VLAN Membership Table Configuration

For each VLAN in which you want the AP to be a member, enter the VLAN ID and then click the **Add Member** button. Similarly, for any VLAN in which you want the AP to no longer be a member, enter the VLAN ID and then click the **Remove Member** button.

## 18.2.10 DiffServe Tab of the SM

An example of the DiffServe tab in an SM is displayed in [Figure 102](#).

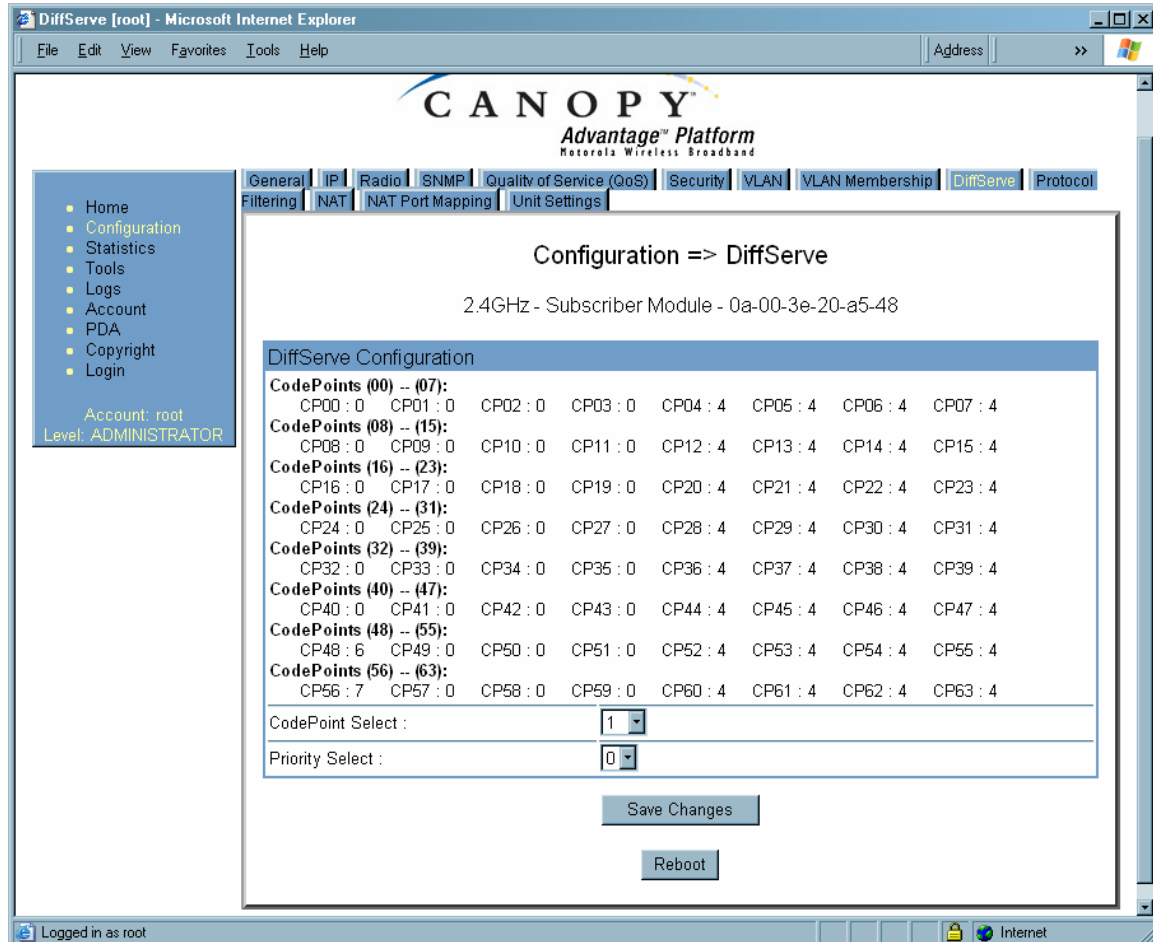


Figure 102: DiffServe tab of SM, example



In the DiffServe tab of the SM, you may set the following parameters.

**CodePoint 1  
through  
CodePoint 47**

The default priority value for each settable CodePoint is shown in [Figure 119](#). Priorities of 0 through 3 map to the low-priority channel; 4 through 7 to the high-priority channel. The mappings are the same as 802.1p VLAN priorities.

Consistent with RFC 2474

**CodePoint 49  
through  
CodePoint 55**

- **CodePoint 0** is predefined to a fixed priority value of **0** (low-priority channel).
- **CodePoint 48** is predefined to a fixed priority value of **6** (high-priority channel).
- **CodePoint 56** is predefined to a fixed priority value of **7** (high-priority channel).

**CodePoint 57  
through  
CodePoint 63**

You cannot change any of these three fixed priority values. Among the settable parameters, the priority values (and therefore the handling of packets in the high- or low-priority channel) are set in the AP for all downlinks within the sector and in the SM for each uplink. See [DSCP Field](#) on Page 89.

The DiffServe tab of the SM also provides the following buttons.

**Save Changes**

When you click this button, any changes that you made on this tab are recorded in flash memory. However, these changes *do not* apply until the next reboot of the module.

**Reboot**

When you click this button

1. the module reboots.
2. any changes that you saved by a click of the **Save Changes** button are implemented.

### 18.2.11 Protocol Filtering Tab of the SM

An example of the Protocol Filtering tab in an SM is displayed in [Figure 103](#).

Protocol Filtering [root] - Microsoft Internet Explorer

File Edit View Favorites Tools Help

Address >>

General IP Radio SNMP Quality of Service (QoS) Security VLAN VLAN Membership DiffServe Protocol Filtering NAT NAT Port Mapping Unit Settings

Configuration => Protocol Filtering

2.4GHz - Subscriber Module - 0a-00-3e-20-a5-48

Packet Filter Configuration

Packet Filter Types :

- ☐ PPPoE
- ☐ All IPv4
- ☐ SMB (Network Neighborhood)
- ☐ SNMP
- ☐ Bootp Client
- ☐ Bootp Server
- ☐ IPv4 Multicast
- ☐ User Defined Port 1 (See Below)
- ☐ User Defined Port 2 (See Below)
- ☐ User Defined Port 3 (See Below)
- ☐ All other IPv4
- ☐ ARP
- ☐ All others

User Defined Port Filtering Configuration

Port #1 :  (Decimal Value)

TCP : ☐ Enabled ☒ Disabled

UDP : ☐ Enabled ☒ Disabled

Port #2 :  (Decimal Value)

TCP : ☐ Enabled ☒ Disabled

UDP : ☐ Enabled ☒ Disabled

Port #3 :  (Decimal Value)

TCP : ☐ Enabled ☒ Disabled

UDP : ☐ Enabled ☒ Disabled

Save Changes

Reboot

Logged in as root

Internet

**Figure 103: Protocol Filtering tab of SM, example**

In the Protocol Filtering tab of the SM, you may set the following parameters.

#### Packet Filter Types

For any box selected, the Protocol and Port Filtering feature blocks the associated protocol type. Examples are provided in [Protocol and Port Filtering with NAT Disabled](#) on [Page 385](#).

To filter packets in any of the user-defined ports, you must do all of the following:

- Check the box for **User Defined Port *n* (See Below)** in the **Packet Filter Types** section of this tab.
- In the **User Defined Port Filtering Configuration** section of this tab, both
  - provide a port number at **Port #*n***.
  - check **TCP**, **UDP**, or both.

### User Defined Port Filtering Configuration

You can specify ports for which to block subscriber access, regardless of whether NAT is enabled. For more information, see [Filtering Protocols and Ports](#) on Page 384.

## 18.2.12 NAT Port Mapping Tab of the SM

An example of the NAT Port Mapping tab in an SM is displayed in [Figure 104](#).

**NAT Port Mapping [root] - Microsoft Internet Explorer**

File Edit View Favorites Tools Help Address >>

General IP Radio SNMP Quality of Service (QoS) Security VLAN VLAN Membership DiffServe Protocol Filtering NAT **NAT Port Mapping** Unit Settings

**Configuration => NAT Port Mapping**

2.4GHz - Subscriber Module - 0a-00-3e-20-a5-48

Port Mapping Configuration			
Port Map 1 :	Port Number: 0	Protocol: All Protocols	IP: 169.254.1.1
Port Map 2 :	Port Number: 1	Protocol: All Protocols	IP: 169.254.1.2
Port Map 3 :	Port Number: 2	Protocol: All Protocols	IP: 169.254.1.3
Port Map 4 :	Port Number: 3	Protocol: All Protocols	IP: 0.0.0.0
Port Map 5 :	Port Number: 4	Protocol: All Protocols	IP: 0.0.0.0
Port Map 6 :	Port Number: 5	Protocol: All Protocols	IP: 0.0.0.0
Port Map 7 :	Port Number: 6	Protocol: All Protocols	IP: 0.0.0.0
Port Map 8 :	Port Number: 7	Protocol: All Protocols	IP: 0.0.0.0
Port Map 9 :	Port Number: 8	Protocol: All Protocols	IP: 0.0.0.0
Port Map 10 :	Port Number: 9	Protocol: All Protocols	IP: 0.0.0.0

Save Changes

Reboot

Logged in as root

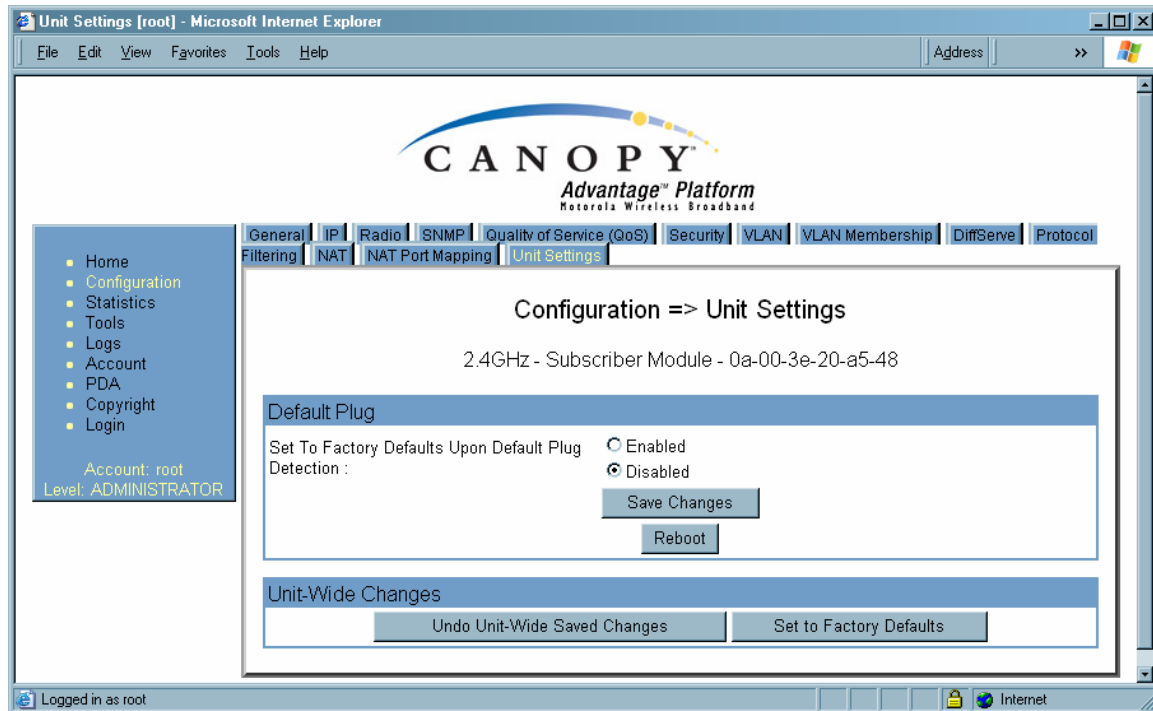
**Figure 104: NAT Port Mapping tab of SM, example**

In the NAT Port Mapping tab of the SM, you may set the following parameters.

#### Port Map 1 to 10

### 18.2.13 Unit Settings Tab of the SM

An example of the Unit Settings tab in an SM is displayed in [Figure 105](#).

**Figure 105: Unit Settings tab of SM, example**

The Unit Settings tab of the SM contains an option for how the SM should react when it detects a connected override plug. You may set this option as follows.

#### Set to Factory Defaults Upon Default Plug Detection

If **Enabled** is checked, then an override/default plug functions as a default plug. When the module is rebooted with the plug inserted, it can be accessed at the IP address 169.254.1.1 and no password, and all parameter values are reset to defaults.

A subscriber, technician, or other person who gains physical access to the module and uses an override/default plug *cannot* see or learn the settings that were previously configured in it. When the module is later rebooted with no plug inserted, the module uses the new values for any parameters that were changed and the default values for any that were not.

If **Disabled** is checked, then an override/default plug functions as an override plug. When the module is rebooted with the plug inserted, it can be accessed at the IP address 169.254.1.1 and no password, and all previously configured parameter values remain and are displayed. A subscriber, technician, or other person who gains physical access to the module and uses an override/default plug *can* see and learn the settings. When the

module is later rebooted with no plug inserted, the module uses the new values for any parameters that were changed and the previous values for any that were not.

See [Overriding Forgotten IP Addresses or Passwords on AP, SM, or BH](#) on Page 381.

The Unit Settings tab also contains the following buttons.

#### **Save Changes**

When you click this button, any changes that you made on all tabs are recorded in flash memory. However, these changes *do not* apply until the next reboot of the module.

#### **Undo Unit-Wide Saved Changes**

When you click this button, any changes that you made in any tab but did not commit by a reboot of the module are undone.

#### **Set to Factory Defaults**

When you click this button, *all configurable parameters on all tabs* are reset to the factory settings.

#### **Reboot**

When you click this button

1. the module reboots.
2. any changes that you saved by a click of the **Save Changes** button are implemented.

### **18.3 SETTING THE CONFIGURATION SOURCE**

The AP includes a **Configuration Source** parameter, which sets where SMs that register to the AP are controlled for MIR, VLAN, the high-priority channel, and CIR as follows.

The **Configuration Source** parameter affects the source of

- all MIR settings:
  - **Sustained Uplink Data Rate**
  - **Uplink Burst Allocation**
  - **Sustained Downlink Data Rate**
  - **Downlink Burst Allocation**
- all SM VLAN settings:
  - **Dynamic Learning**
  - **Allow Only Tagged Frames**
  - **VLAN Ageing Timeout**
  - **Untagged Ingress VID**
  - **Management VID**
  - **VLAN Membership**
- the **Hi Priority Channel** setting
- all CIR settings
  - **Low Priority Uplink CIR**
  - **Low Priority Downlink CIR**
  - **Hi Priority Uplink CIR**
  - **Hi Priority Downlink CIR**

Most operators whose plans are typical should consult [Table 48](#).

**Table 48: Recommended combined settings for typical operations**

Most operators who use...	should set this parameter...	in this web page...	of this module...	to...
none	<b>Authentication Mode</b>	Configuration>Security	AP	<b>Authentication Disabled</b>
	<b>Configuration Source</b>	Configuration>General	AP	<b>SM</b>
BAM Release 2.0 (Consider upgrading to Prizm)	<b>Authentication Mode</b>	Configuration	AP	<b>Authentication Required</b>
	<b>Configuration Source</b>	Configuration	AP	<b>BAM+SM</b>
BAM Release 2.1 (Consider upgrading to Prizm)	<b>Authentication Mode</b>	Configuration	AP	<b>Authentication Required</b>
	<b>Configuration Source</b>	Configuration	AP	<b>BAM</b>
Prizm Release 2.0 and 2.1 (being used for BAM functionality)	<b>Authentication Mode</b>	Configuration	AP	<b>Authentication Required</b>
	<b>Configuration Source</b>	Configuration	AP	<b>BAM</b>

Operators whose plans are atypical should consider the results that are described in [Table 49](#) and [Table 50](#). For any SM whose **Authentication Mode** parameter is set to **Authentication Required**, the listed settings are derived as shown in [Table 49](#).

**Table 49: Where feature values are obtained for an SM with authentication required**

Configuration Source Setting in the AP	Values are obtained from			
	MIR Values	VLAN Values	High Priority Channel State	CIR Values
BAM	BAM	BAM	BAM	BAM
SM	SM	SM	SM	SM
BAM+SM	BAM	BAM, then SM	BAM, then SM	BAM, then SM
<b>NOTES:</b> HPC represents the <b>Hi Priority Channel</b> (enable or disable). Where <i>BAM, then SM</i> is the indication, parameters for which BAM does not send values are obtained from the SM. This is the case where the BAM server is operating on a BAM release that did not support the feature. This is also the case where the feature enable/disable flag in BAM is set to disabled. The values are those previously set or, if none ever were, then the default values. Where <i>BAM</i> is the indication, values in the SM are disregarded. Where <i>SM</i> is the indication, values that BAM sends for the SM are disregarded. The high-priority channel is unavailable to Series P7 and P8 SMs that run Canopy Release 8.				

For any SM whose **Authentication Mode** parameter *is not* set to **Authentication Required**, the listed settings are derived as shown in [Table 50](#).

**Table 50: Where feature values are obtained for an SM with authentication disabled**

Configuration Source Setting in the AP	Values are obtained from			
	MIR Values	VLAN Values	High Priority Channel State	CIR Values
BAM	AP	AP	AP	AP
SM	SM	SM	SM	SM
BAM+SM	SM	SM	SM	SM

BAM Release 2.0 sends only MIR values. BAM Release 2.1 and Prizm Release 2.0 and 2.1 send VLAN and high-priority channel values as well.

For the case where the **Configuration Source** parameter in the AP is set to **BAM**, the SM stores a value for the **Dynamic Learning** VLAN parameter that differs from its factory default. When Prizm does not send VLAN values (because **VLAN Enable** is set to **No** in Prizm), the SM

- uses this stored **Disable** value for **Dynamic Learning**.
- shows the following in the VLAN Configuration web page:
  - *either* **Enable** or **Disable** as the value of the **Dynamic Learning** parameter.
  - **Allow Learning : No** under **Active Configuration**.

For the case where the **Configuration Source** parameter in the AP is set to **BAM+SM**, and Prizm does not send VLAN values, the SM

- uses the configured value in the SM for **Dynamic Learning**. If the SM is set to factory defaults, then this value is **Enable**.
- shows under **Active Configuration** the result of the configured value in the SM. For example, if the SM is set to factory defaults, then the VLAN Configuration page shows **Allow Learning : Yes**.

This selection (**BAM+SM**) is *not* recommended where Prizm manages the VLAN feature in SMs.

## 18.4 CONFIGURING A BH TIMING MASTER FOR THE DESTINATION



### NOTE:

The OFDM Series BHs are described in their own dedicated user guides. See [Products Not Covered by This User Guide](#) on Page 34.

If an ADMINISTRATOR-level password has been set in the BHM, you must log into the module before you can configure its parameters. See [Managing Module Access by Passwords](#) on Page 379.

### 18.4.1 General Tab of the BHM

An example of the General tab in a BHM is displayed in [Figure 106](#).



**Figure 106: General tab of BHM, example**



In the General tab of the BHM, you may set the following parameters.

### Timing Mode

Select **Timing Master**. This BH will provide sync for the link. Whenever you toggle this parameter to Timing Master from Timing Slave, you should also do the following:

1. Make no other changes in this or any other interface page.
2. Save this change of timing mode.
3. Reboot the BH.

**RESULT:** The set of interface web pages that is unique to a BHM is made available.

### Link Speeds

Specify the type of link speed for the Ethernet connection. The default for this parameter is that all speeds are selected. The recommended setting is a single speed selection for all APs, BHs, and SMs in the operator network.

### Sync Input

Specify the type of synchronization for this BH timing master to use.

- Select **Sync to Received Signal (Power Port)** to set this BHM to receive sync from a connected CMMmicro.
- Select **Sync to Received Signal (Timing Port)** to set this BHM to receive sync from a connected CMM2, an AP in the cluster, an SM, or a BH timing slave.
- Select **Generate Sync Signal** where the BHM does not receive sync, and no AP or other BHM is active within the link range.

### Webpage Auto Update

Enter the frequency (in seconds) for the web browser to automatically refresh the web-based interface. The default setting is 0. The 0 setting causes the web-based interface to never be automatically refreshed.

### Bridge Entry Timeout

Specify the appropriate bridge timeout for correct network operation with the existing network infrastructure. The Bridge Entry Timeout should be a longer period than the ARP (Address Resolution Protocol) cache timeout of the router that feeds the network.



#### **CAUTION!**

An inappropriately low Bridge Entry Timeout setting may lead to temporary loss of communication with some end users.

### Bridging Functionality

Select whether you want bridge table filtering active (**Enable**) or not (**Disable**) on this BHM. Selecting **Disable** allows you to use redundant BHs without causing network addressing problems. Through a spanning tree protocol, this reduces the convergence time from 25 minutes to mere seconds. However, you should disable bridge table filtering as only a deliberate part of your overall network design. Otherwise, disabling it allows unwanted traffic across the wireless interface.

**Update Application Address**

For capabilities in future software releases, you can enter the address of the server to access for software updates on this BHM.

**2X Rate**

See [2X Operation](#) on Page 92.

**Prioritize TCP ACK**

To reduce the likelihood of TCP acknowledgement packets being dropped, set this parameter to Enabled. This can improve throughput that the end user perceives during transient periods of congestion on the link that is carrying acknowledgements. See [AP-SM Links](#) on Page 101.

The General tab of the BHM also provides the following buttons.

**Save Changes**

When you click this button, any changes that you made on the Configuration page are recorded in flash memory. However, these changes *do not* apply until the next reboot of the module.

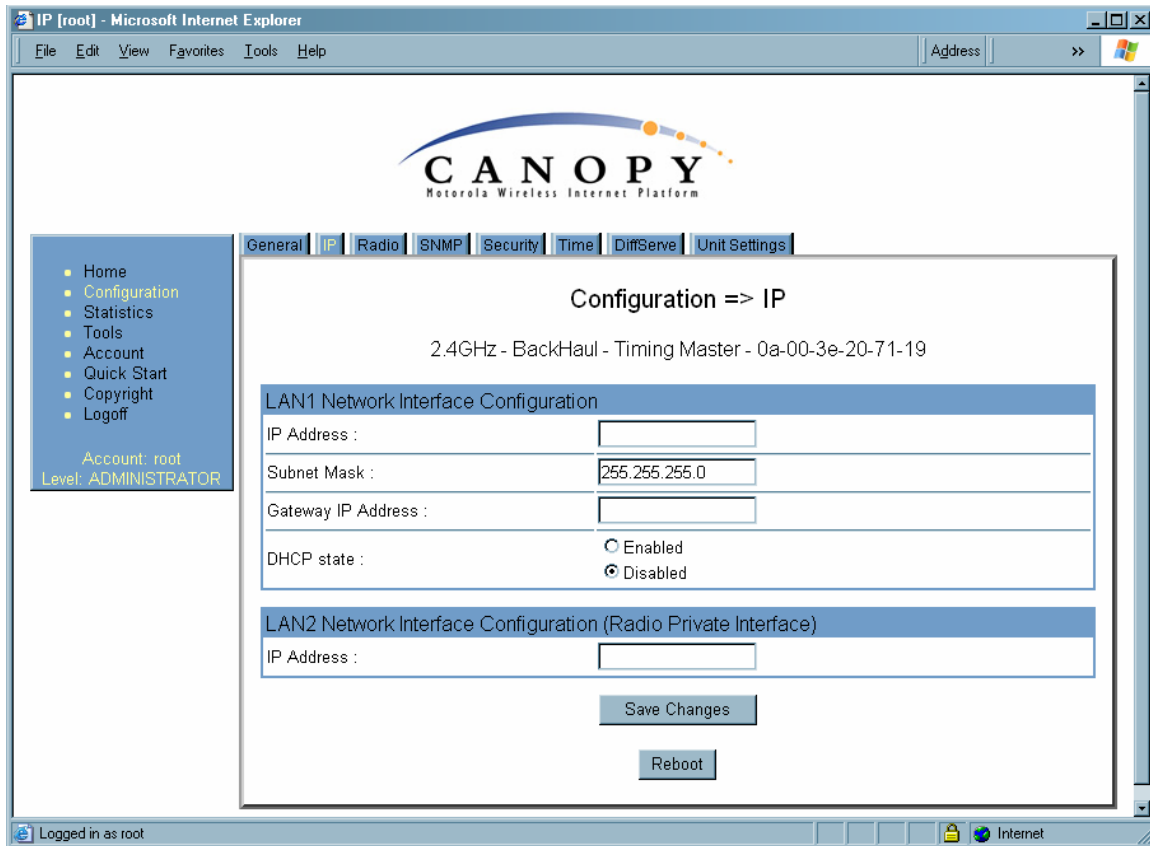
**Reboot**

When you click this button

1. the module reboots.
2. any changes that you saved by a click of the **Save Changes** button are implemented.

### 18.4.2 IP Tab of the BHM

An example of an IP tab in a BHM is displayed in [Figure 107](#).



**Figure 107: IP tab of BHM, example**

You may set the following IP Configuration page parameters.

#### LAN1 Network Interface Configuration, IP Address

Enter the *non-routable* IP address to be associated with the Ethernet connection on this module. (The default IP address from the factory is 169.254.1.1.) If you set and then forget this parameter, then you must both

1. physically access the module.
2. use an override plug to electronically access the module configuration parameters at 169.254.1.1. See [Overriding Forgotten IP Addresses or Passwords on AP, SM, or BH](#) on Page 383.



#### **RECOMMENDATION:**

Note or print the IP settings from this page. Ensure that you can readily associate these IP settings both with the module and with the other data that you store about the module.

**LAN1 Network Interface Configuration, Subnet Mask**

Enter an appropriate subnet mask for the BHM to communicate on the network. The default subnet mask is 255.255.0.0. See [Allocating Subnets](#) on Page 164.

**LAN1 Network Interface Configuration, Gateway IP Address**

Enter the appropriate gateway for the BHM to communicate with the network. The default gateway is 169.254.0.0.

**LAN1 Network Interface Configuration, DHCP State**

If you select **Enabled**, the DHCP server automatically assigns the IP configuration (IP address, subnet mask, and gateway IP address) and the values of those individual parameters (above) are not used. The setting of this DHCP state parameter is also viewable, but not settable, in the Network Interface tab of the Home page.

**LAN2 Network Interface Configuration (RF Private Interface), IP Address**

Enter the IP address to be associated with this BHM for over-the-air access.

The IP tab also provides the following buttons.

**Save Changes**

When you click this button, any changes that you made on the IP Configuration page are recorded in flash memory. However, these changes *do not* apply until the next reboot of the module.

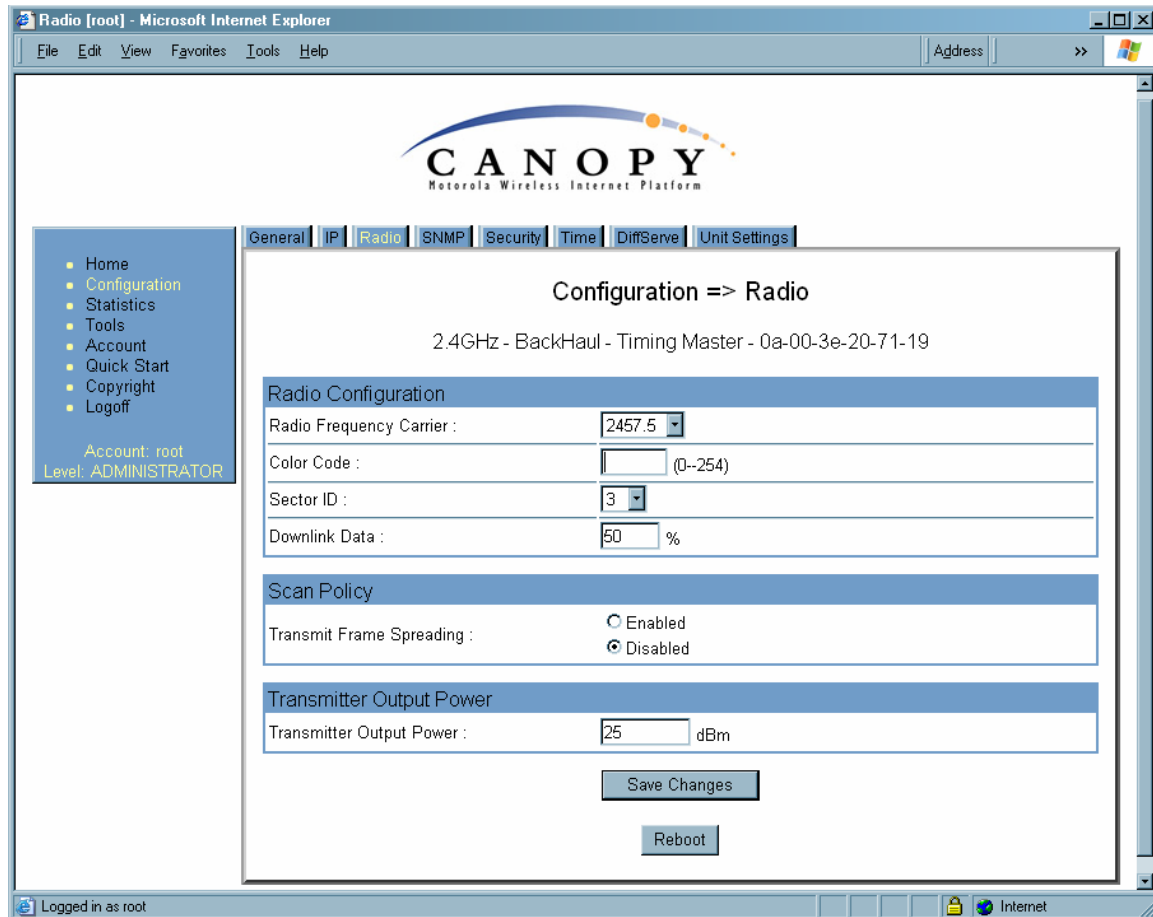
**Reboot**

When you click this button

1. the module reboots.
2. any changes that you saved by a click of the **Save Changes** button are implemented.

### 18.4.3 Radio Tab of the BHM

An example of the Radio tab in a BHM is displayed in [Figure 108](#).



**Figure 108: Radio tab of BHM, example**

In the Radio tab of the BHM, you may set the following parameters.

#### Radio Frequency Carrier

Specify the frequency for the BHM to transmit. The default for this parameter is **None**. (The selection labeled **Factory** requires a special software key file for implementation.) In a 5.7-GHz BHM, this parameter displays both ISM and U-NII frequencies. In a 5.2-GHz BHM, this parameter displays only ISM frequencies. For a list of channels in the band, see [Considering Frequency Band Alternatives](#) on Page 138.

#### Color Code

Specify a value from 0 to 254. For registration to occur, the color code of the BHM and the BHS *must* match. On all Canopy modules, the default setting for the color code value is 0. This value matches only the color code of 0 (*not* all 255 color codes).

**RECOMMENDATION:**

Note the color code that you enter. Ensure that you can readily associate this color code both with the module and with the other data that you store about the module.

**Sector ID**

You can optionally enter an identifier to distinguish this link.

**Downlink Data**

The operator specifies the percentage of the aggregate (uplink and downlink total) throughput that is needed for the downlink. The default for this parameter is 50%.

**Transmit Frame Spreading**

If you select **Enable**, then a BHS between two BHM's can register in the assigned BHM (not the other BHM). Canopy *strongly recommends* that you select this option. With this selection, the BHM does not transmit a beacon in each frame, but rather transmits a beacon in only pseudo-random frames in which the BHS expects the beacon. This allows multiple BHM's to send beacons to multiple BHS's in the same range without interference.

**Transmitter Output Power**

Nations and regions may regulate transmitter output power. For example

- Both 900-MHz and 5.7-GHz modules are available as connectorized radios, which require the operator to adjust power to ensure regulatory compliance. In addition to setting the power in the 5.7-GHz connectorized module, the operator must set the antenna gain/cable loss such that the module can accurately report received power at the antenna.
- Legal maximum allowable transmitter output power and EIRP (Equivalent Isotropic Radiated Power) in the 2.4-GHz frequency band varies by country and region. The output power of Series P9 2.4-GHz modules can be adjusted to meet these national or regional regulatory requirements.
- Countries and regions that permit the use of the 5.4-GHz frequency band (CEPT member states, for example), generally require equipment using the band to have adjustable power.

The professional installer of Canopy equipment has the responsibility to

- maintain awareness of applicable regulations.
- calculate the permissible transmitter output power for the module.
- confirm that the initial power setting is compliant with national or regional regulations.
- confirm that the power setting is compliant following any reset of the module to factory defaults.

For information on how to calculate the permissible transmitter output power to enter in this parameter, see [Adjusting Transmitter Output Power](#) on Page 332.

The Radio tab also provides the following buttons.

**Save Changes**

When you click this button, any changes that you made on the IP Configuration page are recorded in flash memory. However, these changes *do not* apply until the next reboot of the module.

**Reboot**

When you click this button

1. the module reboots.
2. any changes that you saved by a click of the **Save Changes** button are implemented.

#### 18.4.4 SNMP Tab of the BHM

An example of the SNMP tab in a BHM is displayed in [Figure 109](#).

The screenshot shows a web browser window titled "SNMP [root] - Microsoft Internet Explorer". The browser's address bar is empty. The page has a navigation menu on the left with links: Home, Configuration, Statistics, Tools, Account, Quick Start, Copyright, and Logoff. Below the menu, it says "Account: root" and "Level: ADMINISTRATOR". The main content area has tabs: General, IP, Radio, **SNMP**, Security, Time, DiffServe, and Unit Settings. The title of the page is "Configuration => SNMP". Below the title, it says "2.4GHz - BackHaul - Timing Master - 0a-00-3e-20-71-19".

The configuration fields are as follows:

- SNMP IP**
  - Community String :
  - Accessing Subnet :  /
- Trap Addresses**
  - Trap Address 1 :
  - Trap Address 2 :
  - Trap Address 3 :
  - Trap Address 4 :
  - Trap Address 5 :
  - Trap Address 6 :
  - Trap Address 7 :
  - Trap Address 8 :
  - Trap Address 9 :
  - Trap Address 10 :
- Trap Enable**
  - Sync Status : ☒ Enabled ☐ Disabled
  - Session Status : ☒ Enabled ☐ Disabled
- Permissions**
  - Read Permissions : ☐ Read Only ☒ Read / Write
- Site Information**
  - Site Name :
  - Site Contact :
  - Site Location :

At the bottom of the form, there are two buttons: "Save Changes" and "Reboot".

The status bar at the bottom of the browser window shows "Logged in as root" and "Internet".

**Figure 109: SNMP tab of BHM, example**

In the SNMP tab of the BHM, you may set the following parameters.



### Community String

Specify a control string that allows Prizm or a Network Management Station (NMS) to access the module through SNMP. No spaces are allowed in this string. The default string is **Canopy**.

The **Community String** value is clear text and is readable by a packet monitor. Additional security derives from the configuration of the **Accessing Subnet**, **Trap Address**, and **Permission** parameters.

### Accessing Subnet

Specify the addresses that are allowed to send SNMP requests to this BHM. Prizm or the NMS has an address that is among these addresses (this subnet). You must enter both

- The network IP address in the form xxx.xxx.xxx.xxx
- The CIDR (Classless Interdomain Routing) prefix length in the form /xx

For example

- the /16 in 198.32.0.0/16 specifies a subnet mask of 255.255.0.0 (the first 16 bits in the address range are identical among all members of the subnet).
- 192.168.102.0 specifies that any device whose IP address is in the range 192.168.102.0 to 192.168.102.254 can send SNMP requests to the BHM, presuming that the device supplies the correct **Community String** value.



**NOTE:**

For more information on CIDR, execute an Internet search on “Classless Interdomain Routing.”

The default treatment is to allow all networks access.

### Trap Address 1 to 10

Specify ten or fewer IP addresses (xxx.xxx.xxx.xxx) to which trap information should be sent. Trap information informs Prizm or an NMS that something has occurred. For example, trap information is sent

- after a reboot of the module.
- when Prizm or an NMS attempts to access agent information but either
  - supplied an inappropriate community string or SNMP version number.
  - is associated with a subnet to which access is disallowed.

### Trap Enable

Select either **Sync Status** or **Session Status** to enable SNMP traps. If you select neither, then traps are disabled.

### Read Permissions

Select **Read Only** if you wish to disallow any parameter changes by Prizm or an NMS.

**Site Name**

Specify a string to associate with the physical module. This parameter is written into the *sysName* SNMP MIB-II object and can be polled by an NMS. The buffer size for this field is 128 characters.

**Site Contact**

Enter contact information for the module administrator. This parameter is written into the *sysContact* SNMP MIB-II object and can be polled by an NMS. The buffer size for this field is 128 characters.

**Site Location**

Enter information about the physical location of the module. This parameter is written into the *sysLocation* SNMP MIB-II object and can be polled by an NMS. The buffer size for this field is 128 characters.

The SNMP tab also provides the following buttons.

**Save Changes**

When you click this button, any changes that you made on the Configuration page are recorded in flash memory. However, these changes *do not* apply until the next reboot of the module.

**Reboot**

When you click this button

1. the module reboots.
2. any changes that you saved by a click of the **Save Changes** button are implemented.

### 18.4.5 Security Tab of the BHM

An example of the Security tab in a BHM is displayed in [Figure 110](#).

The screenshot shows a web browser window titled "Security [root] - Microsoft Internet Explorer". The browser's address bar is empty. The page has a navigation menu on the left with links: Home, Configuration, Statistics, Tools, Account, Quick Start, Copyright, and Logoff. Below the menu, it says "Account: root" and "Level: ADMINISTRATOR". The main content area has tabs: General, IP, Radio, SNMP, Security (selected), Time, DiffServe, and Unit Settings. The title of the page is "Configuration => Security". Below the title, it says "2.4GHz - BackHaul - Timing Master - 0a-00-3e-20-71-19". The configuration is divided into several sections:

- Authentication Mode**:
  - Authentication Mode : ☐ Authentication Required, ☒ Authentication Disabled
  - Authentication Key :  (Only Used if Authentication Required)
- Airlink Security**:
  - Encryption : ☐ Enabled, ☒ Disabled
- BHM Evaluation Configuration**:
  - BHS Display of BHM Evaluation Data : ☐ Disable Display, ☒ Enable Display
- Session Timeout**:
  - Web, Telnet, FTP Session Timeout :  Seconds
- IP Access Filtering**:
  - IP Access Control : ☐ IP Access Filtering Enabled - Only allow access from IP addresses specified below, ☒ IP Access Filtering Disabled - Allow access from all IP addresses
  - Allowed Source IP 1 :
  - Allowed Source IP 2 :
  - Allowed Source IP 3 :

At the bottom of the configuration area, there are two buttons: "Save Changes" and "Reboot". The status bar at the bottom of the browser window shows "Logged in as root" and "Internet".

**Figure 110: Security tab of BHM, example**

In the Security tab of the BHM, you may set the following parameters.

#### **Authentication Mode**

Specify whether the BHM should require the BHS to authenticate.

#### **Authentication Key**

Only if you set the BHM in the previous parameter to require authentication, specify the key that the BHS should use when authenticating.

## Encryption

Specify the type of air link security to apply to this BHM:

- **Encryption Disabled** provides no encryption on the air link. This is the default mode.
- **Encryption Enabled** provides encryption, using a factory-programmed secret key that is unique for each module.



**NOTE:**

In any BH link where encryption is enabled, the BHS briefly drops registration and re-registers in the BHM every 24 hours to change the encryption key.

## BHS Display of BHM Evaluation Data

You can use this field to suppress the display of data (**Disable Display**) about this BHM on the BHM Evaluation tab of the Tools page in the BHS.

## Web, Telnet, FTP Session Timeout

Enter the expiry in seconds for remote management sessions via HTTP, telnet, or ftp access to the BHM.

## IP Access Control

You can permit access to the BHM from any IP address (**IP Access Filtering Disabled**) or limit it to access from only one, two, or three IP addresses that you specify (**IP Access Filtering Enabled**). If you select **IP Access Filtering Enabled**, then you must populate at least one of the three **Allowed Source IP** parameters or have no access permitted from any IP address, including access and management by Prizm.

### Allowed Source IP 1 to 3

If you selected **IP Access Filtering Enabled** for the **IP Access Control** parameter, then you must populate at least one of the three **Allowed Source IP** parameters or have no access permitted to the BHM from any IP address. You may populate as many as all three.

If you selected **IP Access Filtering Disabled** for the **IP Access Control** parameter, then no entries in this parameter are read, and access from all IP addresses is permitted.

The Security tab also provides the following buttons.

## Save Changes

When you click this button, any changes that you made on the Configuration page are recorded in flash memory. However, these changes *do not* apply until the next reboot of the module.

## Reboot

When you click this button

1. the module reboots.
2. any changes that you saved by a click of the **Save Changes** button are implemented.

### 18.4.6 DiffServe Tab of the BHM

An example of the DiffServe tab in a BHM is displayed in [Figure 111](#).

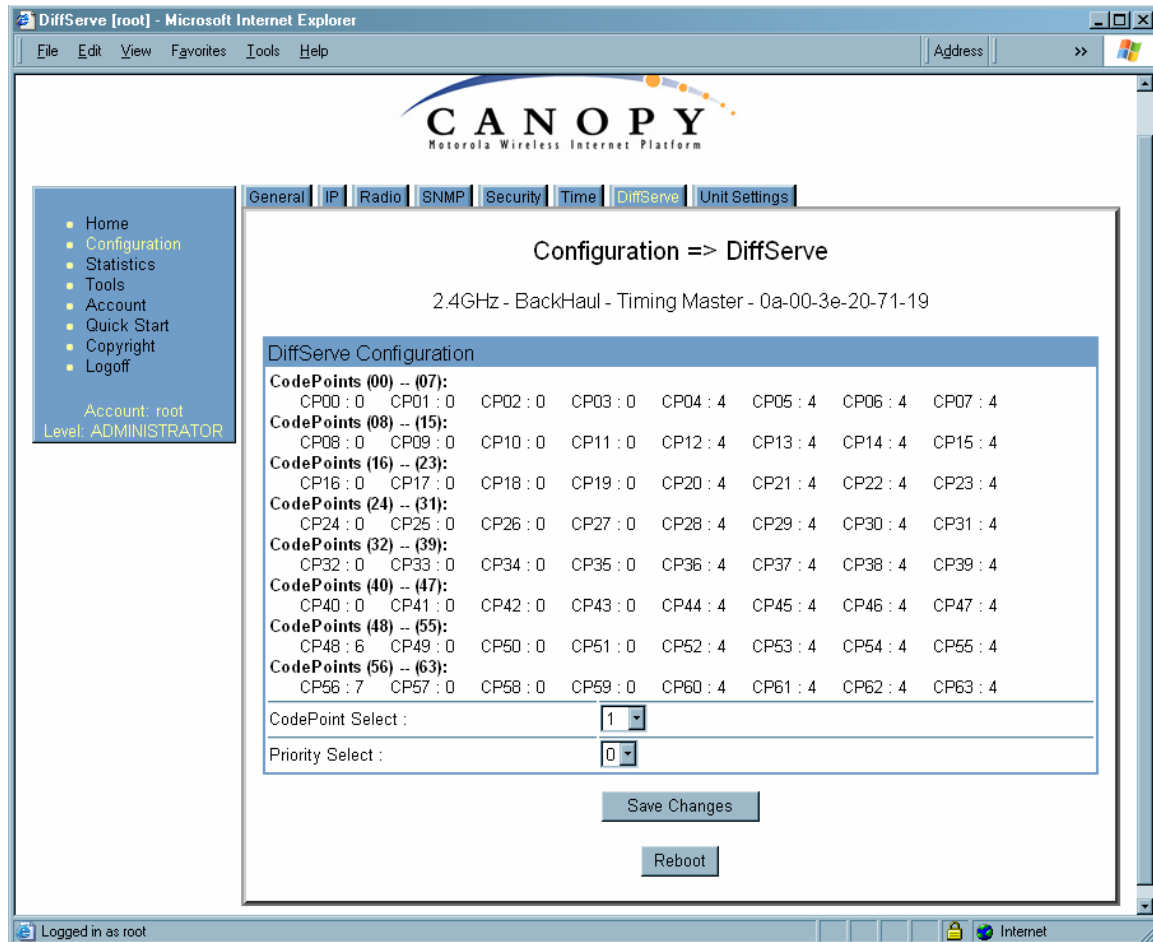


Figure 111: DiffServe tab of BHM, example

In the DiffServe tab of the BHM, you may set the following parameters.

**CodePoint 1  
through  
CodePoint 47**

The default priority value for each settable CodePoint is shown in [Figure 119](#). Priorities of 0 through 3 map to the low-priority channel; 4 through 7 to the high-priority channel. The mappings are the same as 802.1p VLAN priorities.

Consistent with RFC 2474

**CodePoint 49  
through  
CodePoint 55**

- **CodePoint 0** is predefined to a fixed priority value of **0** (low-priority channel).
- **CodePoint 48** is predefined to a fixed priority value of **6** (high-priority channel).
- **CodePoint 56** is predefined to a fixed priority value of **7** (high-priority channel).

**CodePoint 57  
through  
CodePoint 63**

You cannot change any of these three fixed priority values. Among the settable parameters, the priority values (and therefore the handling of packets in the high- or low-priority channel) are set in the AP for all downlinks within the sector and in the SM for each uplink. See [DSCP Field](#) on Page 89.

The DiffServe tab also provides the following buttons.

### Save Changes

When you click this button, any changes that you made on the Configuration page are recorded in flash memory. However, these changes *do not* apply until the next reboot of the module.

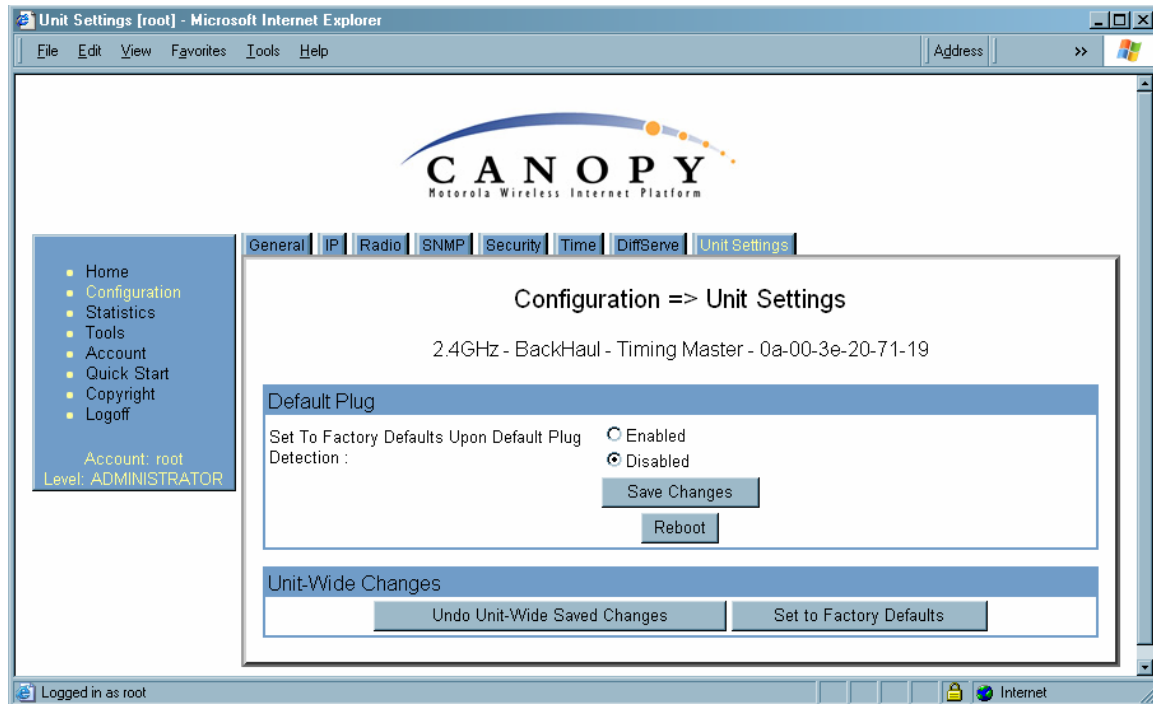
### Reboot

When you click this button

1. the module reboots.
2. any changes that you saved by a click of the **Save Changes** button are implemented.

### 18.4.7 Unit Settings Tab of the BHM

An example of the Unit Settings tab of the BHM is displayed in [Figure 112](#).



**Figure 112: Unit Settings tab of BHM, example**

The Unit Settings tab of the BHM contains an option for how the BHM should react when it detects a connected override plug. You may set this option as follows.

#### Set to Factory Defaults Upon Default Plug Detection

If **Enabled** is checked, then an override/default plug functions as a default plug. When the module is rebooted with the plug inserted, it can be accessed at the IP address 169.254.1.1 and no password, and all parameter values are reset to defaults.

A subscriber, technician, or other person who gains physical access to the module and uses an override/default plug *cannot* see or learn the settings that were previously configured in it. When the module is later rebooted with no plug inserted, the module uses the new values for any parameters that were changed and the default values for any that were not.

If **Disabled** is checked, then an override/default plug functions as an override plug. When the module is rebooted with the plug inserted, it can be accessed at the IP address 169.254.1.1 and no password, and all previously configured parameter values remain and are displayed. A subscriber, technician, or other person who gains physical access to the module and uses an override/default plug *can* see and learn the settings. When the module is later rebooted with no plug inserted, the module uses the new values for any parameters that were changed and the previous values for any that were not.

See [Overriding Forgotten IP Addresses or Passwords on AP, SM, or BH](#) on Page 381.

The Unit Settings tab also contains the following buttons.

**Save Changes**

When you click this button, any changes that you made on the Configuration page are recorded in flash memory. However, these changes *do not* apply until the next reboot of the module.

**Reboot**

When you click this button

1. the module reboots.
2. any changes that you saved by a click of the **Save Changes** button are implemented.

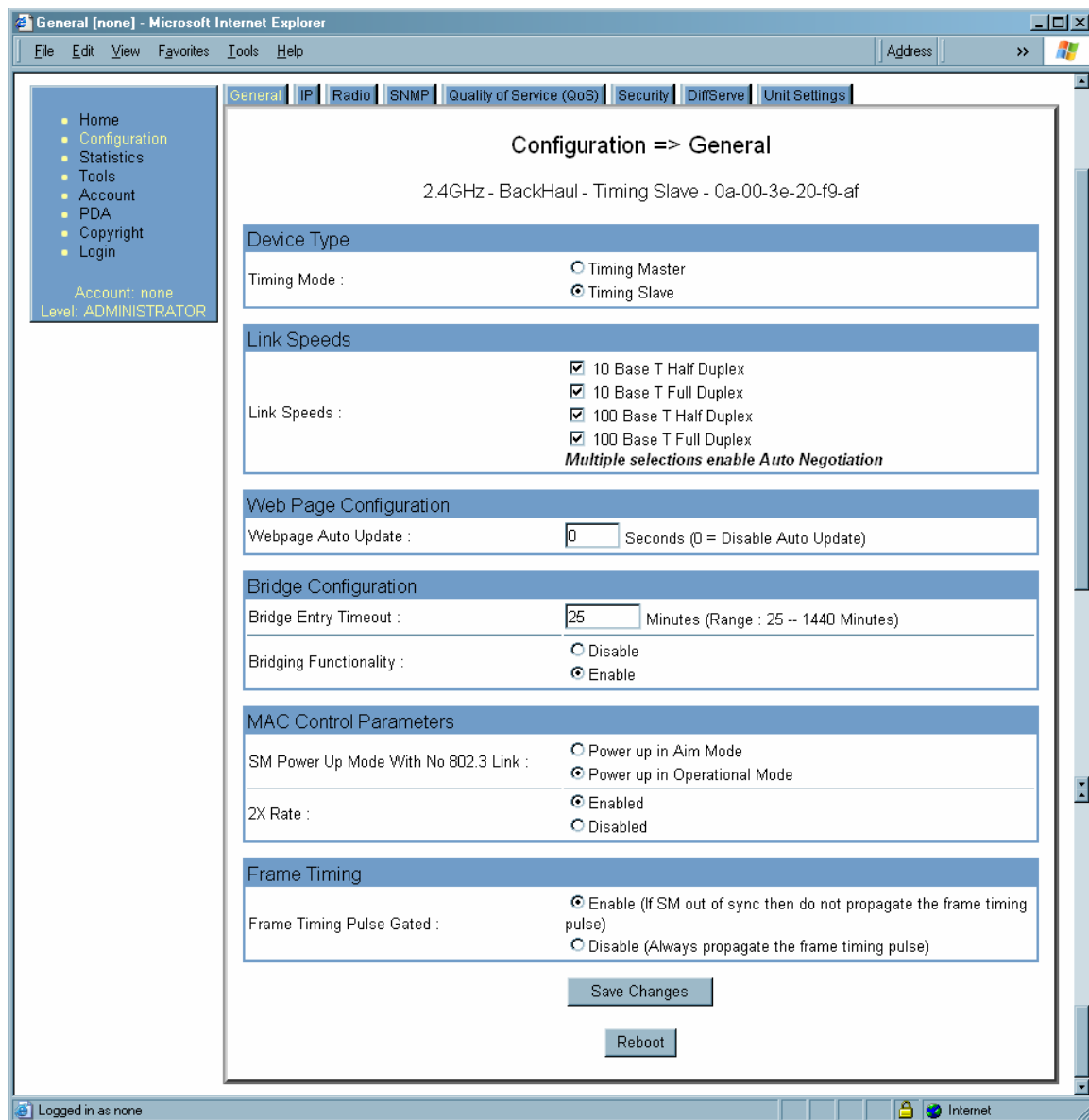


## 18.5 CONFIGURING A BH TIMING SLAVE FOR THE DESTINATION

If an ADMINISTRATOR-level password has been set in the BHS, you must log into the module before you can configure its parameters. See [Managing Module Access by Passwords](#) on Page 379.

### 18.5.1 General Tab of the BHS

An example of the General tab in a BHS is displayed in [Figure 113](#).



**Figure 113: General tab of BHS, example**

In the General tab of the BHS, you may set the following parameters.

### Timing Mode

Select **Timing Slave**. This BH will receive sync from another source. Whenever you toggle this parameter to Timing Slave from Timing Master, you should also do the following:

1. Make no other changes in this or any other interface page.
2. Save this change of timing mode.
3. Reboot the BH.

**RESULT:** The set of interface web pages that is unique to a BHS is made available.



**NOTE:**

In a BHS that cannot be converted to a BHM, this parameter is not present (for example, in a BHS with Hardware Scheduling and Series P8 hardware.)

### Link Speeds

Specify the type of link speed for the Ethernet connection. The default for this parameter is that all speeds are selected. The recommended setting is a single speed selection for all APs, BHs, and SMs in the operator network.

### Webpage Auto Update

Enter the frequency (in seconds) for the web browser to automatically refresh the web-based interface. The default setting is 0. The 0 setting causes the web-based interface to never be automatically refreshed.

### Bridge Entry Timeout

Specify the appropriate bridge timeout for correct network operation with the existing network infrastructure. Timeout occurs when the BHM encounters no activity with the BHS (whose MAC address is the bridge entry) within the interval that this parameter specifies. The Bridge Entry Timeout should be a longer period than the ARP (Address Resolution Protocol) cache timeout of the router that feeds the network.

This parameter governs the timeout interval, even if a router in the system has a longer timeout interval. The default value of this field is 25 minutes.



**CAUTION!**

An inappropriately low Bridge Entry Timeout setting may lead to temporary loss of communication with some end users.

### Bridging Functionality

Select whether you want bridge table filtering active (**Enable**) or not (**Disable**) on this BHS. Selecting **Disable** allows you to use redundant BHs without causing network addressing problems. Through a spanning tree protocol, this reduces the convergence time from 25 minutes to mere seconds. However, you should disable bridge table filtering as only a deliberate part of your overall network design. Otherwise, disabling it allows unwanted traffic across the wireless interface.

**SM Power Up Mode With No 802.3 Link**

Specify the default mode in which this BHS will power up when it senses no Ethernet link. Select either

- **Power Up in Aim Mode**—the BHS boots in an aiming mode. When the BHS senses an Ethernet link, this parameter is automatically reset to Power Up in Operational Mode. When the BHS senses no Ethernet link within 15 minutes after power up, the BHS carrier shuts off.
- **Power Up in Operational Mode**—the BHS boots in Operational mode and attempts registration. Unlike in previous releases, this is the default selection in Release 8.

**2X Rate**

See [2X Operation](#) on Page 92.

**Frame Timing Pulse Gated**

If this BHS extends the sync pulse to a BHM or an AP behind it, select either

- **Enable**—If this BHS loses sync, then *do not* propagate a sync pulse to the BHM or AP. This setting prevents interference in the event that the BHS loses sync.
- **Disable**—If this BHS loses sync, then propagate the sync pulse anyway to the BHM or AP.

See [Wiring to Extend Network Sync](#) on Page 375.

The General tab also provides the following buttons.

**Save Changes**

When you click this button, any changes that you made on the Configuration page are recorded in flash memory. However, these changes *do not* apply until the next reboot of the module.

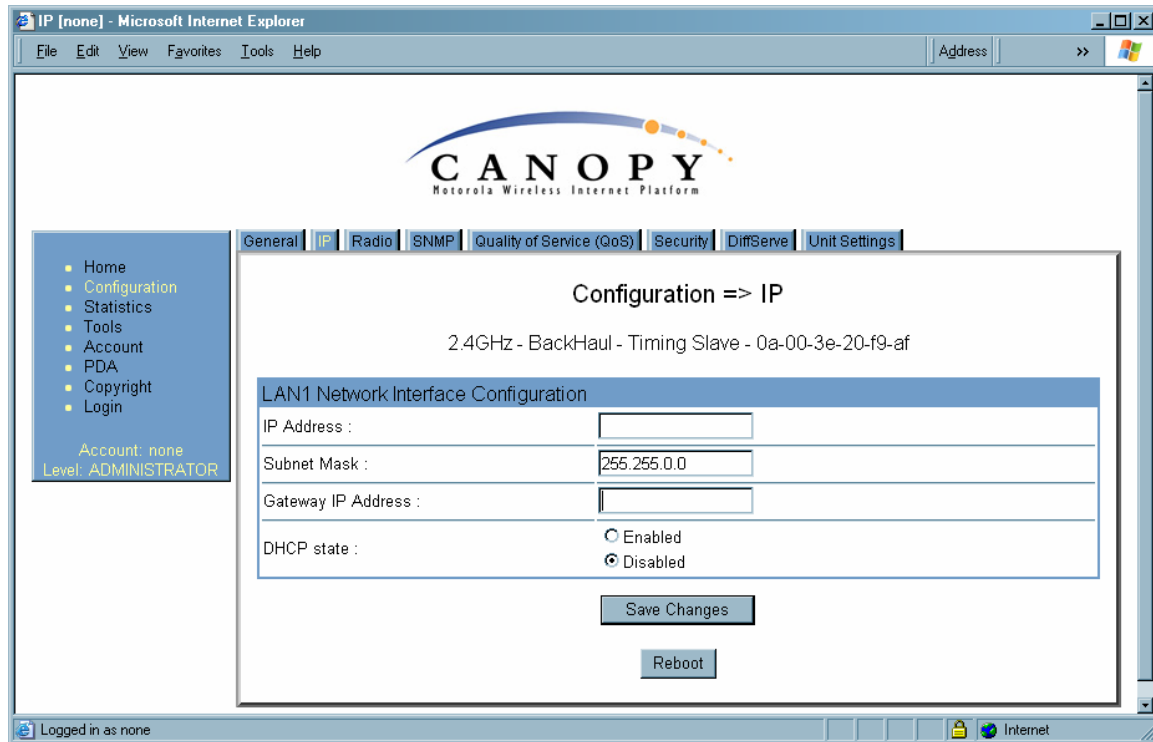
**Reboot**

When you click this button

1. the module reboots.
2. any changes that you saved by a click of the **Save Changes** button are implemented.

## 18.5.2 IP Tab of the BHS

An example of the IP tab in a BHS is displayed in [Figure 114](#).



**Figure 114: IP tab of BHS, example**

In the IP tab of the BHS, you may set the following parameters.

### LAN1 Network Interface Configuration, IP Address

Enter the *non-routable* IP address to associate with the Ethernet connection on this BHS. (The default IP address from the factory is 169.254.1.1.) If you set and then forget this parameter, then you must both

1. physically access the module.
2. use an override plug to electronically access the module configuration parameters at 169.254.1.1. See [Overriding Forgotten IP Addresses or Passwords on AP, SM, or BH](#) on Page 383.



#### **RECOMMENDATION:**

Note or print the IP settings from this page. Ensure that you can readily associate these IP settings both with the module and with the other data that you store about the module.

**LAN1 Network Interface Configuration, Subnet Mask**

Enter an appropriate subnet mask for the BHS to communicate on the network. The default subnet mask is 255.255.0.0. See [Allocating Subnets](#) on Page 164.

**LAN1 Network Interface Configuration, Gateway IP Address**

Enter the appropriate gateway for the BHS to communicate with the network. The default gateway is 169.254.0.0.

**LAN1 Network Interface Configuration, DHCP State**

If you select **Enabled**, the DHCP server automatically assigns the IP configuration (IP address, subnet mask, and gateway IP address) and the values of those individual parameters (above) are not used. The setting of this DHCP state parameter is also viewable, but not settable, in the Network Interface tab of the Home page.

The IP tab also provides the following buttons.

**Save Changes**

When you click this button, any changes that you made on the IP Configuration page are recorded in flash memory. However, these changes *do not* apply until the next reboot of the module.

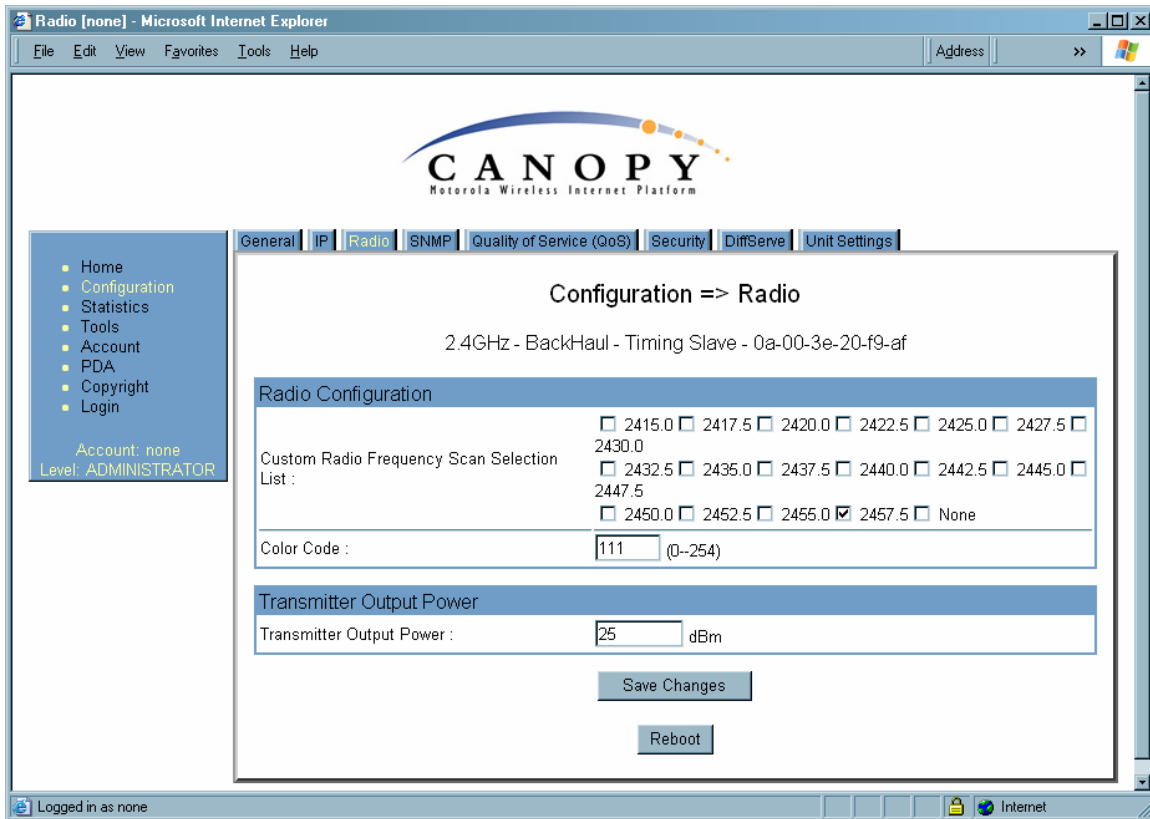
**Reboot**

When you click this button

1. the module reboots.
2. any changes that you saved by a click of the **Save Changes** button are implemented.

### 18.5.3 Radio Tab of the BHS

An example of the Radio tab in a BHS is displayed in [Figure 115](#).



**Figure 115: Radio tab of BHS, example**

In the Radio tab of the BHS, you may set the following parameters.

#### Custom Radio Frequency Scan Selection List

Specify the frequency that the BHS should scan to find the BHM. The frequency *band* of the BHS affects what channels you select.



#### **IMPORTANT!**

In the 2.4-GHz frequency band, the BHS can register to a BHM that transmits on a frequency 2.5 MHz higher than the frequency that the BHS receiver locks when the scan terminates as successful. This establishes a poor-quality link. To prevent this, select frequencies that are at least 5 MHz apart.

In a 2.4-GHz BHS, this parameter displays all available channels, but has only three recommended channels selected by default. See [2.4-GHz AP Cluster Recommended Channels](#) on Page 140.

In a 5.2- or 5.4-GHz BHS, this parameter displays only ISM frequencies. In a 5.7-GHz BHS, this parameter displays both ISM and U-NII frequencies. If you select all frequencies that are listed (default selections), then the module scans for a signal on any

channel. If you select only one, then the module limits the scan to that channel. Since the frequencies that this parameter offers for each of these two bands are 5 MHz apart, a scan of *all* channels does not risk establishment of a poor-quality link as in the 2.4-GHz band. Nevertheless, this can risk establishment of a link to the wrong BHM.

A list of channels in the band is provided in [Considering Frequency Band Alternatives](#) on Page 138.

(The selection labeled **Factory** requires a special software key file for implementation.)

### Color Code

Specify a value from 0 to 254. For registration to occur, the color code of the BHM and the BHS *must* match. On all Canopy modules, the default setting for the color code value is 0. This value matches only the color code of 0 (*not* all 255 color codes).



#### **RECOMMENDATION:**

Note the color code that you enter. Ensure that you can readily associate this color code both with the module and with the other data that you store about the module.

### Transmitter Output Power

Nations and regions may regulate transmitter output power. For example

- Both 900-MHz and 5.7-GHz modules are available as connectorized radios, which require the operator to adjust power to ensure regulatory compliance. In addition to setting the power in the 5.7-GHz connectorized module, the operator must set the antenna gain/cable loss such that the module can accurately report received power at the antenna.
- Legal maximum allowable transmitter output power and EIRP (Equivalent Isotropic Radiated Power) in the 2.4-GHz frequency band varies by country and region. The output power of Series P9 2.4-GHz modules can be adjusted to meet these national or regional regulatory requirements.
- Countries and regions that permit the use of the 5.4-GHz frequency band (CEPT member states, for example), generally require equipment using the band to have adjustable power.

The professional installer of Canopy equipment has the responsibility to

- maintain awareness of applicable regulations.
- calculate the permissible transmitter output power for the module.
- confirm that the initial power setting is compliant with national or regional regulations.
- confirm that the power setting is compliant following any reset of the module to factory defaults.

For information on how to calculate the permissible transmitter output power to enter in this parameter, see [Adjusting Transmitter Output Power](#) on Page 332.

The Radio tab also provides the following buttons.

**Save Changes**

When you click this button, any changes that you made on this tab are recorded in flash memory. However, these changes *do not* apply until the next reboot of the module.

**Reboot**

When you click this button

1. the module reboots.
2. any changes that you saved by a click of the **Save Changes** button are implemented.



### 18.5.4 SNMP Tab of the BHS

An example of the SNMP tab in a BHS is displayed in [Figure 116](#).

The screenshot shows a web browser window titled "SNMP [none] - Microsoft Internet Explorer". The browser's address bar is empty. The page has a navigation menu on the left with links: Home, Configuration, Statistics, Tools, Account, PDA, Copyright, and Login. Below the menu, it says "Account: none" and "Level: ADMINISTRATOR". The main content area has tabs: General, IP, Radio, **SNMP**, Quality of Service (QoS), Security, DiffServe, and Unit Settings. The title of the page is "Configuration => SNMP". Below the title, it says "2.4GHz - BackHaul - Timing Slave - 0a-00-3e-20-f9-af". The configuration fields are as follows:

SNMP IP	
Community String :	Canopy
Accessing Subnet :	0.0.0.0 / 0

Trap Addresses	
Trap Address 1 :	0.0.0.0
Trap Address 2 :	0.0.0.0
Trap Address 3 :	0.0.0.0
Trap Address 4 :	0.0.0.0
Trap Address 5 :	0.0.0.0
Trap Address 6 :	0.0.0.0
Trap Address 7 :	0.0.0.0
Trap Address 8 :	0.0.0.0
Trap Address 9 :	0.0.0.0
Trap Address 10 :	0.0.0.0

Permissions	
Read Permissions :	<input type="radio"/> Read Only <input checked="" type="radio"/> Read / Write

Site Information	
Site Name :	No Site Name
Site Contact :	No Site Contact
Site Location :	No Site Location

At the bottom of the configuration area, there are two buttons: "Save Changes" and "Reboot".

**Figure 116: SNMP tab of BHS, example**

In the SNMP tab of the BHS, you may set the following parameters.

#### Community String

Specify a control string that allows Prizm or an NMS (Network Management Station) to access MIB information about this BHS. No spaces are allowed in this string. The default string is **Canopy**.

The **Community String** value is clear text and is readable by a packet monitor. Additional security derives from the configuration of the **Accessing Subnet**, **Trap Address**, and **Permission** parameters.

### Accessing Subnet

Specify the addresses that are allowed to send SNMP requests to this BHS. Prizm or the NMS has an address that is among these addresses (this subnet). You must enter both

- The network IP address in the form xxx.xxx.xxx.xxx
- The CIDR (Classless Interdomain Routing) prefix length in the form /xx

For example

- the /16 in 198.32.0.0/16 specifies a subnet mask of 255.255.0.0 (the first 16 bits in the address range are identical among all members of the subnet).
- 192.168.102.0 specifies that any device whose IP address is in the range 192.168.102.0 to 192.168.102.254 can send SNMP requests to the BHS, presuming that the device supplies the correct **Community String** value.

The default treatment is to allow all networks access (set to 0). For more information on CIDR, execute an Internet search on “Classless Interdomain Routing.”

### Trap Address 1 to 10

Specify ten or fewer IP addresses (xxx.xxx.xxx.xxx) to which trap information should be sent. Trap information informs Prizm or an NMS that something has occurred. For example, trap information is sent

- after a reboot of the module.
- when Prizm or an NMS attempts to access agent information but either
  - supplied an inappropriate community string or SNMP version number.
  - is associated with a subnet to which access is disallowed.

### Read Permissions

Select **Read Only** if you wish to disallow Prizm or NMS SNMP access to configurable parameters and read-only fields of the SM.

### Site Name

Specify a string to associate with the physical module. This parameter is written into the *sysName* SNMP MIB-II object and can be polled by Prizm or an NMS. The buffer size for this field is 128 characters.

### Site Contact

Enter contact information for the module administrator. This parameter is written into the *sysContact* SNMP MIB-II object and can be polled by Prizm or an NMS. The buffer size for this field is 128 characters.

### Site Location

Enter information about the physical location of the module. This parameter is written into the *sysLocation* SNMP MIB-II object and can be polled by Prizm or an NMS. The buffer size for this field is 128 characters.

The SNMP tab also provides the following buttons.

### Save Changes

When you click this button, any changes that you made on the Configuration page are recorded in flash memory. However, these changes *do not* apply until the next reboot of the module.

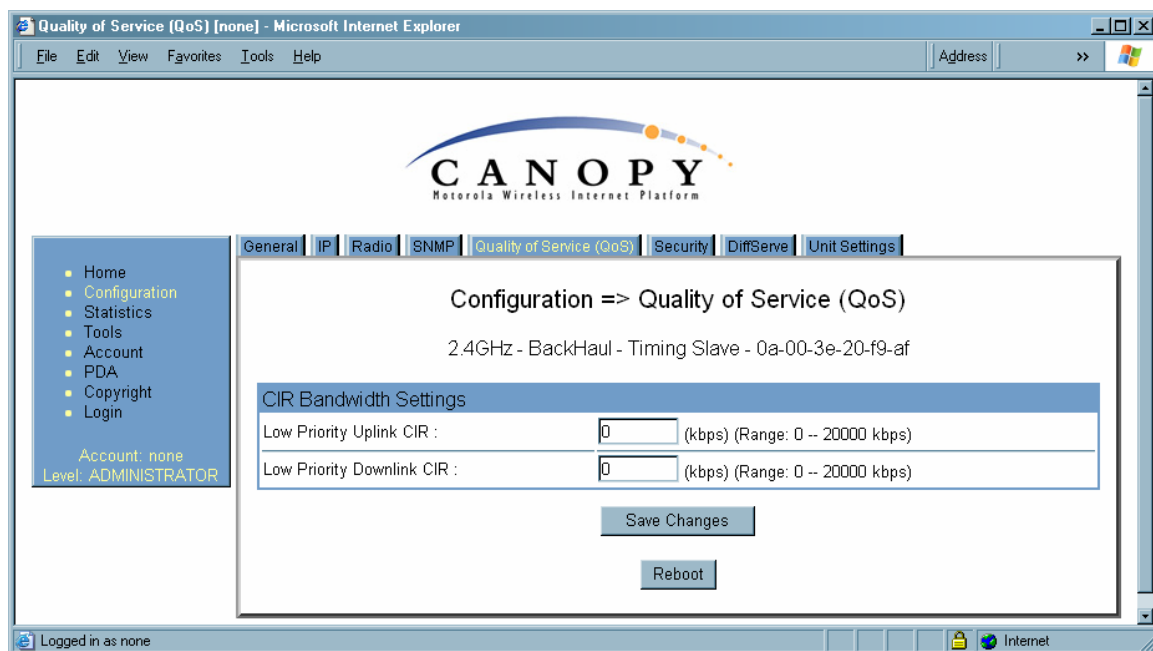
### Reboot

When you click this button

1. the module reboots.
2. any changes that you saved by a click of the **Save Changes** button are implemented.

## 18.5.5 Quality of Service (QoS) Tab of the BHS

An example of the Quality of Service tab of the BHS is displayed in [Figure 117](#).



**Figure 117: Quality of Service (QoS) tab of BHS, example**

In the Quality of Service (QoS) tab of the BHS, you may set the following parameters.

### Low Priority Uplink CIR

See

- [Committed Information Rate](#) on Page 88
- [Setting the Configuration Source](#) on Page 297.

**Low Priority Downlink CIR**

See

- [Committed Information Rate](#) on Page 88
- [Setting the Configuration Source](#) on Page 297.

**18.5.6 Security Tab of the BHS**

An example of the Security tab in a BHS is displayed in [Figure 118](#).

The screenshot shows a web browser window titled "Security [none] - Microsoft Internet Explorer". The address bar is empty. The browser menu includes File, Edit, View, Favorites, Tools, and Help. The main content area is titled "Configuration => Security" and displays the following settings:

- General:** 2.4GHz - BackHaul - Timing Slave - 0a-00-3e-20-f9-af
- Authentication Key Settings:**
  - Authentication Key : (empty field) (Using All 0xFF's Key)
  - Select Key :
    - ☐ Use Key above
    - ☒ Use Default Key
- Session Timeout:**
  - Web, Telnet, FTP Session Timeout : 600 Seconds
- IP Access Filtering:**
  - IP Access Control :
    - ☐ IP Access Filtering Enabled - Only allow access from IP addresses specified below
    - ☒ IP Access Filtering Disabled - Allow access from all IP addresses
  - Allowed Source IP 1 : 0.0.0.0
  - Allowed Source IP 2 : 0.0.0.0
  - Allowed Source IP 3 : 0.0.0.0

At the bottom of the configuration area are buttons for "Save Changes" and "Reboot". The left sidebar contains a navigation menu with links to Home, Configuration, Statistics, Tools, Account, PDA, Copyright, and Login. Below the menu, it says "Account: none" and "Level: ADMINISTRATOR". The status bar at the bottom indicates "Logged in as: none" and "Internet".

**Figure 118: Security tab of BHS, example**

In the Security tab of the BHS, you may set the following parameters.

**Authentication Key**

Only if the BHM to which this BHS will register requires authentication, specify the key that the BHS should use when authenticating. For alpha characters in this hex key, use only upper case.

**NOTE:**

Canopy recommends that you enter 32 characters to achieve the maximal security from this feature.

**Select Key**

The **Use Default Key** selection specifies that the link should continue to use the automatically generated authentication key. See [Authentication Manager Capability](#) on Page 391.

The **Use Key above** selection specifies the 32-digit hexadecimal key that is permanently stored on both the BHS and the BHM.

**Web, Telnet, FTP Session Timeout**

Enter the expiry in seconds for remote management sessions via HTTP, telnet, or ftp access to the BHS.

**IP Access Control**

You can permit access to the BHS from any IP address (**IP Access Filtering Disabled**) or limit it to access from only one, two, or three IP addresses that you specify (**IP Access Filtering Enabled**). If you select **IP Access Filtering Enabled**, then you must populate at least one of the three **Allowed Source IP** parameters or have no access permitted from any IP address, including access and management by Prizm.

**Allowed Source IP 1 to 3**

If you selected **IP Access Filtering Enabled** for the **IP Access Control** parameter, then you must populate at least one of the three **Allowed Source IP** parameters or have no access permitted to the BHS from any IP address. You may populate as many as all three.

If you selected **IP Access Filtering Disabled** for the **IP Access Control** parameter, then no entries in this parameter are read, and access from all IP addresses is permitted.

The Security tab of the BHS also provides the following buttons.

**Save Changes**

When you click this button, any changes that you made on this tab are recorded in flash memory. However, these changes *do not* apply until the next reboot of the module.

**Reboot**

When you click this button

1. the module reboots.
2. any changes that you saved by a click of the **Save Changes** button are implemented.

### 18.5.7 DiffServe Tab of the BHS

An example of the DiffServe tab in a BHS is displayed in [Figure 119](#).

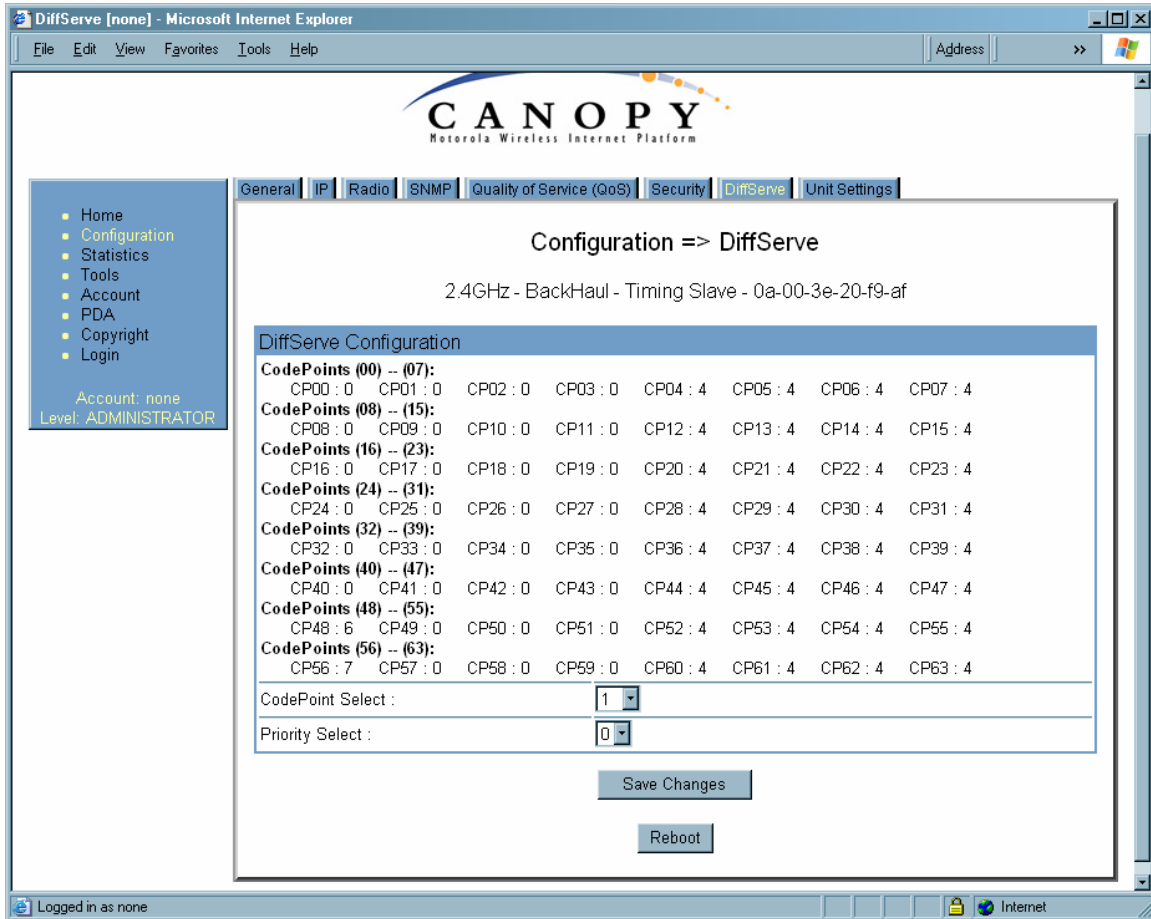


Figure 119: DiffServe tab of BHS, example

You may set the following Differentiated Services Configuration page parameters.

**CodePoint 1  
through  
CodePoint 47**

The default priority value for each settable CodePoint is shown in [Figure 119](#). Priorities of 0 through 3 map to the low-priority channel; 4 through 7 to the high-priority channel. The mappings are the same as 802.1p VLAN priorities.

Consistent with RFC 2474

- **CodePoint 0** is predefined to a fixed priority value of **0** (low-priority channel).
- **CodePoint 48** is predefined to a fixed priority value of **6** (high-priority channel).
- **CodePoint 56** is predefined to a fixed priority value of **7** (high-priority channel).

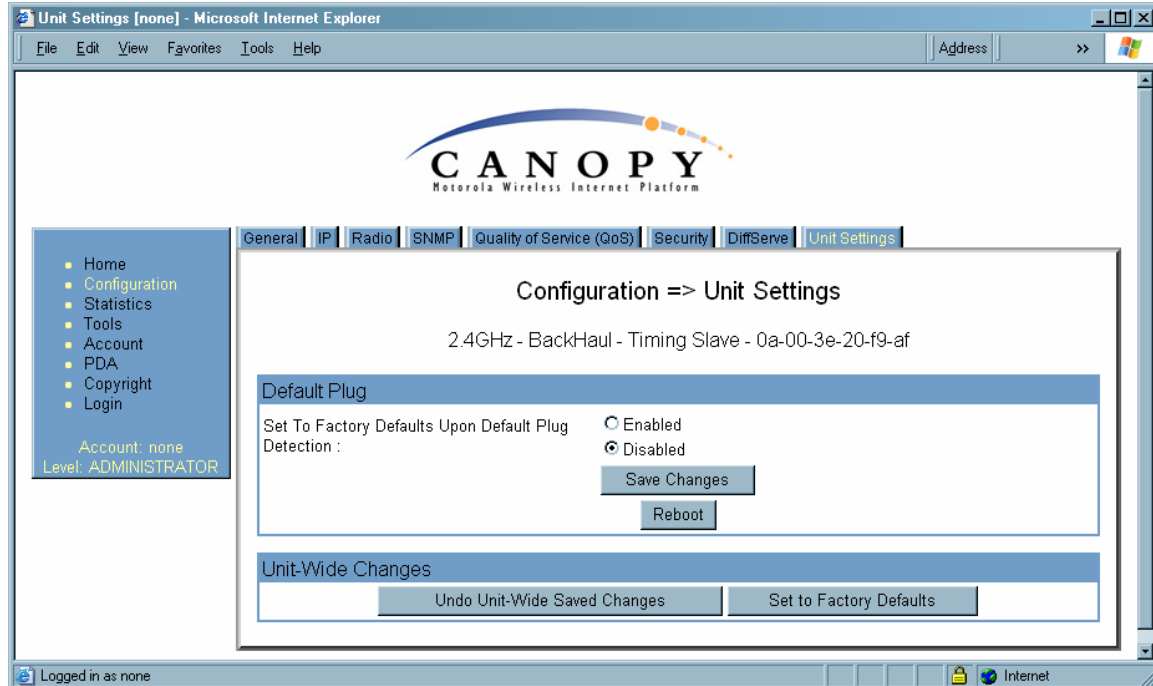
**CodePoint 49  
through  
CodePoint 55**

**CodePoint 57  
through  
CodePoint 63**

You cannot change any of these three fixed priority values. Among the settable parameters, the priority values (and therefore the handling of packets in the high- or low-priority channel) are set in the BHM for the downlink and in the BHS for the uplink. See [DSCP Field](#) on [Page 89](#).

### 18.5.8 Unit Settings Tab of the BHS

An example of the Unit Settings tab in a BHS is displayed in [Figure 120](#).



**Figure 120: Unit Settings tab of BHS, example**

The Unit Settings tab of the BHS contains an option for how the BHS should react when it detects a connected override plug. You may set this option as follows.

**Set to Factory Defaults Upon Default Plug Detection**

If **Enabled** is checked, then an override/default plug functions as a default plug. When the module is rebooted with the plug inserted, it can be accessed at the IP address 169.254.1.1 and no password, and all parameter values are reset to defaults.

A subscriber, technician, or other person who gains physical access to the module and uses an override/default plug *cannot* see or learn the settings that were previously configured in it. When the module is later rebooted with no plug inserted, the module uses the new values for any parameters that were changed and the default values for any that were not.

If **Disabled** is checked, then an override/default plug functions as an override plug. When the module is rebooted with the plug inserted, it can be accessed at the IP address 169.254.1.1 and no password, and all previously configured parameter values remain and are displayed. A subscriber, technician, or other person who gains physical access to the module and uses an override/default plug *can* see and learn the settings. When the module is later rebooted with no plug inserted, the module uses the new values for any parameters that were changed and the previous values for any that were not.

See [Overriding Forgotten IP Addresses or Passwords on AP, SM, or BH](#) on Page 381.

The Unit Settings tab also contains the following buttons.

**Save Changes**

When you click this button, any changes that you made on all tabs are recorded in flash memory. However, these changes *do not* apply until the next reboot of the module.

**Reboot**

When you click this button

1. the module reboots.
2. any changes that you saved by a click of the **Save Changes** button are implemented.

**Undo Unit-Wide Saved Changes**

When you click this button, any changes that you made in any tab but did not commit by a reboot of the module are undone.

**Set to Factory Defaults**

When you click this button, *all configurable parameters on all tabs* are reset to the factory settings.

## 18.6 ADJUSTING TRANSMITTER OUTPUT POWER

Authorities may require transmitter output power to be adjustable and/or lower than the highest that a module produces. Canopy adjustable power modules include a Radio tab parameter to reduce power on an infinite scale to achieve compliance. If you set this parameter to lower than the supported range extends, the value is automatically reset to the lowest supported value.

The professional installer of Canopy equipment has the responsibility to

- maintain awareness of applicable regulations.
- calculate the permissible transmitter output power for the module.



- confirm that the initial power setting is compliant.
- confirm that the power setting is compliant following any reset of the module to factory defaults.

The total gain per antenna in 900-MHz and 5.7-GHz Canopy radios is stated in [Table 51](#).

**Table 51: Total gain per antenna**

Antenna	Antenna Gain	Cable Loss <sup>1</sup>	Net Gain
900-MHz Integrated	12.5 dBi	0.2 dB	12 dBi
900-MHz Connectorized <sup>2</sup>	10 to 10.5 dBi	0.3 dB	10 dBi
5.7-GHz Connectorized	settable	0.3 dB + from any additional cable	See Note 3
<b>NOTES:</b> 1. Received signal measurements take this loss into account, but the transmitter output power setting cannot. Set the transmitter output power higher by this amount. 2. With Mars, MTI, or Maxrad antenna. 3. Antenna gain minus cable loss.			

Integrated patch antenna and reflector gains are provided in [Table 52](#).

**Table 52: Patch antenna and reflector gain**

Frequency Band Range	Gain	
	Patch Antenna	Reflector
2.4 GHz	8 dBi	11dBi
5.2, 5.4, or 5.7 GHz	7 dBi	18dBi

The calculation of transmitter output power is as follows:

$$\text{Transmitter Output Power} = \text{EIRP} - \text{Patch Antenna Gain} - \text{Reflector Gain}$$

*from applicable regulations* (points to EIRP)  
*from the preceding table* (points to Reflector Gain)  
*solve, then set in parameter* (points to Transmitter Output Power)  
*from the preceding table* (points to Patch Antenna Gain)

Transmitter output power is settable as dBm on the Radio tab of the module. Example cases of transmitter output power settings are shown in [Table 53](#).

**Table 53: Transmitter output power settings, example cases**

Frequency Band Range and Antenna Scheme	Region	Maximum EIRP in Region	Transmitter Output Power Setting	
			AP, SM, or BH with No Reflector	SM or BH with Reflector
900 MHz Integrated	U.S.A. Canada	36 dBm (4 W)	24 dBm	
900 MHz Connectorized	U.S.A. Canada	36 dBm (4 W)	26 dBm <sup>1</sup>	
	Australia	30 dBm (1 W)	Depends on antenna	
2.4 GHz Integrated	U.S.A. Canada	Depends on antenna gain	25 dBm	25 dBm
	CEPT states	20 dBm (100 mW)	12 dBm	1 dBm
5.2 GHz Integrated	U.S.A. Canada	30 dBm (1 W)	23 dBm	
5.4 GHz Integrated	CEPT states	30 dBm (1 W)	23 dBm	5 dBm
5.7 GHz Connectorized	UK	33 dBm (2 W)	Depends on antenna	Depends on antenna
<b>NOTES:</b> 1. With Mars, MT1, or Maxrad antenna. This is the default setting, and 28 dBm is the highest settable value. The lower default correlates to 36 dBm EIRP where 10-dBi antennas are used. The default setting for this parameter is applied whenever <b>Set to Factory Defaults</b> is selected.				

## 19 INSTALLING COMPONENTS

**RECOMMENDATION:**

Use *shielded* cable for all Canopy infrastructure connections associated with BHs, APs, and CMMs. The environment that these modules operate in often has significant unknown or varying RF energy. Operator experience consistently indicates that the additional cost of shielded cables is more than compensated by predictable operation and reduced costs for troubleshooting and support.

### 19.1 PDA ACCESS TO CANOPY MODULES

For RF spectrum analysis or module aiming on a roof or tower, a personal digital assistant (PDA) is easier to carry than, and as convenient to use as, a notebook computer. The PDA is convenient to use because no scrolling is required to view

- spectrum analysis results.
- RSSI and jitter.
- master module evaluation data.
- information that identifies the module, software, and firmware.

To access this data in a format that fits a 320 x 240 pixel PDA screen, the PDA must have all of the following:

- a Compact Flash card slot.
- any of several Compact Flash wired Ethernet cards.
- a wired Ethernet connection to the module.
- a browser directed to <http://ModuleIPAddress/pda.html>.

The initial PDA tab reports link status, as shown in [Figure 121](#).

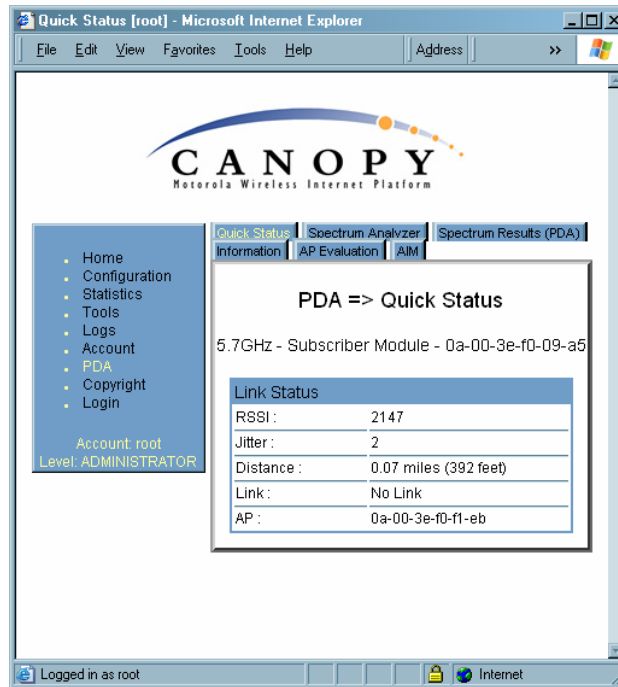


Figure 121: PDA Quick Status tab, example

An example of the Spectrum Analyzer tab for PDAs is displayed in Figure 122. For additional information about the Spectrum Analyzer feature, see [Monitoring the RF Environment](#) on Page 371.

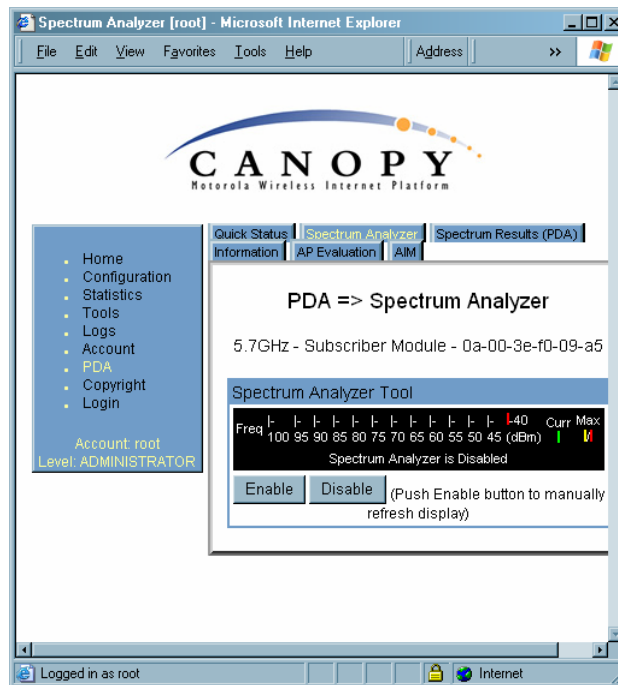


Figure 122: PDA Spectrum Analyzer tab of SM, example

Examples of the Spectrum Results and Information tabs for PDAs are shown in [Figure 123](#) and [Figure 124](#).

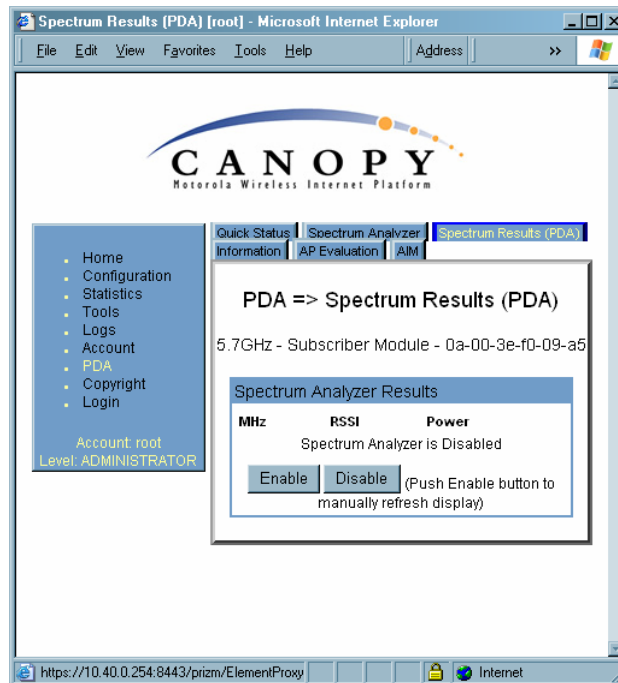


Figure 123: PDA Spectrum Results tab of SM, example

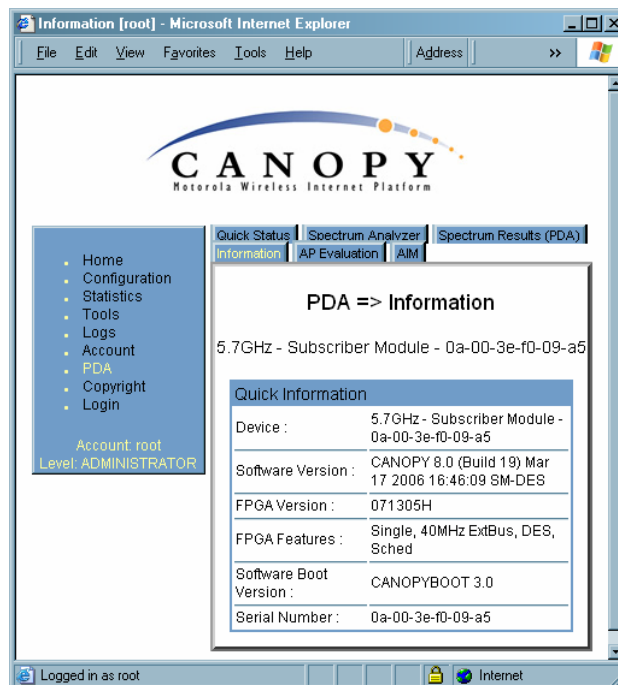


Figure 124: PDA Information tab of SM, example

Examples of the AP Evaluation and Aim tabs for PDAs are shown in [Figure 125](#) and [Figure 126](#).

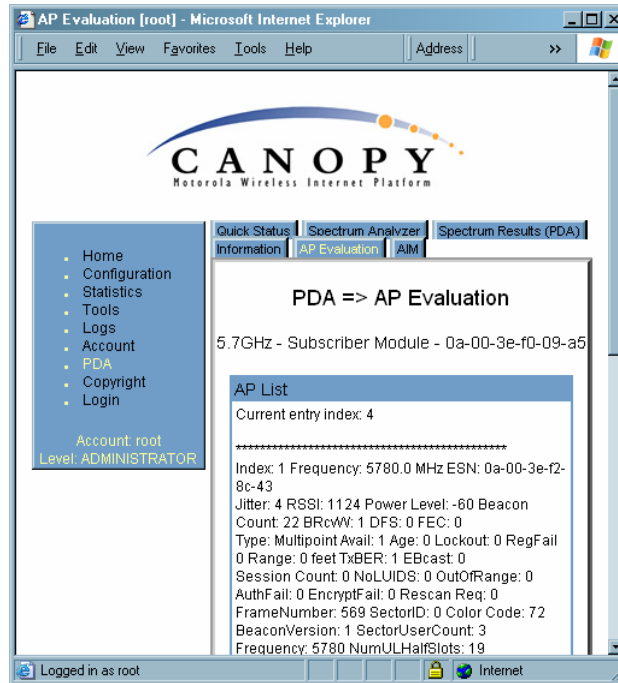


Figure 125: PDA AP Evaluation tab of SM, example

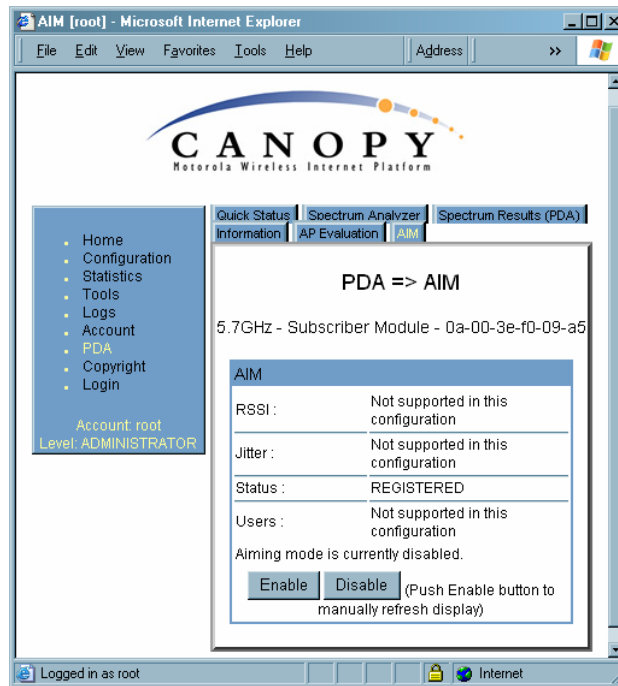


Figure 126: PDA Aim tab of SM, example

## 19.2 INSTALLING AN AP

To install the Canopy AP, perform the following steps.

### Procedure 19: Installing the AP

1. Begin with the AP in the powered-down state.
2. Choose the best mounting location for your particular application. Modules need not be mounted next to each other. They can be distributed throughout a given site. However, the 60° offset must be maintained. Mounting can be done with stainless steel hose clamps or another equivalent fastener.
3. Align the AP as follows:
  - a. Move the module to where the link will be unobstructed by the radio horizon and no objects penetrate the Fresnel zone. (The Canopy System Calculator page [AntennaElevationCalcPage.xls](#) automatically calculates the minimum antenna elevation that is required to extend the radio horizon to the other end of the link. The Canopy System Calculator page [FresnelZoneCalcPage.xls](#) automatically calculates the Fresnel zone clearance that is required between the visual line of sight and the top of a high-elevation object.)
  - b. Use a local map, compass, and/or GPS device as needed to determine the direction that one or more APs require to each cover the intended 60° sector.
  - c. Apply the appropriate degree of downward tilt. (The Canopy System Calculator page [DowntiltCalcPage.xls](#) automatically calculates the angle of antenna downward tilt that is required.)
  - d. Ensure that the nearest and furthest SMs that must register to this AP are within the beam coverage area. (The Canopy System Calculator page [BeamwidthRadiiCalcPage.xls](#) automatically calculates the radii of the beam coverage area.)
4. Using stainless steel hose clamps or equivalent fasteners, lock the AP in the proper direction and downward tilt.
5. Remove the base cover of the AP. (See [Figure 52](#) on Page 180.)
6. Attach the cables to the AP.  
(See [Procedure 5](#) on Page 186.)

**NOTE:** When power is applied to a Canopy module or the unit is reset on the web-based interface, the module requires approximately 25 seconds to boot. During this interval, self-tests and other diagnostics are being performed. See [Table 43](#) on Page 181.

===== end of procedure =====

## 19.3 INSTALLING A CONNECTORIZED FLAT PANEL ANTENNA

To install a connectorized flat panel antenna to a mast or structure, follow instructions that the manufacturer provides. Install the antenna safely and securely, consistent with industry practices.

The Universal Mounting Bracket available from Motorola (Part Number SMMB-1 and consisting of a mounting bracket and L-shaped aluminum tube) holds one Canopy module, but cannot hold both the module and a connectorized antenna. The SMMB-2 is a heavy duty bracket that can hold both a 900-MHz module and its connectorized antenna. See [Module Support Brackets](#) on Page 59.

**IMPORTANT!**

Connectorized antennas *require* professional installation.

The professional installer is responsible for

- selection of an antenna that the regulatory agency has approved for use with the Canopy 900-MHz AP and SM.
- setting of the gain consistent with regulatory limitations and antenna specifications.
- ensuring that the polarity—horizontal or vertical—is identical on both ends of the link. (This may be less obvious where an integrated antenna is used on one end and a connectorized on the other.)
- use of moisture sealing tape or wrap to provide long-term integrity for the connection.

## 19.4 INSTALLING A GPS ANTENNA

The following information describes the recommended tools and procedures to mount the GPS antenna.

### Recommended Tools for GPS Antenna Mounting

The following tools may be needed for mounting the GPS antenna:

- 3/8" nut driver
- 12" adjustable wrench
- 7/16" wrench
- Needle-nose pliers

### Mounting a GPS Antenna

Perform the following procedure to mount a GPS antenna.

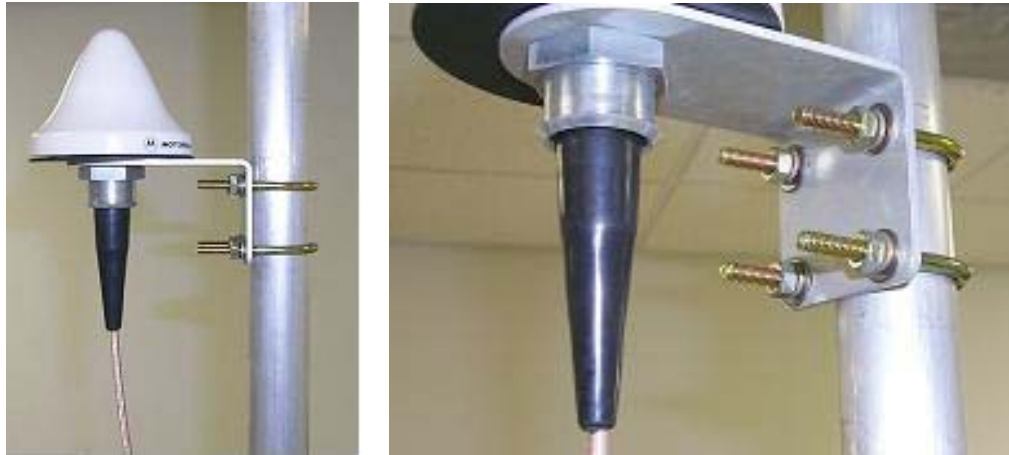
#### Procedure 20: Mounting the GPS antenna

1. Ensure that the mounting position
  - has an unobstructed view of the sky to 20° above the horizon.
  - *is not* the highest object at the site. (This is important for lightning protection.)
  - *is not* further than 100 feet (30.4 meters) of cable from the CMM2 or CMMmicro.
2. Select a pole that has an outside diameter of 1.25 to 1.5 inches (3 to 4 cm) to which the GPS antenna bracket can be mounted.
3. Place the U-bolts (provided) around the pole as shown in [Figure 127](#).
4. Slide the GPS antenna bracket onto the U-bolts.
5. Slide the ring washers (provided) onto the U-bolts.



6. Slide the lock washers (provided) onto the U-bolts.
7. Use the nuts (provided) to securely fasten the bracket to the U-bolts.

===== end of procedure =====



**Figure 127: Detail of GPS antenna mounting**

#### **19.4.1 Recommended Materials for Cabling the GPS Antenna**

The following materials are required for cabling the GPS antenna:

- up to 100 feet (30.4 meters) of LMR200 coaxial cable
- 2 Times Microwave N-male connectors (Times Microwave P/N TC-200-NM) or equivalent connectors.

#### **19.4.2 Cabling the GPS Antenna**

Connect the GPS coax cable to the female N-connector on the GPS antenna.

### **19.5 INSTALLING A CMM2**

Ensure that you comply with standard local or national electrical and climbing procedures when you install the CMM2.

#### **19.5.1 CMM2 Installation Temperature Range**

Install the CMM2 outside only when temperatures are above  $-4^{\circ}\text{F}$  ( $-20^{\circ}\text{C}$ ). The bulkhead connector and the bushings and inserts in the bulkhead connector are rated for the full  $-40^{\circ}$  to  $+131^{\circ}\text{F}$  ( $-40^{\circ}$  to  $+55^{\circ}\text{C}$ ) range of the CMM2. However, for dynamic operations (loosening, tightening, and inserting), they are compliant at, and rated for, only temperatures at or above  $-4^{\circ}\text{F}$  ( $-20^{\circ}\text{C}$ ).

### 19.5.2 Recommended Tools for Mounting a CMM2

The following tools may be needed for mounting the CMM2:

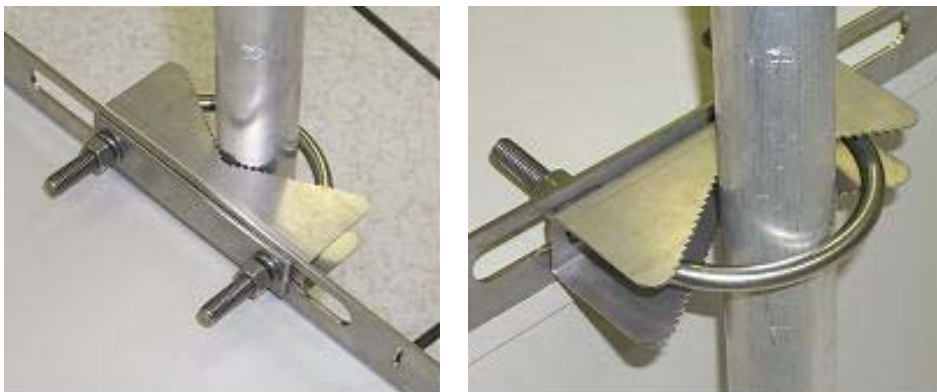
- 3/8" nut driver
- 12" adjustable wrench
- 14-mm wrench for pole-mounting
- needle-nose pliers

### 19.5.3 Mounting a CMM2

Perform the following procedure to mount the CMM2.

#### Procedure 21: Mounting the CMM2

1. Ensure that the mounting position
  - *is not* further than 328 feet (100 meters) of cable from the furthest AP or BH that the CMM2 will serve.
  - *is not* closer than 10 feet (3 meters) to the nearest AP or BH.
  - *is not* further than 100 feet (30.4 meters) of cable from the intended mounting position of the GPS antenna.
  - allows you to fully open the door of the CMM2 for service.
2. Select a support structure to which the flanges of the CMM2 can be mounted.
3. If the support structure is a wall, use screws or bolts (neither is provided) to attach the flanges to the wall.
4. If the support structure is an irregular-shaped object, use adjustable stainless steel bands (provided) to attach the CMM2 to the object.
5. If the support structure is a pole that has an outside diameter of 3 to 8 cm, or 1.25 to 3 inches, use a toothed V-bracket (provided) to
  - a. attach the V-bracket to the pole as shown in Figure 128.
  - b. attach the CMM2 flanges to the V-bracket.



**Figure 128: Detail of pole mounting**

===== end of procedure =====

### 19.5.4 Cabling a CMM2



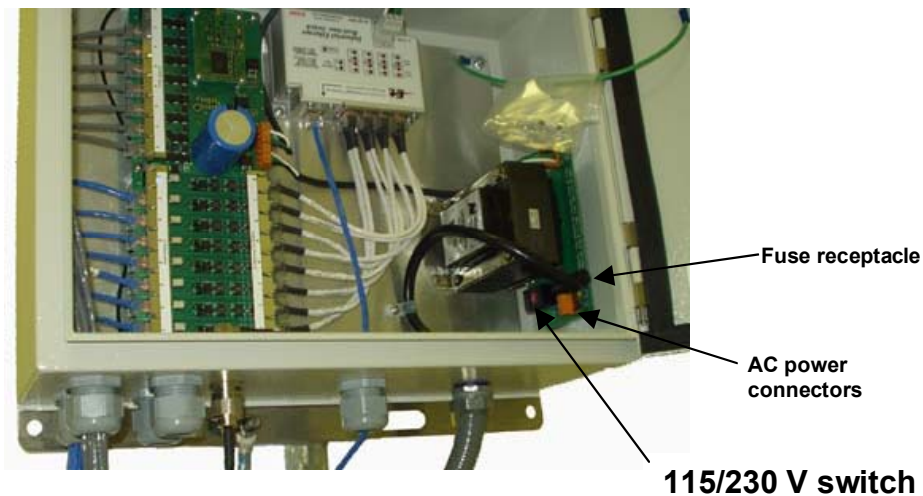
#### **IMPORTANT!**

Where you deploy CMM2s, one AP in each AP cluster must be connected to the master port on the CMM2, and each module connected to a CMM2 must be configured to **Sync to Received Signal (Timing Port)**. If either is not done, then the GPS receiver sends no sync pulse to the remaining ports.

Perform the following procedure to attach the CMM2 cables on both ends:

#### **Procedure 22: Cabling the CMM2**

1. Carefully review the practices recommended in [Best Practices for Cabling](#) on Page 184.
2. Remove the base cover from any AP or BH that is to be connected to this CMM2. See [Figure 52](#) on Page 180.
3. Remove the GPS sync cable knockout from the base cover.
4. For any AP that is to be connected to this CMM2, set the AP **Sync Input** Configuration Page parameter to the **Sync to Received Signal (Timing Port)** selection.
5. Review the schematic drawing inside the CMM2.
6. Set the 115-/230-volt switch in the CMM2 consistent with the power source. See [Figure 129](#).



**Figure 129: Location of 115-/230-volt switch**

**CAUTION!**

Failure to set the 115-/230-volt switch correctly can result in damage to equipment.

**IMPORTANT!**

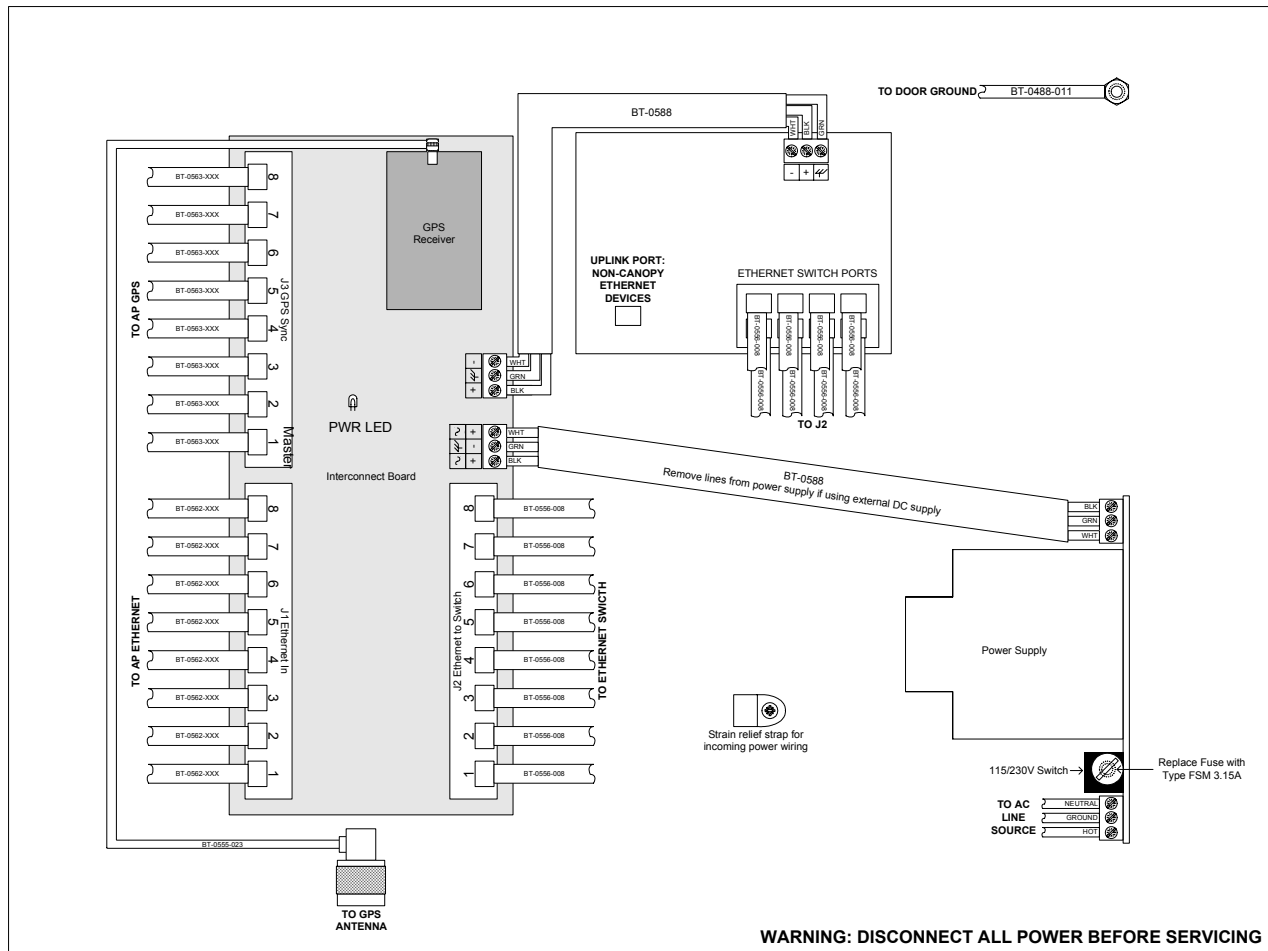
The AC power connectors are labeled **N** for Neutral, **L** for Line, and **PE** for Protective Earth (PE) ↓ or ground. The maximum thickness of wire to be used is 4 mm<sup>2</sup> or 12 AWG.

7. Route the Ethernet cables from the APs and or BHs to the CMM2.

The strain relief plugs on the CMM2 have precut holes. Each hole of the strain relief is designed to hold two CAT 5 UTP cables or one shielded cable. The Ethernet cables have RJ-45 (standard Ethernet) connectors that mate to corresponding ports inside the CMM2.

These ports are labeled **J3**. Eight J3 ports are available on the CMM2 to accommodate any combination of APs and BHs.

The logical connections in the CMM2 are displayed in [Figure 130](#).



**Figure 130: Layout of logical connections in CMM2**

8. Connect the Ethernet cable from the first AP or BH to the **Port 1** in the J3 ports in the CMM2. This port is the *master* Ethernet port for the CMM2 and should be connected first in all cases. [Figure 131](#) on [Page 346](#) is a photograph of a properly wired CMM2.

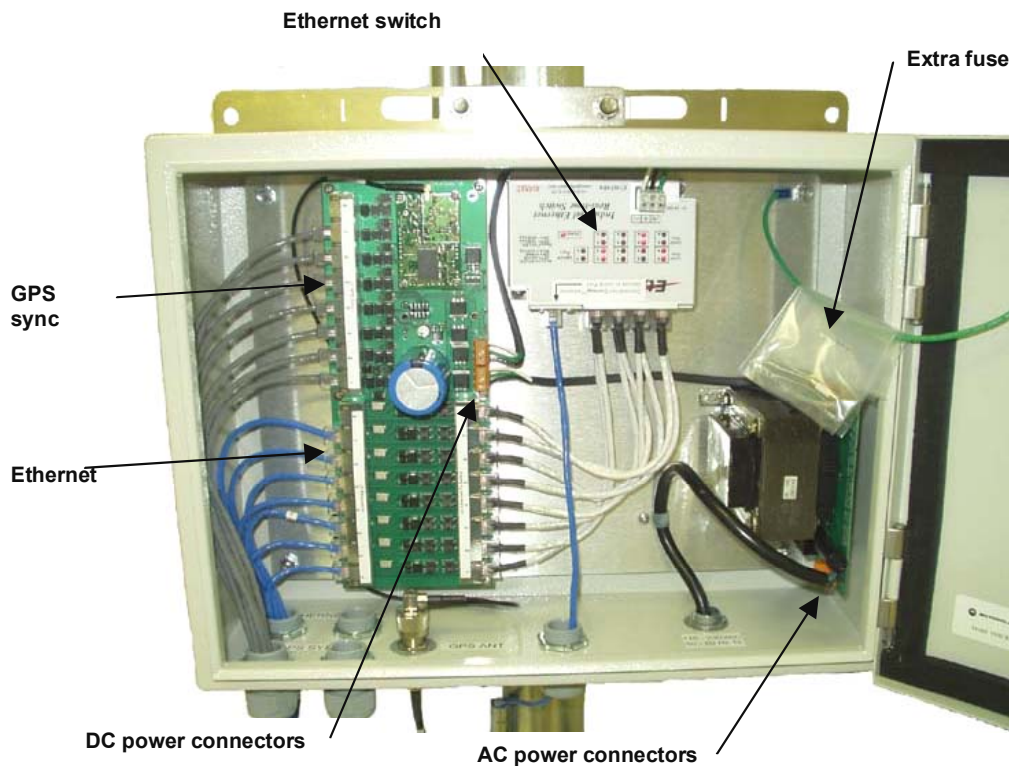


Figure 131: Canopy CMM2, front view

9. Connect the remaining Ethernet cables to the remaining J3 ports.
10. Route the GPS sync (serial) cables from the APs to the CMM2.

The GPS sync cables have 6-conductor RJ-11 connectors that mate to corresponding ports inside the CMM2.

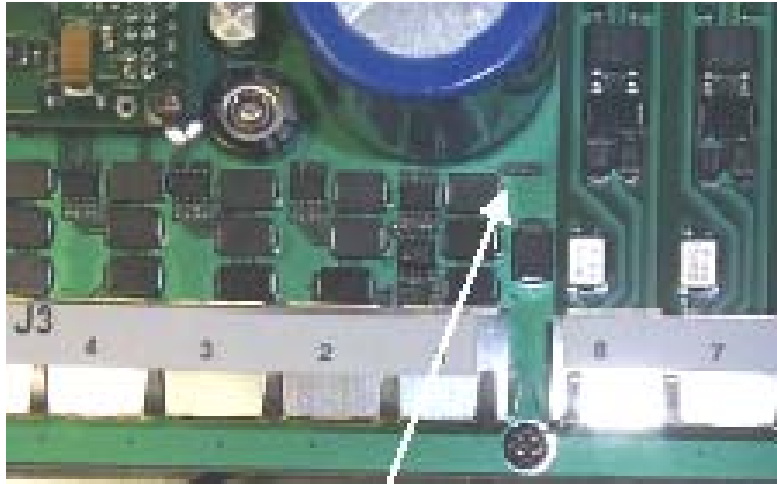
These ports are labeled **J1**. Eight J1 ports are available on the CMM2 to accommodate any combination of APs and BHs.

11. Connect the GPS sync cable from the first AP or BH to the **Port 1** in the J1 ports in the CMM2. See [Figure 131](#) on Page 346.

This port is the *master* GPS sync port for the CMM2 and should be connected first in all cases. This is necessary to initialize the GPS on the CMM2.

12. Connect the remaining GPS sync cables to the remaining J1 ports.
13. If this CMM2 requires network connection, perform the following steps:
  - a. Route a network cable into the CMM2.
  - b. Connect to the uplink port on the switch.
  - c. Properly ground (connect to Protective Earth [PE] ↓) the Ethernet cable. The Canopy Surge Suppressor provides proper grounding for this situation.  
**NOTE:** Instructions for installing a Canopy Surge Suppressor are provided in [Procedure 28](#) on Page 351.

14. Connect GPS coaxial cable to the N-connector on the outside of the CMM2. See [Figure 53](#) on Page 182.
15. Connect AC or DC power to the CMM2, consistent with [Figure 130](#) on Page 345.  
**NOTE:** When power is applied, the following indicators are lighted:
  - the power LED on the Ethernet switch
  - the green LED on the circuit board, as shown in [Figure 132](#).



**Figure 132: Port indicator LED on Ethernet switch**

16. Verify that each port indicator LED on the Ethernet switch is lit (each AP or BH is reliably connected to the Ethernet switch).
17. Replace the base cover on each AP or BH.
18. Close and lock the CMM2.

===== end of procedure =====

### 19.5.5 Verifying CMM2 Connections

To verify the CMM2 connections after the APs and or BHs have been installed, perform the following steps:

#### Procedure 23: Verifying CMM2 connections

1. Access the web-based interface for each AP or BHM by opening <http://<ip-address>>, where the <ip-address> is the address of the individual module.
2. In the General Status tab of the Home page, verify that the System Time field displays the time in GMT.

===== end of procedure =====

## 19.6 INSTALLING A CMMmicro

Ensure that you comply with standard local or national electrical and climbing procedures when you install the CMMmicro.



### 19.6.1 CMMmicro Temperature Range

Install the CMMmicro outside only when temperatures are above  $-4^{\circ}\text{F}$  ( $-20^{\circ}\text{C}$ ). The bulkhead connector and the bushings and inserts in the bulkhead connector are rated for the full  $-40^{\circ}$  to  $+131^{\circ}\text{F}$  ( $-40^{\circ}$  to  $+55^{\circ}\text{C}$ ) range of the CMMmicro. However, for dynamic operations (loosening, tightening, and inserting), they are compliant at, and rated for, only temperatures at or above  $-4^{\circ}\text{F}$  ( $-20^{\circ}\text{C}$ ).

### 19.6.2 Recommended Tools for Mounting a CMMmicro

The following tools may be needed during installation:

- 3/8" nut driver
- 12" adjustable wrench
- 14-mm wrench for installation of pole-mounting brackets
- needle-nose pliers

### 19.6.3 Mounting a CMMmicro

Perform the following procedure to mount the CMMmicro.

#### Procedure 24: Mounting the CMMmicro

1. Ensure that the mounting position
  - *is not* further than 328 feet (100 meters) from the furthest AP or BH that the CMMmicro will serve.
  - *is not* closer than 10 feet (3 meters) to the nearest AP or BH.
  - *is not* further than 100 feet (30.5 meters) of cable from the intended mounting position of the GPS antenna.
  - allows you to fully open the door for service.

2. Select a support structure to which the flanges can be mounted.
3. If the support structure is a wall, use screws or bolts (neither is provided) to attach the flanges to the wall.

If the support structure is an irregular-shaped object, use adjustable stainless steel bands (provided) to attach the CMMmicro to the object.

4. If the support structure is a pole that has an outside diameter of 1.25 to 3 inches (3 to 8 cm), use a toothed V-bracket (provided) to
  - d. attach the V-bracket to the pole as shown in [Figure 128](#) on Page 342.
  - e. attach the CMMmicro flanges to the V-bracket.

===== end of procedure =====

### 19.6.4 Installing the Power Supply for the CMMmicro

Install the CMMmicro power converter in only a hut, wiring closet, or weatherized NEMA-approved enclosure. This is imperative to keep moisture away from the power converter, not to shield it from harsh temperatures.



**WARNING!**

Although the output of the power converter is 24 V, the 100-W power rating classifies the converter as a Class 2 electric device. For this reason, whenever you work on power in the CMMmicro, you must *first* disconnect the DC converter from the AC power source.

Perform the following procedure to install the provided power supply.

**Procedure 25: Installing the Power Supply for the CMMmicro**

1. Connect the 6-ft (2-m) AC power cord to the power converter (but not yet to an AC receptacle).
2. Select the length of power cord as follows:
  - a. If either mounting the unit inside with the power converter or outside within 9 ft (2.8 m) of the power converter, select the 10-ft (3-m) DC power cord (rated for outdoor use).
  - b. If mounting the unit outside and further than 9 ft (2.8 m) from the power converter, ensure that this additional length of cord is either UV-resistant or shielded from UV rays.
    - use a terminal block, connector, or splice to add the additional length.
    - protect the terminal block, connector, or splice (as inside a weatherized enclosure, for example).

**Table 54: Wire size for CMMmicro power runs of longer than 9 feet (2.8 m)**

DC Power Cord Length	Proper Wire Size
9–90 ft (3–25 m)	12 AWG (4 mm <sup>2</sup> )
91–145 ft (26–45 m)	10 AWG (6 mm <sup>2</sup> )
146–230 ft (46–70 m)	8 AWG (10 mm <sup>2</sup> )
>230 ft (>70 m)	6 AWG (16 mm <sup>2</sup> )

3. Refer to [Figure 76: CMMmicro connections](#) on Page 223.
4. Feed the power cord through the bulkhead connector of the CMMmicro.
5. Connect the converter lead whose insulation has a white stripe to +V on the CMMmicro terminal block.
6. Connect the converter lead whose insulation is solid black to –V on the CMMmicro terminal block.

===== end of procedure =====

### 19.6.5 Cabling a CMMmicro

Perform the following procedure to attach the CMMmicro cables on both ends:

#### Procedure 26: Cabling the CMMmicro

1. Remove the base cover from any AP or BH that is to be connected to this CMMmicro. See [Figure 52](#) on Page 180.
2. Review the schematic drawing inside the CMMmicro and see [Figure 76: CMMmicro connections](#) on Page 223.
3. Note that the inserts in the bulkhead connector bushings have precut holes.
4. Remove the hard silicon spacer.
5. Route the Ethernet cables from the APs through the bulkhead connectors to the Ethernet switch inside the CMMmicro.
6. If the BH at this site is a 30/60- or 150/300-Mbps BH
  - a. connect the BH outdoor unit (ODU) to the ODU port of the power indoor unit (PIDU).
  - b. connect the PIDU to an unpowered port of the CMMmicro.

If the BH is of another modulation rate, route the Ethernet cables from the BH through the bulkhead connectors to the Ethernet switch in the CMMmicro.
7. If the site has a wired network feed, route the cable into the CMMmicro and connect it to an *unpowered* port on the switch.
8. Mount a Canopy surge suppressor at a low point of the network feed and connect the surge suppressor to solid ground.
9. On the door label, record the MAC and IP addresses of the CMMmicro and all connected equipment.
10. Consistent with practices in your company, note the above information to add later to the company equipment database.
11. Connect the GPS coax cable from the GPS antenna to the female BNC connector in the CMMmicro.
12. If this CMMmicro requires network connection, perform the following steps:
  - a. Route a network cable into the CMMmicro.
  - b. Connect to the uplink port on the switch.
  - c. Properly ground (connect to Protective Earth [PE] ⚡) the Ethernet cable. The Canopy Surge Suppressor provides proper grounding for this situation.  
*NOTE:* Instructions for installing a Canopy Surge Suppressor are provided as part of [Procedure 28](#) on Page 351.
13. Connect the DC power cable to the CMMmicro.
14. Plug the DC converter into an AC receptacle.
15. Verify that the LEDs light.

===== end of procedure =====

### 19.6.6 Verifying CMMmicro Connections

To verify the CMMmicro connections after the APs and or BHs have been installed, perform the following steps.

#### Procedure 27: Verifying CMMmicro connections

1. Access the web-based interface for each AP or BH by opening <http://<ip-address>>, where the <ip-address> is the address of the individual module.
2. In the Status page, verify that the time is expressed in GMT.
3. In the menu on the left-hand side of the web page, click on **GPS Status**.
4. Verify that the AP or BH is seeing and tracking satellites. (To generate the timing pulse, the module must track at least 4 satellites.)

===== end of procedure =====

## 19.7 INSTALLING AN SM

Installing a Canopy SM consists of two procedures:

- Physically installing the SM on a residence or other location and performing a course alignment using the alignment tone ([Procedure 28](#)).
- Verifying the AP to SM link and finalizing alignment using review of power level and jitter, link tests, and review of registration and session counts ([Procedure 29](#) on Page [355](#)).

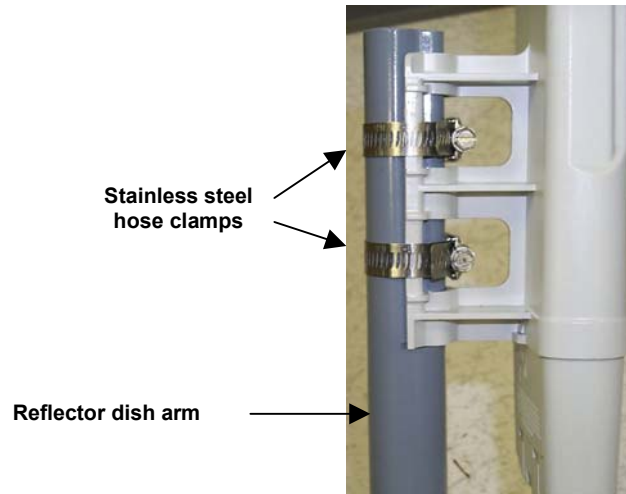
#### Procedure 28: Installing the SM

1. Choose the best mounting location for the SM.
2. Select the type of mounting hardware appropriate for this location. (For mounting 2.4, 5.2, 5.4, and 5.7 GHz SMs, Motorola offers the SMMB-1 mounting bracket. For mounting 900 MHz SMs, Motorola offers the SMMB-2 mounting bracket.)
3. Remove the base cover of the SM. (See [Figure 52](#) on Page [180](#).)
4. Terminate the UV outside grade Category 5 Ethernet cable with an RJ-45 connector, and connect the cable to the SM. (See [Procedure 8](#) on Page [194](#).)
5. Optionally, attach the SM to the arm of the Canopy Passive Reflector dish assembly as shown in [Figure 133](#).



#### **RECOMMENDATION:**

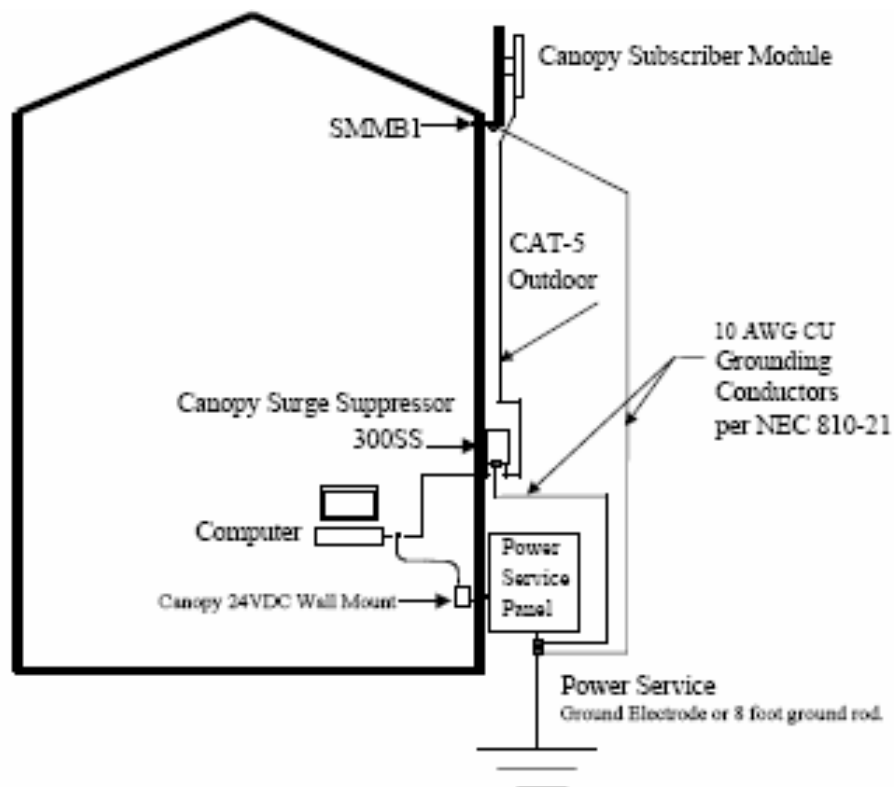
A reflector in this instance reduces the beamwidth to reduce interference. The arm is molded to receive and properly aim the module relative to the aim of the dish. Use stainless steel hose clamps for the attachment.



**Figure 133: SM attachment to reflector arm**

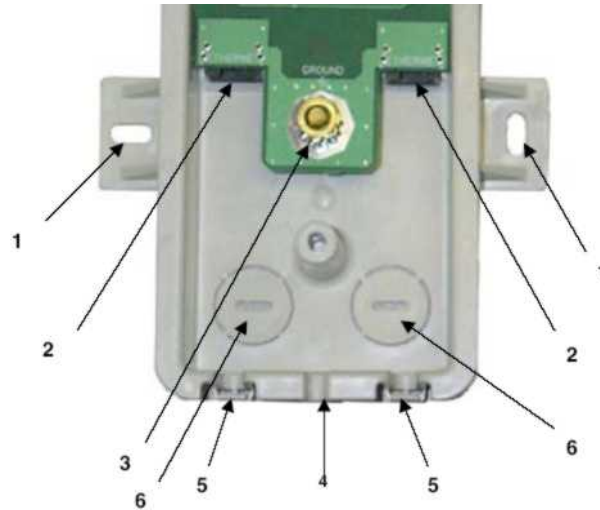
6. Use stainless steel hose clamps or equivalent fasteners to lock the SM into position.

*NOTE:* The SM grounding method is shown in [Figure 134](#).



**Figure 134: SM grounding per NEC specifications**

7. Remove the cover of the 300SS Surge Suppressor.



#### KEY TO CALLOUTS

- 1 Holes—for mounting the Surge Suppressor to a flat surface (such as an outside wall). The distance between centers is 4.25 inches (108 mm).
- 2 RJ-45 connectors—One side (neither side is better than the other for this purpose) connects to the Canopy product (AP, SM, BHM, BHS, or cluster management module). The other connects to the AC adaptor's Ethernet connector.
- 3 Ground post—use heavy gauge (10 AWG or 6 mm<sup>2</sup>) copper wire for connection. Refer to local electrical codes for exact specifications.
- 4 Ground Cable Opening—route the 10 AWG (6 mm<sup>2</sup>) ground cable through this opening.
- 5 CAT-5 Cable Knockouts—route the two CAT-5 cables through these openings, or alternatively through the Conduit Knockouts.
- 6 Conduit Knockouts—on the back of the case, near the bottom. Available for installations where cable is routed through building conduit.

**Figure 135: Internal view of Canopy 300SS Surge Suppressor**

8. With the cable openings facing downward, mount the 300SS to the *outside* of the subscriber premises, as close to the point where the Ethernet cable penetrates the residence or building as possible, and as close to the grounding system (Protective Earth) as possible.
9. Using diagonal cutters or long nose pliers, remove the knockouts that cover the cable openings to the 300SS.
10. Connect an Ethernet cable from the power adapter (located inside the residence or building, outward through the building penetration) to either RJ-45 port of the 300SS.
11. Connect another Ethernet cable from the other RJ-45 port of the 300SS to the Ethernet port of the SM.
12. Refer to [Grounding SMs](#) on Page 174.

13. Wrap an AWG 10 (or 6mm<sup>2</sup>) copper wire around the Ground post of the 300SS.
14. Tighten the Ground post locking nut in the 300SS onto the copper wire.
15. Securely connect the copper wire to the grounding system (Protective Earth) according to applicable regulations.
16. Connect a ground wire to the 300SS.
17. Replace the cover of the 300SS surge suppressor.
18. For coarse alignment of the SM, use the Audible Alignment Tone feature as follows:

- a. Set the **2X Rate** parameter in the SM to **Disable**.
- b. At the SM, connect the RJ-11 6-pin connector of the Alignment Tool Headset to the RJ-11 utility port of the SM.

Alternatively, instead of using the Alignment Tool Headset, use an earpiece or small battery-powered speaker connected to Pin 5 (alignment tone output) and Pin 6 (ground) of an RJ-11 connector.

- c. Listen to the alignment tone for
  - pitch, which indicates greater signal power (RSSI/dBm) by higher pitch.
  - volume, which indicates better signal quality (lower jitter) by higher volume.



**Figure 136: Audible Alignment Tone kit, including headset and connecting cable**

- d. Adjust the module slightly until you hear the highest pitch and highest volume.
- e. If the Configuration web page of the SM contains a **2X Rate** parameter, set it back to **Enable**.
19. When you have achieved the best signal (highest pitch, loudest volume), lock the SM in place with the mounting hardware.

===== end of procedure =====

## 19.8 VERIFYING AN AP-SM LINK

To verify the AP-SM link after the SM has been installed, perform the following steps.

### Procedure 29: Verifying performance for an AP-SM link

1. Using a computer (laptop, desktop, PDA) connected to the SM, open a browser and access the SM using the default IP address of <http://169.254.1.1> (or the IP address configured in the SM, if one has been configured.)
2. On the General Status tab of the Home page in the SM (shown in [Figure 66](#) on [Page 200](#)), look for **Power Level** and **Jitter**.

**IMPORTANT:** The received **Power Level** is shown in dBm and should be maximized. **Jitter** should be minimized. However, better/lower jitter should be favored over better/higher dBm. For example, if coarse alignment gives an SM a power level of -75 dBm and a jitter measurement of 5, and further refining the alignment drops the power level to -78 dBm and the jitter to 2 or 3, the latter would be better, with the following caveats:

- When the receiving link is operating at 1X, the **Jitter** scale is 0 to 15 with desired jitter between 0 and 4.
- When the receiving link is operating at 2X, the **Jitter** scale is 0 to 15 with desired jitter between 0 and 9.



#### NOTE:

For historical reasons, **RSSI** is also shown and is the unitless measure of power. The best practice is to use **Power Level** and ignore **RSSI**, which implies more accuracy and precision than is inherent in the measurement.

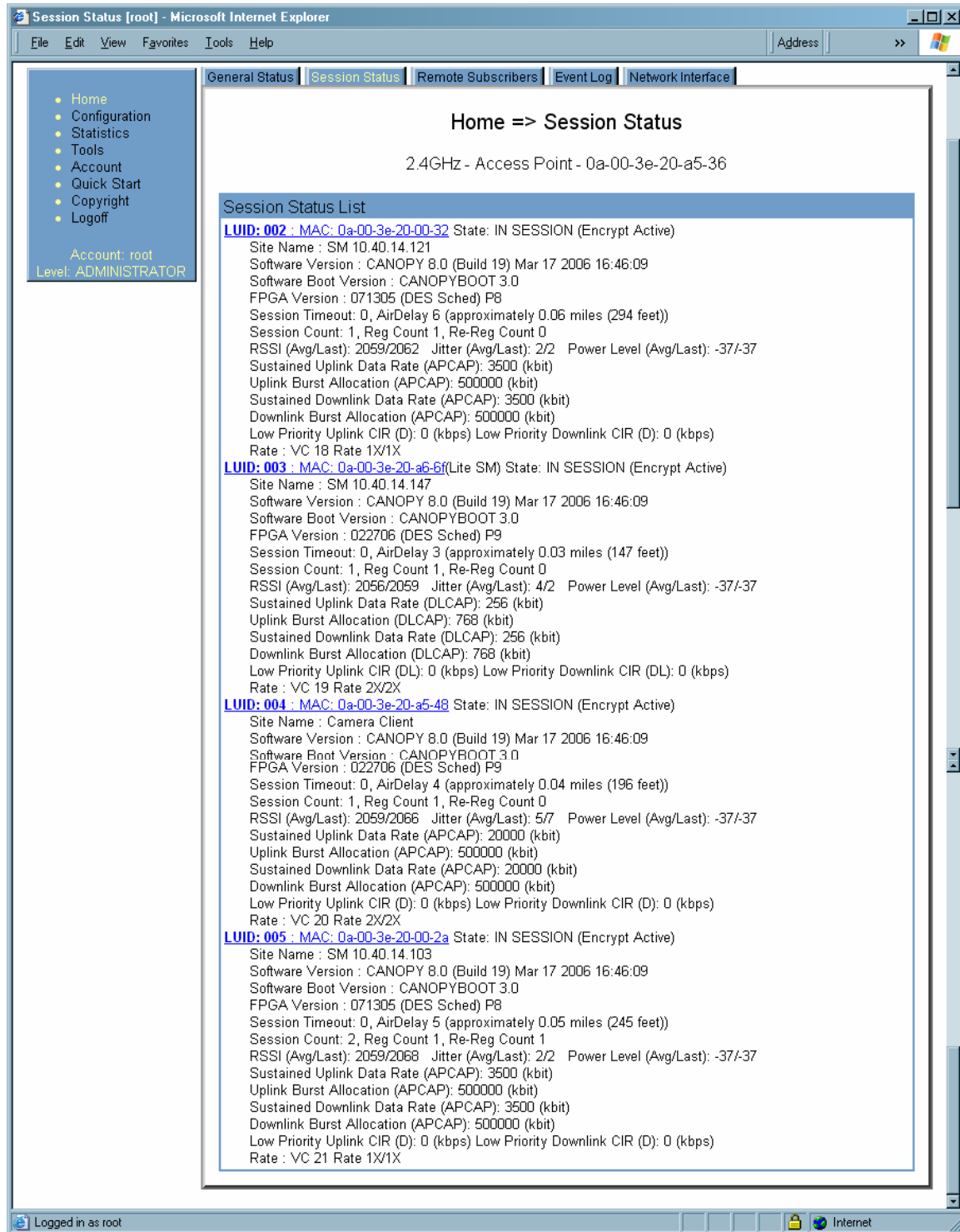
3. Fine-adjust the SM mounting, if needed, to improve **Jitter** or **Power Level**.
4. Click the Link Capacity Test tab of the Tools web page in the SM.  
**NOTE:** Use of this tool is described under [Using the Link Capacity Test Tool \(All\)](#) on [Page 440](#).
5. Perform several link tests of 10-second duration as follows:
  - a. Type into the **Duration** field how long (in seconds) the RF link should be tested.
  - b. Leave the **Packet Length** field (when present) set to the default of 1522 bytes or type into that field the packet length at which you want the test conducted.
  - c. Leave the **Number of Packets** field set to 0 (to flood the link).
  - d. Click the **Start Test** button.
  - e. View the results of the test.

6. If these link tests fail to consistently show 90% or greater efficiency in 1X operation or 50 to 60% efficiency in 2X, troubleshoot the link, using the data as follows:
  - If the downlink is consistently 90% efficient, but the uplink is only 40%, this indicates trouble for the SM transmitting to the AP. Have link tests performed for nearby SMs. If their results are similar, investigate a possible source of interference local at the AP.
  - If the uplink is consistently 90% efficient, but the downlink is only 40%, this indicates trouble for the AP transmitting to the SM. Investigate a possible source of interference near the SM.

If these link tests consistently show 90% or greater efficiency in 1X operation, or 50 to 60% efficiency in 2X operation, in both uplink and downlink, continue this procedure.

7. Open the Session Status tab in the Home page of the AP.  
*NOTE:* An example of this page is shown in [Figure 137](#).





**Figure 137: AP/SM link status indications in the AP Session Status tab**

8. Find the Session Count line under the MAC address of the SM.
9. Check and note the values for Session Count, Reg Count, and Re-Reg Count.

10. Briefly monitor these values, occasionally refreshing this page by clicking another tab and then the Session Status tab again.
11. If these values are low (for example, 1, 1, and 0, respectively, meaning that the SM registered and started a stable session once) and not changing
  - a. consider the installation successful.
  - b. monitor these values from the network office over the next several hours and days.

If these values are greater than 1, 1, and 0, or they increase while you are monitoring them, troubleshoot the link. (For example, recheck jitter as described in [Procedure 28: Installing the SM](#) or recheck link efficiency as described in this procedure, then look for sources of RF interference or obstructions.)

===== end of procedure =====

## 19.9 INSTALLING A REFLECTOR DISH

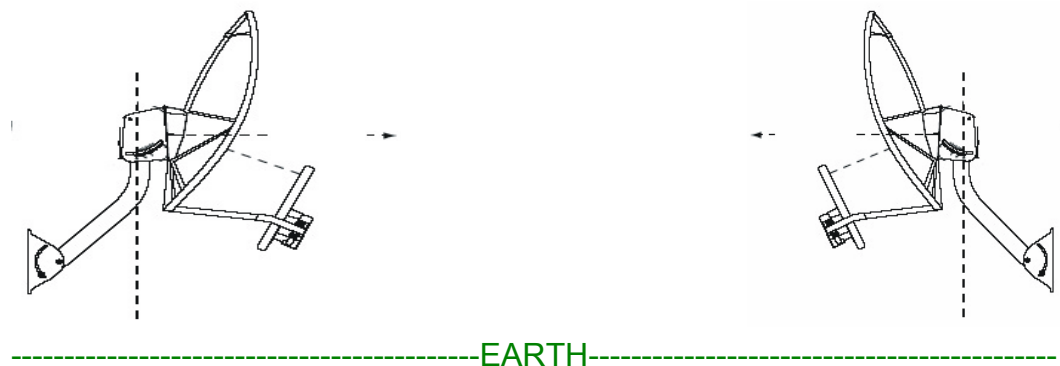
The internal patch antenna of the module illuminates the Canopy Passive Reflector Dish from an offset position. The module support tube provides the proper angle for this offset.

### 19.9.1 Both Modules Mounted at Same Elevation

For cases where the other module in the link is mounted at the same elevation, fasten the *mounting hardware leg* of the support tube vertical for each module. When the hardware leg is in this position

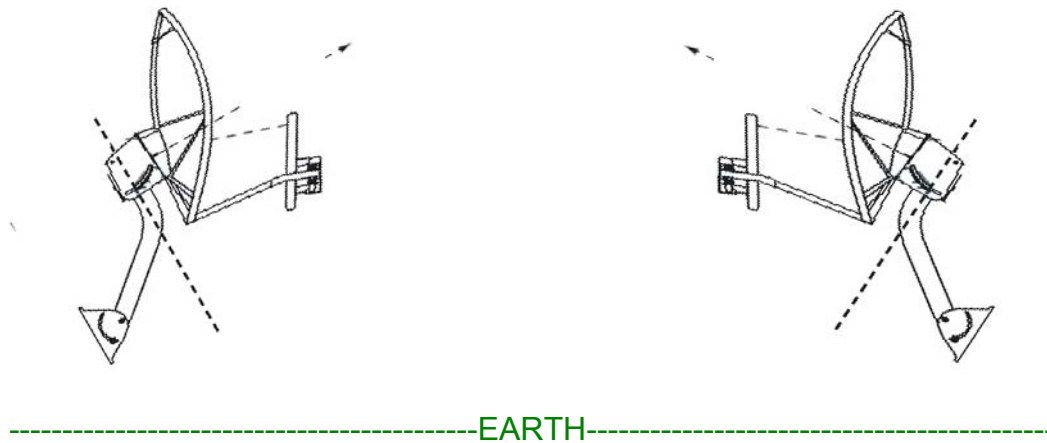
- the reflector dish has an obvious downward tilt.
- the *module leg* of the support tube is *not* vertical.

For a mount to a non-vertical structure such as a tapered tower, use a plumb line to ensure that the hardware leg is vertical when fastened. Proper dish, tube, and module positions for a link in this case are illustrated in [Figure 138](#). The dish is tipped forward, not vertical, but the focus of the signal is horizontal.



**Figure 138: Correct mount with reflector dish**

Improper dish, tube, and module positions for this case are illustrated in [Figure 139](#).



**Figure 139: Incorrect mount with reflector dish**

### 19.9.2 Modules Mounted at Different Elevations

For cases where the other module in the link is mounted at a different elevation, the assembly hardware allows tilt adjustment. The proper angle of tilt can be calculated as a factor of both the difference in elevation and the distance that the link spans. Even in this case, a plumb line and a protractor can be helpful to ensure the proper tilt. This tilt is typically minimal.

The number of degrees to offset (from vertical) the mounting hardware leg of the support tube is equal to the angle of elevation from the lower module to the higher module (b in the example provided in [Figure 40](#) on [Page 148](#)).

### 19.9.3 Mounting Assembly

Both the hardware that Mounting Assembly 27RD provides for adjustment and the relationship between the offset angle of the module and the direction of the beam are illustrated in [Figure 140](#).

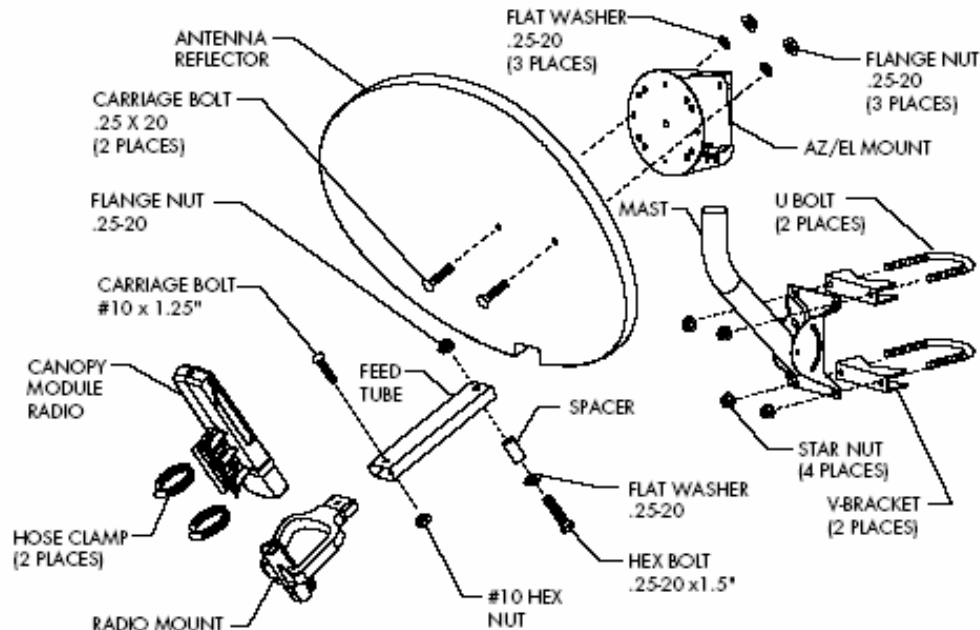


Figure 140: Mounting assembly, exploded view

## 19.10 INSTALLING A BH TIMING MASTER

To install the Canopy BHM, perform the following steps:

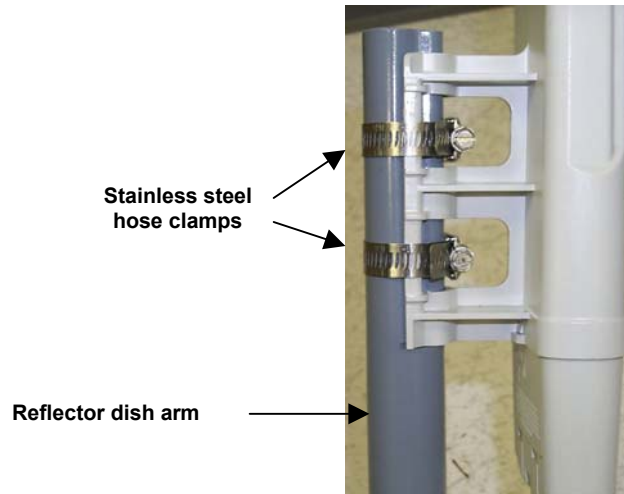
### Procedure 30: Installing the BHM

1. Access the General tab of the Configuration page in the BHM.
2. If this is a 20-Mbps BH, set the **2X Rate** parameter to **Disabled** (temporarily for easier course aiming).
3. Click the **Save Changes** button.
4. Click the **Reboot** button.
5. After the reboot is completed, remove power from the BHM.
6. Choose the best mounting location for your particular application.
7. Attach the BHM to the arm of the Canopy Passive Reflector dish assembly as shown in [Figure 141](#).



#### **RECOMMENDATION:**

The arm is molded to receive and properly aim the module relative to the aim of the dish. ( See [Figure 138](#) on Page 358.) Stainless steel hose clamps should be used for the attachment.



**Figure 141: BH attachment to reflector arm**

8. Align the BHM as follows:
  - a. Move the module to where the link will be unobstructed by the radio horizon and no objects penetrate the Fresnel zone. (The Canopy System Calculator page [AntennaElevationCalcPage.xls](#) automatically calculates the minimum antenna elevation that is required to extend the radio horizon to the other end of the link. The Canopy System Calculator page [FresnelZoneCalcPage.xls](#) automatically calculates the Fresnel zone clearance that is required between the visual line of sight and the top of a high-elevation object.)
  - b. Use a local map, compass, and/or GPS device as needed to determine the direction to the BHS.
  - c. Apply the appropriate degree of downward or upward tilt. (The Canopy System Calculator page [DowntiltCalcPage.xls](#) automatically calculates the angle of antenna downward tilt that is required.)
  - d. Ensure that the BHS is within the beam coverage area. (The Canopy System Calculator page [BeamwidthRadiiCalcPage.xls](#) automatically calculates the radii of the beam coverage area.)
9. Using stainless steel hose clamps or equivalent fasteners, lock the BHM into position.
10. Remove the base cover of the BHM. (See [Figure 52](#) on Page 180.)
11. If this BHM *will not* be connected to a CMMmicro, optionally connect a utility cable to a GPS timing source and then to the RJ-11 port of the BHM.
12. Either connect the BHM to the CMM or connect the DC power converter to the BHM and then to an AC power source.  
**RESULT:** When power is applied to a Canopy module or the unit is reset on the web-based interface, the module requires approximately 25 seconds to boot. During this interval, self-tests and other diagnostics are being performed.
13. Access the General tab of the Configuration page of this BHM.

14. If the CMM is a CMMmicro, set the **Sync Input** parameter to the **Sync to Received Signal (Power Port)** selection.  
If the CMM is a CMM2, set the **Sync Input** parameter to the **Sync to Received Signal (Timing Port)** selection.

===== end of procedure =====

## 19.11 INSTALLING A BH TIMING SLAVE

Installing a Canopy BHS consists of two procedures:

- Physically installing the BHS and performing a course alignment using the alignment tone ([Procedure 31](#)).
- Verifying the BH link and finalizing alignment using review of power level and jitter, link tests, and review of registration and session counts ([Procedure 32](#) on Page 363).

### Procedure 31: Installing the BHS

1. Choose the best mounting location for the BHS.
2. Remove the base cover of the BHS. (See [Figure 52](#) on Page 180.)
3. Terminate the UV outside grade Category 5 Ethernet cable with an RJ-45 connector, and connect the cable to the BHS. (See [Procedure 8](#) on Page 194.)
4. Attach the BHS to the arm of the Canopy Passive Reflector dish assembly as shown in [Figure 133](#) on Page 352.



#### RECOMMENDATION:

The arm is molded to receive and properly aim the BH relative to the aim of the dish. Use stainless steel hose clamps for the attachment.

5. Use stainless steel hose clamps or equivalent fasteners to lock the BHS into position.
6. Remove the cover of the 300SS Surge Suppressor.
7. With the cable openings facing downward, mount the 300SS as close to the grounding system (Protective Earth) as possible.
8. Using diagonal cutters or long nose pliers, remove the knockouts that cover the cable openings to the 300SS.
9. Connect an Ethernet cable from the power adapter to either RJ-45 port of the 300SS.
10. Connect another Ethernet cable from the other RJ-45 port of the 300SS to the Ethernet port of the BHS.
11. Refer to [Grounding SMs](#) on Page 174.
12. Wrap an AWG 10 (or 6mm<sup>2</sup>) copper wire around the Ground post of the 300SS.
13. Tighten the Ground post locking nut in the 300SS onto the copper wire.
14. Securely connect the copper wire to the grounding system (Protective Earth) according to applicable regulations.

15. Connect a ground wire to the 300SS.
16. Replace the cover of the 300SS surge suppressor.
17. For coarse alignment of the BHS, use the Audible Alignment Tone feature as follows:
  - a. If the Configuration web page of the BHS contains a **2X Rate** parameter, set it to **Disable**.
  - b. At the BHS, connect the RJ-11 6-pin connector of the Alignment Tool Headset (shown in [Figure 136](#) on Page 354) to the RJ-11 utility port of the SM.  
 Alternatively, instead of using the Alignment Tool Headset, use an earpiece or small battery-powered speaker connected to Pin 5 (alignment tone output) and Pin 6 (ground) of an RJ-11 connector.
  - c. Listen to the alignment tone for
    - pitch, which indicates greater signal power (RSSI/dBm) by higher pitch.
    - volume, which indicates better signal quality (lower jitter) by higher volume.
  - d. Adjust the module slightly until you hear the highest pitch and highest volume.
  - e. If the Configuration web page of the BHS contains a **2X Rate** parameter, set it back to **Enable**.
18. When you have achieved the best signal (highest pitch, loudest volume), lock the BHS in place with the mounting hardware.

===== end of procedure =====

## 19.12 UPGRADING A BH LINK TO BH20

To replace a pair of 10-Mbps BHs with 20-Mbps BHs, you can minimize downtime by temporarily using the 10-Mbps capability in the faster modules. However, both interference and differences in receiver sensitivity can make alignment and link maintenance more difficult than in the previous 10-Mbps link. The effects of these factors are greater at greater link distances, particularly at 5 miles or more.

In shorter spans, these factors may not be prohibitive. For these cases, set the first replacement module to **1X Rate** and establish the link to the 10-Mbps BH on the far end. Similarly, set the second replacement module to **1X Rate** and re-establish the link. With both of the faster modules in place and with an operational link having been achieved, reset their modulation to **2X Rate** (20 Mbps).

## 19.13 VERIFYING A BH LINK

To verify the backhaul link after the BHS has been installed, perform the following steps.

### Procedure 32: Verifying performance for a BH link

1. Using a computer (laptop, desktop, PDA) connected to the BHS, open a browser and access the BHS using the default IP address of <http://169.254.1.1> (or the IP address configured in the BHS, if one has been configured.)
2. On the General Status tab of the Home page in the BHS (shown in [Figure 71](#) on Page 213), look for **Power Level** and **Jitter**.

**IMPORTANT:** The received **Power Level** is shown in dBm and should be maximized. **Jitter** should be minimized. However, better/lower jitter should be favored over better/higher dBm. For example, if coarse alignment gives a BHS a power level of -75 dBm and a jitter measurement of 5, and further refining the alignment drops the power level to -78 dBm and the jitter to 2 or 3, the latter would be better, with the following caveats:

- When the receiving link is operating at 1X, the **Jitter** scale is 0 to 15 with desired jitter between 0 and 4.
- When the receiving link is operating at 2X, the **Jitter** scale is 0 to 15 with desired jitter between 0 and 9.



**NOTE:**

For historical reasons, **RSSI** is also shown and is the unitless measure of power. The best practice is to use **Power Level** and ignore **RSSI**, which implies more accuracy and precision than is inherent in its measurement.

3. Fine-adjust the BHS mounting, if needed, to improve **Jitter** or **Power Level**.
4. Click the Link Capacity Test tab of the Tools web page in the BHS.  
*NOTE:* Use of this tool is described under [Using the Link Capacity Test Tool \(All\)](#) on Page 440.
5. Perform several link tests of 10-second duration as follows:
  - a. Type into the **Duration** field how long (in seconds) the RF link should be tested.
  - b. Leave the **Packet Length** field (when present) set to the default of 1522 bytes or type into that field the packet length at which you want the test conducted.
  - c. Leave the **Number of Packets** field set to 0 (to flood the link).
  - d. Click the **Start Test** button.
  - e. View the results of the test.
6. If these link tests fail to consistently show 90% or greater efficiency in 1X operation or 50 to 60% efficiency in 2X, troubleshoot the link, using the data as follows:
  - If the downlink is consistently 90% efficient, but the uplink is only 40%, this indicates trouble for the BHS transmitting to the BHM. Investigate a possible source of interference near the BHM.
  - If the uplink is consistently 90% efficient, but the downlink is only 40%, this indicates trouble for the BHM transmitting to the BHS. Investigate a possible source of interference near the BHS.

If these link tests consistently show 90% or greater efficiency in 1X operation, or 50 to 60% efficiency in 2X operation, in both uplink and downlink, continue this procedure.
7. Open the Session Status tab in the Home page of the BHM.  
*NOTE:* An example of this page is shown in [Figure 142](#).



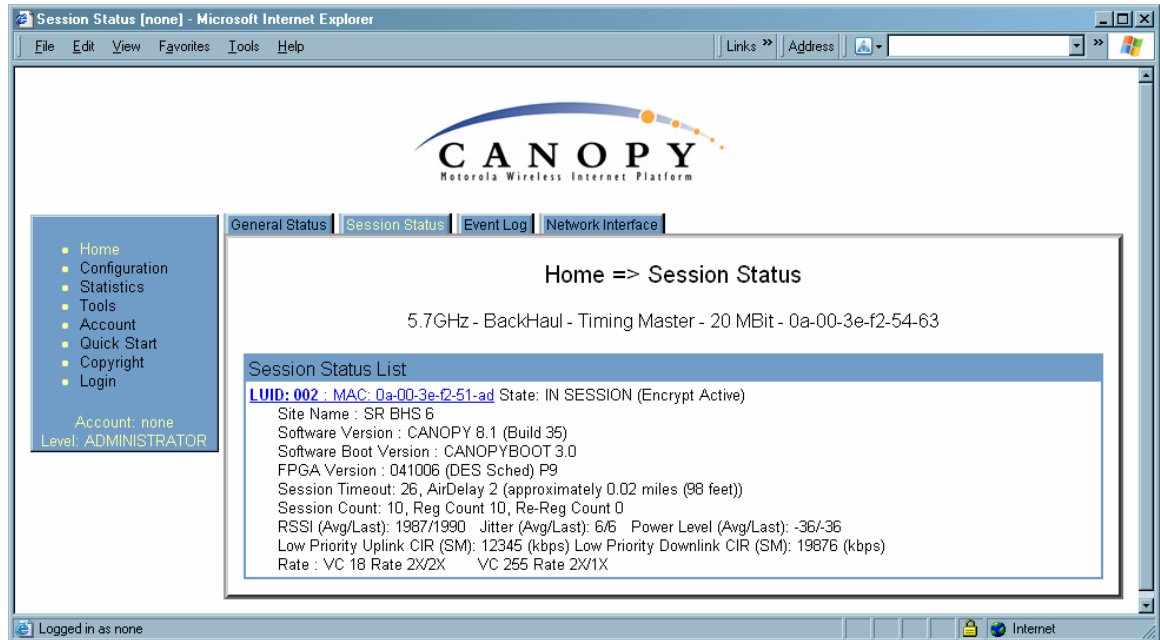


Figure 142: Session Status tab of BHM

8. Find the **Session Count** line under the MAC address of the BHS.
9. Check and note the values for **Session Count**, **Reg Count**, and **Re-Reg Count**.
10. Briefly monitor these values, occasionally refreshing this page by clicking another tab and then the Session Status tab again.
11. If these values are low (for example, 1, 1, and 0, respectively, meaning that the BHS registered and started a stable session once) and not changing
  - a. consider the installation successful.
  - b. monitor these values from the network office over the next several hours and days.

If these values are greater than 1, 1, and 0, or they increase while you are monitoring them, troubleshoot the link. (For example, recheck jitter as described in [Procedure 28: Installing the SM](#) or recheck link efficiency as described in this procedure, then look for sources of RF interference or obstructions.)

===== end of procedure =====



## 20 VERIFYING SYSTEM FUNCTIONALITY

To verify system functionality after the APs and or BHs have been installed, perform the following steps.

### **Procedure 33: Verifying system functionality**

1. For each installed AP, use a computer or PDA connected to an SM set to a compatible configuration (frequency and color code, for example) and verify link functionality.
2. For each BH installed, use a notebook computer connected to a BH (BHM or BHS, as appropriate) set to a compatible configuration and verify link functionality.
3. If a network data feed is present and operational, use an SM or BHS to verify network functionality.

===== end of procedure =====



# OPERATIONS GUIDE



## 21 GROWING YOUR NETWORK

Keys to successfully growing your network include

- monitoring the RF environment.
- considering software release compatibility.
- redeploying modules appropriately and quickly.

### 21.1 MONITORING THE RF ENVIRONMENT

Regardless of whether you are maintaining or growing your network, you may encounter new RF traffic that can interfere with your current or planned equipment. Regularly measuring *over a period of time* and logging the RF environment, as you did before you installed your first equipment in an area, enables you to recognize and react to changes.

#### 21.1.1 Spectrum Analyzer



##### **IMPORTANT!**

The following sections describe the use of a Canopy module in scan mode to analyze the RF spectrum. While a module is in the scan mode, no RF connectivity to that module is possible until either you click **Disable** on the Spectrum Analyzer page or 15 minutes elapses since the module entered the scan mode.

For this reason

- *do not* enable the spectrum analyzer from an RF-connected module. (No readings will be displayed when the RF connection is re-established.)
- be advised that, if you enable the spectrum analyzer by Ethernet connection, any current RF connection to that module drops.

You can use any AP, SM, or BHS to see at once the frequency and power level of any detectable signal that is within, above, or below the frequency band range of the module.



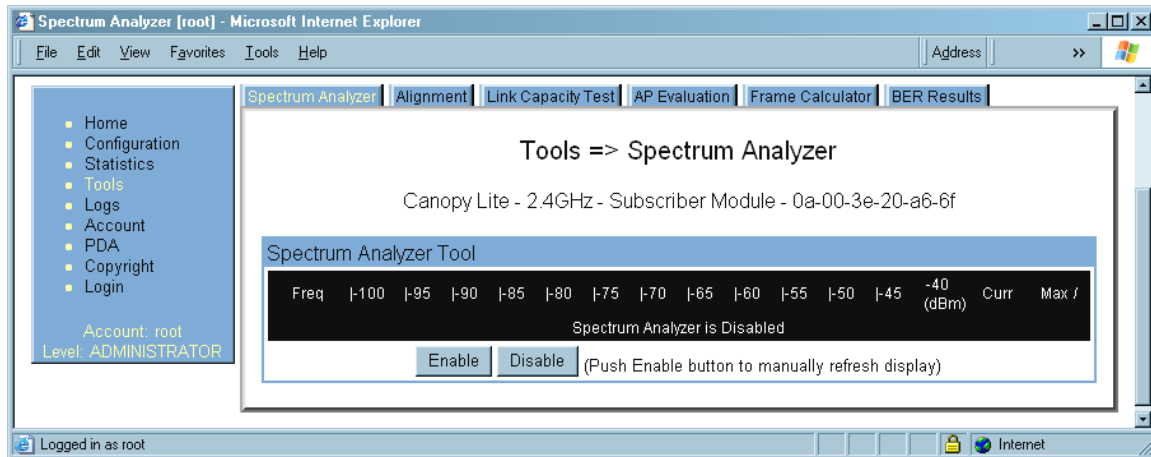
##### **RECOMMENDATION:**

Vary the days and times when you analyze the spectrum in an area. The RF environment can change throughout the day or throughout the week.

Temporarily deploy an SM or BHS for *each* frequency band range that you need to monitor and access the Spectrum Analyzer tab in the Tools web page of the module. (For access from a PDA, see [PDA Access to Canopy Modules](#) on Page 335.) To enter the scan mode and view readings, click **Enable**.

#### 21.1.2 Graphical Spectrum Analyzer Display

An SM/BHS displays the graphical spectrum analyzer. An example of the Spectrum Analyzer tab is shown in [Figure 143](#).



**Figure 143: Spectrum Analyzer tab of SM, example**

Colors in the display have the following meanings:

- Green bars show the most recent measurements.
- Yellow ticks show the maximum measurements from the current spectrum analysis session.
- Red ticks show measurements of -40 dBm or stronger.

To keep the displayed data current, either set this page to automatically refresh or repeatedly click the **Enable** button. When you are finished analyzing the spectrum, click the **Disable** button to return the module to normal operation.

### 21.1.3 Using the AP as a Spectrum Analyzer

You can temporarily transform an AP into an SM and thereby use the spectrum analyzer functionality. This is the only purpose supported for the transformation.



#### **CAUTION!**

You lose connectivity to the AP during spectrum analysis, have no service to any SMs that are connected to it, and can regain connectivity (and toggle it back to AP) through only the wired Ethernet interface to the AP. For this reason, you should perform the transformation to SM in the *Ethernet* interface.

To transform the AP into an SM for spectrum analysis and then return the device to an AP, perform the following steps.

#### **Procedure 34: Using the Spectrum Analyzer in AP feature**

1. Connect to the wired Ethernet interface of the AP.
2. Access the General tab of the Configuration page in the AP.
3. Set the **Device Setting** parameter to **SM**.
4. Click the **Save Changes** button.
5. Click the **Reboot** button.



6. When the module has rebooted as an SM, click the Tools navigation link on the left side of the Home page.
7. Click the Spectrum Analyzer tab.
8. Either set this page to automatically refresh or repeatedly click the **Enable** button.

*RESULT:* The SM enters the scan mode.

9. When you are finished analyzing the spectrum, click the **Disable** button.
10. In the left-side navigation links, click Configuration.
11. Click the General tab.
12. Set the **Device Setting** parameter to **AP**.
13. Click the **Save Changes** button.
14. Click the **Reboot** button.

*RESULT:* The AP boots with its previous frequency setting.

===== end of procedure =====

## 21.2 CONSIDERING SOFTWARE RELEASE COMPATIBILITY

Within the same Canopy network, modules can operate on multiple software releases. However, the features that can be enabled are limited to those that the earliest software supports.

### 21.2.1 Designations for Hardware in Radios

Canopy documentation refers to hardware series (for example, Series P9). Canopy Release 8 requires APs, BHs, and AES SMs to be Series P9 or later hardware. The correlation between hardware series and the MAC addresses of the radio modules is provided in [Table 55](#).

**Table 55: Hardware series by MAC address**

Radio Frequency Band Range	Hardware Series	
	P7 or P8 in These MAC Addresses	P9 or Later in These MAC Addresses
900	None	All
2.4	$\leq 0A003E20672B$	$\geq 0A003E20672C$
5.2	$\leq 0A003E00F4E3$	$\geq 0A003E00F4E4$
5.4	None	All
5.7	$\leq 0A003EF12AFE$	$\geq 0A003EF12AFF$

Differences in capabilities among these hardware series are summarized in [Table 56](#).

**Table 56: Hardware series differences**

Capability	Availability per Hardware Series		
	P7	P8	P9
Auto-sense Ethernet cable scheme	no	yes	yes
Support CMMmicro	no	yes	yes
Support hardware scheduling in APs <sup>1</sup>	no	no	yes
Support 2X operation in APs and SMs	no	no	yes
<b>NOTES:</b> 1. An SM of P7 or P8 series requires an FPGA load through CNUT for access to hardware scheduling, and then only at 1X operation. An AP of P7 or P8 series cannot perform hardware scheduling.			

Advantage Series P9 APs provide higher throughput and lower latency than earlier series Advantage APs and support configuring the high-priority channel per SM. Regular Canopy Series P9 APs *do not* provide the higher throughput and lower latency, but they do support configuring the high-priority channel per SM.

### 21.2.2 CMMmicro Software and Hardware Compatibility

The CMMmicro contains both a programmable logic device (PLD) and software. These must be compatible. For example, the PLD that is compatible with CMMmicro Release 2.0.8 is PLD 5. Further, the CMMmicro must be compatible with both the application software release and the hardware of attached APs and BHs. These attached modules must have been manufactured in October 2002 or later.

APs and BHs that were manufactured earlier do not support sync on the power leads of the Ethernet port. To determine whether the AP or BH hardware is compatible with the CMMmicro, see [Table 57](#).

**Table 57: AP/BH compatibility with CMMmicro**

Frequency Band Range	Range of MAC Addresses (ESNs)	
	Incompatible with CMMmicro	Compatible with CMMmicro
900 MHz AP	none	all
2.4 GHz	none	all
5.2 GHz	$\leq$ 0A003E0021C8	$\geq$ 0A003E0021C9
5.4 GHz	none	all
5.7 GHz	$\leq$ 0A003EF00F79	$\geq$ 0A003EF00F7A

### 21.2.3 MIB File Set Compatibility

Although MIB files are text files (not software), they define objects associated with configurable parameters and indicators for the module and its links. In each release, some of these parameters and indicators are not carried forward from the previous release, and some parameters and indicators are introduced or changed.

For this reason, use the MIB files from your download to replace previous MIB files in conjunction with your software upgrades, even if the file names are identical to those of your previous files. Date stamps on the MIB files distinguish the later set.

## 21.3 REDEPLOYING MODULES

Successfully redeploying a module may involve

- maintaining full and accurate records of modules being redeployed from warehouse stock.
- exercising caution about
  - software compatibility. For example, whether desired features can be enabled with the redeployed module in the network.
  - procedural handling of the module. For example
    - whether to align the SM or BHS by power level and jitter or by only jitter.
    - whether the module auto-senses the Ethernet cable connector scheme.
  - hardware compatibility. For example, where a CMMmicro is deployed.
  - the value of each configurable parameter. Whether all are compatible in the new destination.
- remembering to use auto discovery to add the redeployed SM to the network in Prism.

### 21.3.1 Wiring to Extend Network Sync

The following procedure can be used to extend network sync by one additional hop, as described under [Passing Sync in an Additional Hop](#) on Page 97. Where a collocated module receives sync over the air, the collocated modules can be wired to pass the sync as follows:

#### Procedure 35: Extending network sync

1. Connect the GPS Utility ports of the collocated modules using a sync cable with RJ-11 connectors.
2. Set the **Sync Input** parameter on the Configuration page of the collocated AP or BH timing master to **Sync to Received Signal (Timing Port)**.
3. Set the **Frame Timing Pulse Gated** parameter on the Configuration page of the collocated SM or BH timing slave to **Enable**.

**NOTE:** This setting prevents interference in the event that the SM or BH timing slave loses sync.

===== end of procedure =====



## 22 SECURING YOUR NETWORK

### 22.1 ISOLATING APS FROM THE INTERNET

Ensure that the IP addresses of the APs in your network

- are not routable over the Internet.
- do not share the subnet of the IP address of your user.

RFC 1918, *Address Allocation for Private Subnets*, reserves for private IP networks three blocks of IP addresses that are not routable over the Internet:

- /8 subnets have one reserved network, 10.0.0.0 to 10.255.255.255.
- /16 subnets have 16 reserved networks, 172.16.0.0 to 172.31.255.255.
- /24 subnets have 256 reserved networks, 192.168.0.0 to 192.168.255.255.

### 22.2 ENCRYPTING CANOPY RADIO TRANSMISSIONS

Canopy systems employ the following forms of encryption for security of the wireless link:

- BRAID—a security scheme that the cellular industry uses to authenticate wireless devices.
- DES—Data Encryption Standard, an over-the-air link option that uses secret 56-bit keys and 8 parity bits.
- AES—Advanced Encryption Standard, an extra-cost over-the-air link option that provides extremely secure wireless connections. AES uses 128-bit secret keys as directed by the government of the U.S.A. AES is not exportable and requires a special AP to process the large keys.

BRAID is a stream cipher that the TIA (Telecommunications Industry Association) has standardized. Standard Canopy APs and SMs use BRAID encryption to

- calculate the per-session encryption key (independently) on each end of a link.
- provide the digital signature for authentication challenges.

#### 22.2.1 DES Encryption

Standard Canopy modules provide DES encryption. DES performs a series of bit permutations, substitutions, and recombination operations on blocks of data. DES Encryption does not affect the performance or throughput of the system.

#### 22.2.2 AES Encryption

Motorola also offers Canopy products that provide AES encryption. AES uses the Rijndael algorithm and 128-bit keys to establish a higher level of security than DES. Because of this higher level of security, the government of the U.S.A. controls the export of communications products that use AES (among which the Canopy AES feature activation key is one) to ensure that these products are available in only certain regions and by special permit.

The Canopy distributor or reseller can advise service providers about current regional availability. Canopy AES products are certified as compliant with the Federal Information Processing Standards (FIPS) in the U.S.A. The National Institute of Standards and Technology (NIST) in the U.S.A. has specified AES for significantly greater security than that which DES provides. NIST selected the AES algorithm for providing the best combination of security, performance, efficiency, implementation, and flexibility. NIST collaborates with industry to develop and apply technology, measurements, and standards.

### 22.2.3 AES-DES Operability Comparisons

This section describes the similarities and differences between DES and AES products, and the extent to which they may interoperate.

The DES AP and the DES BHM modules are factory-programmed to enable or disable *DES* encryption. Similarly, the AES AP and the AES BHM modules are factory-programmed to enable or disable *AES* encryption. In either case, the authentication key entered in the Configuration page establishes the encryption key. For this reason, the authentication key must be the same on each end of the link. See [Authentication Key](#) on Page 288.

#### Feature Availability

Canopy AES products run the same software as DES products. Thus feature availability and functionality are and will continue to be the same, regardless of whether AES encryption is enabled. All interface screens are identical. However, when encryption is enabled on the Configuration screen

- the AES product provides AES encryption.
- the DES product provides DES encryption.

Canopy AES products and DES products use different FPGA (field-programmable gate array) loads. However, the AES FPGA will be upgraded as needed to provide new features or services similar to those available for DES products.

Canopy DES products cannot be upgraded to AES. To have the option of AES encryption, the operator must purchase AES products.

#### Interoperability

Canopy AES products and DES products do not interoperate when enabled for encryption. For example, An AES AP with encryption enabled cannot communicate with DES SMs. Similarly, an AES Backhaul timing master module with encryption enabled cannot communicate with a DES Backhaul timing slave module.

However, if encryption is disabled, AES modules can communicate with DES modules.

## 22.3 MANAGING MODULE ACCESS BY PASSWORDS

### 22.3.1 Adding a User for Access to a Module

From the factory, each Canopy module has a preconfigured administrator-level account in the name `root`, which initially requires no associated password. This is the same `root` account that you may have used for access to the module by `telnet` or `ftp`. If you upgrade a module to Release 8

- an account is created in the name `admin`.
- both `admin` and `root` inherit the password that was previously used for access to the module:
  - the **Full Access** password, if one was set.
  - the **Display-Only Access** password, if one was set and no Full Access password was set.

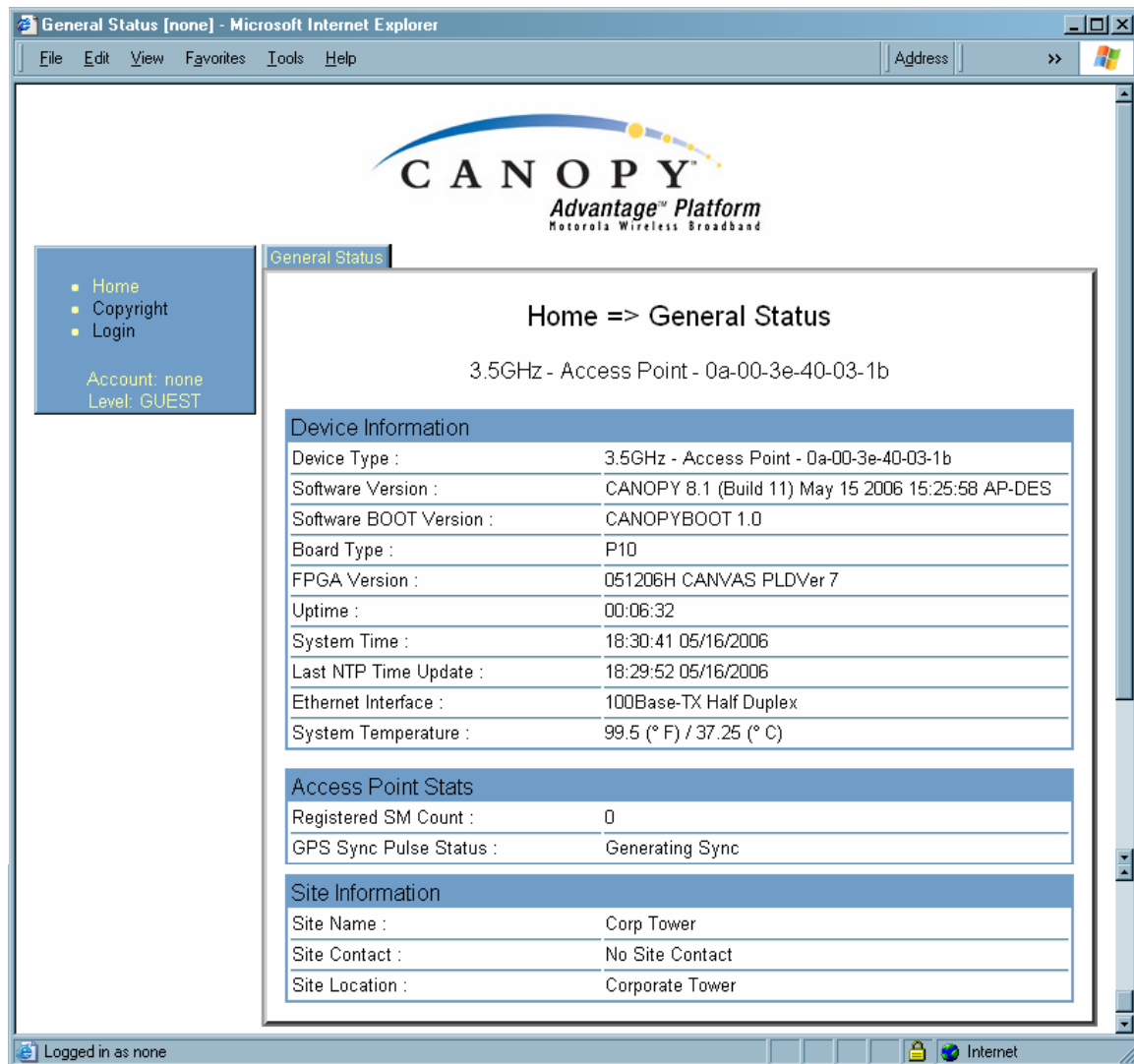


#### **IMPORTANT!**

If you use Prism, *do not* delete the `root` account from any module. If you use an NMS that communicates with modules through SNMP, *do not* delete the `root` account from any module unless you first can confirm that the NMS does not rely on the `root` account for access to the modules.

Each module supports four or fewer user accounts, regardless of account levels. The available levels are

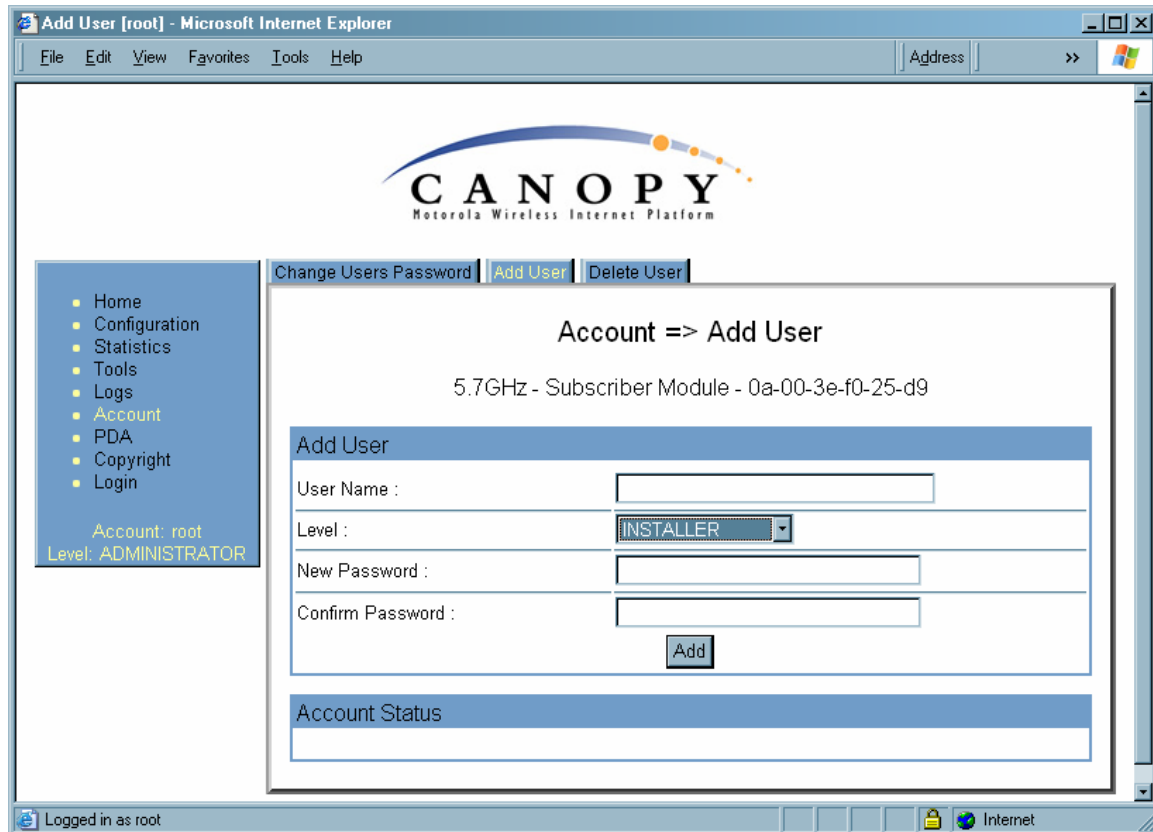
- ADMINISTRATOR, who has full read and write permissions. This is the level of the `root` and `admin` users, as well as any other administrator accounts that one of them creates.
- INSTALLER, who has permissions identical to those of ADMINISTRATOR except that the installer cannot add or delete users or change the password of any other user.
- GUEST, who has no write permissions and only a limited view of General Status tab, as shown in [Figure 144](#), and can log in as a user.



**Figure 144: General Status tab view for GUEST-level account**

An example of the Add User tab is displayed in [Figure 145](#).





**Figure 145: Add User tab of SM, example**

After a password has been set for any ADMINISTRATOR-level account, initial access to the module GUI opens the view of GUEST level ([Figure 144](#)).

Accounts that cannot be deleted are

- the current user's own account.
- the last remaining account of ADMINISTRATOR level.

### 22.3.2 Overriding Forgotten IP Addresses or Passwords on AP, SM, or BH

Canopy systems offer a plug that allows you to temporarily override some AP/SM/BH settings and thereby regain control of the module. This plug is needed for access to the module in any of the following cases:

- You have forgotten either
  - the IP address assigned to the module.
  - the password that provides access to the module.
- The module has been locked by the No Remote Access feature. (See [Denying All Remote Access](#) on Page 459 and [Reinstating Remote Access Capability](#) on Page 459.)
- You want local access to a module that has had the 802.3 link disabled in the Configuration page.

You can configure the module such that, when it senses the override plug, it responds by either

- resetting the LAN1 IP address to 169.254.1.1, allowing access through the default configuration without *changing* the configuration, whereupon you will be able to view and reset any non-default values as you wish.
- resetting all configurable parameters to their factory default values.

### Acquiring the Override Plug

You can either purchase or fabricate an override plug as follows. To purchase an override plug for a nominal fee, order the plug at <http://www.best-tronics.com/motorola.htm>. To fabricate an override plug, perform the following steps.

#### Procedure 36: Fabricating an override plug

1. Install an RJ-11 6-pin connector onto a 6-inch length of CAT 5 cable.
2. Pin out all 6-pins.
3. Short (solder together) Pins 4 and 6 on the other end. Do not connect any other wires to anything. The result should be as shown in [Figure 146](#).

===== end of procedure =====

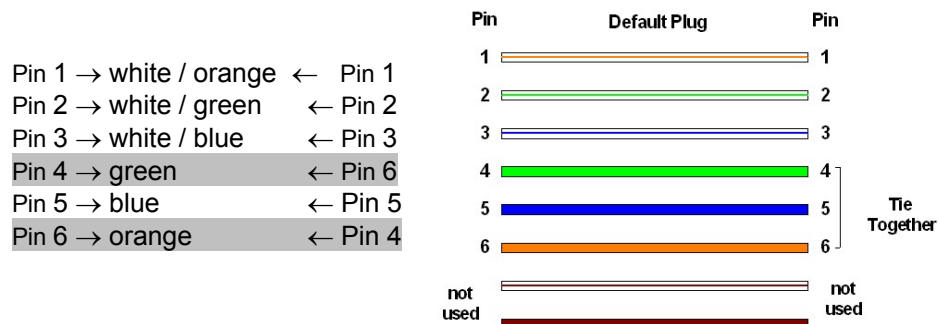


Figure 146: RJ-11 pinout for the override plug

### Using the Override Plug



#### IMPORTANT!

While the override plug is connected to a module, the module can neither register nor allow registration of another module.

To regain access to the module, perform the following steps.

**Procedure 37: Regaining access to a module**

1. Insert the override plug into the RJ-11 GPS utility port of the module.
2. Power cycle by removing, then re-inserting, the Ethernet cable.  
*RESULT:* The module boots with the default IP address of 169.254.1.1, password fields blank, and all other configuration values as previously set.
3. Wait approximately 30 seconds for the boot to complete.
4. Remove the override plug.
5. Set passwords and IP address as desired.
6. Change configuration values if desired.
7. Click the **Save Changes** button.
8. Click the **Reboot** button.

===== end of procedure =====

**22.3.3 Overriding Forgotten IP Addresses or Passwords on CMMmicro**

By using an override toggle switch on the CMMmicro circuit board, you can temporarily override a lost or unknown IP address or password as follows:

- Up is the override position in which a power cycle causes the CMMmicro to boot with the default IP address (169.254.1.1) and no password required.
- Down is the normal position in which a power cycle causes the CMMmicro to boot with your operator-set IP address and password(s).

To override a lost or unknown IP address or password, perform the following steps.

**Procedure 38: Using the override switch to regain access to CMMmicro****IMPORTANT!**

In override mode

- a CMMmicro provides no power on its ports.
- any APs or BHs connected to the CMMmicro are not powered.
- you cannot gain browser access to the CMMmicro through any connected APs or BHs.

1. Gain physical access to the inside of the CMMmicro enclosure.
2. Establish direct Ethernet connectivity to the CMMmicro (not through an AP or BH).
3. Flip the toggle switch up (toward you).
4. Power cycle the CMMmicro.  
*RESULT:* The module reboots with the default IP address of 169.254.1.1, password fields blank, and all other configuration values as previously set.
5. Set passwords as desired, or enter a blank space to set no password.
6. Change configuration values if desired.
7. Click the **Save Changes** button.

8. Flip the toggle switch down (away from you).
9. Click the **Reboot** button.

===== end of procedure =====

## 22.4 REQUIRING SM AUTHENTICATION

Through the use of Prizm Release 2.0 or later, or BAM Release 2.1, you can enhance network security by requiring SMs to authenticate when they register. Three keys and a random number are involved in authentication as follows:

- factory-set key in each SM. Neither the subscriber nor the network operator can view or change this key.
- authentication key, also known as authorization key and skey. This key matches in the SM and AP as the **Authentication Key** parameter, and in the Prizm database.
- random number, generated by Prizm or BAM and used in each attempt by an SM to register and authenticate. The network operator can view this number.
- session key, calculated separately by the SM and Prizm or BAM, based on both the authentication key (or, by default, the factory-set key) and the random number. Prizm or BAM sends the session key to the AP. The network operator cannot view this key.

None of the above keys is ever sent in an over-the-air link during an SM registration attempt. However, with the assumed security risk, the operator can create and configure the **Authentication Key** parameter. See [Authentication Key](#) on Page 288.

## 22.5 FILTERING PROTOCOLS AND PORTS

You can filter (block) specified protocols and ports from leaving the SM and entering the Canopy network. This protects the network from both intended and inadvertent packet loading or probing by network users. By keeping the specified protocols or ports off the network, this feature also provides a level of protection to users from each other.

Protocol and port filtering is set per SM. Except for filtering of SNMP ports, filtering occurs as packets leave the SM. If an SM is configured to filter SNMP, then SNMP packets are blocked from entering the SM and, thereby, from interacting with the SNMP portion of the protocol stack on the SM.

### 22.5.1 Port Filtering with NAT Enabled

Where NAT is enabled, you can filter only the three user-defined ports. The following are example situations in which you can configure port filtering where NAT is enabled.

- To block a subscriber from using FTP, you can filter Ports 20 and 21 (the FTP ports) for both the TCP and UDP protocols.
- To block a subscriber from access to SNMP, you can filter Ports 161 and 162 (the SNMP ports) for both the TCP and UDP protocols.

**NOTE:** In only the SNMP case, filtering occurs before the packet interacts with the protocol stack.

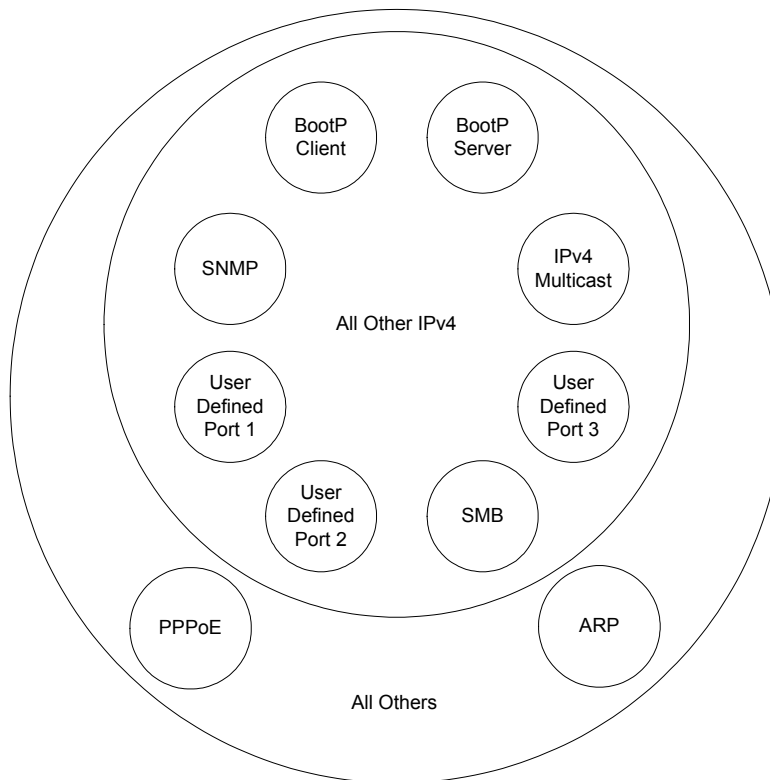
### 22.5.2 Protocol and Port Filtering with NAT Disabled

Where NAT is disabled, you can filter both protocols and the three user-defined ports. Using the check boxes on the interface, you can either

- allow all protocols except those that you wish to block.
- block all protocols except those that you wish to allow.

You can allow or block any of the following protocols:

- PPPoE (Point to Point Protocol over Ethernet)
- Any or all of the following IPv4 (Internet Protocol version 4) protocols:
  - SMB (Network Neighborhood)
  - SNMP
  - Up to 3 user-defined ports
  - All other IPv4 traffic (see [Figure 147](#))
- Uplink Broadcast
- ARP (Address Resolution Protocol)
- All others (see [Figure 147](#))



**Figure 147: Categorical protocol filtering**

The following are example situations in which you can configure protocol filtering where NAT is disabled:

- If you block a subscriber from only PPOE and SNMP, then the subscriber retains access to all other protocols and all ports.
- If you block PPOE, IPv4, and Uplink Broadcast, and you also check the **All others** selection, then only Address Resolution Protocol is not filtered.

The ports that are filtered as a result of protocol selections in the Protocol Filtering tab of the SM are listed in [Table 58](#). Further information is provided under [Protocol Filtering Tab of the SM](#) on Page [294](#).

**Table 58: Ports filtered per protocol selections**

Protocol Selected	Port Filtered (Blocked)
SMB	Destination Ports 137 TCP and UDP, 138 UDP, 139 TCP, 445 TCP
SNMP	Destination Ports 161 TCP and UDP, 162 TCP and UDP
Bootp Client	Source Port 68 UDP
Bootp Server	Source Port 67 UDP

## 22.6 ENCRYPTING DOWNLINK BROADCASTS

An AP can be enabled to encrypt downlink broadcast packets such as the following:

- ARP
- NetBIOS
- broadcast packets containing video data on UDP.

The encryption used is DES for a DES module, and AES for an AES module. Before the Encrypt Downlink Broadcast feature is enabled on the AP, air link security should be enabled on the AP.

## 22.7 ISOLATING SMs

In the Release 8 or later AP, you can prevent SMs in the sector from directly communicating with each other. In CMMmicro Release 2.2 or later, you can prevent connected APs from directly communicating with each other, which prevents SMs that are in different sectors of a cluster from communicating with each other.

In the AP, the **SM Isolation** parameter is available in the General tab of the Configuration web page. In the drop-down menu for that parameter, you can configure the SM Isolation feature by any of the following selections:

- **Disable SM Isolation** (the default selection). This allows full communication between SMs.
- **Block SM Packets from being forwarded**. This prevents both multicast/broadcast and unicast SM-to-SM communication.

- **Block and Forward SM Packets to Backbone.** This not only prevents multicast/broadcast and unicast SM-to-SM communication but also sends the packets, which otherwise would have been handled SM to SM, through the Ethernet port of the AP.

In the CMMmicro, SM isolation treatment is the result of how you choose to manage the port-based VLAN feature of the embedded switch, where you can switch all traffic from any AP or BH to an uplink port that you specify. However, this is not packet level switching. It is not based on VLAN IDs. See the **VLAN Port Configuration** parameter in [Figure 78: Configuration page of CMMmicro, example](#) on Page 227.

## 22.8 FILTERING MANAGEMENT THROUGH ETHERNET

You can configure the SM to disallow any device that is connected to its Ethernet port from accessing the IP address of the SM. If you set the **Ethernet Access Control** parameter to **Enabled**, then

- no attempt to access the SM management interface (by http, SNMP, telnet, ftp, or tftp) through Ethernet can succeed.
- any attempt to access the SM management interface over the air (by IP address, presuming that **LAN1 Network Interface Configuration, Network Accessibility** is set to **Public**, or by link from the Session Status or Remote Subscribers tab in the AP) is unaffected.

## 22.9 ALLOWING MANAGEMENT FROM ONLY SPECIFIED IP ADDRESSES

The Security tab of the Configuration web page in the AP, SM, and BH includes the **IP Access Control** parameter. You can specify one, two, or three IP addresses that should be allowed to access the management interface (by http, SNMP, telnet, ftp, or tftp).

If you select

- **IP Access Filtering Disabled**, then management access is allowed from any IP address, even if the **Allowed Source IP 1 to 3** parameters are populated.
- **IP Access Filtering Enabled**, and specify at least one address in the **Allowed Source IP 1 to 3** parameter, then management access is limited to the specified address(es). If you intend to use Prizm to manage the element, then you must ensure that the IP address of the Prizm server is listed here.

## 22.10 CONFIGURING MANAGEMENT IP BY DHCP

The IP tab in the Configuration web page of every Canopy radio contains a **LAN1 Network Interface Configuration, DHCP State** parameter that, if enabled, causes the IP configuration (IP address, subnet mask, and gateway IP address) to be obtained through DHCP instead of the values of those individual parameters. The setting of this DHCP state parameter is also viewable, but not settable, in the Network Interface tab of the Home page.

In the SM, this parameter is settable

- in the NAT tab of the Configuration web page, but only if NAT is enabled.
- in the IP tab of the Configuration web page, but only if the **Network Accessibility** parameter in the IP tab is set to **Public**.





## 23 MANAGING BANDWIDTH AND AUTHENTICATION

This section provides a high-level description of bandwidth and authentication management in a Canopy network. For more specific information, see *Canopy Bandwidth and Authentication Manager (BAM) User Guide* or the *Motorola Canopy Prizm User Guide*.

### 23.1 MANAGING BANDWIDTH WITHOUT BAM

Unless Prizm or BAM is deployed and is configured in the AP, bandwidth management is limited to applying a single sustained data rate value (for uplink and for downlink) and a single burst allocation value (for uplink and for downlink) to every SM that registers in the AP.

### 23.2 BANDWIDTH AND AUTHENTICATION MANAGER (BAM) SERVICES AND FEATURES

Prizm or BAM enables you to perform the following management operations on SMs:

- Change the key that the SMs need for authenticating.
- Temporarily suspend or reinstate a subscriber.
- Set burst size and data transfer rate caps for an SM or group of SMs.
- Use licensing to uncap an SM or group of SMs.
- List all ESNs that are associated with a specified VLAN ID.
- Associate or dissociate an SM or group of SMs with a specified VLAN ID.
- Set VLAN parameters.
- Toggle whether to send those VLAN parameters to the SMs.
- Set CIR parameters for low-priority and high-priority channel rates.
- Toggle whether to send those CIR parameters to the SMs.
- Toggle whether to enable the high-priority channel in the SMs.

#### 23.2.1 Bandwidth Manager Capability

Prizm or BAM allows you to set bandwidth per SM for sustained rates and burst rates. With this capability, the Canopy system allows both

- burst rates beyond those of many other broadband access solutions.
- control of average bandwidth allocation to prevent excessive bandwidth usage by a subscriber.

All packet throttling occurs in the SMs and APs based on Quality of Service (QoS) data that the Prizm or BAM server provides. No server processing power or network messages are needed for packet throttling.

QoS management also supports marketing of broadband connections at various data rates, for operator-defined groups of subscribers, and at various price points. This allows you to meet customer needs at a price that the customer deems reasonable and affordable.

When BAM is enabled in the AP Configuration page, bandwidth management is expanded to apply uniquely specified sustained data rate and burst allocation values to each registered SM. Thus, you can define differently priced tiers of subscriber service.

### Designing Tiered Subscriber Service Levels

Examples of levels of service that vary by bandwidth capability are provided in [Table 59](#) and [Table 60](#).



**NOTE:**

The speeds that these tables correlate to service levels are comparative examples. Actual download times may be greater due to use of the bandwidth by other SMs, congestion on the local network, congestion on the Internet, capacity of the serving computer, or other network limitations.

**Table 59: Example times to download for arbitrary tiers of service with Canopy AP**

<b>Equipment</b>	<b>AP</b>	<b>Canopy</b>		
	<b>SM</b>	<b>Canopy</b>		
	<b>Operation</b>	<b>1X</b>		
	<b>Max burst speed</b>	<b>4.4 Mbps</b>		
<b>Example Settings</b>	<b>Service Type</b>	Premium	Regular	Basic
	<b>Sustained Downlink Data Rate</b>	5250 Kbps	1000 Kbps	256 Kbps
	<b>Sustained Uplink Data Rate</b>	1750 Kbps	500 Kbps	128 Kbps
	<b>Downlink and Uplink Burst Allocations</b>	500000 Kb	80000 Kb	40000 Kb
<b>Download (sec)</b>	<b>Web page</b>	<1	<1	<1
	<b>5 MB</b>	9	9	9
	<b>20 MB</b>	36	80	470
	<b>50 MB</b>	91	320	1400
	<b>300 MB</b>	545	2320	9220

**Table 60: Example times to download for arbitrary tiers of service with Advantage AP**

Equipment	AP	Advantage						Advantage
	SM	Canopy						Advantage
	Operation	1X			2X			2X
	Max burst speed	5 Mbps			10 Mbps			10 Mbps
Example Settings	Service Type	Premium	Regular	Basic	Premium	Regular	Basic	Premium
	Sustained Downlink Data Rate	5250 Kbps	1000 Kbps	256 Kbps	5250 Kbps	1000 Kbps	256 Kbps	2000 Kbps
	Sustained Uplink Data Rate	1750 Kbps	500 Kbps	128 Kbps	1750 Kbps	500 Kbps	128 Kbps	20000 Kbps
	Downlink and Uplink Burst Allocations	500000 Kb	80000 Kb	40000 Kb	500000 Kb	80000 Kb	40000 Kb	500000 Kb
Download (sec)	Web page	<1	<1	<1	<1	<1	<1	<1
	5 MB	8	8	8	4	4	4	4
	20 MB	32	80	470	16	80	470	16
	50 MB	80	320	1400	40	320	1400	40
	300 MB	480	2320	9220	362	2320	9220	240

### 23.2.2 Authentication Manager Capability

Prizm or BAM allows you to set per AP a requirement that each SM registering to the AP must authenticate. When AP Authentication Server (APAS) is enabled in the AP, any SM that attempts to register to the AP is denied service if authentication fails, such as (but not limited to) when no Prizm or BAM server is operating or when the SM is not listed in the database.

If a Prizm or BAM server drops out of service where no redundant server exists

- an SM that attempts to register is denied service.
- an SM that is already in session remains in session

In a typical Canopy network, some SMs re-register daily (when subscribers power down the SMs, for example), and others do not re-register in a period of several weeks. Whenever an authentication attempt fails, the SM locks out of any other attempt to register itself to the same AP for the next 15 minutes.



## 24 MANAGING THE NETWORK FROM A MANAGEMENT STATION (NMS)

SNMPv2 (Simple Network Management Protocol Version 2) can be used to manage and monitor the Canopy modules under SMI (Structure of Management Information) specifications. SMI specifies management information definitions in ASN.1 (Abstract Syntax Notation One) language. SNMPv2 supports both 32-bit and 64-bit counters. The SMI for SNMPv2 is defined in RFC 1902 at <http://www.fags.org/rfcs/rfc1902.html>.

### 24.1 ROLES OF HARDWARE AND SOFTWARE ELEMENTS

#### 24.1.1 Role of the Agent

In SNMP, software on each managed device acts as the *agent*. The agent collects and stores management information in ASN.1 format, in a structure that a MIB (management information base) defines. The agent responds to commands to

- send information about the managed device.
- modify specific data on the managed device.

#### 24.1.2 Role of the Managed Device

In SNMP, the managed device is the network element that operates on the agent software. In the Canopy network, this managed device is the module (AP, SM, or BH). With the agent software, the managed device has the role of server in the context of network management.

#### 24.1.3 Role of the NMS

In SNMP, the NMS (network management station) has the role of client. An application (manager software) operates on the NMS to manage and monitor the modules in the network through interface with the agents.

#### 24.1.4 Dual Roles for the NMS

The NMS can simultaneously act as an agent. In such an implementation, the NMS acts as

- client to the agents in the modules, when polling for the agents for information and sending modification data to the agents.
- server to another NMS, when being polled for information gathered from the agents and receiving modification data to send to the agents.

#### 24.1.5 Simple Network Management Protocol (SNMP) Commands

To manage a module, SNMPv2 supports the `set` command, which instructs the agent to change the data that manages the module.

To monitor a network element (Canopy module), SNMPv2 supports

- the `get` command, which instructs the agent to send information about the module to the manager in the NMS.
- traversal operations, which the manager uses to identify supported objects and to format information about those objects into relational tables.

In a typical Canopy network, the manager issues these commands to the agents of more than one module (to all SMs in the operator network, for example).

#### 24.1.6 Traps from the Agent

When a specified event occurs in the module, the agent initiates a trap, for which the agent sends an unsolicited asynchronous message to the manager.

#### 24.1.7 AP SNMP Proxy to SMs

When the AP receives from Prizm or an NMS an SNMP request for an SM, it is capable of sending that request via proxy to the SM. In this case, the SM responds directly to Prizm or the NMS. (The AP performs no processing on the response.)

### 24.2 MANAGEMENT INFORMATION BASE (MIB)

The MIB, the SNMP-defined data structure, is a tree of standard branches that lead to optional, non-standard positions in the data hierarchy. The MIB contains both

- objects that SNMP is allowed to control (bandwidth allocation or access, for example)
- objects that SNMP is allowed to monitor (packet transfer, bit rate, and error data, for example).

The path to each object in the MIB is unique to the object. The endpoint of the path is the object identifier.

#### 24.2.1 Cascading Path to the MIB

The standard MIB hierarchy includes the following cascading branch structures:

- the top (standard body) level:
  - ccitt (0)
  - **iso (1)**
  - iso-ccitt (2)
- under iso (1) above:
  - standard (0)
  - registration-authority (1)
  - member-body (2)
  - **identified-organization (3)**
- under identified-organization (3) above:
  - dod (6)
  - other branches

- under dod (6) above:
    - internet (1)
    - other branches
  - under internet (1) above:
    - mgmt (2)
    - private (4)
    - other branches
  - under mgmt (2) above: **mib-2 (1)** and other branches. (See MIB-II below.)
- under private (4) above: **enterprise (1)** and other branches. (See Canopy Enterprise MIB below.)

Beneath this level are non-standard branches that the enterprise may define.

Thus, the path to an object that is managed under MIB-II begins with the decimal string **1.3.6.1.2.1** and ends with the object identifier and instance(s), and the path to an object that is managed under the Canopy Enterprise MIB begins with **1.3.6.1.4.1**, and ends with the object identifier and instance(s).

## 24.2.2 Object Instances

An object in the MIB can have either only a single instance or multiple instances, as follows:

- a scalar object has only a single instance. A reference to this instance is designated by . 0, following the object identifier.
- a tabular object has multiple instances that are related to each other. Tables in the MIB associate these instances. References to these instances typically are designated by . 1, . 2, and so forth, following the object identifier.

## 24.2.3 Management Information Base Systems and Interface (MIB-II)

The standard MIB-II (Management Information Base systems and interface) objects are programmed into the Canopy modules. To read this MIB, see *Management Information Base for Network Management of TCP/IP-based Internets: MIB II*, RFC 1213 at <http://www.faqs.org/rfcs/rfc1213.html>.

The MIB-II standard categorizes each object as one of the types defined in [Table 61](#).

**Table 61: Categories of MIB-II objects**

Objects in category...	Control or identify the status of...
system	system operations in the module.
interfaces	the network interfaces for which the module is configured.
ip	Internet Protocol information in the module.
icmp	Internet Control Message Protocol information in the module. (These messages flag IP problems and allow IP links to be tested.)

Objects in category...	Control or identify the status of...
tcp	Transport Control Protocol information in the module (to control and ensure the flow of data on the Internet).
udp	User Datagram Protocol information in the module (for checksum and address).

#### 24.2.4 Canopy Enterprise MIB

The Canopy Enterprise MIB provides additional reporting and control, extending the objects for any NMS that uses SNMP interaction. This MIB comprises five text files that are formatted in standard ASN.1 (Abstract Syntax Notation One) language.

To use this MIB, perform the following steps.

##### Procedure 39: Installing the Canopy Enterprise MIB files

1. On the NMS, immediately beneath the `root` directory, create directory `mibviewer`.
2. Immediately beneath the `mibviewer` directory, create directory `canopymibs`.
3. Download the following three standard MIB files from the Internet Engineering Task Force at <http://www.simpleweb.org/ietf/mibs> into the `mibviewer/canopymibs` directory on the NMS:
  - `SNMPv2-SMI.txt`, which defines the Structure of Management Information specifications.
  - `SNMPv2-CONF.txt`, which allows macros to be defined for object group, notification group, module compliance, and agent capabilities.
  - `SNMPv2-TC.txt`, which defines general textual conventions.
4. Move the following five files from your Canopy software package directory into the `mibviewer/canopymibs` directory on the NMS (if necessary, first download the software package from <http://www.motorola.com/canopy>):
  - `whisp-tcv2-mib.txt` (Textual Conventions MIB), which defines Canopy system-specific textual conventions
  - `WHISP-GLOBAL-REG-MIB.txt` (Registrations MIB), which defines registrations for global items such as product identities and product components.
  - `WHISP-BOX-MIBV2-MIB.txt` (Box MIB), which defines module-level (AP, SM, and BH) objects.
  - `WHISP-APS-MIB.txt` (APs MIB), which defines objects that are specific to the AP or BH timing master.
  - `WHISP-SM-MIB.txt` (SM MIB), which defines objects that are specific to the SM or BH timing slave.
  - `CMM3-MIB.txt` (CMM3 MIB), which defines objects that are specific to the CMMmicro.



**IMPORTANT!**

Do not edit these MIB files in ASN.1. These files are intended for manipulation by only the NMS. However, you can view these files through a commercially available MIB viewer. Such viewers are listed under [MIB Viewers](#) on Page 413.

5. Download a selected MIB viewer into directory *mibviewer*.
6. As instructed by the user documentation that supports your NMS, import the eight MIB files that are listed above.

===== end of procedure =====

### 24.3 CONFIGURING MODULES FOR SNMP ACCESS

Canopy modules provide the following Configuration web page parameters in the SNMP tab. These govern SNMP access from the manager to the agent:

- **Community String**, which specifies the password for security between managers and the agent.
- **Accessing Subnet**, which specifies the subnet mask that allows managers to poll the agents.

Canopy modules can also be configured to send traps to specified IP addresses, which can be those of Prizm or NMS servers, for example. The parameter for this address is named **Trap Address**.

### 24.4 OBJECTS DEFINED IN THE CANOPY ENTERPRISE MIB

The Canopy Enterprise MIB defines separate sets of objects for

- all radio modules
- APs and BH timing masters
- SMs and BH timing slaves
- CMMmicros

**NOTE:**

The OFDM Series BHs do not support these objects. The MIBs that they support are listed under [Objects Defined in the Canopy OFDM BH Module MIB](#) on Page 410.

### 24.4.1 AP, SM, and BH Objects

The objects that the Canopy Enterprise MIB defines for all APs, SMs, and BHs are listed in [Table 62](#).

**Table 62: Canopy Enterprise MIB objects for APs, SMs, and BHs**

AP, SM, BH Object Name	Value Syntax	Operation Allowed
addVlanMember	Integer	manage
agingTimeout	Integer	manage
allowVIDAccess	Integer	manage
antennaGain <sup>1</sup>	Integer	manage
bridgeEnable	Integer	manage
clearEventLog	Integer	manage
codePoint <i>n</i> <sup>2</sup>	Integer	manage
commString	DisplayString	manage
deleteUser	DisplayString	manage
dynamicLearning	Integer	manage
eirp <sup>3</sup>	Integer	manage
extFilterDelay	Integer	manage
fecEnable	Integer	manage
lanDhcpState	Integer	manage
managementVID	Integer	manage
mngtIP	IpAddress	manage
powerControl	Integer	manage
reboot	Integer	manage
removeVlanMember	Integer	manage
scheduling	Integer	manage
sessionTimeout	Integer	manage
setDefaultPlug	Integer	manage
subnetMask	Integer	manage
taggedFrame <sup>4</sup>	Integer	manage
transmitterOP	Integer	manage
trapIP <i>n</i> <sup>5</sup>	IpAddress	manage
twoXRate	Integer	manage
userAccessLevel	Integer	manage
userName	DisplayString	manage
userPassword	DisplayString	manage

AP, SM, BH Object Name	Value Syntax	Operation Allowed
vlanMemberSource	Integer	manage
accessLevel	Integer	monitor
boxDeviceType	DisplayString	monitor
boxDeviceTypeID	DisplayString	monitor
boxEncryption	DisplayString	monitor
boxFrequency	DisplayString	monitor
boxTemperature <sup>6</sup>	DisplayString	monitor
dhcpLanIP	IpAddress	monitor
dhcpLanGateway	IpAddress	monitor
dhcpLanSubnetMask	IpAddress	monitor
dhcpRfPublicIP	IpAddress	monitor
dhcpRfPublicGateway	IpAddress	monitor
dhcpRfPublicSubnetMask	IpAddress	monitor
etherLinkStatus	DisplayString	monitor
inSyncCount	Integer	monitor
lanDhcpStatus	DisplayString	monitor
outSyncCount	Integer	monitor
platformType	Integer	monitor
platformVer	Integer	monitor
pllOutLockCount	Integer	monitor
rfPublicDhcpStatus	DisplayString	monitor
txCalFailure	Integer	monitor
userLoginName	DisplayString	monitor
userPswd	DisplayString	monitor
whispBoxBoot	DisplayString	monitor
whispBoxEsn	WhispMACAddress	monitor
whispBoxEvtLog	EventString	monitor
whispBoxFPGAVer	DisplayString	monitor
whispBridgeAge	Integer	monitor
whispBridgeDesLuid	WhispLUID	monitor
whispBridgeExt	Integer	monitor
whispBridgeHash	Integer	monitor
whispBridgeMacAddr	MacAddress	monitor
whispBridgeTbErr	Integer	monitor

AP, SM, BH Object Name	Value Syntax	Operation Allowed
whispBridgeTbFree	Integer	monitor
whispBridgeTbUsed	Integer	monitor
whispVAge	Integer	monitor
whispVID	Integer	monitor
whispVType	DisplayString	monitor
<b>NOTES:</b> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>For only 5.7-GHz radios.</li> <li>Where <i>n</i> is any number, 0 through 63. codePoint0, codePoint48, and codePoint56 can be only monitored.</li> <li>Deprecated.</li> <li>Replaced by frameType.</li> <li>Where <i>n</i> is any number, 1 through 10.</li> <li>The value of this object <i>does not</i> accurately reflect the temperature inside the module for comparison with the operating range. However, it can be helpful as one of many troubleshooting indicators. Although modules no longer report the Temperature field in the GUI, the agent in the modules continues to support this object.</li> </ol>		

#### 24.4.2 AP and BH Timing Master Objects

The objects that the Canopy Enterprise MIB defines for each AP and BH Timing Master are listed in [Table 63](#). The traps provided in this set of objects are listed under [Traps Provided in the Canopy Enterprise MIB](#) on [Page 412](#).

**Table 63: Canopy Enterprise MIB objects for APs and BH timing masters**

AP, BHM Object Name	Value Syntax	Operation Allowed
allowedIPAccess1	IpAddress	manage
allowedIPAccess2	IpAddress	manage
allowedIPAccess3	IpAddress	manage
apBeaconInfo	Integer	manage
apTwoXRate	Integer	manage
asIP1	IpAddress	manage
asIP2	IpAddress	manage
asIP3	IpAddress	manage
authKey	DisplayString	manage
authMode	Integer	manage
configSource	Integer	manage
dAcksReservHigh	Integer	manage

AP, BHM Object Name	Value Syntax	Operation Allowed
defaultGw	IpAddress	manage
dfsConfig	Integer	manage
dwnLnkData	Integer	manage
dwnLnkDataRate	Integer	manage
dwnLnkLimit	Integer	manage
encryptDwBroadcast	Integer	manage
encryptionMode	Integer	manage
gpsInput	Integer	manage
gpsTrap	Integer	manage
highPriorityUpLnkPct	Integer	manage
ipAccessFilterEnable	Integer	manage
lanIp	IpAddress	manage
lanMask	IpAddress	manage
limitFreqBand900	Integer	manage
linkTestAction <sup>1</sup>	Integer	manage
linkTestDuration	Integer	manage
linkTestLUID	Integer	manage
maxRange	Integer	manage
ntpServerIP	IpAddress	manage
numCtlSlots	Integer	manage
numCtlSlotsHW	Integer	manage
numCtlSlotsReserveHigh	Integer	manage
numDAckSlots	Integer	manage
numUAckSlots	Integer	manage
privatelp	IpAddress	manage
regTrap	Integer	manage
rfFreqCarrier	Integer	manage
sectorID	Integer	manage
sesHiDownCIR	Integer	manage
sesHiUpCIR	Integer	manage
sesLoDownCIR	Integer	manage
sesHiDownCIR	Integer	manage
smlIsolation	Integer	manage
tslBridging	Integer	manage

AP, BHM Object Name	Value Syntax	Operation Allowed
txSpreading	Integer	manage
uAcksReservHigh	Integer	manage
untranslatedArp	Integer	manage
updateAppAddress	IpAddress	manage
upLnkDataRate	Integer	manage
upLnkLimit	Integer	manage
vlanEnable	Integer	manage
actDwnFragCount	Gauge32	monitor
actDwnLinkIndex	Integer	monitor
actUpFragCount	Gauge32	monitor
adaptRate	DisplayString	monitor
avgPowerLevel	DisplayString	monitor
dataSlotDwn	Integer	monitor
dataSlotUp	Integer	monitor
dataSlotUpHi	Integer	monitor
dfsStatus	DisplayString	monitor
downLinkEff	Integer	monitor
downLinkRate	Integer	monitor
dwnLnkAckSlot	Integer	monitor
dwnLnkAckSlotHi	Integer	monitor
expDwnFragCount	Gauge32	monitor
expUpFragCount	Gauge32	monitor
fpgaVersion	DisplayString	monitor
gpsStatus	DisplayString	monitor
lastPowerLevel	DisplayString	monitor
linkAirDelay	Integer	monitor
linkAveJitter	Integer	monitor
linkDescr	DisplayString	monitor
linkESN	PhysAddress	monitor
linkInDiscards	Counter32	monitor
linkInError	Counter32	monitor
linkInNUcastPkts	Counter32	monitor
linkInOctets	Counter32	monitor
linkInUcastPkts	Counter32	monitor

AP, BHM Object Name	Value Syntax	Operation Allowed
linkInUnknownProtos	Counter32	monitor
linkLastJitter	Integer	monitor
linkLastRSSI	Integer	monitor
linkLUID	Integer	monitor
linkMtu	Integer	monitor
linkOutDiscards	Counter32	monitor
linkOutError	Counter32	monitor
linkOutNUcastPkts	Counter32	monitor
linkOutOctets	Counter32	monitor
linkOutQLen	Gauge32	monitor
linkOutUcastPkts	Counter32	monitor
linkRegCount	Integer	monitor
linkReRegCount	Integer	monitor
linkRSSI	Integer	monitor
linkSessState	Integer	monitor
linkSiteName	DisplayString	monitor
linkSpeed	Gauge32	monitor
linkTestError	DisplayString	monitor
linkTestStatus	DisplayString	monitor
linkTimeOut	Integer	monitor
maxDwnLinkIndex	Integer	monitor
numCtrSlot	Integer	monitor
numCtrSlotHi	Integer	monitor
PhysAddress	PhysAddress	monitor
radioSlicing	Integer	monitor
radioTxGain	Integer	monitor
regCount	Integer	monitor
sesDownlinkLimit	Integer	monitor
sesDownlinkRate	Integer	monitor
sesUplinkLimit	Integer	monitor
sesUplinkRate	Integer	monitor
sessionCount	Integer	monitor
softwareBootVersion	DisplayString	monitor
softwareVersion	DisplayString	monitor

AP, BHM Object Name	Value Syntax	Operation Allowed
testDuration	Integer	monitor
testLUID	Integer	monitor
upLinkEff	Integer	monitor
upLinkRate	Integer	monitor
upLnkAckSlot	Integer	monitor
upLnkAckSlotHi	Integer	monitor
whispGPSSStats	Integer	monitor
<b>NOTES:</b> 1. You can set to 1 to initiate a link test, but not 0 to stop. The value 0 is only an indication of the idle link test state.		

### 24.4.3 SM and BH Timing Slave Objects

The objects that the Canopy Enterprise MIB defines for each SM and BH Timing Slave are listed in [Table 64](#).

**Table 64: Canopy Enterprise MIB objects for SMs and BH timing slaves**

SM, BHS Object Name	Value Syntax	Operation Allowed
allOtherIPFilter	Integer	manage
allOthersFilter	Integer	manage
allowedIPAccess1	IpAddress	manage
allowedIPAccess2	IpAddress	manage
allowedIPAccess3	IpAddress	manage
alternateDNSIP	IpAddress	manage
arpCacheTimeout	Integer	manage
arpFilter	Integer	manage
authKey	DisplayString	manage
authKeyOption	Integer	manage
bootpcFilter	Integer	manage
bootpsFilter	Integer	manage
defaultGw	IpAddress	manage
dhcpClientEnable	Integer	manage
dhcpIPStart	IpAddress	manage
dhcpNumIPsToLease	Integer	manage
dhcpServerEnable	Integer	manage
dhcpServerLeaseTime	Integer	manage



SM, BHS Object Name	Value Syntax	Operation Allowed
dmzEnable	Integer	manage
dmzIP	IpAddress	manage
dnsAutomatic	Integer	manage
enable8023link	Integer	manage
ethAccessFilterEnable	Integer	manage
hiPriorityChannel	Integer	manage
hiPriorityDownlinkCIR	Integer	manage
hiPriorityUplinkCIR	Integer	manage
ingressVID	Integer	manage
ip4MultFilter	Integer	manage
ipAccessFilterEnable	Integer	manage
lanIp	IpAddress	manage
lanMask	IpAddress	manage
localIP	IpAddress	manage
lowPriorityDownlinkCIR	Integer	manage
lowPriorityUplinkCIR	Integer	manage
napEnable	Integer	manage
napPrivateIP	IpAddress	manage
napPrivateSubnetMask	IpAddress	manage
napPublicGatewayIP	IpAddress	manage
napPublicIP	IpAddress	manage
napPublicSubnetMask	IpAddress	manage
napRFPublicGateway	IpAddress	manage
napRFPublicIP	IpAddress	manage
napRFPublicSubnetMask	IpAddress	manage
networkAccess	Integer	manage
port	Integer	manage
port1TCPFilter	Integer	manage
port2TCPFilter	Integer	manage
port3TCPFilter	Integer	manage
port1UDPFilter	Integer	manage
port2UDPFilter	Integer	manage
port3UDPFilter	Integer	manage
powerUpMode	Integer	manage

SM, BHS Object Name	Value Syntax	Operation Allowed
pppoeFilter	Integer	manage
preferredDNSIP	IpAddress	manage
protocol	Integer	manage
radioDbmInt	Integer	manage
rfDhcpState	Integer	manage
rfScanList	DisplayString	manage
smbFilter	Integer	manage
snmpFilter	Integer	manage
tcpGarbageCollectTmout	Integer	manage
timingPulseGated	Integer	manage
twoXRate	Integer	manage
udpGarbageCollectTmout	Integer	manage
uplinkBCastFilter	Integer	manage
userDefinedPort1	Integer	manage
userDefinedPort2	Integer	manage
userDefinedPort3	Integer	manage
userP1Filter	Integer	manage
userP2Filter	Integer	manage
userP3Filter	Integer	manage
adaptRate	DisplayString	monitor
airDelay	Integer	monitor
calibrationStatus	DisplayString	monitor
dhcpcdns1	IpAddress	monitor
dhcpcdns2	IpAddress	monitor
dhcpcdns3	IpAddress	monitor
dhcpCip	IpAddress	monitor
dhcpClientLease	TimeTicks	monitor
dhcpCSMask	IpAddress	monitor
dhcpDfltRterIP	IpAddress	monitor
dhcpDomName	DisplayString	monitor
dhcpServerTable	DhcpServerEntry	monitor
dhcpSip	IpAddress	monitor
hostIp	IpAddress	monitor
hostLease	TimeTicks	monitor

SM, BHS Object Name	Value Syntax	Operation Allowed
hostMacAddress	PhysAddress	monitor
jitter	Integer	monitor
radioDbm	DisplayString	monitor
radioSlicing	Integer	monitor
radioTxGain	Integer	monitor
registeredToAp	DisplayString	monitor
rsi	Integer	monitor
sessionStatus	DisplayString	monitor

#### 24.4.4 CMMmicro Objects

The objects that the Canopy Enterprise MIB defines for each CMMmicro are listed in [Table 65](#).

**Table 65: Canopy Enterprise MIB objects for CMMmicros**

CMMmicro Object Name	Value Syntax	Operation Allowed
clearEventLog	Integer	manage
defaultGateWay	IpAddress	manage
displayOnlyAccess	DisplayString	manage
fullAccess	DisplayString	manage
gpsTimingPulse	Integer	manage
lan1Ip	IpAddress	manage
lan1SubnetMask	IpAddress	manage
port1Config	Integer	manage
port1Description	DisplayString	manage
port1PowerCtr	Integer	manage
port2Config	Integer	manage
port2Description	DisplayString	manage
port2PowerCtr	Integer	manage
port3Config	Integer	manage
port3Description	DisplayString	manage
port3PowerCtr	Integer	manage
port4Config	Integer	manage
port4Description	DisplayString	manage
port4PowerCtr	Integer	manage

<b>CMMmicro Object Name</b>	<b>Value Syntax</b>	<b>Operation Allowed</b>
port5Config	Integer	manage
port5Description	DisplayString	manage
port5PowerCtr	Integer	manage
port6Config	Integer	manage
port6Description	DisplayString	manage
port6PowerCtr	Integer	manage
port7Config	Integer	manage
port7Description	DisplayString	manage
port7PowerCtr	Integer	manage
port8Config	Integer	manage
port8Description	DisplayString	manage
port8PowerCtr	Integer	manage
reboot	Integer	manage
webAutoUpdate	Integer	manage
deviceType	DisplayString	monitor
displayOnlyStatus	DisplayString	monitor
duplexStatus	Integer	monitor
eventLog	EventString	monitor
fullAccessStatus	DisplayString	monitor
gpsAntennaConnection	DisplayString	monitor
gpsDate	DisplayString	monitor
gpsHeight	DisplayString	monitor
gpsInvalidMsg	DisplayString	monitor
gpsLatitude	DisplayString	monitor
gpsLongitude	DisplayString	monitor
gpsReceiverInfo	DisplayString	monitor
gpsRestartCount	Integer	monitor
gpsSatellitesTracked	DisplayString	monitor
gpsSatellitesVisible	DisplayString	monitor
gpsTime	DisplayString	monitor
gpsTrackingMode	DisplayString	monitor
height	DisplayString	monitor
latitude	DisplayString	monitor
linkSpeed	Integer	monitor

<b>CMMmicro Object Name</b>	<b>Value Syntax</b>	<b>Operation Allowed</b>
linkStatus	Integer	monitor
longitude	DisplayString	monitor
macAddress	DisplayString	monitor
pkts1024to1522Octets	Counter32	monitor
pkts128to255Octets	Counter32	monitor
pkts256to511Octets	Counter32	monitor
pkts512to1023Octets	Counter32	monitor
pkts64Octets	Counter32	monitor
pkts65to127Octets	Counter32	monitor
pldVersion	DisplayString	monitor
portIndex	Integer	monitor
portNumber	Integer	monitor
powerStatus	Integer	monitor
rxAlignmentErrors	Counter32	monitor
rxBroadcastPkts	Counter32	monitor
rxDropPkts	Counter32	monitor
rxExcessSizeDisc	Counter32	monitor
rxFCSErrors	Counter32	monitor
rxFragments	Counter32	monitor
rxGoodOctets	Counter64	monitor
rxJabbers	Counter32	monitor
rxMulticastPkts	Counter32	monitor
rxOctets	Counter64	monitor
rxOversizePkts	Counter32	monitor
rxPausePkts	Counter32	monitor
rxSACHanges	Counter32	monitor
rxSymbolErrors	Counter32	monitor
rxUndersizePkts	Counter32	monitor
rxUnicastPkts	Counter32	monitor
satellitesTracked	DisplayString	monitor
satellitesVisible	DisplayString	monitor
softwareVersion	DisplayString	monitor
syncStatus	DisplayString	monitor
systemTime	DisplayString	monitor

<b>CMMmicro Object Name</b>	<b>Value Syntax</b>	<b>Operation Allowed</b>
trackingMode	DisplayString	monitor
txBroadcastPkts	Counter32	monitor
txCollisions	Counter32	monitor
txDeferredTransmit	Counter32	monitor
txDropPkts	Counter32	monitor
txExcessiveCollision	Counter32	monitor
txFrameInDisc	Counter32	monitor
txLateCollision	Counter32	monitor
txMulticastPkts	Counter32	monitor
txMultipleCollision	Counter32	monitor
txOctets	Counter64	monitor
txPausePkts	Counter32	monitor
txSingleCollision	Counter32	monitor
txUnicastPkts	Counter32	monitor
upTime	DisplayString	monitor

## 24.5 OBJECTS DEFINED IN THE CANOPY OFDM BH MODULE MIB

The objects that the Canopy OFDM BH module MIB defines are listed in [Table 67](#).

**Table 66: Canopy OFDM BH module MIB objects**

<b>Object Name</b>	<b>Value Syntax</b>	<b>Operation Allowed</b>
iPAddress	IpAddress	manage
subnetMask	IpAddress	manage
gatewayIpAddress	IpAddress	manage
targetMACAddress <sup>1</sup>	DisplayString	manage
masterSlaveMode	Integer	manage
maximumTransmitPower	Integer	manage
receivePower <sup>2</sup>	Integer	manage
vectorError <sup>2</sup>	Integer	manage
transmitPower <sup>2</sup>	Integer	manage
range	Integer	manage
linkLoss <sup>2</sup>	Integer	manage
receiveChannel	Integer	manage
transmitChannel	Integer	manage

Object Name	Value Syntax	Operation Allowed
receiveModulationMode	Integer	manage
transmitModulationMode	Integer	manage
receiveSnr <sup>2</sup>	Integer	manage
systemReset	Integer	monitor
softwareVersion	DisplayString	monitor
hardwareVersion	DisplayString	monitor
<b>NOTES:</b> 1. Of the other BH in the link. 2. <i>max, mean, min, last</i> during the past hour.		

## 24.6 OBJECTS SUPPORTED IN THE CANOPY 30/60-Mbps BH

The 30/60-Mbps BH supports the following MIBs:

- MIB II, RFC 1213, System Group
- MIB II, RFC 1213, Interfaces Group
- WiMAX 802.16 WMAN-IF-MIB
- Bridge MIB, RFC 1493, dot1dBaseGroup
- Bridge MIB, RFC 1493, dot1dBasePortTableGroup
- 30/60-Mbps Backhaul Canopy proprietary MIB

## 24.7 OBJECTS SUPPORTED IN THE CANOPY 150/300-Mbps BH

The 150/300-Mbps BH supports the following MIBs:

- MIB II, RFC 1213, System Group
- MIB II, RFC 1213, Interfaces Group
- WiMAX 802.16 WMAN-IF-MIB
- Bridge MIB, RFC 1493, dot1dBaseGroup
- Bridge MIB, RFC 1493, dot1dBasePortTableGroup
- High-capacity counter MIB, RFC 2233
- 150/300-Mbps Backhaul Canopy proprietary MIB

## 24.8 INTERFACE DESIGNATIONS IN SNMP

SNMP identifies the ports of the module as follows:

- Interface 1 represents the Ethernet interface of the module. To monitor the status of Interface 1 is to monitor the traffic on the Ethernet interface.
- Interface 2 represents the RF interface of the module. To monitor the status of Interface 2 is to monitor the traffic on the RF interface.

These interfaces can be viewed on the NMS through definitions that are provided in the standard MIB files.

## 24.9 TRAPS PROVIDED IN THE CANOPY ENTERPRISE MIB

Canopy modules provide the following SNMP traps for automatic notifications to the NMS:

- `whispGPSInSync`, which signals a transition from not synchronized to synchronized.
- `whispGPSOutSync`, which signals a transition from synchronized to not synchronized.
- `whispRegComplete`, which signals registration completed.
- `whispRegLost`, which signals registration lost.
- `whispRadarDetected`, which signals that the one-minute scan has been completed, radar has been detected, and the radio will shutdown.
- `whispRadarEnd`, which signals that the one-minute scan has been completed, radar *has not* been detected, and the radio will resume normal operation.



**NOTE:**

The OFDM Series BHs do not support the traps listed above.

## 24.10 TRAPS PROVIDED IN THE CANOPY 30/60-Mbps BH MODULE MIB

Canopy 30/60-Mbps BH modules provide the following SNMP traps for automatic notifications to the NMS:

- `coldStart`
- `linkUp`
- `linkDown`
- `dfsChannelChange`, which signals that the channel has changed.
- `dfsImpulsiveInterferenceDetected`, which signals that impulsive interference has been detected.

## 24.11 TRAPS PROVIDED IN THE CANOPY 150/300-Mbps BH MODULE MIB

Canopy 150/300-Mbps BH modules provide the following SNMP traps for automatic notifications to the NMS:

- `coldStart`
- `linkUp`
- `linkDown`



- dfsChannelChange, which signals that the channel has changed.
- dfsImpulsiveInterferenceDetected, which signals that impulsive interference has been detected.

## 24.12 MIB VIEWERS

Any of several commercially available MIB viewers can facilitate management of these objects through SNMP. Some are available as open source software. The Canopy division does not endorse, support, or discourage the use of any these viewers.

To assist end users in this area, Canopy offers a starter guide for one of these viewers—MRTG (Multi Router Traffic Grapher). This starter guide is titled *Canopy Network Management with MRTG: Application Note*, and is available in the Document Library section under Support at <http://www.motorola.com/canopy>. MRTG software is available at <http://mrtg.hdl.com/mrtg.html>.

Other MIB viewers are available and/or described at the following web sites:

<http://ns3.ndgsoftware.com/Products/NetBoy30/mibbrowser.html>

<http://www.adventnet.com/products/snmputilities/>

<http://www.dart.com/samples/mib.asp>

<http://www.edge-technologies.com/webFiles/products/nvision/index.cfm>

<http://www.ipswitch.com/products/whatsup/monitoring.html>

<http://www.koshna.com/products/KMB/index.asp>

<http://www.mg-soft.si/mgMibBrowserPE.html>

<http://www.mibexplorer.com>

<http://www.netmechanica.com/mibbrowser.html>

<http://www.networkview.com>

<http://www.newfreeware.com/search.php3?q=MIB+browser>

<http://www.nudesignteam.com/walker.html>

<http://www.oidview.com/oidview.html>

<http://www.solarwinds.net/Tools>

<http://www.stargus.com/solutions/xray.html>

<http://www.totilities.com/Products/MibSurfer/MibSurfer.htm>



## 25 USING THE CANOPY NETWORK UPDATER TOOL (CNUT)

The Canopy Network Updater Tool manages and automates the software and firmware upgrade process for Canopy radio and CMMmicro modules across the network. This eliminates the need for an administrator to visit each radio in the network (or each AP while using the Autoupdate feature) to upgrade the modules.

### 25.1 CNUT FUNCTIONS

The Canopy Network Updater Tool

- automatically discovers all Canopy network elements
- executes a UDP command that initiates and terminates the Autoupdate mode within APs. This command is both secure and convenient:
  - For security, the AP accepts this command from only the IP address that you specify in the Configuration page of the AP.
  - For convenience, Network Updater automatically sets this Configuration parameter in the APs to the IP address of the Network Updater server when the server performs any of the update commands.
- allows you to choose among updating
  - your entire network.
  - only elements that you select.
  - only network branches that you select.
- provides a Script Engine that you can use with any script that
  - you define.
  - Canopy supplies.

### 25.2 NETWORK ELEMENT GROUPS

With the Canopy Network Updater Tool, you can identify element groups composed of network elements that you select. Identifying these element groups

- organizes the display of elements (for example, by region or by AP cluster).
- allows you to
  - perform an operation on all elements in the group simultaneously.
  - set group-level defaults for telnet or ftp password access and SNMP Community String (defaults that can be overridden in an individual element when necessary).

### 25.3 NETWORK LAYERS

A typical Canopy network contains multiple layers of elements, each layer lying farther from the Point of Presence. For example, SMs are behind an AP and thus, in this context, at a lower layer than the AP. Correctly portraying these layers in Network Updater is essential so that Network Updater can perform radio and AP cluster upgrades in an appropriate order.

**IMPORTANT!**

Correct layer information ensures that Network Updater does not command an AP that is behind another AP/SM pair (such as in a remote AP installation) to perform an upgrade at the same time as the SM that is feeding the AP. If this occurs, then the remote AP loses network connection during the upgrade (when the SM in front of the AP completes its upgrade and reboots).

## 25.4 SCRIPT ENGINE

Script Engine is the capability in Network Updater that executes any user-defined script against any network element or element group. This capability is useful for network management, especially for scripts that you repetitively execute across your network.

The Autodiscovery capability in Network Updater finds all of your Canopy network elements. This comprehensive discovery

- ensures that, when you intend to execute a script against *all* elements, the script is indeed executed against *all* elements.
- maintains master lists of elements (element groups) against which you selectively execute scripts.

The following scripts are included with CNUT:

- AP Data Import from BAM
- AP Data Export to BAM
- Set Autoupdate Address on APs
- Set SNMP Accessibility
- Reset Unit

## 25.5 SOFTWARE DEPENDENCIES FOR CNUT

CNUT functionality requires

- one of the following operating systems
  - Windows® 2000
  - Windows XP
  - Red Hat Linux 9
  - Red Hat Enterprise Linux Version 3
- Java™ Runtime Version 1.4.2 or later
- Perl 5.8.0 or ActivePerl 5.8.3 software or later

## 25.6 CNUT DOWNLOAD

CNUT can be downloaded together with each Canopy system release that supports CNUT. Software for these Canopy system releases is packaged on the Canopy Support web page as either

- a `.zip` file for use without the CNUT application.
- a `.pkg` file that the CNUT application can open.

## 26 USING INFORMATIONAL TABS IN THE GUI

### 26.1 VIEWING GENERAL STATUS (ALL)

See

- [General Status Tab of the AP](#) on Page 204.
- [General Status Tab of the SM](#) on Page 200.
- [General Status Tab of the BHM](#) on Page 216.
- [Beginning the Test of Point-to-Point Links](#) on Page 213.

### 26.2 VIEWING SESSION STATUS (AP, BHM)

The Session Status tab in the Home page provides information about each SM that has registered to the AP. This information is useful for managing and troubleshooting a Canopy system. This tab also includes the current active values on each SM for MIR, CIR, and VLAN, as well as the source of these values, representing the SM itself, BAM, or the AP and cap.

An example of the Session Status tab is displayed in [Figure 148](#).

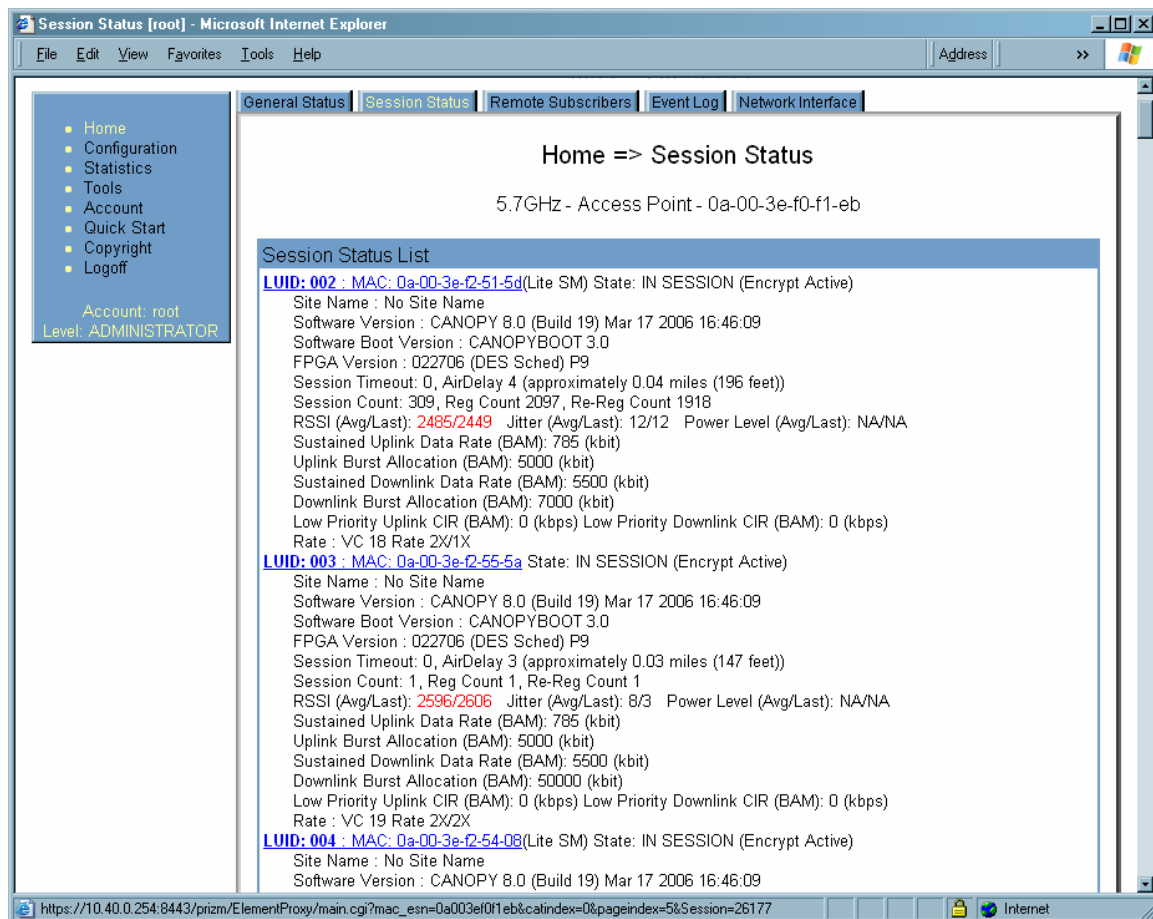


Figure 148: Session Status tab data, example

An additional example and explanations of the fields on this tab are provided in [Session Status Tab of the AP](#) on Page 195.

## 26.3 VIEWING REMOTE SUBSCRIBERS (AP, BHM)

See

- [Remote Subscribers Tab of the AP](#) on Page 199.
- [Continuing the Test of Point-to-Point Links](#) on Page 215.

## 26.4 INTERPRETING MESSAGES IN THE EVENT LOG (ALL)

Each line in the Event Log of a module Home page begins with a time and date stamp. However, some of these lines wrap as a combined result of window width, browser preferences, and line length. You may find this tab easiest to use if you widen the window until all lines are shown as beginning with the time and date stamp.

### 26.4.1 Time and Date Stamp

The time and date stamp reflect either

- GPS time and date directly or indirectly received from the CMM.
- the running time and date that you have set in the Time & Date web page.



#### NOTE:

In the Time & Date web page, if you have left any time field or date field unset and clicked the **Set Time and Date** button, then the time and date default to 00:00:00 UT : 01/01/00.

A reboot causes the preset time to pause or, in some cases, to run in reverse. Additionally, a power cycle resets the running time and date to the default 00:00:00 UT : 01/01/00. Thus, whenever either a reboot or a power cycle has occurred, you should reset the time and date in the Time & Date web page of any module that is not set to receive sync.

### 26.4.2 Event Log Data Collection

The collection of event data continues through reboots and power cycles. When the buffer allowance for event log data is reached, the system adds new data into the log and discards an identical amount of the oldest data.

Each line that contains the expression WatchDog flags an event that was both

- considered by the system software to have been an exception
- recorded in the *preceding* line.

Conversely, a Fatal Error() message flags an event that is recorded in the *next* line. Some exceptions and fatal errors may be significant and require either operator action or technical support.

An example portion of Event Log data is displayed in [Figure 149](#). In this figure (unlike in the Event Log web page)

- lines are alternately highlighted to show the varying length of wrapped lines.
- the types of event messages (which follow the time and date stamps and the file and line references) are underscored as quoted in [Table 67](#) and [Table 68](#).

Event Log [root] - Microsoft Internet Explorer

File Edit View Favorites Tools Help

Address

CANOPY  
Advantage™ Platform  
Motorola Wireless Broadband

General Status | Session Status | Remote Subscribers | **Event Log** | Network Interface

Home => Event Log

2.4GHz - Access Point - 0a-00-3e-20-a5-36

System Event Log

09:19:13 UT : 01/07/03 : File src/syslog.c : Line 568 System Log Cleared  
 09:28:32 UT : 01/07/03 : File box.c : Line 1185 Reboot from SNMP.  
 09:27:05 UT : 01/07/03 : File src/syslog.c : Line 1116 Time set  
 09:27:05 UT : 01/07/03 : File src/syslog.c : Line 966 System Reset Exception -- External Hard Reset WatchDog  
 09:27:05 UT : 01/07/03 : File src/root.c : Line 521 \*\*\*\*\*System Startup\*\*\*\*\*  
 09:27:05 UT : 01/07/03 : File src/root.c : Line 526 Software Version : CANOPY 8.0 (Build 17) Feb 16 2006 17:56:21 AP-DES  
 09:27:05 UT : 01/07/03 : File src/root.c : Line 530 Software Boot Version : CANOPYBOOT 3.0  
 09:27:05 UT : 01/07/03 : File src/root.c : Line 536 FPGA Version : 020206H  
 09:27:05 UT : 01/07/03 : File src/root.c : Line 540 FPGA Features : DES Sched  
 09:29:34 UT : 01/07/03 : File box.c : Line 1185 Reboot from SNMP.  
 09:29:25 UT : 01/07/03 : File src/syslog.c : Line 1116 Time set  
 09:29:25 UT : 01/07/03 : File src/syslog.c : Line 966 System Reset Exception -- External Hard Reset WatchDog  
 09:29:25 UT : 01/07/03 : File src/root.c : Line 521 \*\*\*\*\*System Startup\*\*\*\*\*  
 09:29:25 UT : 01/07/03 : File src/root.c : Line 526 Software Version : CANOPY 8.0 (Build 17) Feb 16 2006 17:56:21 AP-DES  
 09:29:25 UT : 01/07/03 : File src/root.c : Line 530 Software Boot Version : CANOPYBOOT 3.0  
 09:29:25 UT : 01/07/03 : File src/root.c : Line 536 FPGA Version : 020206H  
 09:29:25 UT : 01/07/03 : File src/root.c : Line 540 FPGA Features : DES Sched  
 09:31:31 UT : 01/07/03 : File box.c : Line 1185 Reboot from SNMP.  
 09:29:37 UT : 01/07/03 : File src/syslog.c : Line 1116 Time set  
 09:29:37 UT : 01/07/03 : File src/syslog.c : Line 966 System Reset Exception -- External Hard Reset WatchDog  
 09:29:37 UT : 01/07/03 : File src/root.c : Line 521 \*\*\*\*\*System Startup\*\*\*\*\*  
 09:29:37 UT : 01/07/03 : File src/root.c : Line 526 Software Version : CANOPY 8.0 (Build 17) Feb 16 2006 17:56:21 AP-DES  
 09:29:37 UT : 01/07/03 : File src/root.c : Line 530 Software Boot Version : CANOPYBOOT 3.0  
 09:29:37 UT : 01/07/03 : File src/root.c : Line 536 FPGA Version : 020206H  
 09:29:37 UT : 01/07/03 : File src/root.c : Line 540 FPGA Features : DES Sched  
 09:40:45 UT : 01/07/03 : File hnx.c : Line 1185 Reboot from SNMP  
 09:39:31 UT : 01/07/03 : File src/syslog.c : Line 1116 Time set  
 09:39:31 UT : 01/07/03 : File src/syslog.c : Line 966 System Reset Exception -- External Hard Reset WatchDog  
 09:39:31 UT : 01/07/03 : File src/root.c : Line 521 \*\*\*\*\*System Startup\*\*\*\*\*  
 09:39:31 UT : 01/07/03 : File src/root.c : Line 526 Software Version : CANOPY 8.0 (Build 17) Feb 16 2006 17:56:21 AP-DES  
 09:39:31 UT : 01/07/03 : File src/root.c : Line 530 Software Boot Version : CANOPYBOOT 3.0  
 09:39:31 UT : 01/07/03 : File src/root.c : Line 536 FPGA Version : 020206H  
 09:39:31 UT : 01/07/03 : File src/root.c : Line 540 FPGA Features : DES Sched  
 15:22:54 UT : 01/07/03 : File box.c : Line 1185 Reboot from SNMP.  
 15:21:17 UT : 01/07/03 : File src/syslog.c : Line 1116 Time set  
 15:21:17 UT : 01/07/03 : File src/syslog.c : Line 966 System Reset Exception -- External Hard Reset WatchDog  
 15:21:17 UT : 01/07/03 : File src/root.c : Line 521 \*\*\*\*\*System Startup\*\*\*\*\*  
 15:21:17 UT : 01/07/03 : File src/root.c : Line 526 Software Version : CANOPY 8.0 (Build 17) Feb 16 2006 17:56:21 AP-DES  
 15:21:17 UT : 01/07/03 : File src/root.c : Line 530 Software Boot Version : CANOPYBOOT 3.0  
 15:21:17 UT : 01/07/03 : File src/root.c : Line 536 FPGA Version : 020206H  
 15:21:17 UT : 01/07/03 : File src/root.c : Line 540 FPGA Features : DES Sched  
 06:31:11 UT : 01/08/03 : File src/httptask.c : Line 814 Reboot from Webpage.  
 06:31:03 UT : 01/08/03 : File src/syslog.c : Line 1116 Time set  
 06:31:03 UT : 01/08/03 : File src/syslog.c : Line 966 System Reset Exception -- External Hard Reset WatchDog  
 06:31:03 UT : 01/08/03 : File src/root.c : Line 521 \*\*\*\*\*System Startup\*\*\*\*\*  
 06:31:03 UT : 01/08/03 : File src/root.c : Line 526 Software Version : CANOPY 8.0 (Build 17) Feb 16 2006 17:56:21 AP-DES  
 06:31:03 UT : 01/08/03 : File src/root.c : Line 530 Software Boot Version : CANOPYBOOT 3.0  
 06:31:03 UT : 01/08/03 : File src/root.c : Line 536 FPGA Version : 020206H  
 06:31:03 UT : 01/08/03 : File src/root.c : Line 540 FPGA Features : DES Sched  
 15:52:09 UT : 01/08/03 : File src/httptask.c : Line 814 Reboot from Webpage.  
 15:51:20 UT : 01/08/03 : File src/syslog.c : Line 1116 Time set  
 15:51:20 UT : 01/08/03 : File src/syslog.c : Line 966 System Reset Exception -- External Hard Reset WatchDog  
 15:51:20 UT : 01/08/03 : File src/root.c : Line 521 \*\*\*\*\*System Startup\*\*\*\*\*  
 15:51:20 UT : 01/08/03 : File src/root.c : Line 526 Software Version : CANOPY 8.0 (Build 17) Feb 16 2006 17:56:21 AP-DES  
 15:51:20 UT : 01/08/03 : File src/root.c : Line 530 Software Boot Version : CANOPYBOOT 3.0  
 15:51:20 UT : 01/08/03 : File src/root.c : Line 536 FPGA Version : 020206H  
 15:51:20 UT : 01/08/03 : File src/root.c : Line 540 FPGA Features : DES Sched

Logged in as root

Internet

Figure 149: Event Log tab data, example



### 26.4.3 Messages that Flag Abnormal Events

The messages listed in [Table 67](#) flag abnormal events and, case by case, may signal the need for corrective action or technical support. See [Troubleshooting](#) on Page 471.

**Table 67: Event Log messages for abnormal events**

Event Message	Meaning
Expected LUID = 6      Actual LUID = 7	Something is interfering with the control messaging of the module. Also ensure that you are using shielded cables to minimize interference. Consider trying different frequency options to eliminate or reduce interference.
FatalError()	The event recorded on the line immediately beneath this message triggered the Fatal Error().
Loss of GPS Sync Pulse	Module has lost GPS sync signal.
Machine Check Exception	This is a symptom of a possible hardware failure. If this is a recurring message, begin the RMA process for the module.
RcvFrmNum = 0x00066d ExpFrmNum = 0x000799	Something is interfering with the control messaging of the module. Also ensure that you are using shielded cables to minimize interference. Consider trying different frequency options to eliminate or reduce interference.
System Reset Exception -- External Hard Reset	The unit lost power or was power cycled.
System Reset Exception -- External Hard Reset WatchDog	The event recorded on the preceding line triggered this WatchDog message.

### 26.4.4 Messages that Flag Normal Events

The messages listed in [Table 68](#) record normal events and typically *do not* signal a need for any corrective action or technical support.

**Table 68: Event Log messages for normal events**

Event Message	Meaning
Acquired GPS Sync Pulse.	Module has acquired GPS sync signal.
FPGA Features	Type of encryption.
FPGA Version	FPGA (JBC) version in the module.
GPS Date/Time Set	Module is now on GPS time.
PowerOn reset from Telnet command line	Reset command was issued from a telnet session.
Reboot from Webpage	Module was rebooted from management interface.
Software Boot Version	Boot version in the module.
Software Version	Canopy release version and authentication method for the unit.
System Log Cleared	Event log was manually cleared.

## 26.5 VIEWING THE NETWORK INTERFACE TAB (ALL)

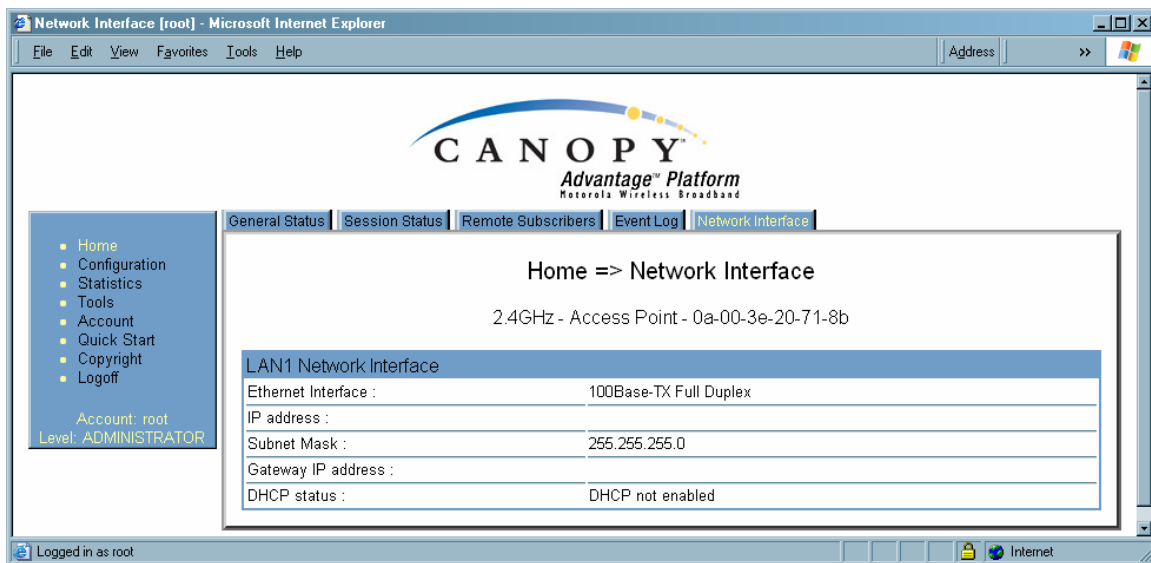


Figure 150: Network Interface tab of AP, example

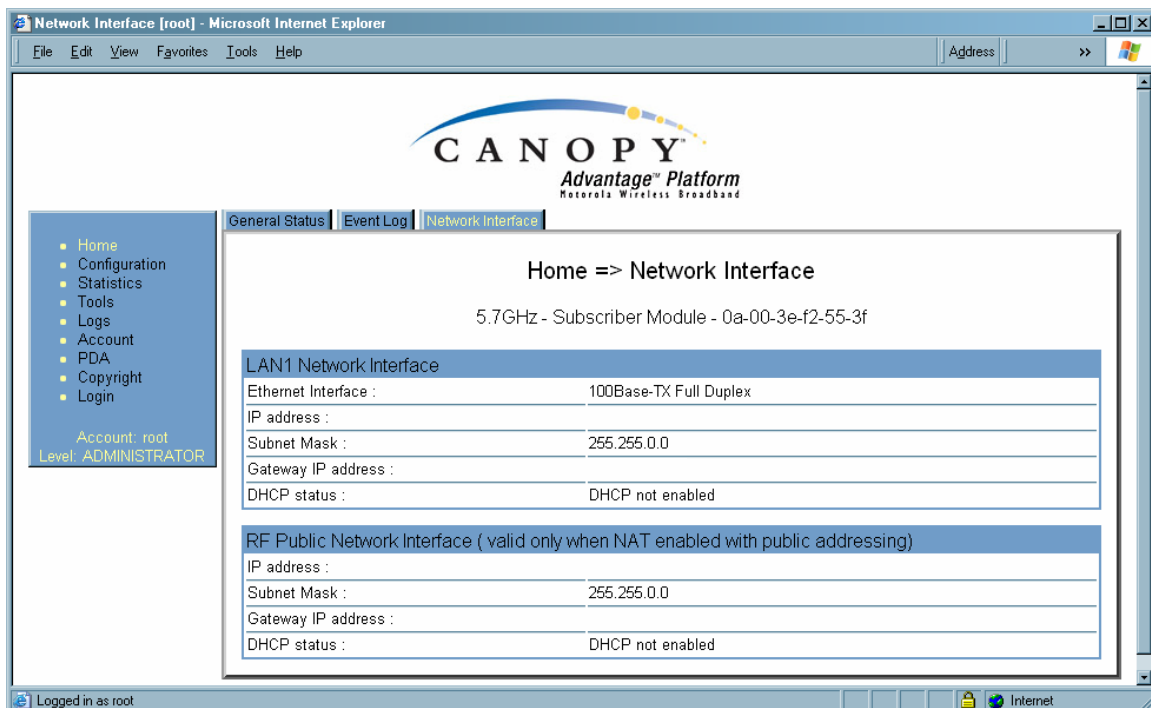
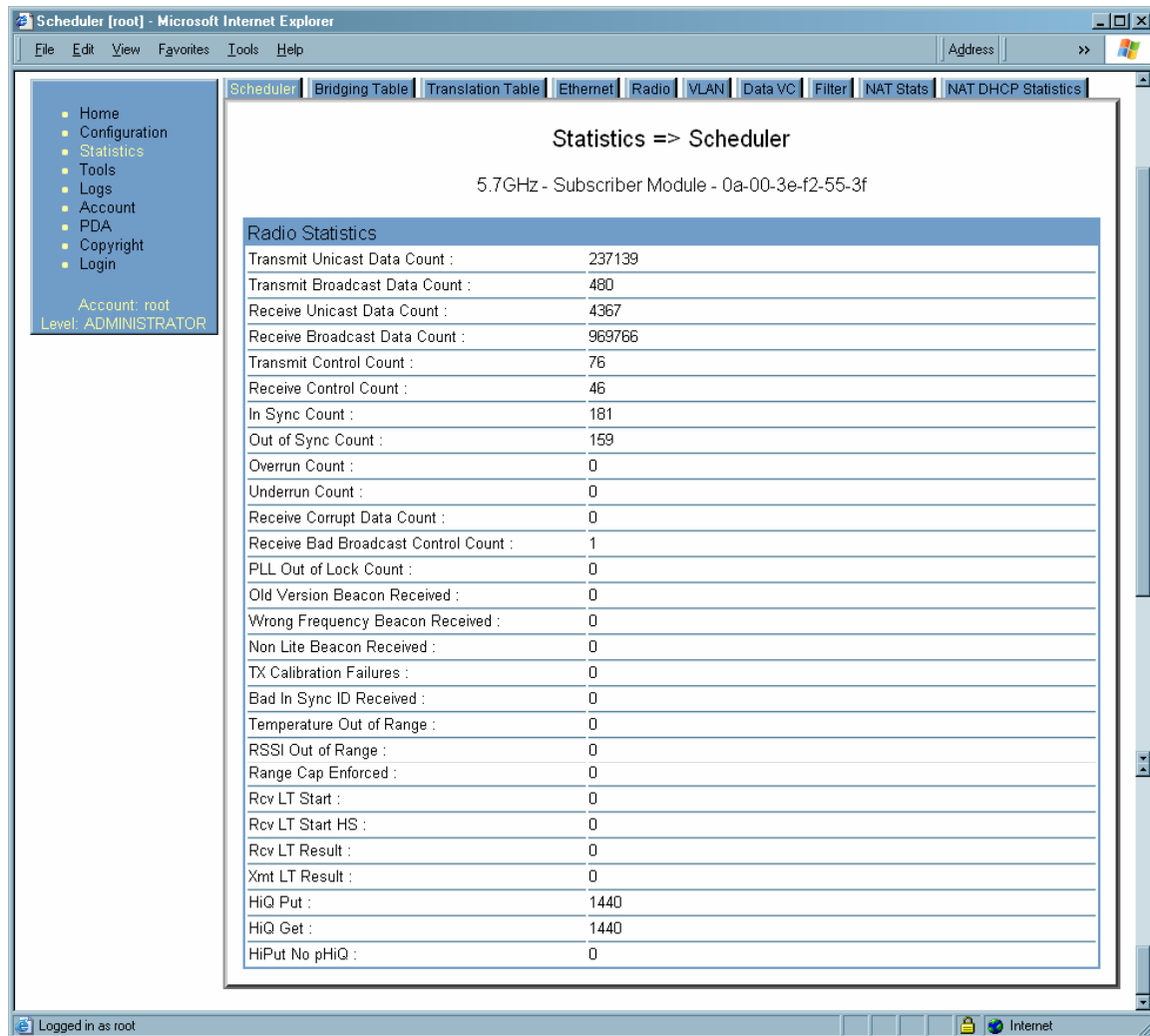


Figure 151: Network Interface tab of SM, example

In any module, the LAN1 Network Interface section of this tab displays the defined Internet Protocol scheme for the Ethernet interface to the module. In slave devices, this tab also provides an RF Public Network Interface section, which displays the Internet Protocol scheme defined for network access through the master device (AP or BHM).

## 26.6 INTERPRETING RADIO STATISTICS IN THE SCHEDULER TAB (ALL)

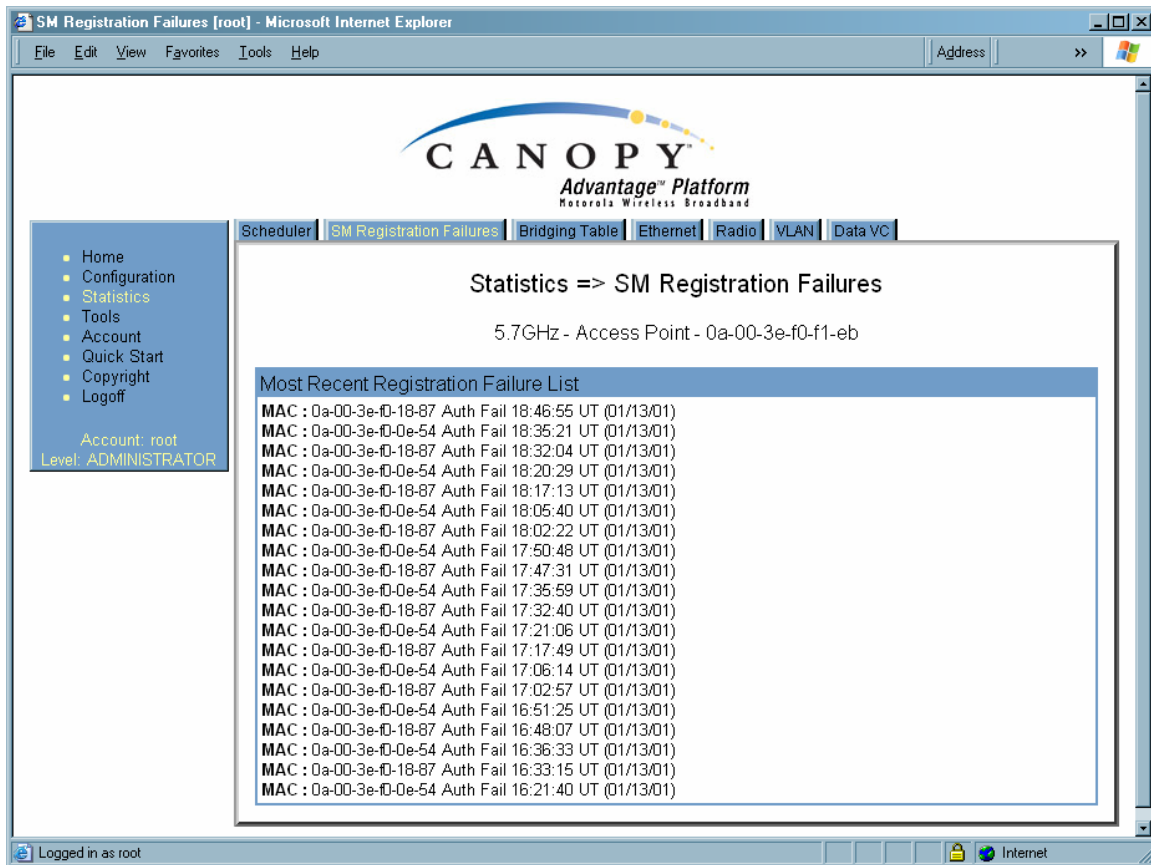


**Figure 152: Scheduler tab of SM, example**

Statistics for the Scheduler are displayed as shown in [Figure 152](#).

## 26.7 VIEWING THE LIST OF REGISTRATION FAILURES (AP, BHM)

An example of the SM Registration Failures tab is displayed in [Figure 153](#).

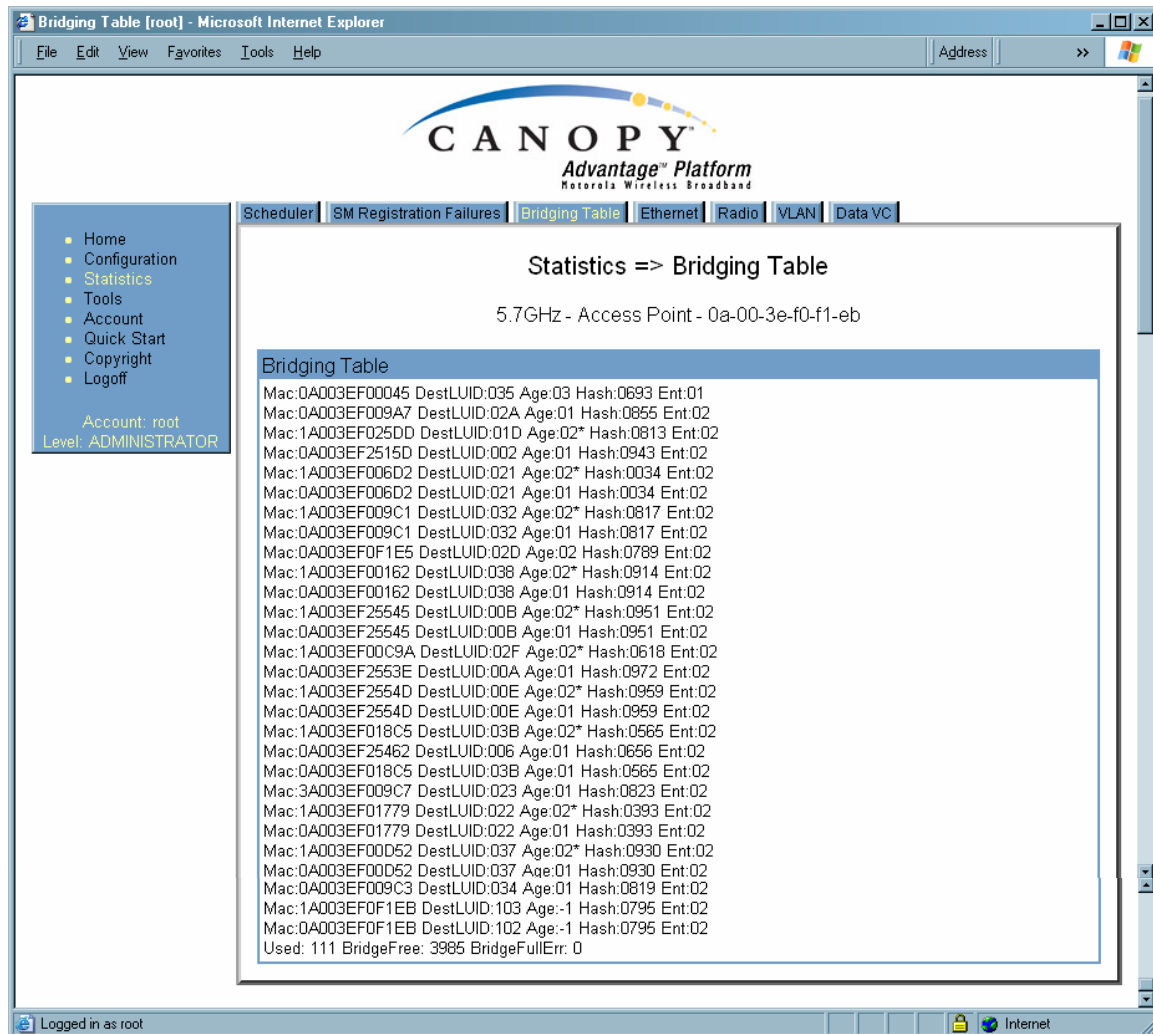


**Figure 153: SM Registration Failures tab of AP, example**

The SM Registration Failures tab identifies SMs (or BHSs) that have recently attempted and failed to register to this AP (or BHM). With its time stamps, these instances may suggest that a new or transient source of interference exists.

## 26.8 INTERPRETING DATA IN THE BRIDGING TABLE (ALL)

An example of the Bridging Table tab is displayed in Figure 154.



**Figure 154: Bridging Table tab of AP, example**

If NAT (network address translation) is not active on the SM, then the Bridging Table tab provides the MAC address of all devices that are attached to registered SMs (identified by LUIDs). The bridging table allows data to be sent to the correct module as follows:

- For the AP, the uplink is from RF to Ethernet. Thus, when a packet arrives in the *RF* interface to the AP, the AP reads the MAC address from the inbound packet and creates a bridging table entry of the source MAC address on the other end of the *RF* interface.
- For the SM, BHM, and BHS, the uplink is from Ethernet to RF. Thus, when a packet arrives in the *Ethernet* interface to one of these modules, the module reads the MAC address from the inbound packet and creates a bridging table entry of the source MAC address on the other end of the *Ethernet* interface.

## 26.9 TRANSLATION TABLE (SM)

When Translation Bridging is enabled in the AP, each SM keeps a table mapping MAC addresses of devices attached to the AP to IP addresses, as otherwise the mapping of end-user MAC addresses to IP addresses is lost. (When Translation Bridging is enabled, an AP modifies all uplink traffic originating from registered SM's such that the source MAC address of every packet will be changed to that of the SM which bridged the packet in the uplink direction.)

An example of the Translation Table is displayed in [Figure 155](#).

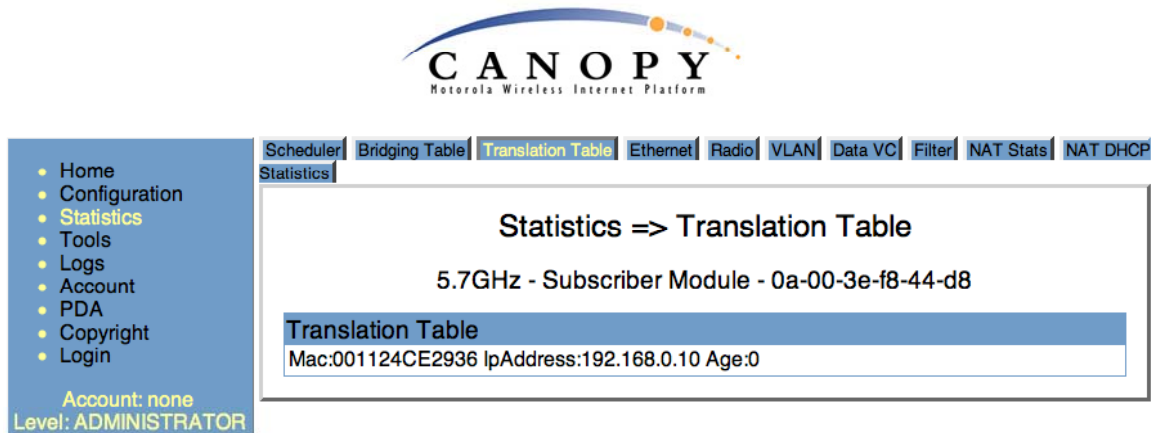
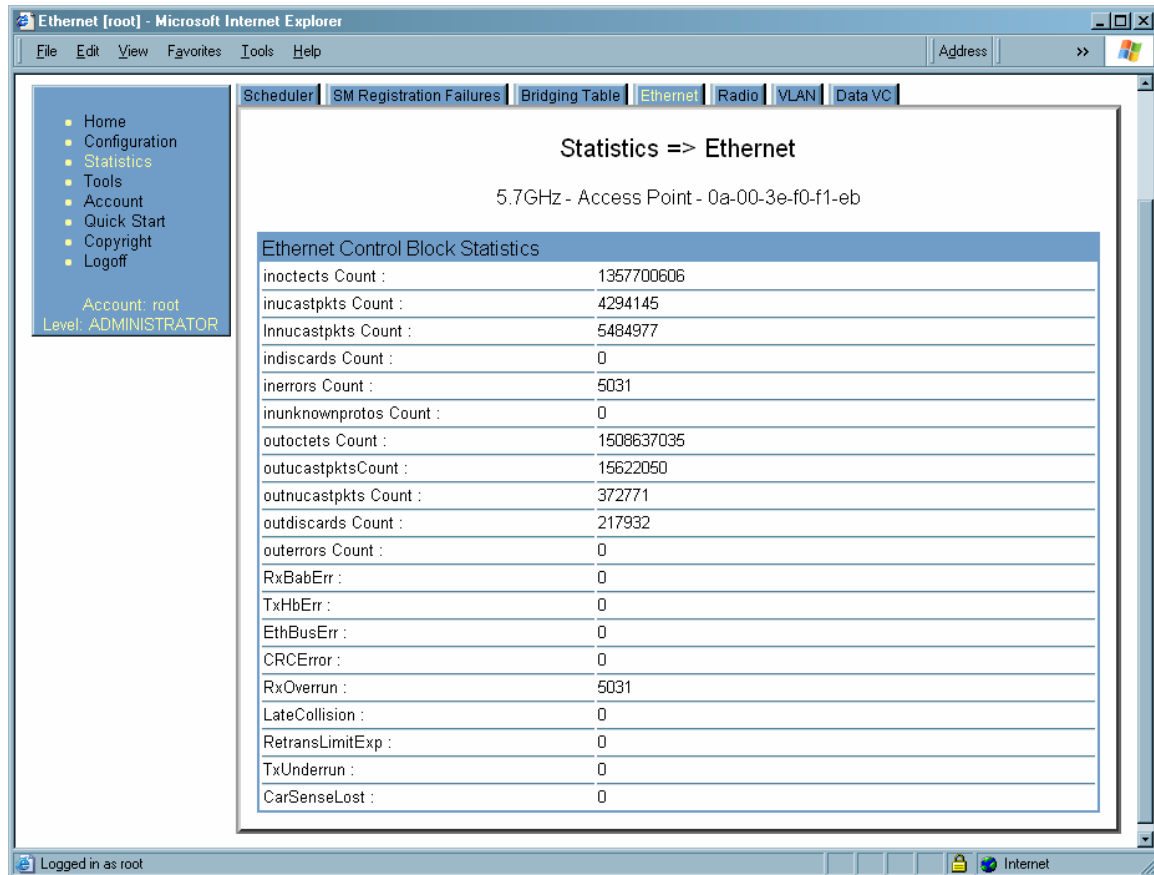


Figure 155: Translation Table tab of SM, example

## 26.10 INTERPRETING DATA IN THE ETHERNET TAB (ALL)

The Ethernet tab of the Statistics web page reports TCP throughput and error information for the Ethernet connection of the module.



**Figure 156: Ethernet tab of AP, example**

The Ethernet tab displays the following fields.

#### **inoctets Count**

This field displays how many octets were received on the interface, including those that deliver framing information.

#### **inucastpkts Count**

This field displays how many inbound subnetwork-unicast packets were delivered to a higher-layer protocol.

#### **Innucastpkts Count**

This field displays how many inbound non-unicast (subnetwork-broadcast or subnetwork-multicast) packets were delivered to a higher-layer protocol.

#### **indiscards Count**

This field displays how many inbound packets were discarded without errors that would have prevented their delivery to a higher-layer protocol. (Some of these packets may have been discarded to increase buffer space.)

#### **inerrors Count**

This field displays how many inbound packets contained errors that prevented their delivery to a higher-layer protocol.

**inunknownprotos Count**

This field displays how many inbound packets were discarded because of an unknown or unsupported protocol.

**outoctets Count**

This field displays how many octets were transmitted out of the interface, including those that deliver framing information.

**outucastpkts Count**

This field displays how many packets for which the higher-level protocols requested transmission to a subnetwork-unicast address. The number includes those that were discarded or not sent.

**outnucastpkts Count**

This field displays how many packets for which the higher-level protocols requested transmission to a non-unicast (subnetwork-broadcast or subnetwork-multicast) address. The number includes those that were discarded or not sent.

**outdiscards Count**

This field displays how many outbound packets were discarded without errors that would have prevented their transmission. (Some of these packets may have been discarded to increase buffer space.)

**outerrors Count**

This field displays how many outbound packets contained errors that prevented their transmission.

**RxBabErr**

This field displays how many receiver babble errors occurred.

**EthBusErr**

This field displays how many Ethernet bus errors occurred on the Ethernet controller.

**CRCError**

This field displays how many CRC errors occurred on the Ethernet controller.

**RxOverrun**

This field displays how many receiver overrun errors occurred on the Ethernet controller.

**Late Collision**

This field displays how many late collisions occurred on the Ethernet controller. A normal collision occurs during the first 512 bits of the frame transmission. A collision that occurs after the first 512 bits is considered a late collision.

***IMPORTANT!***

A late collision is a serious network problem because the frame being transmitted is discarded. A late collision is most commonly caused by a mismatch between duplex configurations at the ends of a link segment.



**RetransLimitExp**

This field displays how many times the retransmit limit has expired.

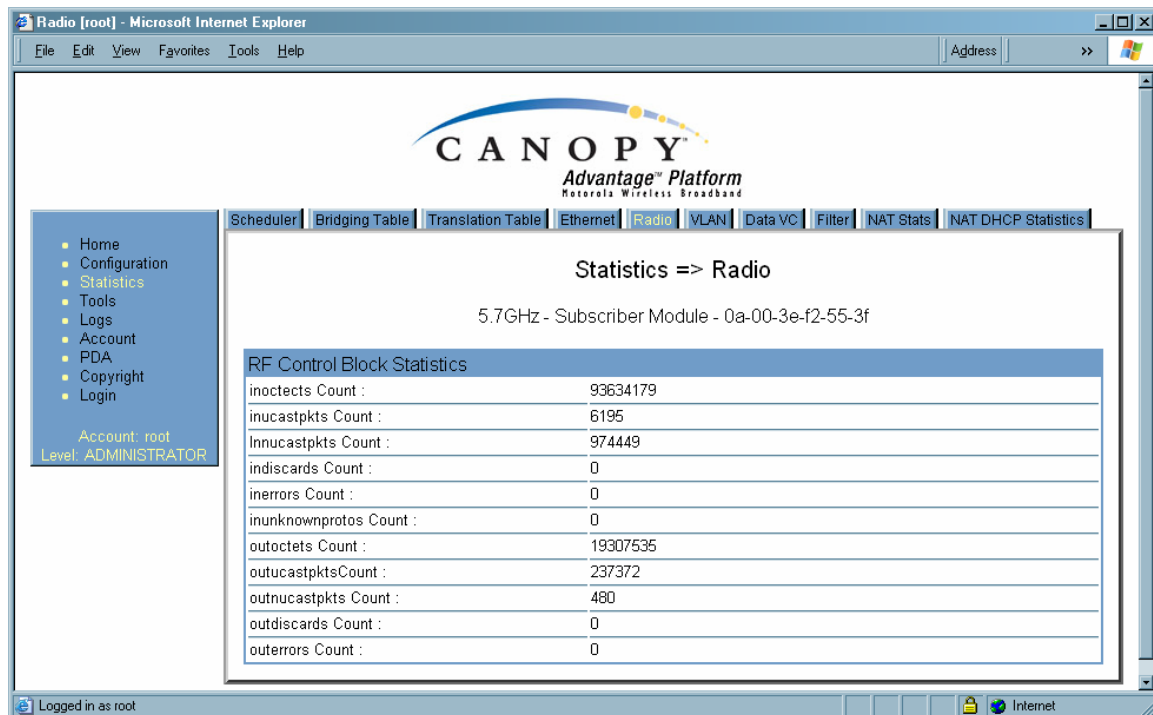
**TxUnderrun**

This field displays how many transmission-underrun errors occurred on the Ethernet controller.

**CarSenseLost**

This field displays how many carrier sense lost errors occurred on the Ethernet controller.

## 26.11 INTERPRETING RF CONTROL BLOCK STATISTICS IN THE RADIO TAB (ALL)



**Figure 157: Radio tab of Statistics page in SM, example**

The Radio tab of the Statistics page displays the following fields.

**inoctets Count**

This field displays how many octets were received on the interface, including those that deliver framing information.

**inucastpkts Count**

This field displays how many inbound subnetwork-unicast packets were delivered to a higher-layer protocol.

**Innucastpkts Count**

This field displays how many inbound non-unicast (subnetwork-broadcast or subnetwork-multicast) packets were delivered to a higher-layer protocol.

**indiscards Count**

This field displays how many inbound packets were discarded without errors that would have prevented their delivery to a higher-layer protocol. (Some of these packets may have been discarded to increase buffer space.)

**inerrors Count**

This field displays how many inbound packets contained errors that prevented their delivery to a higher-layer protocol.

**inunknownprotos Count**

This field displays how many inbound packets were discarded because of an unknown or unsupported protocol.

**outoctets Count**

This field displays how many octets were transmitted out of the interface, including those that deliver framing information.

**outucastpkts Count**

This field displays how many packets for which the higher-level protocols requested transmission to a subnetwork-unicast address. The number includes those that were discarded or not sent.

**outnucastpkts Count**

This field displays how many packets for which the higher-level protocols requested transmission to a non-unicast (subnetwork-broadcast or subnetwork-multicast) address. The number includes those that were discarded or not sent.

**outdiscards Count**

This field displays how many outbound packets were discarded without errors that would have prevented their transmission. (Some of these packets may have been discarded to increase buffer space.)

**outerrors Count**

This field displays how many outbound packets contained errors that prevented their transmission.

## 26.12 INTERPRETING DATA IN THE VLAN TAB (AP, SM)

The VLAN tab in the Statistics web page provides a list of the most recent packets that were filtered because of VLAN membership violations. An example of the VLAN tab is shown in [Figure 158](#).

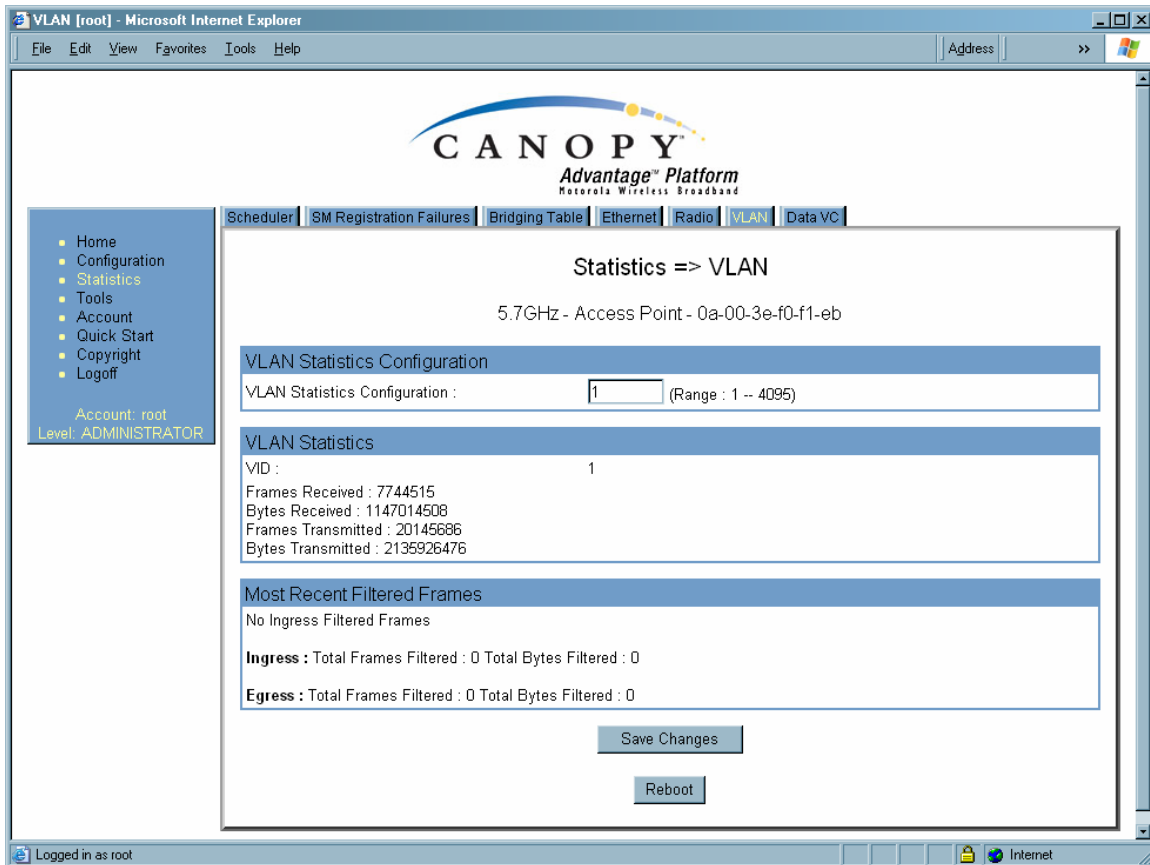


Figure 158: VLAN tab of AP, example

Interpret entries under **Most Recent Filtered Frames** as follows:

- **Unknown**—This should not occur. Contact Canopy Technical Support.
- **Only Tagged**—The packet was filtered because the configuration is set to accept only packets that have an 802.1Q header, and this packet did not.
- **Ingress**—When the packet entered through the wired Ethernet interface, the packet was filtered because it indicated an incorrect VLAN membership.
- **Local Ingress**—When the packet was received from the local TCP/IP stack, the packet was filtered because it indicated an incorrect VLAN membership. This should not occur. Contact Canopy Technical Support.
- **Egress**—When the packet attempted to leave through the wired Ethernet interface, the packet was filtered because it indicated an incorrect VLAN membership.
- **Local Egress**—When the packet attempted to reach the local TCP/IP stack, the packet was filtered because it indicated an incorrect VLAN membership.

## 26.13 DATA VC (ALL)

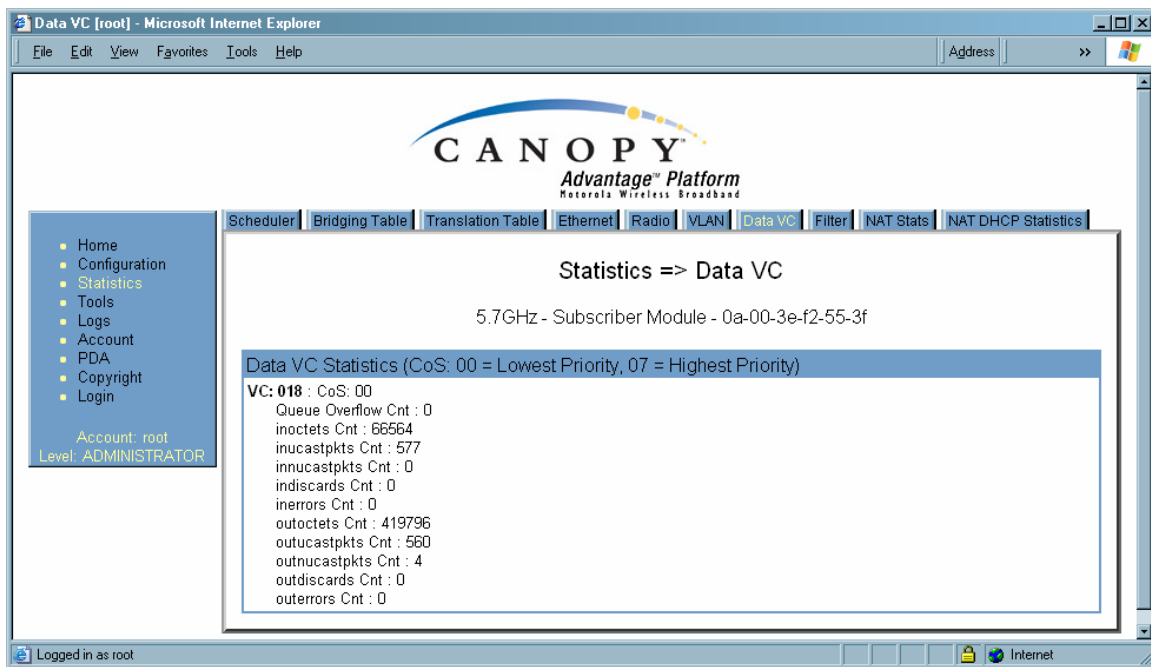


Figure 159: Data VC tab of SM, example

The Data VC tab page displays the following fields.

### VC

This field displays the virtual channel number. Low priority channels start at VC18 and count up. High priority channels start at VC255 and count down. If one VC is displayed, the high-priority channel is disabled. If two are displayed, the high-priority channel is enabled.

### CoS

This field displays the Class of Service for the virtual channel. The low priority channel is a CoS of 00, and the high priority channel is a CoS of 01. CoS of 02 through 07 are not currently used.

### Queue Overflow Cnt

This is a count of packets that were discarded because the queue for the VC was already full.

### inoctets Cnt

This field displays how many octets were received on the interface, including those that deliver framing information.

### inucastpkts Cnt

This field displays how many inbound subnetwork-unicast packets were delivered to a higher-layer protocol.

**Innucastpkts Cnt**

This field displays how many inbound non-unicast (subnetwork-broadcast or subnetwork-multicast) packets were delivered to a higher-layer protocol.

**indiscards Cnt**

This field displays how many inbound packets were discarded without errors that would have prevented their delivery to a higher-layer protocol. (Some of these packets may have been discarded to increase buffer space.)

**inerrors Cnt**

This field displays how many inbound packets contained errors that prevented their delivery to a higher-layer protocol.

**outoctets Cnt**

This field displays how many octets were transmitted out of the interface, including those that deliver framing information.

**outucastpkts Cnt**

This field displays how many packets for which the higher-level protocols requested transmission to a subnetwork-unicast address. The number includes those that were discarded or not sent.

**outnucastpkts Cnt**

This field displays how many packets for which the higher-level protocols requested transmission to a non-unicast (subnetwork-broadcast or subnetwork-multicast) address. The number includes those that were discarded or not sent.

**outdiscards Cnt**

This field displays how many outbound packets were discarded without errors that would have prevented their transmission. (Some of these packets may have been discarded to increase buffer space.)

**outerrors Cnt**

This field displays how many outbound packets contained errors that prevented their transmission.

## 26.14 FILTER (SM)

The Filter tab displays statistics on packets that have been filtered (dropped) due to the filters set on the SM's Protocol Filtering tab. An example of the Filter tab is shown in [Figure 160](#).

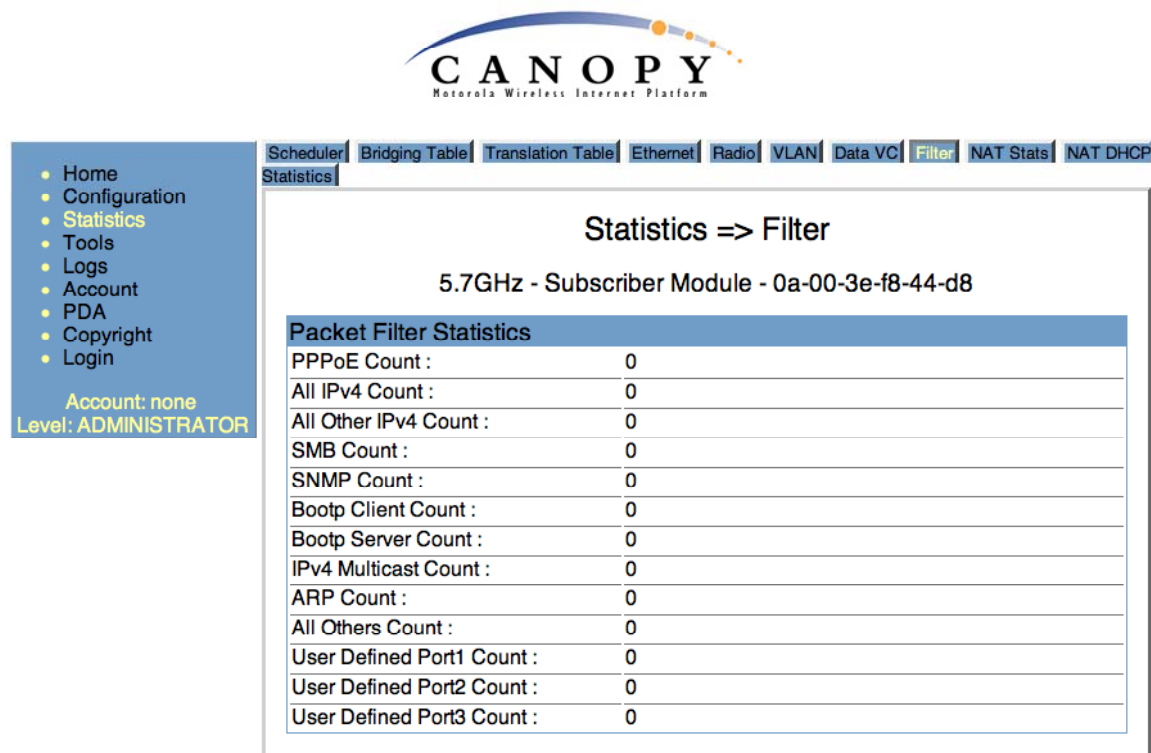


Figure 160: Filter tab on SM, example

## 26.15 NAT STATS (SM)

When NAT is enabled on an SM, statistics are kept on the Public and Private (WAN and LAN) sides of the NAT, and displayed on the NAT Stats tab. An example of the NAT Stats tab is shown in [Figure 161](#).

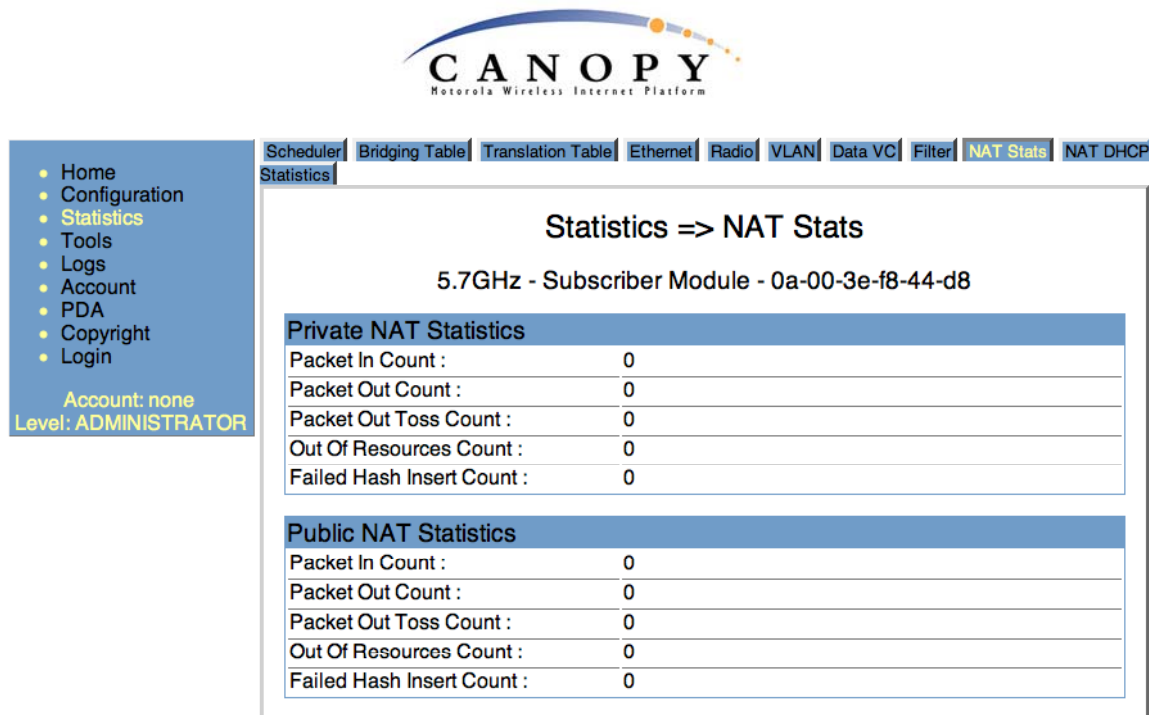


Figure 161: Nat Stats tab on SM, example

### 26.15.1 NAT DHCP Statistics (SM)

When NAT is enable on an SM with DHCP client and/or Server, statistics are kept for packets transmitted, received, and tossed, as well as a table of lease information for the DHCP server (Assigned IP Address, Hardware Address, and Lease Remained/State). An example of the NAT DHCP Statistics tab is shown in [Figure 162](#).

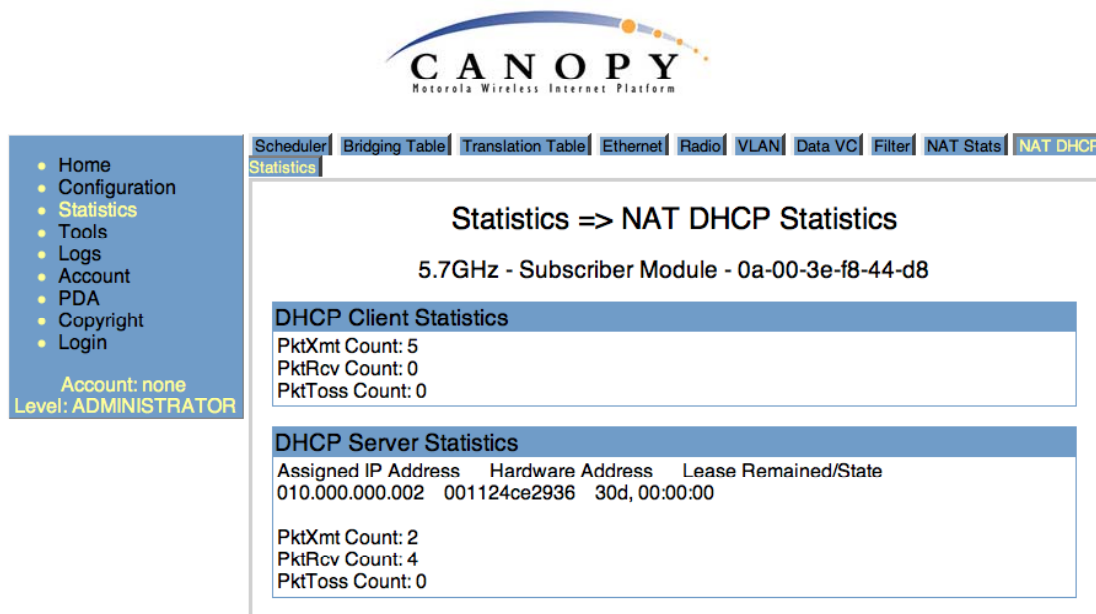


Figure 162: NAT DHCP Statistics tab in SM, example

### 26.15.2 Interpreting Data in the GPS Status Page (AP, BHM)

The GPS Status tab is only displayed when the Sync Input is set to Sync to Received Signal (Timing Port), which is the configuration desired when connecting an AP or BHM to a CMM2. See [Sync Input](#) on Page 241.

The page displays information similar to that available on the web pages of a CMM3, including Pulse Status, GPS Time and Date, Satellites Tracked, Available Satellites, Height, Latitude and Longitude. This page also displays the state of the antenna in the **Antenna Connection** field as

- [Unknown](#)—Shown for early CMM2s.
- [OK](#)—Shown for later CMM2s where no problem is detected in the signal.
- [Overcurrent](#)—Indicates a coax cable or connector problem.
- [Undercurrent](#)—Indicates a coax cable or connector problem.



#### ***IMPORTANT!***

If **Unknown** is displayed where a later CMM2 is deployed, then the connection is not working but the reason is unknown.

This information may be helpful in a decision of whether to climb a tower to diagnose a perceived antenna problem.



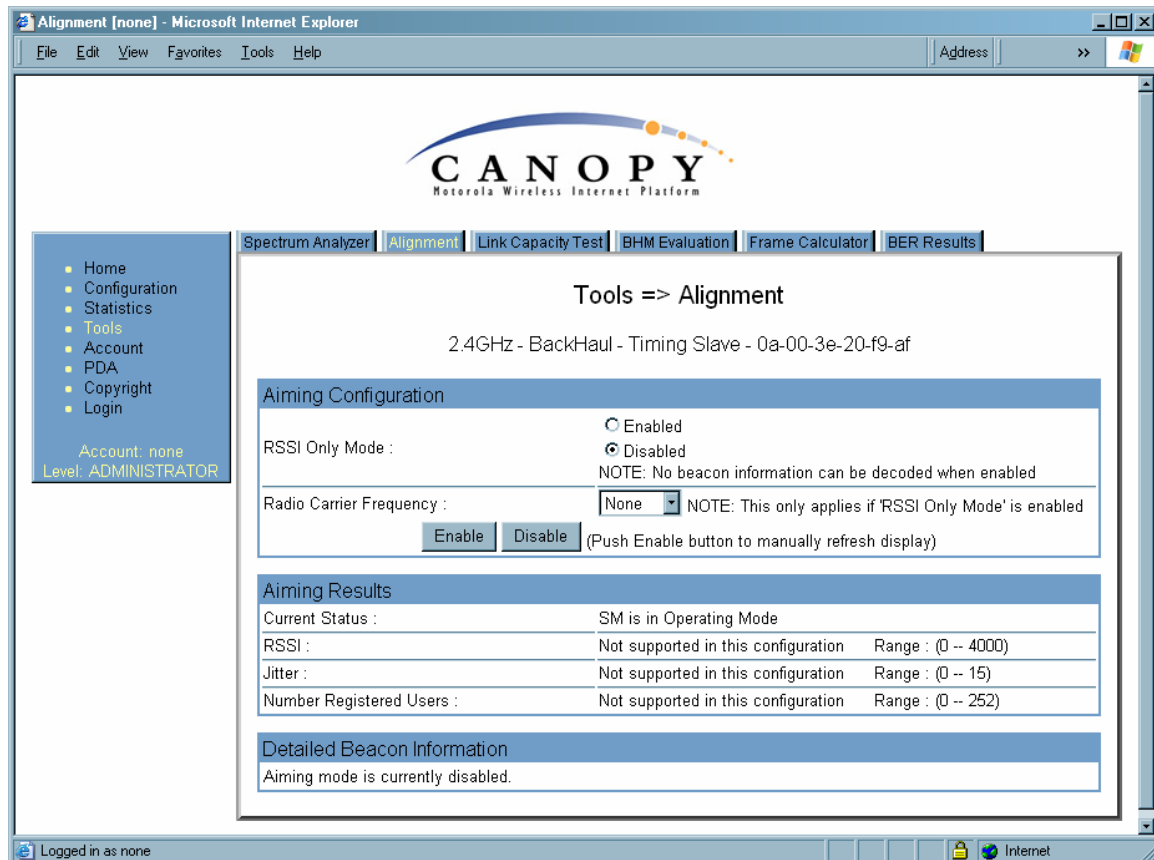
## 27 USING TOOLS IN THE GUI

### 27.1 USING THE SPECTRUM ANALYZER TOOL (SM, BHS)

See [Monitoring the RF Environment](#) on Page 371.

### 27.2 USING THE ALIGNMENT TOOL (SM, BHS)

An example of the Alignment tab in an SM or BHS is displayed in [Figure 163](#).



**Figure 163: Alignment tab of BHS, example**

Proper alignment must achieve all of the following indications for an acceptable link between the modules:

- RSSI typically at least 10 dBm above receiver sensitivity
- jitter value between 0 and 4
- uplink and downlink efficiency greater than 90%, except as described under [Comparing Efficiency in 1X Operation to Efficiency in 2X Operation](#) on Page 137.

**IMPORTANT!**

If any of these values is not achieved, a link can be established but will manifest occasional problems.

In the Alignment tab, you may set the following parameters.

**RSSI Only Mode**

In the RSSI Only Mode, the screen displays the signal strength based on the amount of energy in the selected frequency, regardless of whether the module has registered. This mode simplifies the aiming process for long links. To invoke the RSSI Only Mode, select **Enabled**.

**Radio Carrier Frequency**

If you enabled the RSSI Only Mode, select the frequency (in MHz) for the aiming operation.

The Alignment tab also provides the following buttons.

**Enable**

A click of this button launches the slave device into alignment mode. Each further click refreshes the data in the tab to display the latest measurements collected.

**Disable**

A click of this button changes the slave device from alignment mode back to operating mode.

The Alignment tab also provides the following read-only fields.

**Current Status**

This field indicates either *SM is in Alignment Mode* or *SM is in Operating Mode*. This syntax is used in an SM and in a BHS.

**RSSI**

This field displays the Radio Signal Strength Indicator units and, in parentheses, the current power level, of the signal received from the AP or BHM.

**Jitter**

This field displays the jitter level of the signal received from the AP or BHM.

**Number Registered Users**

This field displays how many slave devices are currently registered to the master device whose beacon is being received during the aiming period.

In addition, the Alignment tab includes the following Detailed Beacon Information where it is available.

**Average measured RSSI**

This field displays the Radio Signal Strength Indicator units and, in parentheses, the power level as an average of the measurements that were collected throughout the aiming period. Try for the highest power level that you can achieve at the least amount of jitter. For example, if you achieve a power level of -75 dBm with a jitter level of 5, and further refine the alignment to achieve a power level of -78 dBm with a jitter level of 2 or 3, the link is better because of the further refinement.

**Average measured Jitter**

This field displays Jitter as an average of the measurements that were collected throughout the aiming period. In 1X operation, jitter values of 0 to 4 are acceptable. In 2X operation, jitter values 0 to 9 are acceptable. In either mode, 0 to 15 is the range of possible values that the **Jitter** field reports. Within the acceptable range, incremental improvements in the jitter level achieved can significantly improve link quality where power level is not significantly diminished by re-aiming.

**Users**

This is a count of the number of SMs registered to the AP you are aligning to.

**Frequency**

This field displays the frequency in MHz of the signal that was being received during the aiming period.

**ESN**

This field displays the MAC address of the AP or BHM you are aligning to.

**Color Code**

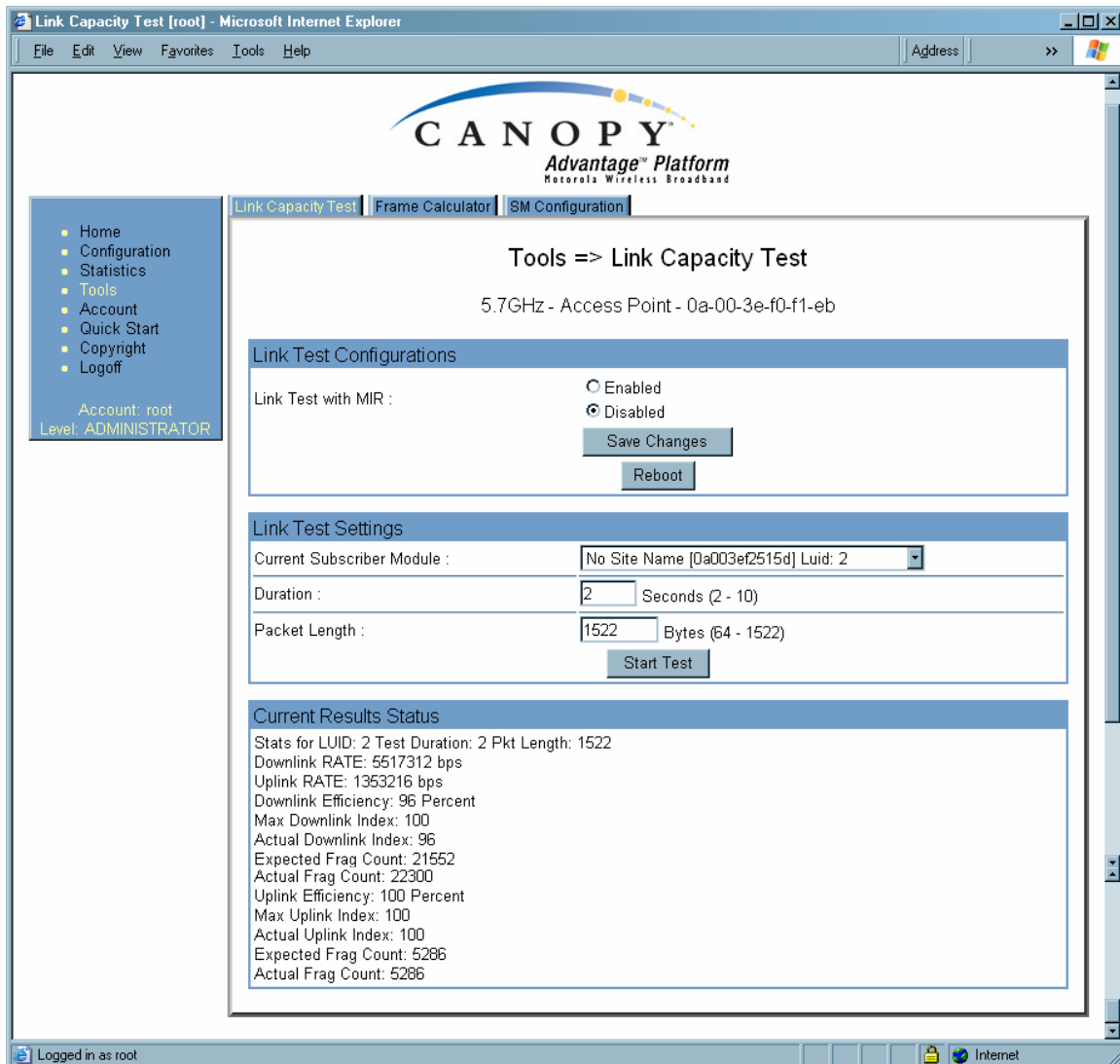
This field displays the color code of the AP or BHM you are aligning to.

**Backhaul**

This field displays a 1 if the device you are aligning to is a BHM, and a 0 if the device you are aligning to is an AP.

## 27.3 USING THE LINK CAPACITY TEST TOOL (ALL)

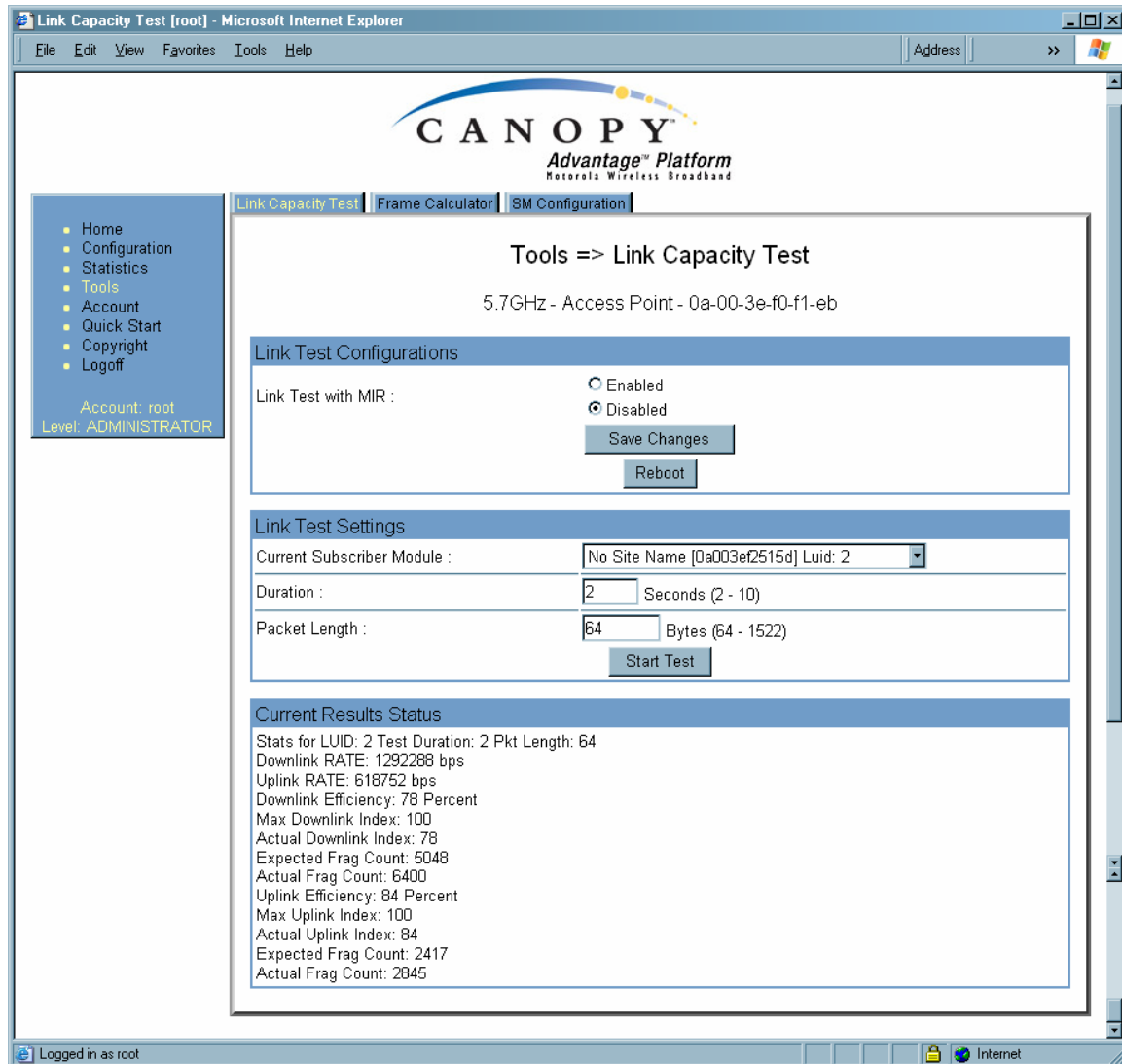
An example of the Link Capacity Test tab is displayed in [Figure 164](#).



**Figure 164: Link Capacity Test tab with 1522-byte packet length, example**

The Link Capacity Test page allows you to measure the throughput and efficiency of the RF link between two Canopy modules. Many factors, including packet length, affect throughput. The Link Capacity Test tab contains the settable parameter **Packet Length** with a range of 64 to 1522 bytes. This allows you to compare throughput levels that result from various packet sizes.

For example, the same link was measured in the same time frame at a packet length of 64 bytes. The results are shown in [Figure 165](#).



**Figure 165: Link Capacity Test tab with 64-byte packet length, example**

To test a link, perform the following steps.

**Procedure 40: Performing a Link Capacity Test**

1. Access the Link Capacity Test tab in the Tools web page of the module.
2. If you are running this test from an AP
  - a. and you want to see Maximum Information Rate (MIR) data for the SM whose link you will be testing, then perform the following steps:
    - (1) For **Link Test with MIR**, select **Enabled**.
    - (2) Click the **Save Changes** button.
    - (3) Click the **Reboot** button.
  - b. use the drop-down list to select the SM whose link you want to test.

3. Type into the **Duration** field how long (in seconds) the RF link should be tested.
4. Type into the **Packet Length** field the packet length at which you want the test conducted.
5. Type into the **Number of Packets** field either
  - the number of packets (1 to 64) for the test.
  - **0** to flood the link for as long as the test is in progress.
6. Click the **Start Test** button.
7. In the Current Results Status block of this tab, view the results of the test.
8. Optionally
  - a. change the packet length.
  - b. repeat Steps 5 and 6.
  - c. compare the results to those of other tests.

===== end of procedure =====

The key fields in the test results are

- **Downlink RATE** and **Uplink RATE**, expressed in bits per second
- **Downlink Efficiency** and **Uplink Efficiency**, expressed as a percentage

A Canopy system link is acceptable only if the efficiencies of the link test are greater than 90% in both the uplink and downlink direction, except during 2X operation. See [Using Link Efficiency to Check Received Signal Quality](#) on Page 137. Whenever you install a new link, execute a link test to ensure that the efficiencies are within recommended guidelines.

The AP downlink data percentage, slot settings, other traffic in the sector, and the quality of the RF environment all affect throughput. However, a Maximum Information Rate (MIR) throttle or cap on the SM does not affect throughput.

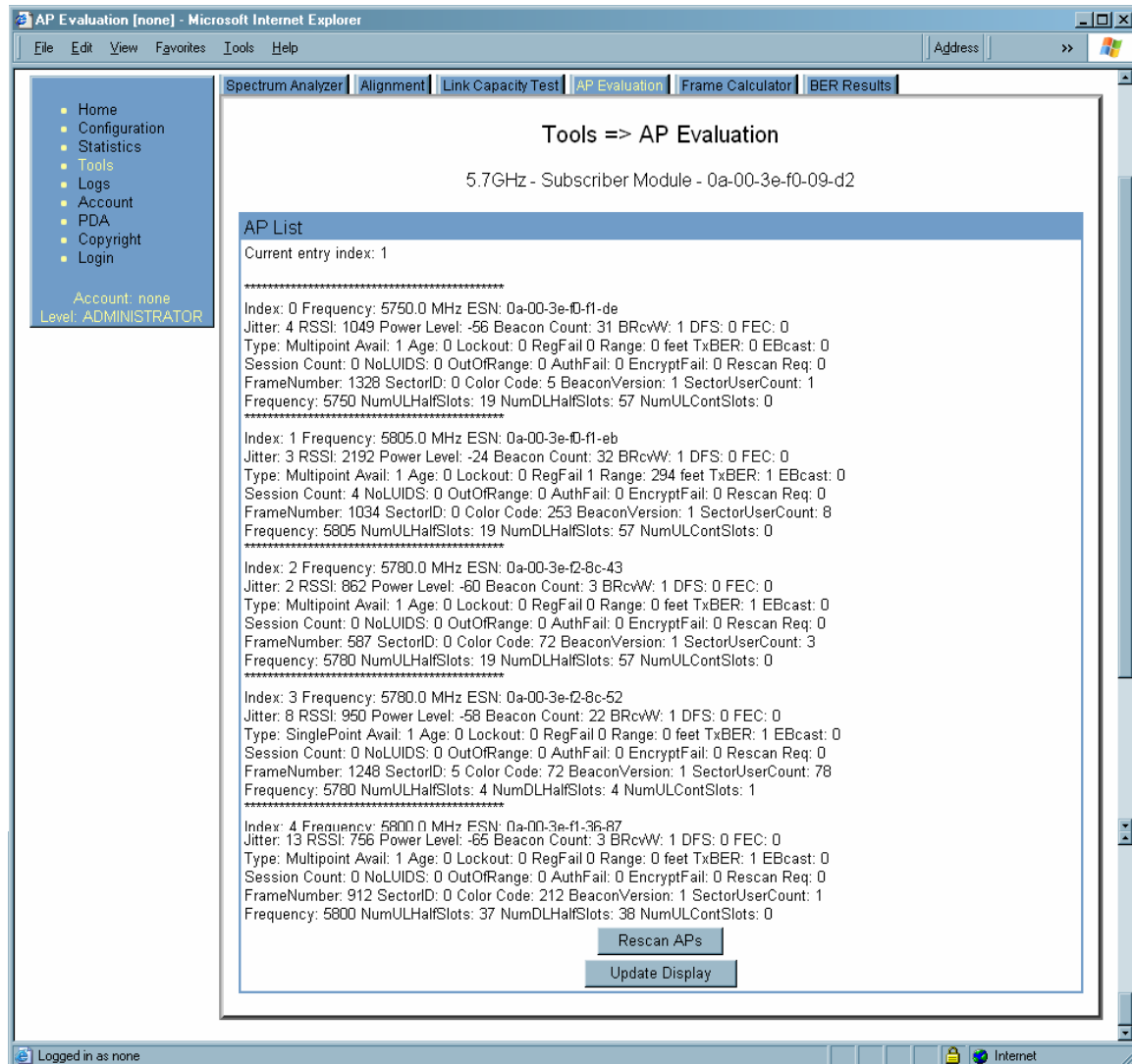
## 27.4 USING THE AP EVALUATION OR BHM EVALUATION TOOL (SM, BHS)

The AP Evaluation tab in the Tools web page of the SM provides information about the AP that the SM sees. Similarly, the BHM Evaluation tab of the BHS provides information about the BHM. An example of the AP Evaluation tab is shown in [Figure 166](#).



**NOTE:**

The data for this page can be suppressed by the **SM Display of AP Evaluation Data** selection in the Security tab of the Configuration page in the AP.



**Figure 166: AP Evaluation tab of SM, example**

The AP Evaluation tab provides the following fields that can be useful to manage and troubleshoot a Canopy system:

#### Index

This field displays the index value that the Canopy system assigns (for only this page) to the AP where this SM is registered (or to the BHM to which this BHS is registered).

#### Frequency

This field displays the frequency that the AP or BHM transmits.

#### ESN

This field displays the MAC address (electronic serial number) of the AP or BHM.

**Jitter, RSSI, and Power Level**

The AP Evaluation tab shows the received **Power Level** in dBm and **Jitter**. Proper alignment maximizes **Power Level** and minimizes **Jitter**. As you refine alignment, you should favor lower jitter over higher dBm. For example, if coarse alignment gives an SM a power level of -75 dBm and a jitter measurement of 5, and further refining the alignment drops the power level to -78 dBm and the jitter to 2 or 3, use the refined alignment, with the following caveats:

- When the receiving link is operating at 1X, the **Jitter** scale is 0 to 15 with desired jitter between 0 and 4.
- When the receiving link is operating at 2X, the **Jitter** scale is 0 to 15 with desired jitter between 0 and 9.

For historical relevance, the AP Evaluation tab also shows the **RSSI**, the unitless measure of power. Use **Power Level** and ignore **RSSI**. **RSSI** implies more accuracy and precision than is inherent in its measurement.

**NOTE:**

Unless the page is set to auto-refresh, the values displayed are from the instant the General Status tab was selected. To keep a current view of the values, refresh the browser screen or set to auto-refresh.

**Beacon Count**

A count of the beacons seen in a given time period.

**BRcvW****DFS****FEC****Type**

Multipoint indicates an AP, not a BHM.

**Age****Lockout**

This field displays how many times the SM or BHS has been temporarily locked out of making registration attempts.

**RegFail**

This field displays how many registration attempts by this SM or BHS failed.

**Range**

This field displays the distance in feet for this link. To derive the distance in meters, multiply the value of this parameter by 0.3048.



**TxBER**

A 1 in this field indicates the AP or BHM is sending Radio BER.

**EBcast**

A 1 in this field indicates the AP or BHM is encrypting broadcast packets. A 0 indicates it is not.

**Session Count**

This field displays how many sessions the SM (or BHS) has had with the AP (or BHM). Typically, this is the sum of Reg Count and Re-Reg Count. However, the result of internal calculation may display here as a value that slightly differs from the sum.

In the case of a multipoint link, if the number of sessions is significantly greater than the number for other SMs, then this may indicate a link problem or an interference problem.

**NoLUIDs****OutOfRange****AuthFail**

This field displays how many times authentication attempts from this SM have failed in the AP.

**EncryptFail**

This field displays how many times an encryption mismatch has occurred between the SM and the AP.

**Rescan Req****FrameNumber****Sector ID**

This field displays the value of the **Sector ID** field that is provisioned for the AP or BHM.

**Color Code**

This field displays the value of the **Color Code** field that is provisioned for the AP or BHM.

**BeaconVersion****Sector User Count**

This field displays how many SMs are registered on the AP.

**Frequency**

This field displays the frequency of the received signal, expressed in MHz.

**NumULHalfSlots**

This is the number of uplink half slots in this AP or BHM's frame. To get slots, just divide by 2.

**NumDLHalfSlots**

This is the number of downlink half slots in this AP or BHM's frame. To get slots, just divide by 2.

**NumULContSlots**

This field displays how many control slots are being used in the uplink portion of the frame.

The AP Evaluation tab also provides the following buttons.

**Rescan APs**

You can click this button to force the SM or BHS to rescan the frequencies that are selected in the Radio tab of the Configuration page. (See [Custom Radio Frequency Scan Selection List](#) on Page 278.) This module will then register to the AP or BHM that provides the best results for power level, jitter, and—in an SM—the number of registered SMs.

**Update Display**

You can click this button to gather updated data without causing the SM or BHS to rescan and re-register.

## 27.5 USING THE FRAME CALCULATOR TOOL (ALL)

Canopy avoids self-interference by syncing colocated APs (so they begin each transmission cycle at the same time) and requiring that colocated APs have the same transmit/receive ratio (so they stop transmitting and start receiving at the same time). This ensures that, at any instant, they are either all receiving or all transmitting.

This avoids, for example, the problem of one AP attempting to receive from a distant SM, while a nearby AP is transmitting and overpowering the signal from the distant SM. Parameters that affect transmit/receive ratio include range, slots, downlink data percentage, and high priority uplink percentage. All colocated APs must have the same transmit/receive ratio. Additional engineering is needed for setting the parameters in a mixed cluster – one with APs on hardware scheduler and APs on software scheduler.

A frame calculator helps to do this. The operator inputs various AP settings into the calculator, and the calculator outputs many details on the frame including the **Uplink Rcv SQ Start**. This calculation should be done for each AP that has different settings. Then the operator varies the **Downlink Data** percentage in each calculation until the calculated **Uplink Rcv SQ Start** for all colocated APs is within 300 time bits. The frame calculator is accessed by clicking on Expanded Stats in the navigation column, then clicking on Frame Calculator (at the bottom of the expanded navigation column).

The calculator does not use data on the module or populate new data. It is merely a convenience application running on the module. For this reason, you can use any module to do the calculations for any AP. Running the calculator on the AP in question is not necessary.

**IMPORTANT!**

APs with slightly mismatched transmit/receive ratios and low levels of data traffic may see little effect on throughput. As the data traffic increases, the impact of mismatched transmit/receive ratios will increase. This means that a system that was not tuned for collocation may work fine at low traffic levels, but encounter

problems at higher traffic level. The conservative practice is to tune for collocation from the beginning, and prevent future problems as sectors are built out and traffic increases.

An example of the Frame Calculator tab is shown in [Figure 167](#).

Frame Calculator [root] - Microsoft Internet Explorer

File Edit View Favorites Tools Help Address >>

Link Capacity Test **Frame Calculator** SM Configuration

Tools => Frame Calculator

5.7GHz - Access Point - 0a-00-3e-f0-f1-eb

Frame Calculator Parameters	
Software Version Transmitter :	CANOPY7.2--Current
Software Version Receiver :	CANOPY7.2--Current
Transmit Sync Input :	Generate Sync Signal
Link Mode :	<input type="radio"/> Point-To-Point Link <input checked="" type="radio"/> Multipoint Link
Max Range :	2 Miles (Range: 1- 30 miles)
Air Delay :	0 bits
Scheduling :	<input type="radio"/> Hardware <input checked="" type="radio"/> Software
Mobility :	<input type="radio"/> On <input checked="" type="radio"/> Off
Wireless/Wired :	<input checked="" type="radio"/> Wireless Link <input type="radio"/> Wired Link
Platform Type Transmitter :	P10
Platform Type Receiver :	P10
Frequency Band :	5.7GHz
External Bus Frequency Transmitter :	40
External Bus Frequency Receiver :	40
Downlink Data :	75 %
High Priority Uplink Percentage :	0 %
Total Number UACK Slots :	3 (Range: 1--7)
Number High :	0
Number DACK Slots :	3 (Range: 1--7)
Number High :	0
Number Control Slots :	3 (Range: 1-- 16 )
Number High :	0

Apply Settings

Calculate

Calculated Frame Results

Invalid Configuration

Logged in as root Internet

**Figure 167: Frame Calculator tab, example**

In the Frame Calculator tab, you may set the following parameters.

**Software Version Transmitter**

From the drop-down menu, select the Canopy software release that runs on the AP(s).

**Software Version Receiver**

From the drop-down menu, select the Canopy software release that runs on the SM(s).

**Transmit Sync Input**

If the APs in the cluster

- receive sync from a CMMmicro, select **Sync to Received Signal (Power Port)**.
- receive sync from a CMM2, select **Sync to Received Signal (Timing Port)**.
- are self timed, select **Generate Sync Signal**.

**Link Mode**

For AP to SM frame calculations, select **Multipoint Link**.

**Max Range**

Set to the same value as the **Max Range** parameter is set in the AP(s).

**Air Delay**

Leave this parameter set to the default value of 0 bits.

**Scheduling**

Initially select **Software**.

**Mobility**

Leave the default value of **Off** selected.

**Wireless/Wired**

Leave the default value of Wireless Link selected.

**Platform Type Transmitter**

Use the drop-down list to select the hardware series (board type) of the AP.

**Platform Type Receiver**

Use the drop-down list to select the hardware series (board type) of the SM.

**Frequency Band**

Use the drop-down list to select the radio frequency band of the AP and SM.

**External Bus Frequency Transmitter**

Leave this parameter set to the default value of 40.

**External Bus Frequency Receiver**

Leave this parameter set to the default value of 40.

**Downlink Data**

Initially set this parameter to the same value that the AP has for its **Downlink Data** parameter (percentage). Then, as you use the Frame Calculator tool in [Procedure 41](#), you will vary the value in this parameter to find the proper value to write into the **Downlink Data** parameter of all APs in the cluster.

**High Priority Uplink Percentage**

If the AP is running Canopy software earlier than Release 8, set this parameter to the current value of the **High Priority Uplink Percentage** parameter in the AP.

**Total Number UACK Slots**

If the AP is running Canopy software earlier than Release 8, set this parameter to the current value of the **Total NumUAckSlots** parameter in the AP.

**Number High**

If the AP is running Canopy software earlier than Release 8, set this parameter to the current value of the **Num High** parameter associated with **Total NumUAckSlots** in the AP.

**Number DACK Slots**

If the AP is running Canopy software earlier than Release 8, set this parameter to the current value of the **NumDackSlots** parameter in the AP.

**Number High**

If the AP is running Canopy software earlier than Release 8, set this parameter to the current value of the **Num High** parameter associated with **NumDackSlots** in the AP.

**Number Control Slots**

Set this parameter to the current value of the **Control Slots** (for Release 8) or **NumCtlSlots** (for earlier releases) parameter in the AP. In Release 8, the **Control Slots** parameter is present in the Radio tab of the Configuration web page.

**Number High**

If the AP is running Canopy software earlier than Release 8, set this parameter to the current value of the **Num High** parameter associated with **NumCtlSlots** in the AP.

To use the Frame Calculator, perform the following steps.

**Procedure 41: Using the Frame Calculator**

1. Populate the Frame Calculator parameters with appropriate values as described above.
2. Click the **Apply Settings** button.
3. Click the **Calculate** button.
4. Scroll down the tab to the Calculated Frame Results section.  
*NOTE:* An example of the Calculated Frame Results section is displayed in [Figure 168](#).



**Figure 168: Calculated Frame Results section of Frame Calculator tab, example**

5. Record the value of the **Uplink Rcv SQ Start** field.
6. Scroll up to the **Scheduling** parameter.
7. Select **Hardware**.
8. Click the **Apply Settings** button.  
*RESULT:* The values in the Calculated Frame Results section are updated for hardware scheduling.
9. In the **Number Control Slots** parameter, type in the number needed.
10. Click the **Apply Settings** button.
11. Click the **Calculate** button.
12. Scroll down the tab to the Calculated Frame Results section.
13. Record the value of the **Uplink Rcv SQ Start** field.
14. If the recorded values of the **Uplink Rcv SQ Start** field are within 300 time bits of each other, skip the next step.
15. Repeat this procedure, changing the value of the **Downlink Data** parameter until the values that this tool calculates for the **Uplink Rcv SQ Start** field are within 300 time bits of each other regardless of the selection in the **Scheduling** parameter.

16. When they are within 300 time bits, access the Radio tab in the Configuration web page of each AP in the cluster and change its **Downlink Data** parameter (percentage) to the last value that you used in the Frame Calculator.  
See [Figure 83: Radio tab of AP \(900 MHz\), example](#) on Page 245.

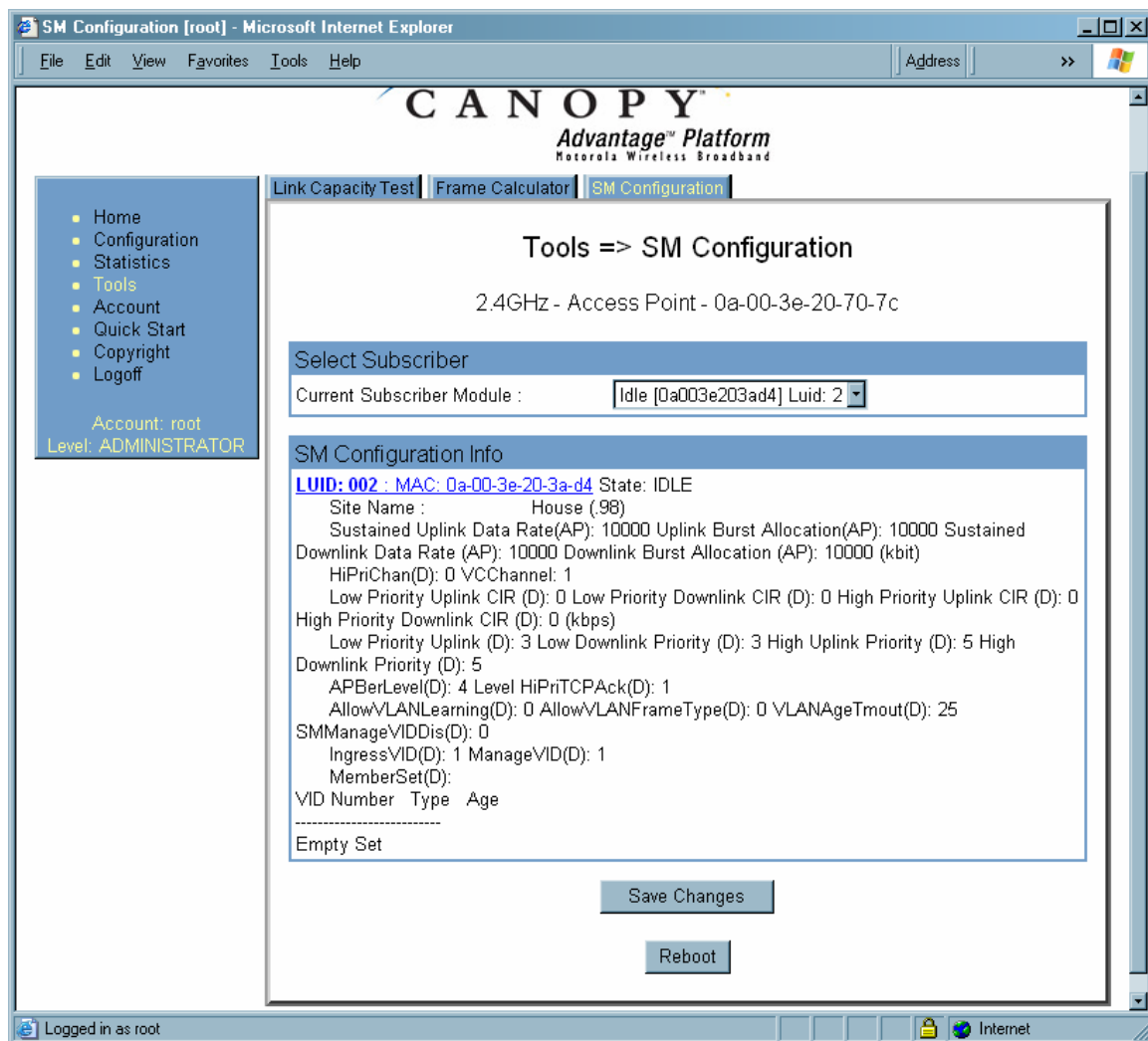
===== end of procedure =====

## 27.6 USING THE SM CONFIGURATION TOOL (AP, BHM)

The SM Configuration tab in the Tools page of the AP or BHM displays

- the current values whose control may be subject to the setting in the **Configuration Source** parameter.
- an indicator of the source for each value.

An example of the SM Configuration tab is displayed in [Figure 169](#).



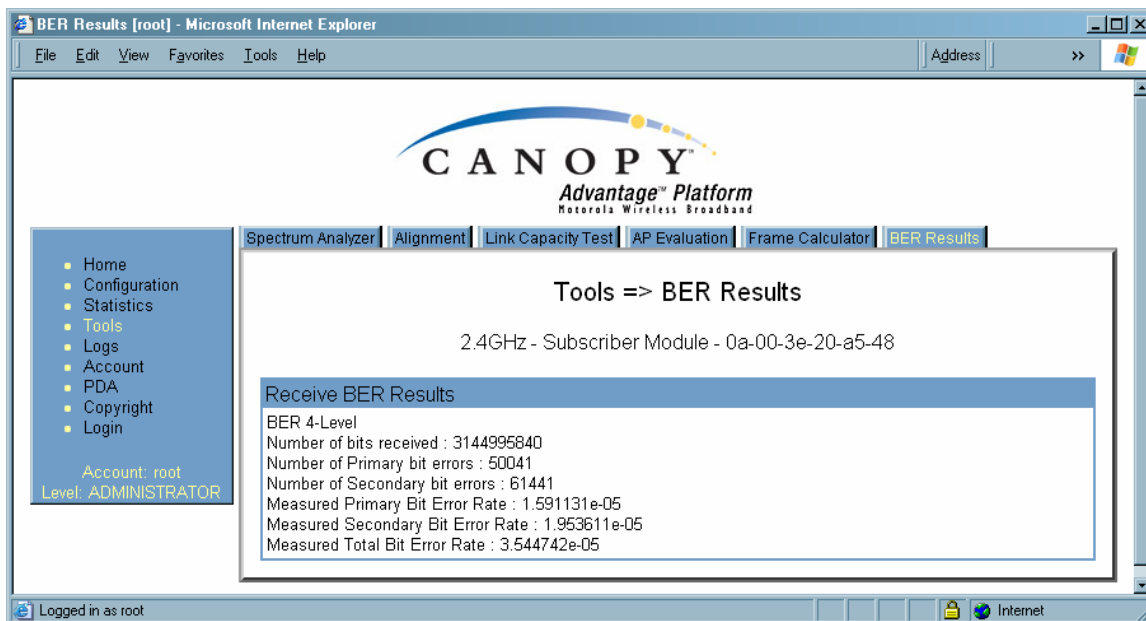
**Figure 169: SM Configuration tab of AP, example**

Indicators for configuration source are explained under [Session Status Tab of the AP](#) on Page 195.

## 27.7 USING THE BER RESULTS TOOL (SM, BHS)

Radio BER is now supported on hardware scheduling. When looking at Radio BER data it is important to note that it represents bit errors at the RF link level. Due to CRC checks on fragments and packets and ARQ (Automatic Repeat request), the BER of customer data is essentially zero. Radio BER gives one indication of link quality, along with received power level, jitter, and link tests.

BER is only instrumented on the downlink, and can be read on each SM's Tools>BER Results page. Each time the tab is clicked, the current results are read, and counters are reset to zero. An example of the BER Results tab is displayed in [Figure 170](#).



**Figure 170: BER Results tab of SM, example**

The BER Results tab can be helpful in troubleshooting poor link performance. The value in the **Measured Total Bit Error Rate** field represents the bit error rate (BER) in the RF link since the last time the BER Results tab was clicked.

The link is acceptable if the value of this field is less than  $10^{-4}$ . If the BER is greater than  $10^{-4}$ , re-evaluate the installation of both modules in the link.

The BER test signal is only broadcast by the AP (and compared to the expected test signal by the SM) when capacity in the sector allows it – it is the lowest priority for AP transmissions.



## 28 MAINTAINING YOUR CANOPY SOFTWARE

Canopy provides release compatibility information and caveats about each release.

### 28.1 HISTORY OF SYSTEM SOFTWARE UPGRADES

#### 28.1.1 Canopy Release 8 Features

Canopy Release 8 introduces the following new features:

- Scheduling Limited to Hardware Scheduler
- Tiered Permissions and User Accounts
- GUI Customizable via CSS
- Links to SM GUI via Session Status and Remote Subscribers Tabs of AP
- Dynamic Frequency Selection (DFS) v1.2.3 in All 5.4- and 5.7-GHz Modules
- Bit Error Rate (BER) Display with Hardware Scheduler
- AP SNMP Proxy to SMs
- Translation Bridging (MAC Address Mapping)
- SM Isolation
- Management Access Filtering for SM
- Source IP Management Access for AP and SM
- Optional DHCP Configuration of Management Interface

#### 28.1.2 Canopy Release 8 Fixes

Canopy Release 8 includes the following fixes:

- Management Web (http) Access Lockup Fix
- Enforcement of Ethernet Link Speed Setting
- MIBs Support Only Applicable Objects

### 28.2 HISTORY OF CMMmicro SOFTWARE UPGRADES

- Canopy currently supports CMMmicro Releases up through Release 2.2.

### 28.3 TYPICAL CONTENTS OF RELEASE NOTES

Canopy supports each release with software release notes, which include

- description of features that are introduced in the new release.
- issues that the new release resolves.
- known issues and special notes for the new release.
- installation procedures for the new release.

## 28.4 TYPICAL UPGRADE PROCESS

In a typical upgrade process, proceed as follows:

1. Visit the software page of the Canopy web site.
2. Read the compatibility information and any caveats that Canopy associates with the release.
3. Read the software release notes from the web site.
4. On the basis of these, decide whether the release is appropriate for your network.
5. Download the software release and associated files.
6. Use CNUT to manage the upgrade across your network.

### 28.4.1 Downloading Software and Release Notes

All supported software releases, the associated software release notes document, and updated MIB files are available for download at any time from <http://motorola.motorola.com/canopy/support/software/>. This web site also typically provides a summary of the backward compatibility and any advantages or disadvantages of implementing the release.

When you click on the release that you wish to download, you are prompted for information that identifies yourself and your organization (such as name, address, and e-mail address). When you complete and submit the form that prompts for this information, the download is made available to you.

## 29 REBRANDING MODULE INTERFACE SCREENS

Distinctive fonts indicate

- literal user input.**
- variable user input.***
- literal system responses.
- variable system responses.*

The interface screens on each module display the Canopy or Canopy Advantage logo. These logos can be replaced with other logos using [Procedure 42](#).

The logo is a hyperlink and clicking on it takes the user to the Canopy web site. A different site (perhaps the operator's support site) can be made the destination using [Procedure 43](#).

To return a module to regular logos and hyperlinks, use [Procedure 44](#).

The logo at the top of each page is a key indicator to the user whether a module is Canopy or Canopy Advantage. If you choose to replace the Canopy logos, use two noticeably different logos so that users can continue to easily distinguish between a Canopy module and a Canopy Advantage module.

To replace logos and hyperlinks efficiently throughout your network, read the following procedures, write a script, and execute your script through the Canopy Network Updater Tool (CNUT).<sup>8</sup> To replace them individually, use one of the following two procedures.

### **Procedure 42: Replacing the Canopy logo on the GUI with another logo**

1. If the current logo is the Canopy logo, name your custom logo file on your computer `canopy.jpg` and put it in your home directory.  
If the current logo is the Canopy Advantage logo, name your custom logo file on your computer `advantaged.jpg` and put it in your home directory.
2. Use an FTP (File Transfer Protocol) session to transfer this file to the module, as in the example session shown in [Figure 171](#).

---

<sup>8</sup> See Using the Canopy Network Updater Tool (CNUT) on Page [415](#).

```
> ftp ModuleIPAddress
Connected to ModuleIPAddress
220 FTP server ready
Name (ModuleIPAddress:none): root
331 Guest login ok
Password: <password-if-configured>
230 Guest login ok, access restrictions apply.

ftp> binary
200 Type set to I
ftp> put canopy.jpg
      OR
      put advantaged.jpg
      OR
      put top.html
ftp> quit
221 Goodbye
```

Figure 171: Example ftp session to transfer custom logo file

3. Use a telnet session and the **addwebfile** command to add the new file to the file system, as in the example session shown in [Figure 172](#).

**NOTE:**



Supported telnet commands execute the following results:

- **addwebfile** adds a custom logo file to the file system.
- **clearwebfile** clears the logo file from the file system.
- **lsweb** lists the custom logo file and display the storage space available on the file system.

```

>telnet ModuleIPAddress
/-----\
C A N O P Y

Motorola Broadband Wireless Technology Center
(Copyright 2001, 2002 Motorola Inc.)

Login: root
Password: <password-if-configured>

Telnet +> addwebfile canopy.jpg
          OR
          addwebfile advantaged.jpg
          OR
          addwebfile top.html

Telnet +> lsweb

Flash Web files
/canopy.jpg      7867
free directory entries: 31
free file space: 55331

Telnet +> exit

```

**Figure 172: Example telnet session to activate custom logo file**

===== end of procedure =====

#### **Procedure 43: Changing the URL of the logo hyperlink**

1. Browse to `http://ModuleIPAddress/top.html`.
2. Save the page as an html file named `top.html`.
3. In the editor of your choice, open the file `top.html`.
4. Find the expression `http://www.canopywireless.com`.
5. Change `http://www.canopywireless.com` to the URL to which you want the browser directed when the user clicks the logo.
6. Save and close the file as `top.html`.
7. Use an FTP (File Transfer Protocol) session to transfer this file to the module, as in the example session shown in [Figure 171](#) on Page 456.
8. Use a telnet session and the `addwebfile` command to add the new file (`top.html`) to the file system, as in the example session shown in [Figure 172](#).

===== end of procedure =====

If you ever want to restore the original logo and hyperlink in a module, perform the following steps.

**Procedure 44: Returning a module to its original logo and hyperlink**

1. Use a telnet session and the clearwebfile command to clear all custom files from the file system of the module, as in the example session shown in [Figure 173](#) below.

```
>telnet ModuleIPAddress
/-----\
C A N O P Y

Motorola Broadband Wireless Technology
Center
(Copyright 2001, 2002 Motorola Inc.)

Login: root
Password: <password-if-configured>

Telnet +> lsweb
Flash Web files
canopy.jpg          7867
free directory entries: 31
free file space: 56468

Telnet +> clearwebfile
Telnet +> lsweb

Flash Web files
free directory entries: 32
free file space      64336 bytes

Telnet +> exit
```

**Figure 173: Example telnet session to clear custom files**

===== end of procedure =====

## 30 TOGGLING REMOTE ACCESS CAPABILITY

Based on your priorities for additional security and ease of network administration, you can deny or permit remote access individually to any AP, SM, or BH.

### 30.1 DENYING ALL REMOTE ACCESS

Wherever the No Remote Access feature is enabled by the following procedure, physical access to the module is required for

- any change in the configuration of the module.
- any software upgrade in the module.

Where additional security is more important than ease of network administration, you can disable all remote access to a module as follows.

#### Procedure 45: Denying all remote access

1. Insert the override plug into the RJ-11 GPS utility port of the module.
2. Power up or power cycle the module.
3. Access the web page <http://169.254.1.1/lockconfig.html>.
4. Click the check box.
5. Save the changes.
6. Reboot the module.
7. Remove the override plug.

**RESULT:** No access to this module is possible through HTTP, SNMP, FTP, telnet, or over an RF link.

===== end of procedure =====

### 30.2 REINSTATING REMOTE ACCESS CAPABILITY

Where ease of network administration is more important than the additional security that the No Remote Access feature provides, this feature can be disabled as follows:

#### Procedure 46: Reinstating remote access capability

1. Insert the override plug into the RJ-11 GPS utility port of the module.
2. Power up or power cycle the module.
3. Access the web page <http://169.254.1.1/lockconfig.html>.
4. Click the check box to uncheck the field.
5. Save the changes.
6. Reboot the module.
7. Remove the override plug.

**RESULT:** Access to this module is possible through HTTP, SNMP, FTP, telnet, or over an RF link.

===== end of procedure =====





## 31 SETTING UP A PROTOCOL ANALYZER ON YOUR CANOPY NETWORK

Selection of protocol analyzer software and location for a protocol analyzer depend on both the network topology and the type of traffic to capture. However, the examples in this section are based on free-of-charge Ethernet software, which is available at <http://ethereal.com/>.

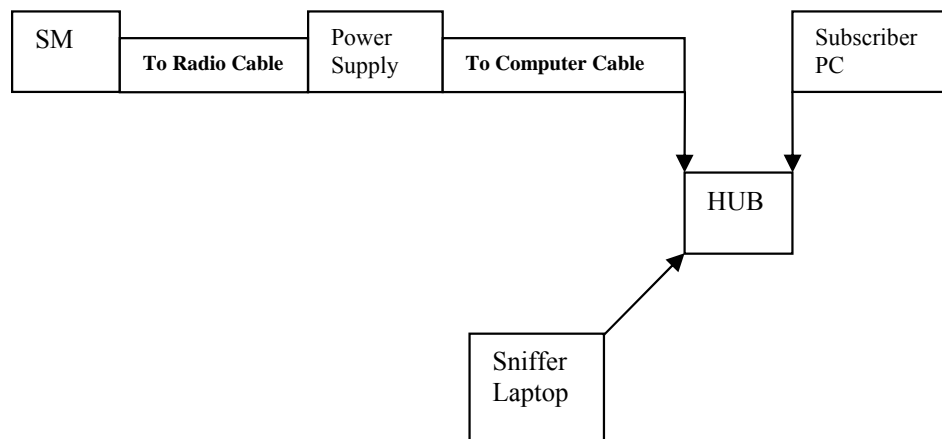
The equipment required to set up a protocol analyzer includes:

- 1 hub
- 1 laptop computer with protocol analyzer software installed
- 2 straight-through Ethernet cables
- 1 Canopy power converter (ACPS110)

### 31.1 ANALYZING TRAFFIC AT AN SM

The IP address of the protocol analyzer laptop computer must match the IP addressing scheme of the SM. If the SM has DHCP enabled, then configure the laptop computer to automatically obtain an address. If DHCP is not enabled, then ensure that the laptop computer is configured with a static IP address in the same subnet as the SM.

The configuration for analyzing traffic at an SM is shown in [Figure 174](#).



**Figure 174: Protocol analysis at SM**

### 31.2 ANALYZING TRAFFIC AT AN AP OR BH WITH NO CMM

The IP address of the protocol analyzer laptop computer must match the IP addressing scheme of the AP/BH. If the router is configured to be a DHCP server, then configure the laptop computer to automatically obtain an address. If DHCP is not enabled, then ensure that the laptop computer is configured with a static IP address in the same subnet as the AP/BH.

The configuration for analyzing traffic at an AP or BH that *is not* connected to a CMM is shown in [Figure 175](#).

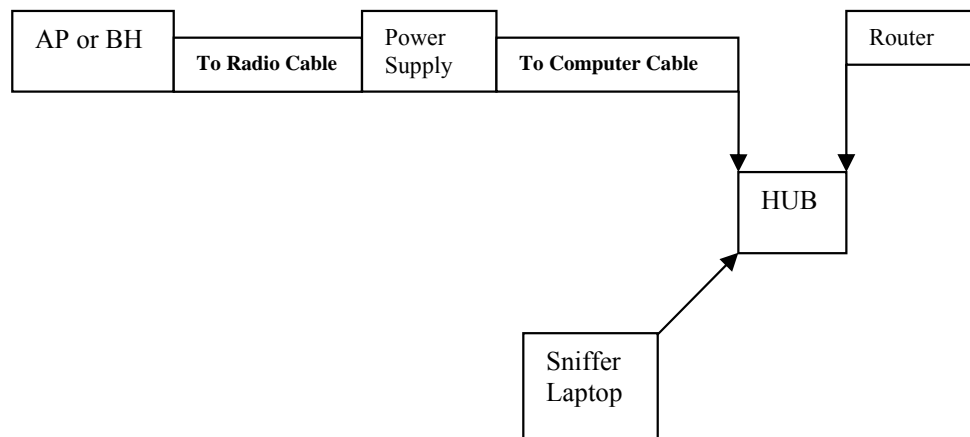
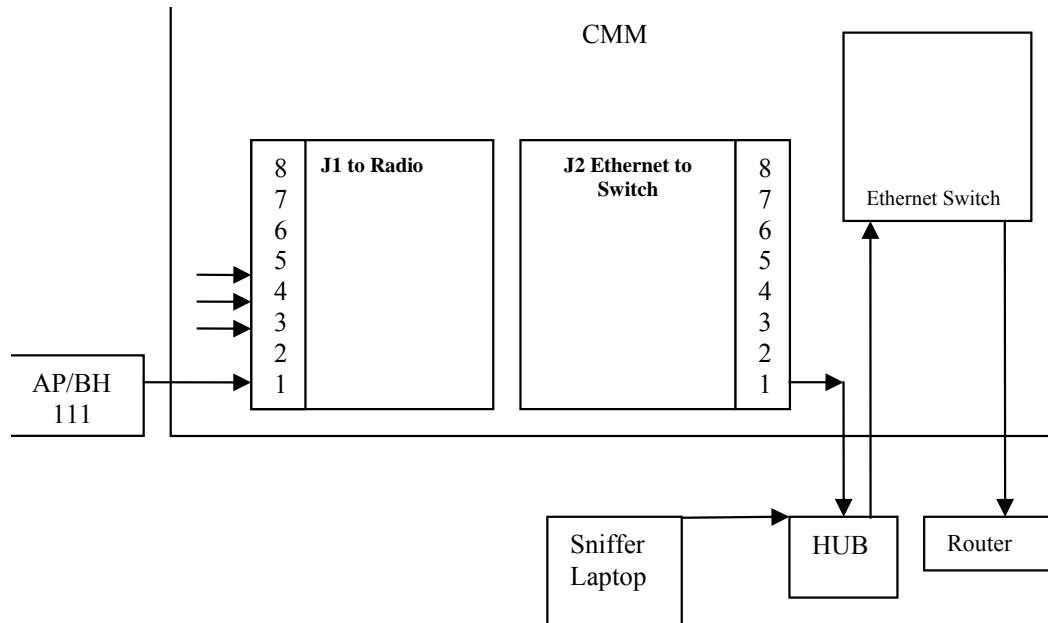


Figure 175: Protocol analysis at AP or BH not connected to a CMM

### 31.3 ANALYZING TRAFFIC AT AN AP OR BH WITH A CMM

The IP address of the protocol analyzer laptop computer must match the IP addressing scheme of the AP/BH. If the router is configured to be a DHCP server, then configure the laptop computer to automatically obtain an address. If DHCP is not enabled, ensure that the laptop computer is configured with a static IP address in the same subnet as the AP/BH.

Connect the hub to the J2 Ethernet to Switch of the port that is associated with the AP/BH. This example is of capturing traffic from AP/BH 111, which is connected to Port 1. The configuration for analyzing traffic at an AP or BH that is connected to a CMM is shown in [Figure 176](#).



**Figure 176: Protocol analysis at AP or BH connected to a CMM**

### 31.4 EXAMPLE OF A PROTOCOL ANALYZER SETUP FOR AN SM

The following is an example of a network protocol analyzer setup using **Ethereal<sup>®</sup>** software to capture traffic at the SM level. The **Ethereal** network protocol analyzer has changed its name to **Wireshark<sup>™</sup>**, but functionality and use remains much the same. This example is based on the following assumptions:

- All required physical cabling has been completed.
- The hub, protocol analyzer laptop computer, and subscriber PC are successfully connected.
- The SM is connected
  - as shown in [Figure 175](#) on Page 462.
  - to the subscriber PC and the AP.
- **Ethereal** software is operational on the laptop computer.

Although these procedures involve the SM, the only difference in the procedure for analyzing traffic on an AP or BH is the hub insertion point.

The IP Configuration screen of the example SM is shown in [Figure 177](#).

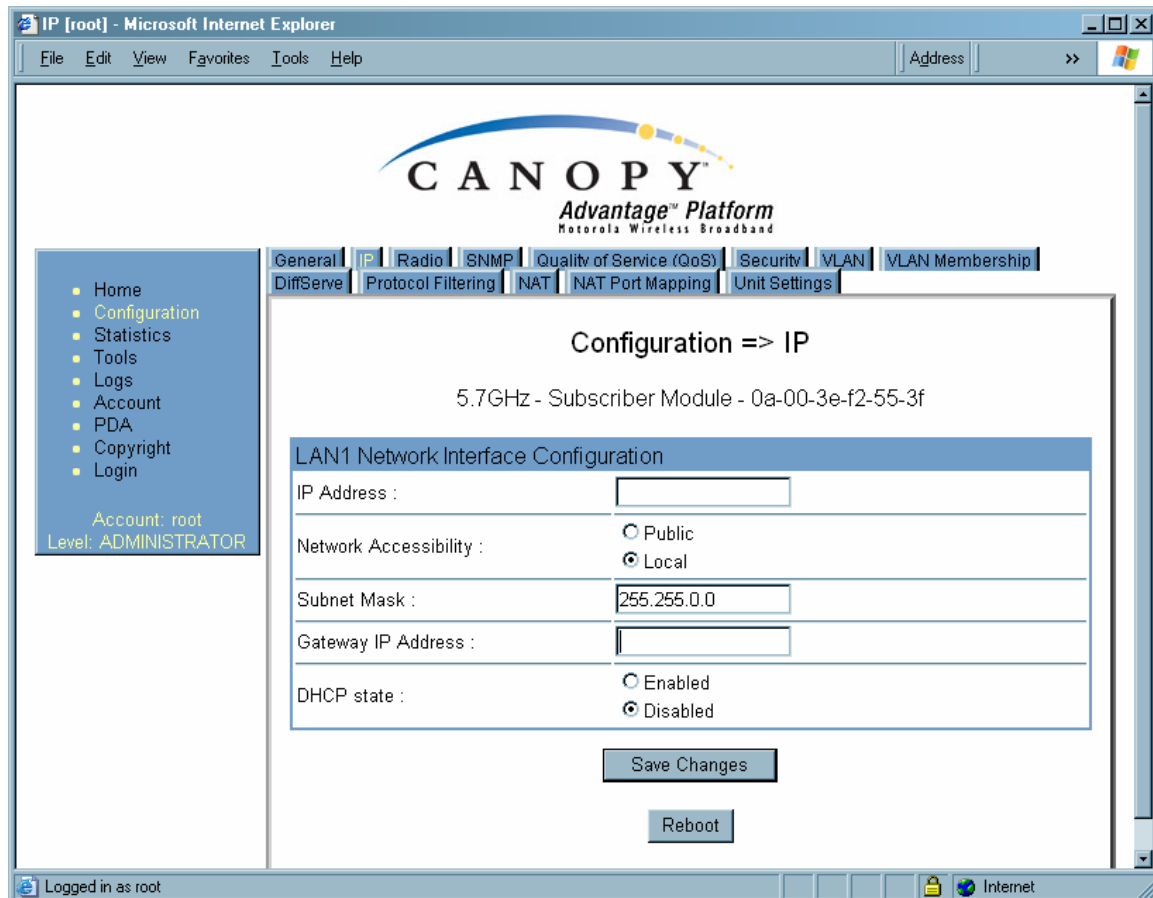
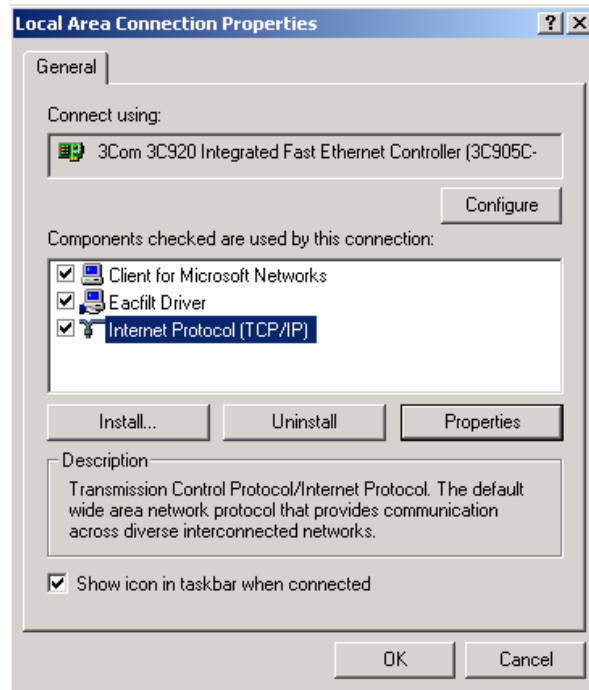


Figure 177: IP tab of SM with NAT disabled and local accessibility

#### Procedure 47: Setting up a protocol analyzer

1. Note the IP configuration of the SM.
2. Browse to **Start→My Network Places→Network and Dialup Connections**.
3. For **Local Area Connection**, select **Properties**.

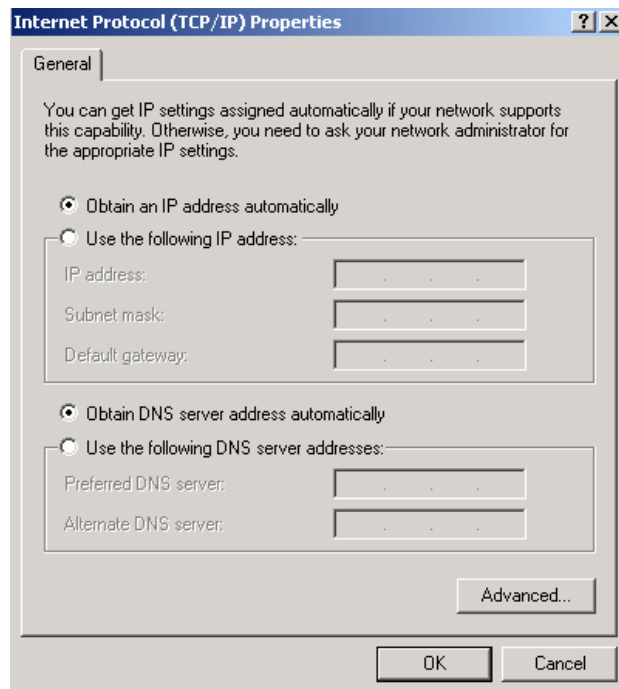
**RESULT:** The Local Area Connections Properties window opens, as shown in [Figure 178](#).



**Figure 178: Local Area Connection Properties window**

4. Select **Internet Protocol (TCP/IP)**.
5. Click the **Properties** button.

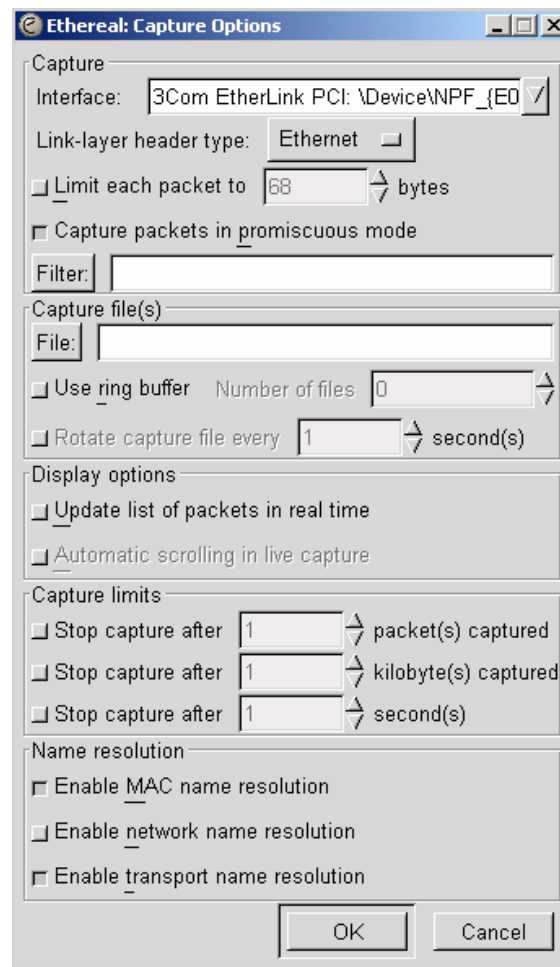
**RESULT:** The Internet Protocol (TCP/IP) Properties window opens, as shown in [Figure 179](#).



**Figure 179: Internet Protocol (TCP/IP) Properties window**

6. Unless you have a static IP address configured on the SM, select **Obtain an IP address automatically** for the protocol analyzer laptop computer, as shown in [Figure 179](#).
7. If you have configured a static IP address on the SM, then
  - a. select **Use the following IP address**.
  - b. enter an IP address that is in the same subnet as the SM.
8. Click **OK**.
9. Open your web browser.
10. Enter the IP address of the SM.  
*RESULT:* The General Status tab of the SM opens, as shown in [Figure 66](#) on Page 200.
11. If the General Status tab did not open, reconfigure how the laptop computer obtains an IP address.
12. Verify that you have connectivity from the laptop computer to the SM with the hub inserted.
13. Launch the protocol analyzer software on the laptop computer.
14. In the **Capture** menu, select **Start**.

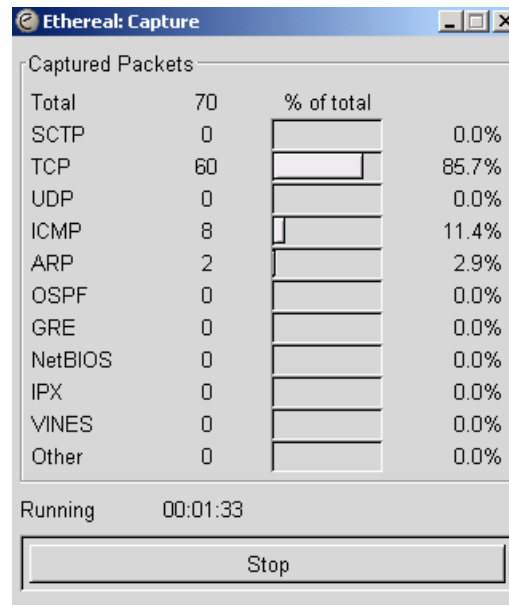
*RESULT:* The Ethereal Capture Options window opens, as shown in [Figure 180](#).



**Figure 180: Ethereal Capture Options window**

15. Ensure that the **Interface** field reflects the network interface card (NIC) that is used on the protocol analyzer laptop computer.  
*NOTE:* Although you can select filters based on specific types of traffic, all values are defaults in this example.
16. If you wish to select filters, select them now.
17. Click **OK**.

*RESULT:* The Ethereal Capture window opens, as shown in [Figure 181](#).



**Figure 181: Ethereal Capture window**

*NOTE:* This window graphically displays the types of packets (by percentage) that are being captured.

18. If all packet types are displayed with 0%, either
  - launch your Web browser on the subscriber PC for the IP address of the SM
  - ping the SM from the home PC.
19. If still all packet types are displayed with 0% (meaning that no traffic is being captured), reconfigure IP addressing until you can successfully see traffic captured on the laptop computer.
20. Whenever the desired number of packets have been captured, click **Stop**.

*RESULT:* When you stop the packet capture, the <capture> - Ethereal window opens, as shown in [Figure 182](#).

===== end of procedure =====

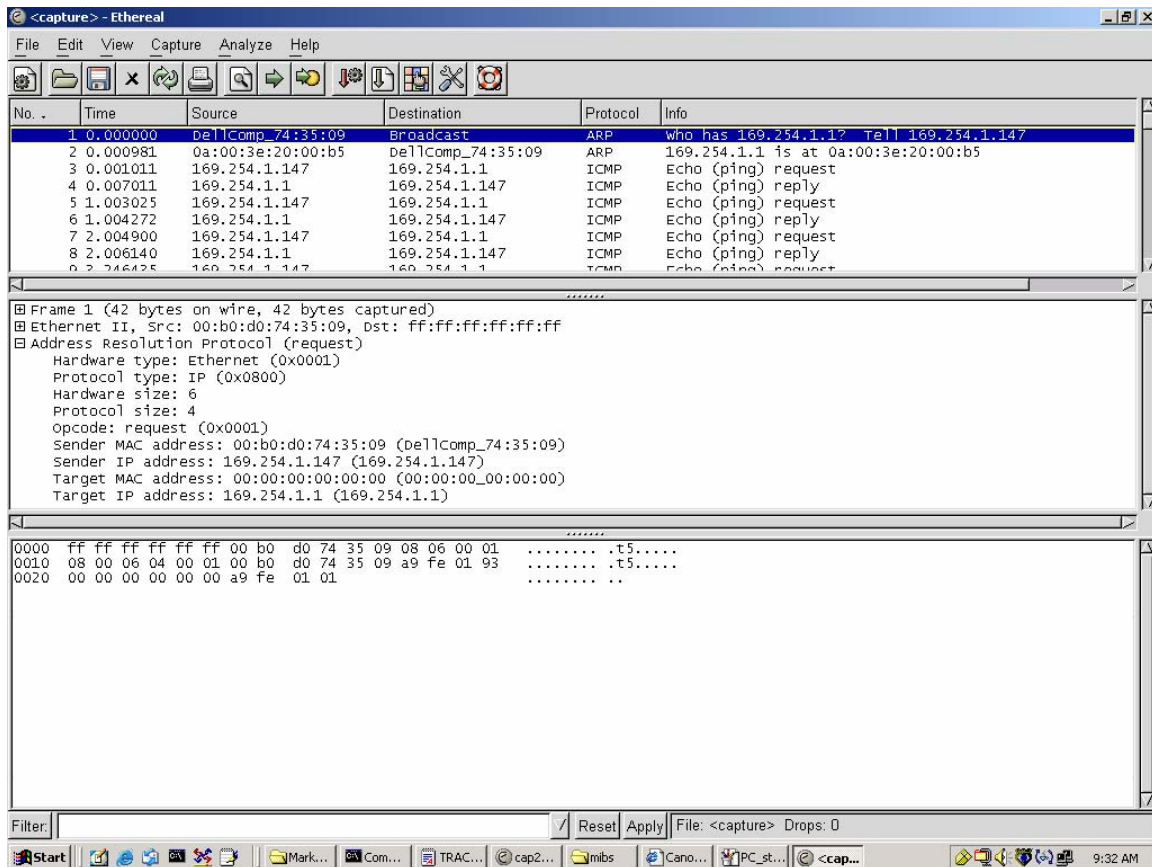


Figure 182: &lt;capture&gt; - Ethereal window, Packet 1 selected

This window has three panes:

- The top pane provides a sequenced summary of the packets captured and includes SRC/DEST address and type of protocol. What you select in this pane determines the additional information that is displayed in the lower two panes.
- The lower two panes facilitate drill-down into the packet that you selected in the top pane.

In this example, Packet 1 (a broadcast ARP request) was selected in the top pane. The lower two panes provide further details about Packet 1.

Another example is shown in [Figure 183](#).



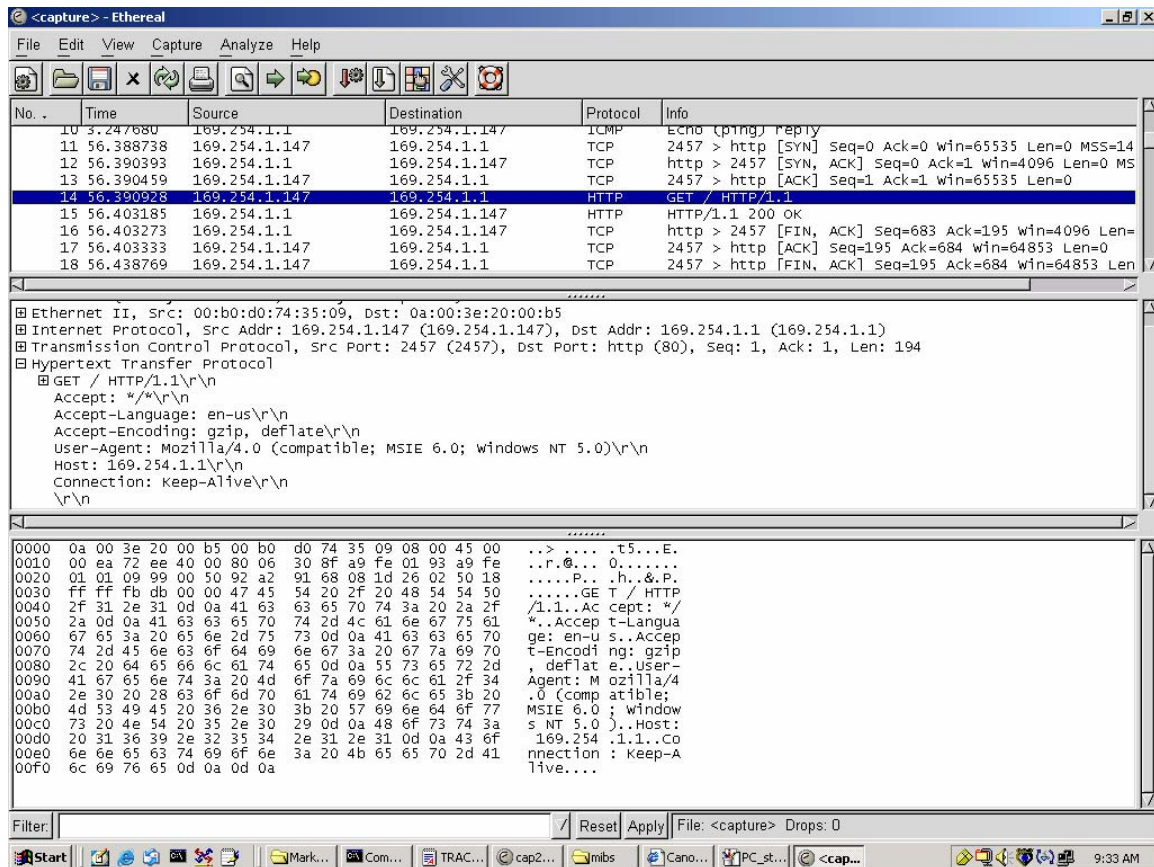


Figure 183: &lt;capture&gt; - Ethereal window, Packet 14 selected

In this second example, Packet 14 (protocol type HTTP) is selected in the top pane. The two lower panes provide further details about Packet 14.



## 32 TROUBLESHOOTING

### 32.1 GENERAL PLANNING FOR TROUBLESHOOTING

Effective troubleshooting depends in part on measures that you take before you experience trouble in your network. Canopy recommends the following measures for each site:

1. Identify troubleshooting tools that are available at your site (such as a protocol analyzer).
2. Identify commands and other sources that can capture baseline data for the site. These may include
  - **ping**
  - **tracert** or **tracert**
  - Link Capacity Test results
  - throughput data
  - Configuration tab captures
  - Status tab captures
  - session logs
3. Start a log for the site.
4. Include the following information in the log:
  - operating procedures
  - site-specific configuration records
  - network topology
  - software releases, boot versions, and FPGA firmware versions
  - types of hardware deployed
  - site-specific troubleshooting processes
  - escalation procedures
5. Capture baseline data into the log from the sources listed in Step 2.

### 32.2 GENERAL FAULT ISOLATION PROCESS

Effective troubleshooting also requires an effective fault isolation methodology that includes

- attempting to isolate the problem to the level of a system, subsystem, or link, such as
  - AP to SM
  - AP to CMM
  - AP to GPS
  - CMM to GPS
  - BHM to BHS
  - BHM to CMM
  - power

- researching Event Logs of the involved equipment. (See [Interpreting Messages in the Event Log](#) on Page 418.)
- answering the questions listed in the following section.
- reversing the last previous corrective attempt before proceeding to the next.
- performing only one corrective attempt at a time.

### 32.3 QUESTIONS TO HELP ISOLATE THE PROBLEM

When a problem occurs, attempt to answer the following questions:

1. What is the history of the problem?
  - Have we changed something recently?
  - Have we seen other symptoms before this?
2. How wide-spread is the symptom?
  - Is the problem on only a single SM? (If so, focus on that SM.)
  - Is the problem on multiple SMs? If so
    - is the problem on one AP in the cluster? (If so, focus on that AP)
    - is the problem on multiple, but not all, APs in the cluster? (If so, focus on those APs)
    - is the problem on all APs in the cluster? (If so, focus on the CMM and the GPS signal.)
3. Based on data in the Event Log (described in [Interpreting Messages in the Event Log](#) on Page 418)
  - does the problem correlate to External Hard Resets with no WatchDog timers? (If so, this indicates a loss of power. Correct your power problem.)
  - is intermittent connectivity indicated? (If so, verify your configuration, power level, jitter, cables and connections, and the speed duplex of both ends of the link).
  - does the problem correlate to loss-of-sync events?
4. Are connections made via *shielded* cables?
5. Does the GPS antenna have an *unobstructed* view of the entire horizon?

### 32.4 SECONDARY STEPS

After preliminary fault isolation through the above steps

1. check the Canopy knowledge base (<http://motorola.canopywireless.com/support/knowledge>) to find whether other network operators have encountered a similar problem.
2. proceed to any appropriate set of diagnostic steps. These are organized as follows:
  - [Module Has Lost or Does Not Establish Connectivity](#)
  - [NAT/DHCP-configured SM Has Lost or Does Not Establish Connectivity](#) on Page 474
  - [SM Does Not Register to an AP](#) on Page 476
  - [BHS Does Not Register to the BHM](#) on Page 477
  - [Module Has Lost or Does Not Gain Sync](#) on Page 478

- [Module Does Not Establish Ethernet Connectivity](#) on Page 479
- [Module Does Not Power Up](#) on Page 480
- [Power Supply Does Not Produce Power](#) on Page 480
- [CMM2 Does Not Power Up](#) on Page 481
- [CMM2 Does Not Pass Proper GPS Sync to Connected Modules](#) on Page 481

## 32.5 PROCEDURES FOR TROUBLESHOOTING

### 32.5.1 Module Has Lost or Does Not Establish Connectivity

To troubleshoot a loss of connectivity, perform the following steps.

#### Procedure 48: Troubleshooting loss of connectivity

1. Isolate the end user/SM from peripheral equipment and variables such as routers, switches, and firewalls.
2. Set up the minimal amount of equipment.
3. On each end of the link
  - a. check the cables and connections.
  - b. verify that the cable/connection scheme—straight-through or crossover—is correct.
  - c. verify that the LED labeled LNK is green.
  - d. access the General Status tab in the Home page of the module.
  - e. verify that the SM is registered.
  - f. verify that RSSI is 700 or higher.
  - g. verify that jitter is reported as 9 or lower.
  - h. access the IP tab in the Configuration page of the module.
  - i. verify that IP addresses match and are in the same subnet.
4. On the SM end of the link
  - a. verify that the PC that is connected to the SM is correctly configured to obtain an IP address through DHCP.
  - b. execute `ipconfig`.
  - c. verify that the PC has an assigned IP address.
5. On each end of the link
  - a. access the General tab in the Configuration page of each module.
  - b. verify that the setting for **Link Speeds** (or negotiation) matches that of the other module.
  - c. access the Radio tab in the Configuration page of each module.
  - d. verify that the **Radio Frequency Carrier** setting is checked in the **Custom Radio Frequency Scan Selection List**.
  - e. verify that the **Color Code** setting matches that of the other module.
  - f. access the browser LAN settings (for example, at **Tools→Internet Options→Connections→LAN Settings** in Internet Explorer).
  - g. verify that none of the settings are selected.

- h. access the Link Capacity Test tab in the Tools page of the module.
  - i. perform a link test. (See [Procedure 40: Performing a Link Capacity Test](#) on Page 441.)
  - j. verify that the link test results show efficiency greater than 90% in both the uplink and downlink (except as described under [Comparing Efficiency in 1X Operation to Efficiency in 2X Operation](#) on Page 137).
  - k. execute `ping`.
  - l. verify that no packet loss was experienced.
  - m. verify that response times are not significantly greater than
    - 2.5 ms from BH to BH
    - 4 ms from AP to SM
    - 15 ms from SM to AP
  - n. replace any cables that you suspect may be causing the problem.
6. After connectivity has been re-established, reinstall network elements and variables that you removed in Step 1.

===== end of procedure =====

### 32.5.2 NAT/DHCP-configured SM Has Lost or Does Not Establish Connectivity

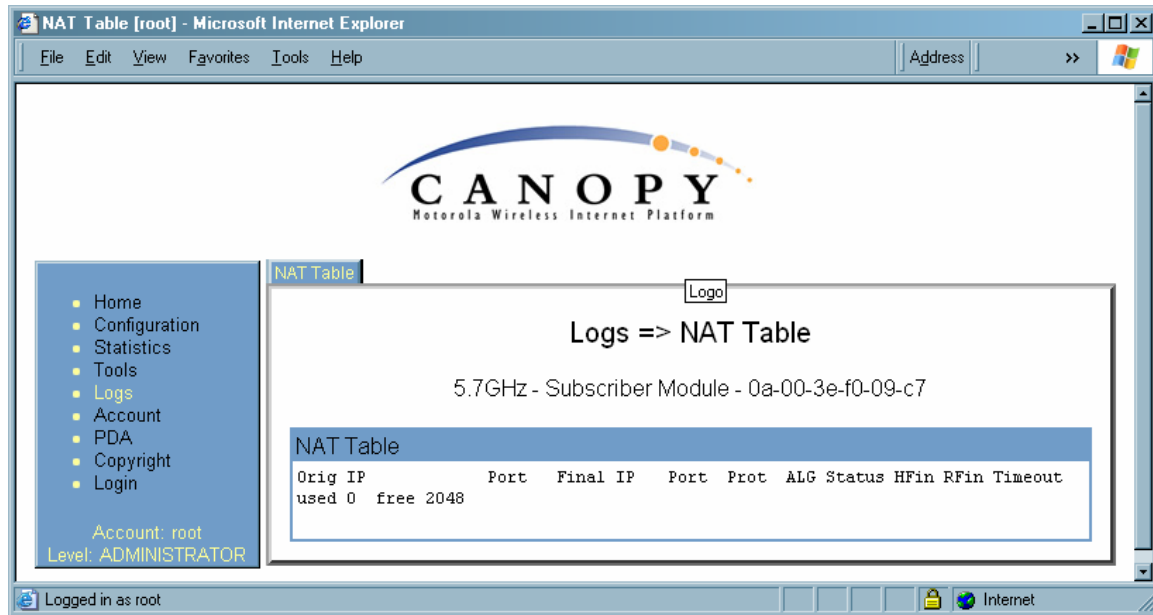
Before troubleshooting this problem, identify the NAT/DHCP configuration from the following list:

- NAT with DHCP Client and DHCP Server
- NAT with DHCP Client
- NAT with DHCP Server
- NAT without DHCP

To troubleshoot a loss of connectivity for an SM configured for NAT/DHCP, perform the following steps.

#### **Procedure 49: Troubleshooting loss of connectivity for NAT/DHCP-configured SM**

1. Isolate the end user/SM from peripheral equipment and variables such as routers, switches, and firewalls.
2. Set up the minimal amount of equipment.
3. On each end of the link
  - a. check the cables and connections.
  - b. verify that the cable/connection scheme—straight-through or crossover—is correct.
  - c. verify that the LED labeled LNK is green.
4. At the SM
  - a. access the NAT Table tab in the Logs web page.  
*NOTE:* An example of this tab is shown in [Figure 184](#).



**Figure 184: NAT Table tab of SM, example**

- b. verify that the correct NAT translations are listed.  
**RESULT:** NAT is eliminated as a possible cause if these translations are correct.
5. If this SM is configured for NAT with DHCP, then at the SM
  - a. execute `ipconfig`.
  - b. verify that the PC has an assigned IP address.
  - c. if the PC *does not* have an assigned IP address, then
    - enter `ipconfig /release "Adapter Name"`.
    - enter `ipconfig /renew "Adapter Name"`.
    - reboot the PC.
    - retreat to Step 5a.
  - d. if the PC has an assigned IP address, then
    - access the NAT DHCP Statistics tab in the Statistics web page of the SM.  
**NOTE:** An example of this tab is shown in [Figure 185](#).

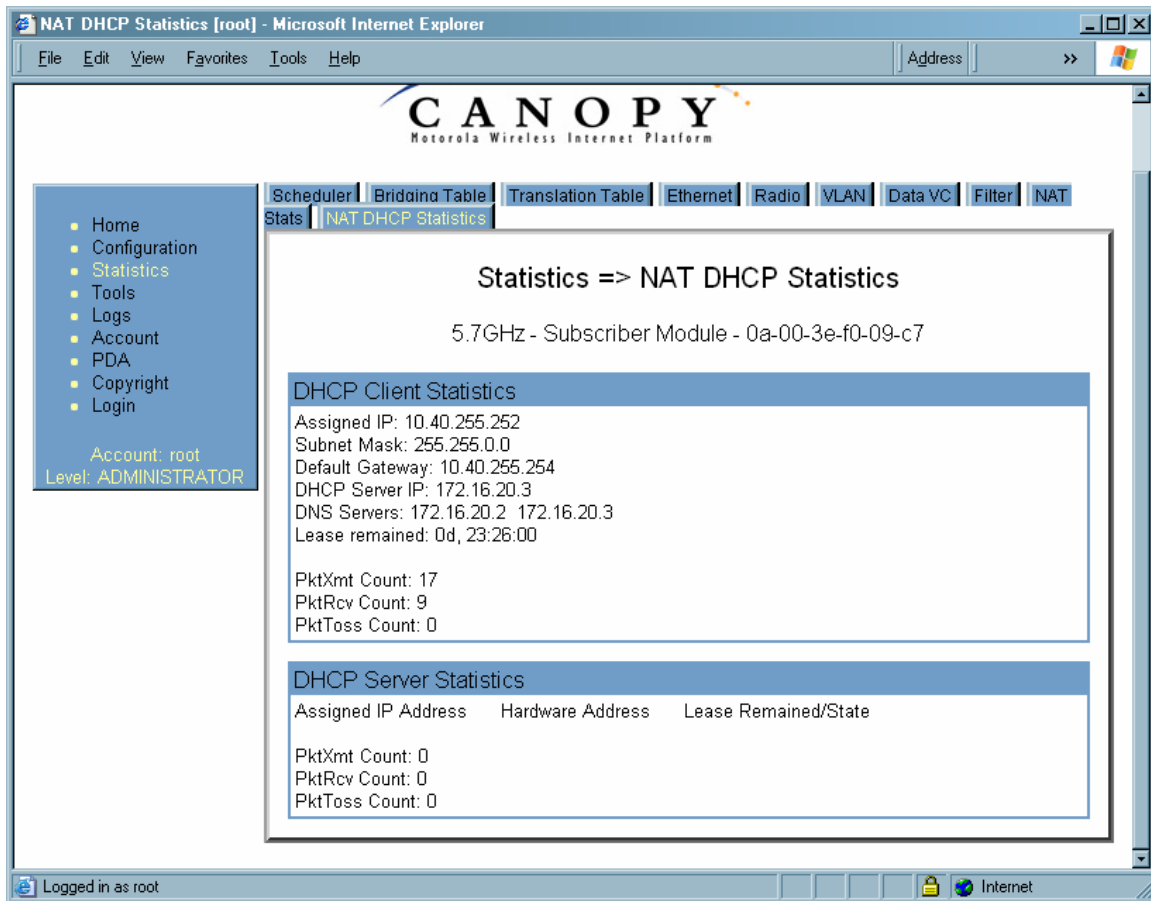


Figure 185: NAT DHCP Statistics tab of SM, example

- verify that DHCP is operating as configured.
6. After connectivity has been re-established, reinstall network elements and variables that you removed in Step 1.

===== end of procedure =====

### 32.5.3 SM Does Not Register to an AP

To troubleshoot an SM failing to register to an AP, perform the following steps.

#### Procedure 50: Troubleshooting SM failing to register to an AP

1. Access the Radio tab in the Configuration page of the SM.
2. Note the **Color Code** of the SM.
3. Access the Radio tab in the Configuration page of the AP.
4. Verify that the **Color Code** of the AP matches that of the SM.
5. Note the **Radio Frequency Carrier** of the AP.
6. Verify that the value of the **RF Frequency Carrier** of the AP is selected in the **Custom Radio Frequency Scan Selection List** parameter in the SM.



7. In the AP, verify that the **Max Range** parameter is set to a distance slightly greater than the distance between the AP and the furthest SM that must register to this AP.
8. Verify that a clear line of sight exists between the AP and the SM, and that no obstruction significantly penetrates the Fresnel zone of the attempted link. If these conditions are not established, then verify that the AP and SM are 900-MHz modules in close proximity to each other.
9. Access the General Status tab in the Home page of each module.
10. In the **Software Version** field, verify that both the AP and SM are of the same encryption scheme (AES or DES).
11. Remove the bottom cover of the SM to expose the LEDs.
12. Power cycle the SM.  
*RESULT:* Approximately 25 seconds after the power cycle, the green LED labeled LNK should light to indicate that the link has been established. If the orange LED labeled SYN is lit instead, then the SM is in Alignment mode because the SM failed to establish the link.
13. In this latter case, and if the SM has encountered no customer-inflicted damage, then request an RMA for the SM.

===== end of procedure =====

#### 32.5.4 BHS Does Not Register to the BHM

To troubleshoot an BHS failing to register to the BHM, perform the following steps.

##### **Procedure 51: Troubleshooting BHS failing to register to a BHM**

1. Access the Radio tab in the Configuration page of the BHS.
2. Note the **Color Code** of the BHS.
3. Access the Radio tab in the Configuration page of the BHM.
4. Verify that the **Color Code** of the BHM matches that of the BHS.
5. Note the **Radio Frequency Carrier** of the BHM.
6. Verify that the value of the **RF Frequency Carrier** of the BHM is selected in the **Custom Radio Frequency Scan Selection List** parameter on the Configuration page of the BHS.
7. Verify that a clear line of sight exists between the BHM and BHS, and that no obstruction significantly penetrates the Fresnel zone of the attempted link.
8. Access the General Status tab in the Home page of each module.
9. In the **Software Version** field, verify that both the BHM and BHS are of the same encryption scheme (AES or DES).
10. Also in the Software Version field, verify that both the BHM and BHS are of the same modulation rate from the factory (BH20 or BH10).
11. Remove the bottom cover of the BHS to expose the LEDs.

## 12. Power cycle the BHS.

**RESULT:** Approximately 25 seconds after the power cycle, the green LED labeled LNK should light to indicate that the link has been established. If the orange LED labeled SYN is lit instead, then the BHS is in Alignment mode because the BHS failed to establish the link. In this latter case, and if the BHS has encountered no customer-inflicted damage, then request an RMA for the BHS.

===== end of procedure =====

### 32.5.5 Module Has Lost or Does Not Gain Sync

To troubleshoot a loss of sync, perform the following steps.

#### Procedure 52: Troubleshooting loss of sync

## 1. Access the Event Log tab in the Home page of the SM.

**NOTE:** An example of this tab is shown in [Figure 186](#).

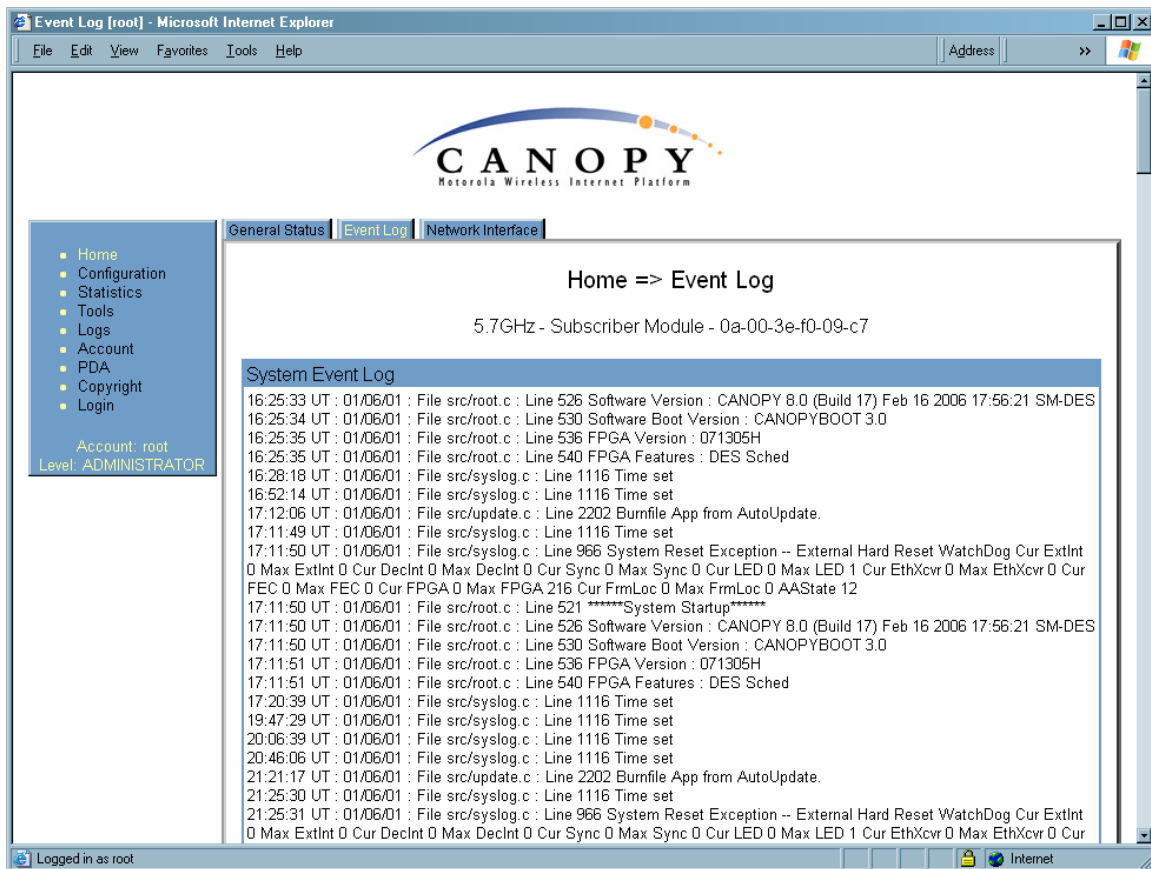


Figure 186: Event Log tab of SM, example

## 2. Check for messages with the following format:

RcvFrmNum =

ExpFrmNum =

(See [Table 67: Event Log messages for abnormal events](#) on Page 421.)

3. If these messages are present, check the Event Log tab of another SM that is registered to the same AP for messages of the same type.
4. If the Event Log of this second SM *does not* contain these messages, then the fault is isolated to the first SM.
5. If the Event Log page of this second SM contains these messages, access the GPS Status page of the AP.
6. If the **Satellites Tracked** field in the GPS Status page of the AP indicates fewer than 4 or the **Pulse Status** field does not indicate Generating Sync, check the GPS Status page of another AP in the same AP cluster for these indicators.
7. If these indicators are present in the second AP
  - a. verify that the GPS antenna still has an unobstructed view of the entire horizon.
  - b. visually inspect the cable and connections between the GPS antenna and the CMM.
  - c. if this cable is not shielded, replace the cable with shielded cable.
8. If these indicators *are not* present in the second AP
  - a. visually inspect the cable and connections between the CMM and the AP antenna.
  - b. if this cable is not shielded, replace the cable with shielded cable.

===== end of procedure =====

### 32.5.6 Module Does Not Establish Ethernet Connectivity

To troubleshoot a loss of Ethernet connectivity, perform the following steps.

#### Procedure 53: Troubleshooting loss of Ethernet connectivity

1. Verify that the connector crimps on the Ethernet cable are not loose.
2. Verify that the Ethernet cable is not damaged.
3. If the Ethernet cable connects the module to a network interface card (NIC), verify that the cable is pinned out as a straight-through cable.
4. If the Ethernet cable connects the module to a hub, switch, or router, verify that the cable is pinned out as a crossover cable.
5. Verify that the Ethernet port to which the cable connects the module is set to auto-negotiate speed.
6. Power cycle the module.  
**RESULT:** Approximately 25 seconds after the power cycle, the green LED labeled LNK should light to indicate that the link has been established. If the orange LED labeled SYN is lit instead, then the module is in Alignment mode because the module failed to establish the link.
7. In this latter case, and if the module has encountered no customer-inflicted damage, then request an RMA for the module.

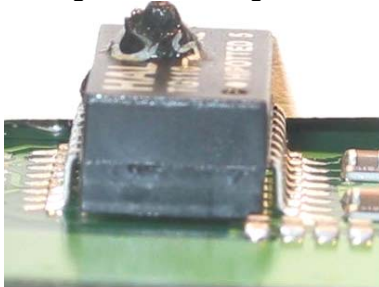
===== end of procedure =====

### 32.5.7 Module Does Not Power Up

To troubleshoot the failure of a module to power up, perform the following steps.

#### Procedure 54: Troubleshooting failure to power up

1. Verify that the connector crimps on the Ethernet cable are not loose.
2. Verify that the Ethernet cable is not damaged.
3. Verify that the cable is wired and pinned out according to the specifications provided under [Wiring Connectors](#) on Page 184.
4. Remove the cover of the module to expose the components on the printed wiring board.
5. Find the Ethernet transformer, which is labeled with either the name Halo or the name Pulse.
6. Verify that the Ethernet transformer does not show damage that would have been caused by improper cabling. (You can recognize damage as the top of the transformer being no longer smooth. The transformer in the following picture is damaged and is ineligible for an RMA.)



7. Connect the power supply to a known good Canopy module via a known good Ethernet cable.
8. Attempt to power up the known good module and
  - if the known good module fails to power up, request an RMA for the power supply.
  - if the known good module powers up, return to the module that does not power up.
9. Reconnect the power supply to the failing module.
10. Connect the power supply to a power source.
11. Verify that the red LED labeled PWR lights.
12. If this LED *does not* light, and the module has not been powered up since the last previous FPGA firmware upgrade was performed on the module, then request an RMA for the module.

===== end of procedure =====

### 32.5.8 Power Supply Does Not Produce Power

To troubleshoot the failure of a power supply to produce power, perform the following steps.

#### Procedure 55: Troubleshooting failure of power supply to produce power

1. Verify that the connector crimps on the Ethernet cable are not loose.
2. Verify that the Ethernet cable is not damaged.

3. Verify that the cable is wired and pinned out according to the specifications provided under [Wiring Connectors](#) on Page 184.
4. Connect the power supply to a known good Canopy module via a known good Ethernet cable.
5. Attempt to power up the known good module.
6. If the known good module fails to power up, request an RMA for the power supply.

===== end of procedure =====

### 32.5.9 CMM2 Does Not Power Up

To troubleshoot a malfunctioning CMM2, perform the following steps.

#### Procedure 56: Troubleshooting CMM2 that malfunctions

1. Verify that the 115-/230-V switch (in the lower right-hand corner of the CMM2) is in the correct position for the power source. (See [Figure 129](#) on Page 343.) Applying power when this switch is in the wrong position can damage the CMM2 and will render it ineligible for an RMA.
2. Verify that the electrical source to the CMM2 meets Canopy specifications. See [Table 20](#) on Page 75.
3. Verify that the electrical source is connected to the CMM2 at the proper connection point. (See [Figure 131](#) on Page 346.)
4. Verify that the fuse is operational.
5. Verify that the fuse is properly seated in the receptacle.
6. Attempt to power up the CMM2.
7. If the power indicator on the interconnect board of the CMM2 fails to light when power is applied to the CMM2, request an RMA for the CMM2.

===== end of procedure =====

### 32.5.10 CMM2 Does Not Pass Proper GPS Sync to Connected Modules

If the Event Log tabs in all connected modules contain `Loss of GPS Sync Pulse` messages, perform the following steps.

#### Procedure 57: Troubleshooting CMM2 not passing sync

1. Verify that the GPS antenna has an unobstructed view of the entire horizon.
2. Verify that the GPS coaxial cable meets specifications.
3. Verify that the GPS sync cable meets specifications for wiring and length.
4. If the web pages of connected modules indicate any of the following, then find and eliminate the source of noise that is being coupled into the GPS sync cable:
  - In the GPS Status page
    - anomalous number of **Satellites Tracked** (greater than 12, for example)
    - incorrect reported **Latitude** and/or **Longitude** of the antenna
  - In the Event Log page
    - garbled GPS messages
    - large number of `Acquired GPS Sync Pulse` messages

5. If these efforts fail to resolve the problem, then request an RMA for the CMM2.

===== end of procedure =====

### 32.5.11 Module Software Cannot be Upgraded

If your attempt to upgrade the software of a module fails, perform the following steps.

#### Procedure 58: Troubleshooting an unsuccessful software upgrade

1. Download the latest issue of the target release and the associated release notes.
2. Compare the files used in the failed attempt to the newly downloaded software.
3. Compare the procedure used in the failed attempt to the procedure in the newly downloaded release notes.
4. If these comparisons reveal a difference, retry the upgrade, this time with the newer file or newer procedure.
5. If, during attempts to upgrade the FPGA firmware, the following message is repeatable, then request an RMA for the module:

Error code 6, unrecognized device

===== end of procedure =====

### 32.5.12 Module Functions Properly, Except Web Interface Became Inaccessible

If a module continues to pass traffic, and the telnet and SNMP interfaces to the module continue to function, but the web interface to the module does not display, perform the following steps.

#### Procedure 59: Restoring the web interface to a module

1. Enter `telnet DottedIPAddress`.  
*RESULT:* A telnet session to the module is invoked.
2. At the Login prompt, enter `root`.
3. At the Password prompt, enter *PasswordIfConfigured*.
4. At the Telnet `+>` prompt, enter `reset`.  
*RESULT:* The web interface is accessible again, and this telnet connection is closed.

===== end of procedure =====

## 33 OBTAINING TECHNICAL SUPPORT

**NOTE:**

The contact information for Canopy Technical Support staff is included at the end of this section (on Page 487). However, in most cases, you should follow the procedure of this section before you contact them.

To get information or assistance as soon as possible for problems that you encounter, use the following sequence of actions:

1. Search this document, the user guides of products that are supported by dedicated documents, and the software release notes of supported releases
  - a. in the Table of Contents for the topic.
  - b. in the Adobe Reader<sup>9</sup> search capability for keywords that apply.<sup>9</sup>
2. Visit <http://motorola.canopywireless.com/support/knowledge> to view the Canopy Knowledge Base.
3. Ask your Canopy products supplier to help.
4. View and analyze event logs, error messages, and debug messages to help isolate the problem.
5. Check release notes and verify that all of your Canopy equipment is on the correct software release.
6. Verify that the Canopy configuration files match the last known good (baseline) Canopy configuration files captured in the site log book.
7. Verify connectivity (physical cabling).
8. At the SM level, minimize your network configuration (remove home network devices to help isolate problem).
9. Perform the site verification checklist.
10. Use [Table 69](#) (two pages) as a job aid to collect basic site information for technical support to use.

---

<sup>9</sup> Reader is a registered trademark of Adobe Systems, Incorporated.

**Table 69: Basic site information for technical support**

Call Log Number:	Company:	Location:
Problem Type:	Site Contact:	Site Phone:
Call Severity (Select One):  1- Urgent-Customer Svc Down 2- Serious- Customer Svc Impacted 3- Non-Critical/General Inquiry	Open Date:	Close Date:
Product Types Involved: (ID the product type) 2400 SM/AP/BHM/BHS 5200 ER /BHM/BHS 5200 SM/AP/BHM/BHS 5700 SM/AP/BHM/BHS 1008CK 300SS ACPS110	MAC Addresses:	IP Addresses:
Software Releases:	Boot Versions:	FPGA Versions:
Authentication ?: Yes/No Type:	Is the customer using shielded cables? Yes/No	Remote Access Method:  IP Address:





- IP address:
  - Downlink/uplink ratio:
  - Max range:
  - Bridge entry timeout:
  - Number of subscribers:
  - Method of synchronization:
14. If you selected [Figure 35](#)
- a. Indicate how many APs are in each cluster.
  - b. Indicate how many AP clusters are deployed (and what types).
  - c. Indicate how many BH links are configured.
  - d. Include the IP addresses.
  - e. Indicate the frequency for each sector.
  - f. Indicate the type of synchronization.
  - g. Indicate how much separation exists between clusters and BHs.
  - h. Indicate the types of BH links (10-Mbps or 20-Mbps).
  - i. Distances of links.
  - j. Frequency used by each BH.
  - k. For each AP and BHM, collect the following additional information:
    - Sector number:
    - SW release:
    - Frequency:
    - Color code:
    - IP address:
    - Downlink/uplink ratio:
    - Max range:
    - Bridge entry timeout:
    - Number of subscribers:
    - Method of synchronization:
15. If you selected [Figure 36](#), collect the following additional information:
- Sector number:
  - SW release:
  - Frequency:
  - Color code:
  - IP address:
  - Downlink/uplink ratio:
  - Max range:
  - Bridge entry timeout:
  - Number of subscribers:
  - Method of synchronization:
16. Add any details that are not present in the generic diagram that you selected.
17. Save your diagram as file `Net_Diagram`.

18. Capture screens from the following web pages of affected modules:
  - Home page Status tabs as files *SM/AP/BHM/BHS\_StatusTabname.gif*
  - Configuration page tabs as files *SM/AP/BHM/BHS\_ConfigTabname.gif*
  - Home page Event Log as file *SM/AP/BHM/BHS\_Events.gif*
  - Tools page Link Capacity Test tab (with link test results) as file *SM/AP/BHM/BHS\_LinkTST.gif*
  - Statistics page Radio tab as file *SM/AP/BHM/BHS\_RFstats.gif*
19. For any affected SM or BHS, capture the Tools page AP Evaluation tab as file *SM/BHS\_APEval.gif*.
20. For any affected SM that has NAT/DHCP enabled, capture screens from the following additional web pages:
  - Configuration page NAT tab as file *SM\_Natconfig.gif*
  - Configuration page NAT Port Mapping tab as file *SM\_NatPortmap.gif*
  - Logs page NAT Table tab as file *SM\_NatTable.gif*
  - Statistics page NAT Stats tab as file *SM\_NatStats.gif*
  - Statistics page Translation Table tab as file *SM\_ArpStats.gif*
  - Statistics page NAT DHCP Statistics tab as file *SM\_DhcpStats.gif*

Also capture the Windows IP Configuration screen as file *SM \_WindowsIP.gif*.
21. Escalate the problem to Canopy systems Technical Support (or another technical support organization that has been designated for you) as follows:
  - a. Start e-mail to [technical-support@canopywireless.com](mailto:technical-support@canopywireless.com). In this email
    - Describe the problem.
    - Describe the history of the problem.
    - List your attempts to solve the problem.
    - Attach the above files.
    - List the files that you are attaching.
  - b. Send the email.
  - c. Call 1 888 605 2552 (or +1 217 824 9742).

===== end of procedure =====



## **34 GETTING WARRANTY ASSISTANCE**

For warranty assistance, contact your reseller or distributor for the process.



# REFERENCE INFORMATION





## 35 ADMINISTERING MODULES THROUGH TELNET INTERFACE

In the telnet administrative interface to a module, the Canopy platform supports the commands defined in [Table 70](#). Many of these are not needed with CNUT.

**Table 70: Supported telnet commands for module administration**

Command	System help Definition	Notes
<b>addwebfile</b>	Add a custom web file	Syntax: <b>addwebfile</b> <i>filename</i> . Copies the custom web file <i>filename</i> to non-volatile memory.
<b>burnfile</b>	Burn flash from file	Syntax: <b>burnfile</b> <i>filename</i> . Updates the CPU firmware with a new image. User the image contained in <i>filename</i> if <i>filename</i> is provided. If provided, <i>filename</i> must match the module type (for example, <i>SMboot.bin</i> for a Subscriber Module or <i>APboot.bin</i> for an Access Point Module).
<b>cat</b>	Concatenate and display.	Syntax: <b>cat</b> <i>filename</i> . Displays the contents of <i>filename</i> .
<b>clearsyslog</b>	Clear the system event log	Syntax: <b>clearsyslog</b> . Clears the system event log.
<b>clearwebfile</b>	Clear all custom web files	Syntax: <b>clearwebfile</b> . Deletes all <i>custom</i> web files.
<b>exit</b>	Exit from telnet session	Syntax: <b>exit</b> . Terminates the telnet interface session.
<b>fpga_conf</b>	Update FPGA program	Syntax: <b>fpga_conf</b> . Forces a module to perform a hard (FPGA and CPU) reset. (See <b>reset</b> .)
<b>ftp</b>	File transfer application	Syntax: <b>ftp</b> . Launches the ftp client application on the module.
<b>help</b>	Display command line function help	Syntax: <b>help</b> . Displays a list of available telnet commands and a brief description of each.
<b>jbi</b>	Update FPGA program	Syntax: <b>jbi -aprogram file.jbc</b> . Updates the FPGA firmware with the new image contained in <i>file.jbc</i> .
<b>ls</b>	List the contents of a directory	Syntax: <b>ls</b> . Lists the file names of all files in the directory. Syntax: <b>ls -l</b> . Displays additional information, such as the sizes and dates of the files.
<b>lsweb</b>	List Flash Web files	Syntax: <b>lsweb</b> . Lists the file names of the saved custom web files.

Command	System help Definition	Notes
<b>ping</b>	Send ICMP ECHO_REQUEST packets to network hosts	Syntax: <b>ping</b> <i>IPaddress</i> . Sends an ICMP ECHO_REQUEST to <i>IPaddress</i> and waits for a response. If a response is received, the system returns <i>IPaddress</i> is alive. If no response is received, the system returns no answer from <i>IPaddress</i> .
<b>reset</b>	Reboot the unit	Syntax: <b>reset</b> . Forces the module to perform a hard (FPGA and CPU) module reset. (See <b>fpga_conf</b> .)
<b>rm</b>	Remove (unlink) files	Syntax: <b>rm</b> <i>filename</i> . Remove <i>filename</i> .
<b>syslog</b>	Display system event log: syslog <optional filename>	Syntax: <b>syslog</b> . Displays the contents of the system log. Syntax: <b>syslog</b> <i>filename</i> . Saves the contents of the system log to <i>filename</i> . Caution: overwrites <i>filename</i> if it already exists.
<b>telnet</b>	Telnet application	Syntax: <b>telnet</b> <i>hostIPaddress</i> . Launches the telnet client application on the Canopy module.
<b>tftp</b>	tftp application	Syntax: <b>tftp</b> <i>hostIPaddress</i> . Launches the tftp client application on the Canopy module.
<b>update</b>	Enable automatic SM code updating	Syntax: <b>update</b> <i>actionlist.txt</i> . Enables the automated update procedure that <i>actionlist.txt</i> specifies. (Supported for only the Access Point Module.)
<b>updateoff</b>	Disable automatic SM code updating	Syntax: <b>updateoff</b> . Disables the automated update procedure.
<b>version</b>	Display the software version string	Syntax: <b>version</b> . Displays the module version string, which contains the software/firmware/hardware versions, the module type, and the operating frequency.

## 36 LEGAL AND REGULATORY NOTICES

### 36.1 IMPORTANT NOTE ON MODIFICATIONS

Intentional or unintentional changes or modifications to the equipment must not be made unless under the express consent of the party responsible for compliance. Any such modifications could void the user's authority to operate the equipment and will void the manufacturer's warranty.

### 36.2 NATIONAL AND REGIONAL REGULATORY NOTICES

#### 36.2.1 U.S. Federal Communication Commission (FCC) and Industry Canada (IC) Notification

This device complies with Part 15 of the US FCC Rules and Regulations and with RSS-210 of Industry Canada. Operation is subject to the following two conditions: (1) This device may not cause harmful interference, and (2) This device must accept any interference received, including interference that may cause undesired operation. In Canada, users should be cautioned to take note that high power radars are allocated as primary users (meaning they have priority) of 5250 – 5350 MHz and 5650 – 5850 MHz and these radars could cause interference and/or damage to license-exempt local area networks (LELAN).

This equipment has been tested and found to comply with the limits for a Class B digital device, pursuant to Part 15 of the US FCC Rules and with RSS-210 of Industry Canada. These limits are designed to provide reasonable protection against harmful interference in a residential installation. This equipment generates, uses, and can radiate radio-frequency energy and, if not installed and used in accordance with these instructions, may cause harmful interference to radio communications. If this equipment does cause harmful interference to radio or television reception, which can be determined by turning the equipment on and off, the user is encouraged to correct the interference by one or more of the following measures:

- Increase the separation between the affected equipment and the unit;
- Connect the affected equipment to a power outlet on a different circuit from that which the receiver is connected to;
- Consult the dealer and/or experienced radio/TV technician for help.

FCC IDs and Industry Canada Certification Numbers are listed in [Table 71](#):

**Table 71: US FCC IDs and Industry Canada certification numbers**

Module Types	Operating Frequency Range	Maximum Transmitter Output Power	Reflector or Antenna	FCC ID	Industry Canada Certification Number
SM AP	ISM 902 to 928 MHz	24 dBm (250 mW)  26 dBm (400 mW)  26 dBm (400 mW)  26 dBm (400 mW)	Canopy integrated antenna with 12 dBi gain  Maxrad Model # Z1681, flat panel with 10 dBi gain  Mars Model # MA-IS91-T2, flat panel with 10 dBi gain  MTI Model #MT-2630003/N, flat panel with 10 dBi gain	ABZ89FC5809	109W-9000ISM
SM AP BH	ISM 2400-2483.5 MHz	25 dBm (340 mW)	Allowed on SM and BH	ABZ89FC5808	109W-2400
SM AP BH	U-NII 5250-5350 MHz	23 dBm (200 mW)	Not Allowed	ABZ89FC3789	109W-5200
BH	U-NII 5250-5350 MHz	5 dBm (3.2 mW)	Recommended	ABZ89FC5807	109W-5210
SM AP BH	ISM 5725-5850 MHz	23 dBm (200 mW)	Allowed on SM and BH	ABZ89FC5804	109W-5700

### 36.2.2 Regulatory Requirements for CEPT Member States (<http://www.cept.org>)


When operated in accordance with the instructions for use, Motorola Canopy Wireless equipment operating in the 2.4 and 5.4 GHz bands is compliant with CEPT Recommendation 70-03 Annex 3 for Wideband Data Transmission and HIPERLANs. For compliant operation in the 2.4 GHz band, the transmit power (EIRP) from the built-in patch antenna and any associated reflector dish shall be no more than 100mW (20dBm). For compliant operation in the 5.4 GHz band, the transmit power (EIRP) from the built-in patch antenna and any associated reflector dish shall be no more than 1 W (30 dBm).


The following countries have completely implemented CEPT Recommendation 70-03 Annex 3A (2.4 GHz band):

- EU & EFTA countries: Austria, Belgium, Denmark, Spain, Finland, Germany, Greece, Iceland, Italy, Ireland, Liechtenstein, Luxembourg, Netherlands, Norway, Portugal, Switzerland, Sweden, UK
- New EU member states: Czech Republic, Cyprus, Estonia, Hungary, Lithuania, Latvia, Malta, Poland, Slovenia, Slovakia
- Other non-EU & EFTA countries: Bulgaria, Bosnia and Herzegovina, Turkey

The following countries have a limited implementation of CEPT Recommendation 70-03 Annex 3A:

- France - Outdoor operation at 100mW is only permitted in the frequency band 2400 to 2454 MHz;
  - Any outdoor operation in the band 2454 to 2483.5MHz shall not exceed 10mW (10dBm);
  - Indoor operation at 100mW (20dBm) is permitted across the band 2400 to 2483.5 MHz
- French Overseas Territories:
  - Guadeloupe, Martinique, St Pierre et Miquelon, Mayotte – 100mW indoor & outdoor is allowed
  - Réunion and Guyana – 100mW indoor, no operation outdoor in the band 2400 to 2420MHz
- Italy - If used outside own premises, general authorization required
- Luxembourg - General authorization required for public service
- Romania - Individual license required. T/R 22-06 not implemented


Motorola Canopy Radios operating in the 2400 to 2483.5MHz band and 5470 to 5725 MHz band are categorized as “Class 2” devices within the EU and are marked with the class identifier symbol , denoting that national restrictions apply (for example, France). The French restriction in the 2.4 GHz band will be removed in 2011. Users are advised to contact their national administrations for the current status on the implementation of ECC DEC(04)08 for the 5.4GHz band.

This equipment is “CE” marked  to show compliance with the European Radio & Telecommunications Terminal Equipment (R&TTE) directive 1999/5/EC. The relevant Declaration of Conformity can be found at <http://www.canopywireless.com/doc.php>.

Where necessary, the end user is responsible for obtaining any National licenses required to operate this product and these must be obtained before using the product in any particular country. However, for CEPT member states, 2.4 GHz Wideband Data Transmission equipment has been designated exempt from individual licensing under decision ERC/DEC(01)07. For EU member states, RLAN equipment in both the 2.4 & 5.4GHz bands is exempt from individual licensing under Commission Recommendation 2003/203/EC. Contact the appropriate national administrations for details on the conditions of use for the bands in question and any exceptions that might apply. Also see <http://www.ero.dk> for further information.

### 36.2.3 European Union Notification

The 5.7 GHz connectorized product is a two-way radio transceiver suitable for use in Broadband Wireless Access System (WAS), Radio Local Area Network (RLAN), or Fixed Wireless Access (FWA) systems. It is a Class 2 device and uses operating frequencies that are not harmonized throughout the EU member states. The operator is responsible for obtaining any national licenses required to operate this product and these must be obtained before using the product in any particular country.

This equipment is marked  0977 to show compliance with the European R&TTE directive 1999/5/EC.

The relevant Declaration of Conformity can be found at <http://www.canopywireless.com/doc.php>.

A European Commission decision, which is to be implemented by Member States by 31 October 2005, makes the frequency band 5470-5725 MHz available in all EU Member States for wireless access systems. Under this decision, the designation of Canopy 5.4GHz products become "Class 1 devices" and these do not require notification under article 6, section 4 of the R&TTE Directive. Consequently, these 5.4GHz products are only marked with the **CE** symbol and may be used in any member state.

For further details, see

[http://europa.eu.int/information\\_society/policy/radio\\_spectrum/ref\\_documents/index\\_en.htm](http://europa.eu.int/information_society/policy/radio_spectrum/ref_documents/index_en.htm).

### 36.2.4 UK Notification

The 5.7 GHz connectorized product has been notified for operation in the UK, and when operated in accordance with instructions for use it is compliant with UK Interface Requirement IR2007. For UK use, installations must conform to the requirements of IR2007 in terms of EIRP spectral density against elevation profile above the local horizon in order to protect Fixed Satellite Services. The frequency range 5795-5815 MHz is assigned to Road Transport & Traffic Telematics (RTTT) in the U.K. and shall not be used by FWA systems in order to protect RTTT devices. UK Interface Requirement IR2007 specifies that radiolocation services shall be protected by a Dynamic Frequency Selection (DFS) mechanism to prevent co-channel operation in the presence of radar signals.

### 36.2.5 Belgium Notification

Belgium national restrictions in the 2.4 GHz band include

- EIRP must be lower than 100 mW
- For crossing the public domain over a distance > 300m the user must have the authorization of the BIPT.
- No duplex working

### 36.2.6 Luxembourg Notification

For the 2.4 GHz band, point-to-point or point-to-multipoint operation is only allowed on campus areas. 5.4GHz products can only be used for mobile services.

### 36.2.7 Czech Republic Notification

2.4 GHz products can be operated in accordance with the Czech General License No. GL-12/R/2000.

5.4 GHz products can be operated in accordance with the Czech General License No. GL-30/R/2000.

### 36.2.8 Norway Notification

Use of the frequency bands 5725-5795 / 5815-5850 MHz are authorized with maximum radiated power of 4 W EIRP and maximum spectral power density of 200 mW/MHz. The radio equipment shall implement Dynamic Frequency Selection (DFS) as defined in Annex 1 of ITU-R Recommendation M.1652 / EN 301 893. Directional antennae with a gain up to 23 dBi may be used for fixed point-to-point links. The power flux density at the border between Norway and neighbouring states shall not exceed - 122.5 dBW/m<sup>2</sup> measured with a reference bandwidth of 1 MHz.

Canopy 5.7 GHz connectorized products have been notified for use in Norway and are compliant when configured to meet the above National requirements. Users shall ensure that DFS functionality is enabled, maximum EIRP respected for a 20 MHz channel, and that channel spacings comply with the allocated frequency band to protect Road Transport and Traffic Telematics services (for example, 5735, 5755, 5775 or 5835 MHz are suitable carrier frequencies). Note that for directional fixed links, TPC is not required, conducted transmit power shall not exceed 30 dBm, and antenna gain is restricted to 23 dBi (maximum of 40W from the Canopy 5.7 GHz connectorized products).

### 36.2.9 Greece Notification

The outdoor use of 5470-5725MHz is under license of EETT but is ☐ being harmonized according to the CEPT Decision ECC/DEC/(04) 08, of 9th July. ☐ End users are advised to contact the EETT to determine the latest position and obtain any appropriate licenses.

### 36.2.10 Brazil Notification

Local regulations do not allow the use of 900 MHz, 2.4 GHz, or 5.2 GHz Canopy modules in Brazil, nor do they allow the use of passive reflectors on 5.4 or 5.7 GHz Canopy Access Points.

For compliant operation in the 5.4 GHz band, the transmit power (EIRP) from the built-in patch antenna and any associated reflector dish shall be no more than 1 W (30 dBm). When using the passive reflector along with a 5.4 GHz Canopy radio, the transmitter output power of the radio must be configured no higher than 5 dBm. When not using the passive reflector, the transmitter output power of the radio must be configured no higher than 23 dBm.

The operator is responsible for enabling the DFS feature on any Canopy 5.4 GHz radio, and re-enabling it if the module is reset to factory defaults.

#### Important Note

This equipment operates as a secondary application, so it has no rights against harmful interference, even if generated by similar equipment, and cannot cause harmful interference on systems operating as primary applications.

### 36.2.11 Australia Notification

900 MHz modules must be set to transmit and receive only on 922 or 923 MHz so as to stay within the ACMA approved band of 915 MHz to 928 MHz for the class license and not interfere with other approved users.

After taking into account antenna gain (in dBi), 900 MHz modules' transmitter output power (in dBm) must be set to stay within the legal regulatory limit of 30 dBm (1 W) EIRP for this 900 MHz frequency band.

## 36.3 EXPOSURE

See [Preventing Overexposure to RF](#) on Page 171.

## 36.4 EQUIPMENT DISPOSAL



Please do not dispose of Electronic and Electric Equipment or Electronic and Electric Accessories with your household waste. In some countries or regions, collection systems have been set up to handle waste of electrical and electronic equipment. In European Union countries, please contact your local equipment supplier representative or service centre for information about the waste collection system in your country.

## 36.5 LEGAL NOTICES

### 36.5.1 Software License Terms and Conditions

ONLY OPEN THE PACKAGE, OR USE THE SOFTWARE AND RELATED PRODUCT IF YOU ACCEPT THE TERMS OF THIS LICENSE. BY BREAKING THE SEAL ON THIS DISK KIT / CDROM, OR IF YOU USE THE SOFTWARE OR RELATED PRODUCT, YOU ACCEPT THE



TERMS OF THIS LICENSE AGREEMENT. IF YOU DO NOT AGREE TO THESE TERMS, DO NOT USE THE SOFTWARE OR RELATED PRODUCT; INSTEAD, RETURN THE SOFTWARE TO PLACE OF PURCHASE FOR A FULL REFUND. THE FOLLOWING AGREEMENT IS A LEGAL AGREEMENT BETWEEN YOU (EITHER AN INDIVIDUAL OR ENTITY), AND MOTOROLA, INC. (FOR ITSELF AND ITS LICENSORS). THE RIGHT TO USE THIS PRODUCT IS LICENSED ONLY ON THE CONDITION THAT YOU AGREE TO THE FOLLOWING TERMS.

Now, therefore, in consideration of the promises and mutual obligations contained herein, and for other good and valuable consideration, the receipt and sufficiency of which are hereby mutually acknowledged, you and Motorola agree as follows:

**Grant of License.** Subject to the following terms and conditions, Motorola, Inc., grants to you a personal, revocable, non-assignable, non-transferable, non-exclusive and limited license to use on a single piece of equipment only one copy of the software contained on this disk (which may have been pre-loaded on the equipment)(Software). You may make two copies of the Software, but only for backup, archival, or disaster recovery purposes. On any copy you make of the Software, you must reproduce and include the copyright and other proprietary rights notice contained on the copy we have furnished you of the Software.

**Ownership.** Motorola (or its supplier) retains all title, ownership and intellectual property rights to the Software and any copies,

including translations, compilations, derivative works (including images) partial copies and portions of updated works. The Software is Motorola's (or its supplier's) confidential proprietary information. This Software License Agreement does not convey to you any interest in or to the Software, but only a limited right of use. You agree not to disclose it or make it available to anyone without Motorola's written authorization. You will exercise no less than reasonable care to protect the Software from unauthorized disclosure. You agree not to disassemble, decompile or reverse engineer, or create derivative works of the Software, except and only to the extent that such activity is expressly permitted by applicable law.

**Termination.** This License is effective until terminated. This License will terminate immediately without notice from Motorola or judicial resolution if you fail to comply with any provision of this License. Upon such termination you must destroy the Software, all accompanying written materials and all copies thereof, and the sections entitled Limited Warranty, Limitation of Remedies and Damages, and General will survive any termination.

**Limited Warranty.** Motorola warrants for a period of ninety (90) days from Motorola's or its customer's shipment of the Software to you that (i) the disk(s) on which the Software is recorded will be free from defects in materials and workmanship under normal use and (ii) the Software, under normal use, will perform substantially in accordance with Motorola's published specifications for that release level of the Software. The written materials are provided "AS IS" and without warranty of any kind. Motorola's entire liability and your sole and exclusive remedy for any breach of the foregoing limited warranty will be, at Motorola's option, replacement of the disk(s), provision of downloadable patch or replacement code, or refund of the unused portion of your bargained for contractual benefit up to the amount paid for this Software License.

THIS LIMITED WARRANTY IS THE ONLY WARRANTY PROVIDED BY MOTOROLA, AND MOTOROLA AND ITS LICENSORS EXPRESSLY DISCLAIM ALL OTHER WARRANTIES, EITHER EXPRESS OF IMPLIED, INCLUDING BUT NOT LIMITED TO IMPLIED WARRANTIES OF MERCHANTABILITY AND FITNESS FOR A PARTICULAR PURPOSE AND NONINFRINGEMENT. MOTOROLA DOES NOT WARRANT THAT THE OPERATION OF THE SOFTWARE WILL BE UNINTERRUPTED OR ERROR-FREE, OR THAT DEFECTS IN THE SOFTWARE WILL BE CORRECTED. NO ORAL OR WRITTEN REPRESENTATIONS MADE BY MOTOROLA OR AN AGENT THEREOF SHALL CREATE A WARRANTY OR IN ANY WAY INCREASE THE SCOPE OF THIS WARRANTY. MOTOROLA DOES NOT WARRANT ANY SOFTWARE THAT HAS BEEN OPERATED IN EXCESS OF SPECIFICATIONS, DAMAGED, MISUSED, NEGLECTED, OR IMPROPERLY INSTALLED. BECAUSE SOME JURISDICTIONS DO NOT ALLOW THE EXCLUSION OR LIMITATION OF IMPLIED WARRANTIES, THE ABOVE LIMITATIONS MAY NOT APPLY TO YOU.

**Limitation of Remedies and Damages.** Regardless of whether any remedy set forth herein fails of its essential purpose, IN NO EVENT SHALL MOTOROLA OR ANY OF THE LICENSORS,



DIRECTORS, OFFICERS, EMPLOYEES OR AFFILIATES OF THE FOREGOING BE LIABLE TO YOU FOR ANY CONSEQUENTIAL, INCIDENTAL, INDIRECT, SPECIAL OR SIMILAR DAMAGES WHATSOEVER (including, without limitation, damages for loss of business profits, business interruption, loss of business information and the like), whether foreseeable or unforeseeable, arising out of the use or inability to use the Software or accompanying written materials, regardless of the basis of the claim and even if Motorola or a Motorola representative has been advised of the possibility of such damage. Motorola's liability to you for direct damages for any cause whatsoever, regardless of the basis of the form of the action, will be limited to the price paid for the Software that caused the damages. THIS LIMITATION WILL NOT APPLY IN CASE OF PERSONAL INJURY ONLY WHERE AND TO THE EXTENT THAT APPLICABLE LAW REQUIRES SUCH LIABILITY. BECAUSE SOME JURISDICTIONS DO NOT ALLOW THE EXCLUSION OR LIMITATION OF LIABILITY FOR CONSEQUENTIAL OR INCIDENTAL DAMAGES, THE ABOVE LIMITATION MAY NOT APPLY TO YOU.

**Maintenance and Support.** Motorola shall not be responsible for maintenance or support of the software. By accepting the license granted under this agreement, you agree that Motorola will be under no obligation to provide any support, maintenance or service in connection with the Software or any application developed by you. Any maintenance and support of the Related Product will be provided under the terms of the agreement for the Related Product.

**Transfer.** In the case of software designed to operate on Motorola equipment, you may not transfer the Software to another party except: (1) if you are an end-user, when you are transferring the Software together with the Motorola equipment on which it operates; or 2) if you are a Motorola licensed distributor, when you are transferring the Software either together with such Motorola equipment or are transferring the Software as a licensed duly paid for upgrade, update, patch, new release, enhancement or replacement of a prior version of the Software. If you are a Motorola licensed distributor, when you are transferring the Software as permitted herein, you agree to transfer the Software with a license agreement having terms and conditions no less restrictive than those contained herein. You may transfer all other Software, not otherwise having an agreed restriction on transfer, to another party. However, all such transfers of Software are strictly subject to the conditions precedent that the other party agrees to accept the terms and conditions of this License, and you destroy any copy of the Software you do not transfer to that party. You may not sublicense or otherwise transfer, rent or lease the Software without our written consent. You may not transfer the Software in violation of any laws, regulations, export controls or economic sanctions imposed by the US Government.

**Right to Audit.** Motorola shall have the right to audit annually, upon reasonable advance notice and during normal business hours, your records and accounts to determine compliance with the terms of this Agreement.

**Export Controls.** You specifically acknowledge that the software may be subject to United States and other country export control laws. You shall comply strictly with all requirements of all applicable export control laws and regulations with respect to all such software and materials.

**US Government Users.** If you are a US Government user, then the Software is provided with "RESTRICTED RIGHTS" as set forth in subparagraphs (c)(1) and (2) of the Commercial Computer Software-Restricted Rights clause at FAR 52 227-19 or subparagraph (c)(1)(ii) of the Rights in Technical Data and Computer Software clause at DFARS 252.227-7013, as applicable.

**Disputes.** You and Motorola hereby agree that any dispute, controversy or claim, except for any dispute, controversy or claim involving intellectual property, prior to initiation of any formal legal process, will be submitted for non-binding mediation, prior to initiation of any formal legal process. Cost of mediation will be shared equally. Nothing in this Section will prevent either party from resorting to judicial proceedings, if (i) good faith efforts to resolve the dispute under these procedures have been unsuccessful, (ii) the dispute, claim or controversy involves intellectual property, or (iii) interim relief from a court is necessary to prevent serious and irreparable injury to that party or to others.

**General.** Illinois law governs this license. The terms of this license are supplemental to any written agreement executed by both parties regarding this subject and the Software Motorola is to license you under it, and supersedes all previous oral or written communications between us regarding the subject except for such executed agreement. It may not be modified or waived except in writing and signed by an officer or other authorized representative of each party. If any provision is held invalid,

all other provisions shall remain valid, unless such invalidity would frustrate the purpose of our agreement. The failure of either party to enforce any rights granted hereunder or to take action against the other party in the event of any breach hereunder shall not be deemed a waiver by that party as to subsequent enforcement of rights or subsequent action in the event of future breaches.

### **36.5.2 Hardware Warranty in U.S.**

Motorola U.S. offers a warranty covering a period of one year from the date of purchase by the customer. If a product is found defective during the warranty period, Motorola will repair or replace the product with the same or a similar model, which may be a reconditioned unit, without charge for parts or labor.

### **36.5.3 Limit of Liability**

IN NO EVENT SHALL MOTOROLA BE LIABLE TO YOU OR ANY OTHER PARTY FOR ANY DIRECT, INDIRECT, GENERAL, SPECIAL, INCIDENTAL, CONSEQUENTIAL, EXEMPLARY OR OTHER DAMAGE ARISING OUT OF THE USE OR INABILITY TO USE THE PRODUCT (INCLUDING, WITHOUT LIMITATION, DAMAGES FOR LOSS OF BUSINESS PROFITS, BUSINESS INTERRUPTION, LOSS OF BUSINESS INFORMATION OR ANY OTHER PECUNIARY LOSS, OR FROM ANY BREACH OF WARRANTY, EVEN IF MOTOROLA HAS BEEN ADVISED OF THE POSSIBILITY OF SUCH DAMAGES. (Some states do not allow the exclusion or limitation of incidental or consequential damages, so the above exclusion or limitation may not apply to you.) IN NO CASE SHALL MOTOROLA'S LIABILITY EXCEED THE AMOUNT YOU PAID FOR THE PRODUCT.

## 37 ADDITIONAL RESOURCES

Canopy provides two additional resources where you can raise questions and find answers:

- Canopy Community Forums at <http://motorola.canopywireless.com/support/community/>.  
This resource facilitates communication with other users and with authorized Canopy experts. Available forums include General Discussion, Network Monitoring Tools, and Suggestions.
- Canopy Knowledge Base at <http://motorola.canopywireless.com/support/knowledge/>.  
This resource facilitates exploration and searches, provides recommendations, and describes tools. Available categories include
  - General (Answers to general questions provide an overview of the Canopy system.)
  - Product Alerts
  - Helpful Hints
  - FAQs (frequently asked questions)
  - Hardware Support
  - Software Support
  - Tools



## **38 HISTORY OF DOCUMENTATION**

This section is a placeholder where changes for Issue 2 and later of this *Canopy System Release 8 User Guide* will be listed.



# GLOSSARY

~.	The command that terminates an SSH Secure Shell session to another server. Used on the Bandwidth and Authentication Manager (BAM) master server in the database replication setup.
10Base-T	Technology in Ethernet communications that can deliver 10 Mb of data across 328 feet (100 meters) of CAT 5 cable.
100Base-TX	Technology in Ethernet communications that can deliver 100 Mb of data across 328 feet (100 meters) of CAT 5 cable.
169.254.0.0	Gateway IP address default in Canopy modules.
169.254.1.1	IP address default in Canopy modules.
169.254.x.x	IP address default in Microsoft and Apple operating systems without a DHCP (Dynamic Host Configuration Protocol) server.
255.255.0.0	Subnet mask default in Canopy modules and in Microsoft and Apple operating systems.
802.3	An IEEE standard that defines the contents of frames that are transferred through Ethernet connections. Each of these frames contains a preamble, the address to which the frame is sent, the address that sends the frame, the length of the data to expect, the data, and a checksum to validate that no contents were lost.
802.11	The IEEE standard for wireless local area networks.
802.15	The IEEE standard for wireless personal area networks.
Access Point Cluster	Two to six Access Point Modules that together distribute network or Internet services to a community of 1,200 or fewer subscribers. Each Access Point Module covers a 60° sector. This cluster covers as much as 360°. Also known as AP cluster.
Access Point Module	Also known as AP. One module that distributes network or Internet services in a 60° sector to 200 subscribers or fewer.
ACT/4	Second-from-left LED in the module. In the operating mode, this LED is lit when data activity is present on the Ethernet link. In the aiming mode for a Subscriber Module or a Backhaul timing slave, this LED is part of a bar graph that indicates the quality of the RF link.
Activate	To provide feature capability to a module, but not to <i>enable</i> (turn on) the feature in the module. See also Enable.
Address Resolution Protocol	Protocol defined in RFC 826 to allow a network element to correlate a host IP address to the Ethernet address of the host. See <a href="http://www.faqs.org/rfcs/rfc826.html">http://www.faqs.org/rfcs/rfc826.html</a> .



<b>Advanced Encryption Standard</b>	Over-the-air link option that provides extremely secure wireless connections. Advanced Encryption Standard (AES) uses 128-bit secret keys as directed by the government of the U.S.A. AES is not exportable and requires a special AP to process the large keys.
<b>AES</b>	See Advanced Encryption Standard.
<b>Aggregate Throughput</b>	The sum of the throughputs in the uplink and the downlink.
<b>AP</b>	Access Point Module. One module that distributes network or Internet services in a 60° sector to 200 subscribers or fewer.
<b>APA</b>	Access Point module address.
<b>Apache</b>	A trademark of Apache Software Foundation, used with permission.
<b>APAS</b>	Access Point Authentication Server. Licensed to authenticate SMs that attempt to register to it. The AP licensed as APAS may or may not have authentication <i>enabled</i> (turned on). See also Activate and Enable.
<b>API</b>	Application programming interface for web services that supports Prizm integration with an operations support systems (OSS) such as a customer relationship management (CRM), billing, or provisioning system.
<b>APs MIB</b>	Management Information Base file that defines objects that are specific to the Access Point Module or Backhaul timing master. See also Management Information Base.
<b>ARP</b>	Address Resolution Protocol. A protocol defined in RFC 826 to allow a network element to correlate a host IP address to the Ethernet address of the host. See <a href="http://www.faqs.org/rfcs/rfc826.html">http://www.faqs.org/rfcs/rfc826.html</a> .
<b>ASN.1</b>	Abstract Syntax Notation One language. The format of the text files that compose the Management Information Base.
<b>Attenuation</b>	Reduction of signal strength caused by the travel from the transmitter to the receiver, and caused by any object between. In the absence of objects between, a signal that has a short wavelength experiences a high degree of attenuation nevertheless.
<b>Authentication Key</b>	Software key that correlates to the random number that the Bandwidth and Authentication Manager (BAM) server generates and sends in a challenge through the AP to the SM. The network operator can create and, at some security risk, send this key over the air to the SM. The SQL database in the BAM server correlates this key to QoS information about the SM. The format of this key is 32 hexadecimal characters of 0 to 9 and a to f, padded with leading zeroes in Release 4.2.3 and later. This key must be unique to the individual SM.

<b>Backhaul Module</b>	Also known as BH. A module that provides point-to-point connectivity as either a standalone link or a link to an Access Point cluster through a selected Access Point Module. See also Backhaul Timing Master and Backhaul Timing Slave.
<b>Backhaul Timing Master</b>	Backhaul Module that sends network timing (synchronization) to another Backhaul Module, which serves as the Backhaul timing slave.
<b>Backhaul Timing Slave</b>	Backhaul Module that receives network timing (synchronization) from another Backhaul Module, which serves as the Backhaul timing master.
<b>BAM</b>	Bandwidth and Authentication Manager. A Canopy software product that operates on a Linux server to manage bandwidth, high-priority channel, and VLAN settings individually for each registered Subscriber Module. This software also provides secure Subscriber Module authentication and user-specified encryption keys. The upgrade path for this product is to Prizm Release 2.0 or later.
<b>BER</b>	Bit Error Rate. The ratio of incorrect data received to correct data received.
<b>BH</b>	Backhaul Module. A module that provides point-to-point connectivity as either a standalone link or a link to an Access Point cluster through a selected Access Point Module.
<b>Bit Error Rate</b>	Ratio of incorrect data received to correct data received.
<b>Box MIB</b>	Management Information Base file that defines module-level objects. See also Management Information Base.
<b>BRAID</b>	Stream cipher that the TIA (Telecommunications Industry Association) has standardized. The secret keys in both modules communicate with each other to establish the Data Encryption Standard key. See Data Encryption Standard.
<b>Bridge</b>	Network element that uses the physical address (not the logical address) of another to pass data. The bridge passes the data to either the destination address, if found in the simple routing table, or to all network segments other than the one that transmitted the data. Canopy modules are Layer 2 bridges except that, where NAT is enabled for an SM, the SM is a Layer 3 switch. Compare to Switch and Router, and see also NAT.
<b>Bridge Entry Timeout Field</b>	Value that the operator sets as the maximum interval for no activity with another module, whose MAC address is the Bridge Entry. This interval should be longer than the ARP (Address Resolution Protocol) cache timeout of the router that feeds the network.
<b>Buckets</b>	Theoretical data repositories that can be filled at preset rates or emptied when preset conditions are experienced, such as when data is transferred.
<b>Burst</b>	Preset amount limit of data that may be continuously transferred.

<b>C/I Ratio</b>	Ratio of intended signal (carrier) to unintended signal (interference).
<b>Canopy</b>	A trademark of Motorola, Inc.
<b>canopy.xml</b>	File that stores specifications for the Bandwidth and Authentication Manager (BAM) GUI.
<b>Carrier-to-interference Ratio</b>	Ratio of intended reception to unintended reception.
<b>CarSenseLost Field</b>	This field displays how many carrier sense lost errors occurred on the Ethernet controller.
<b>CAT 5 Cable</b>	Cable that delivers Ethernet communications from module to module. Later modules auto-sense whether this cable is wired in a straight-through or crossover scheme.
<b>cdf</b>	Canopy Data Formatter tool that creates an initial ESN Data Table. Inputs for this tool include a list of SM ESNs and default values of sustained data rates and burst allocations for each listed ESN.
<b>chkconfig</b>	A command that the Linux <sup>®</sup> operating system accepts to enable MySQL <sup>®</sup> and Apache <sup>™</sup> Server software for various run levels of the mysqld and httpd utilities.
<b>CIR</b>	See Committed Information Rate.
<b>Cluster Management Module</b>	Module that provides power, GPS timing, and networking connections for an AP cluster. Also known as CMM. If this CMM is connected to a Backhaul Module, then this CMM is the central point of connectivity for the entire site.
<b>CMM</b>	Cluster Management Module. A module that provides power, GPS timing, and networking connections for an Access Point cluster. If this CMM is connected to a Backhaul Module (BH), then this CMM is the central point of connectivity for the entire site.
<b>CodePoint</b>	See DiffServ.
<b>Color Code Field</b>	Module parameter that identifies the other modules with which communication is allowed. The range of values is 0 to 255. When set at 0, the Color Code does not restrict communications with any other module.
<b>Committed Information Rate</b>	For an SM or specified group of SMs, a level of bandwidth that can be guaranteed to never fall below a specified minimum. In the Canopy implementation, this is controlled by the Low Priority Uplink CIR, Low Priority Downlink CIR, High Priority Uplink CIR, and High Priority Downlink CIR parameters.
<b>Community String Field</b>	Control string that allows a network management station to access MIB information about the module.

<b>CPE</b>	Customer premises equipment.
<b>CRCError Field</b>	This field displays how many CRC errors occurred on the Ethernet controller.
<b>CRM</b>	Customer relationship management system.
<b>Data Encryption Standard</b>	Over-the-air link option that uses secret 56-bit keys and 8 parity bits. Data Encryption Standard (DES) performs a series of bit permutations, substitutions, and recombination operations on blocks of data.
<b>Date of Last Transaction</b>	A field in the data that the <code>cmd show esn</code> command generates from data in the SQL database in the Bandwidth and Authentication Manager (BAM) server. This field identifies the date of the most recent authentication attempt by the SM. Expressed in the database output as DLT.
<b>Dell</b>	A trademark of Dell, Inc.
<b>Demilitarized Zone</b>	Internet Protocol area outside of a firewall. Defined in RFC 2647. See <a href="http://www.faqs.org/rfcs/rfc2647.html">http://www.faqs.org/rfcs/rfc2647.html</a> .
<b>DES</b>	Data Encryption Standard. An over-the-air link option that uses secret 56-bit keys and 8 parity bits. DES performs a series of bit permutations, substitutions, and recombination operations on blocks of data.
<b>Desensed</b>	Received an undesired signal that was strong enough to make the module insensitive to the desired signal.
<b>DHCP</b>	Dynamic Host Configuration Protocol, defined in RFC 2131. Protocol that enables a device to be assigned a new IP address and TCP/IP parameters, including a default gateway, whenever the device reboots. Thus DHCP reduces configuration time, conserves IP addresses, and allows modules to be moved to a different network within the Canopy system. See <a href="http://www.faqs.org/rfcs/rfc2131.html">http://www.faqs.org/rfcs/rfc2131.html</a> . See also Static IP Address Assignment.
<b>Diffraction</b>	Partial obstruction of a signal. Typically diffraction attenuates a signal so much that the link is unacceptable. However, in some instances where the obstruction is very close to the receiver, the link may be acceptable.
<b>DiffServ</b>	Differentiated Services, consistent with RFC 2474. A byte in the type of service (TOS) field of packets whose values correlates to the channel on which the packet should be sent. The value is a numeric code point. Canopy maps each of 64 code points to values of 0 through 7. Three of these code points have fixed values, and the remaining 61 are settable. Values of 0 through 3 map to the low-priority channel; 4 through 7 to the high-priority channel. The mappings are the same as 802.1p VLAN priorities. Among the settable parameters, the values are set in the AP for all downlinks within the sector and in the SM for each uplink.

<b>Disable</b>	To turn off a feature in the module after both the feature activation file has <i>activated</i> the module to use the feature and the operator has <i>enabled</i> the feature in the module. See also Activate and Enable.
<b>DLT</b>	Date of last transaction. A field in the data that the <code>cmd show esn</code> command generates from data in the SQL database in the Bandwidth and Authentication Manager (BAM) server. This field identifies the date of the most recent authentication attempt by the SM.
<b>DMZ</b>	Demilitarized Zone as defined in RFC 2647. An Internet Protocol area outside of a firewall. See <a href="http://www.faqs.org/rfcs/rfc2647.html">http://www.faqs.org/rfcs/rfc2647.html</a> .
<b>Dynamic Host Configuration Protocol</b>	Protocol defined in RFC 2131 that enables a device to be assigned a new IP address and TCP/IP parameters, including a default gateway, whenever the device reboots. Thus Dynamic Host Configuration Protocol reduces configuration time, conserves IP addresses, and allows modules to be moved to a different network within the Canopy system. See <a href="http://www.faqs.org/rfcs/rfc2131.html">http://www.faqs.org/rfcs/rfc2131.html</a> . See also Static IP Address Assignment.
<b>Electronic Serial Number</b>	Hardware address that the factory assigns to the module for identification in the Data Link layer interface of the Open Systems Interconnection system. This address serves as an electronic serial number. Same as MAC Address.
<b>Element Pack</b>	A license for Prizm management of a multi-point sector and covers the AP and up to 200 SMs, a backhaul link, or an Powerline LV link.
<b>Enable</b>	To turn on a feature in the module after the feature activation file has <i>activated</i> the module to use the feature. See also Activate.
<b>Engine</b>	Bandwidth and Authentication Manager (BAM) interface to the AP and SMs. Unique sets of commands are available on this interface to manage parameters and user access. Distinguished from SSE. See also SSE.
<b>ESN</b>	Electronic Serial Number. The hardware address that the factory assigns to the module for identification in the Data Link layer interface of the Open Systems Interconnection system. This address serves as an electronic serial number. Same as MAC Address.
<b>ESN Data Table</b>	Table in which each row identifies data about a single SM. In tab-separated fields, each row stores the ESN, authentication key, and QoS information that apply to the SM. The operator can create and modify this table. This table is both an input to and an output from the Bandwidth and Authentication Manager (BAM) SQL database, and should be identically input to redundant BAM servers.
<b>/etc/services</b>	File that stores telnet ports on the Bandwidth and Authentication Manager (BAM) server.
<b>EthBusErr Field</b>	This field displays how many Ethernet bus errors occurred on the Ethernet controller.

<b>Ethernet Protocol</b>	Any of several IEEE standards that define the contents of frames that are transferred from one network element to another through Ethernet connections.
<b>Fade Margin</b>	The difference between strength of the received signal and the strength that the receiver requires for maintaining a reliable link. A higher fade margin is characteristic of a more reliable link. Standard operating margin.
<b>FCC</b>	Federal Communications Commission of the U.S.A.
<b>Feature Activation Key</b>	Software key file whose file name includes the ESN of the target Canopy module. When installed on the module, this file <i>activates</i> the module to have the feature <i>enabled</i> or disabled in a separate operator action.
<b>Field-programmable Gate Array</b>	Array of logic, relational data, and wiring data that is factory programmed and can be reprogrammed.
<b>File Transfer Protocol</b>	Utility that transfers of files through TCP (Transport Control Protocol) between computing devices that do not operate on the same platform. Defined in RFC 959. See <a href="http://www.faqs.org/rfcs/rfc959.html">http://www.faqs.org/rfcs/rfc959.html</a> .
<b>FPGA</b>	Field-programmable Gate Array. An array of logic, relational data, and wiring data that is factory programmed and can be reprogrammed.
<b>Frame Spreading</b>	Transmission of a beacon in only frames where the receiver expects a beacon (rather than in every frame). This avoids interference from transmissions that are not intended for the receiver.
<b>Frame Timing Pulse Gated Field</b>	Toggle parameter that prevents or allows the module to continue to propagate GPS sync timing when the module no longer receives the timing.
<b>Free Space Path Loss</b>	Signal attenuation that is naturally caused by atmospheric conditions and by the distance between the antenna and the receiver.
<b>Fresnel Zone</b>	Space in which no object should exist that can attenuate, diffract, or reflect a transmitted signal before the signal reaches the target receiver.
<b>FSK</b>	Frequency Shift Keying, a variation of frequency modulation to transmit data, in which two or more frequencies are used.
<b>FTP</b>	File Transfer Protocol, defined in RFC 959. Utility that transfers of files through TCP (Transport Control Protocol) between computing devices that do not operate on the same platform. See <a href="http://www.faqs.org/rfcs/rfc959.html">http://www.faqs.org/rfcs/rfc959.html</a> .
<b>Global Positioning System</b>	Network of satellites that provides absolute time to networks on earth, which use the time signal to synchronize transmission and reception cycles (to avoid interference) and to provide reference for troubleshooting activities.

<b>GPS</b>	Global Positioning System. A network of satellites that provides absolute time to networks on earth, which use the time signal to synchronize transmission and reception cycles (to avoid interference) and to provide reference for troubleshooting activities.
<b>GPS/3</b>	Third-from-left LED in the module. In the operating mode for an Access Point Module or Backhaul timing master, this LED is continuously lit as the module receives sync pulse. In the operating mode for a Subscriber Module or a Backhaul timing slave, this LED flashes on and off to indicate that the module is not registered. In the aiming mode for a Subscriber Module or a Backhaul timing slave, this LED is part of a bar graph that indicates the quality of the RF link.
<b>GUI</b>	Graphical user interface.
<b>High-priority Channel</b>	Channel that supports low-latency traffic (such as Voice over IP) over low-latency traffic (such as standard web traffic and file downloads). To recognize the latency tolerance of traffic, this channel reads the IPv4 Type of Service Low Latency bit.
<b>HTTP</b>	Hypertext Transfer Protocol, used to make the Internet resources available on the World Wide Web. Defined in RFC 2068. See <a href="http://www.faqs.org/rfcs/rfc2068.html">http://www.faqs.org/rfcs/rfc2068.html</a> .
<b>ICMP</b>	Internet Control Message Protocols defined in RFC 792, used to identify Internet Protocol (IP)-level problems and to allow IP links to be tested. See <a href="http://www.faqs.org/rfcs/rfc792.html">http://www.faqs.org/rfcs/rfc792.html</a> .
<b>indiscards count Field</b>	How many inbound packets were discarded without errors that would have prevented their delivery to a higher-layer protocol. (Some of these packets may have been discarded to increase buffer space.)
<b>inerrors count Field</b>	How many inbound packets contained errors that prevented their delivery to a higher-layer protocol.
<b>innucastpkts count Field</b>	How many inbound non-unicast (subnetwork-broadcast or subnetwork-multicast) packets were delivered to a higher-layer protocol.
<b>inoctets count Field</b>	How many octets were received on the interface, including those that deliver framing information.
<b>Intel</b>	A registered trademark of Intel Corporation.
<b>inucastpkts count Field</b>	How many inbound subnetwork-unicast packets were delivered to a higher-layer protocol.
<b>inunknownprotos count Field</b>	How many inbound packets were discarded because of an unknown or unsupported protocol.



<b>IP</b>	Internet Protocol defined in RFC 791. The Network Layer in the TCP/IP protocol stack. This protocol is applied to addressing, routing, and delivering, and re-assembling data packets into the Data Link layer of the protocol stack. See <a href="http://www.faqs.org/rfcs/rfc791.html">http://www.faqs.org/rfcs/rfc791.html</a> .
<b>IP Address</b>	32-bit binary number that identifies a network element by both network and host. See also Subnet Mask.
<b>IPv4</b>	Traditional version of Internet Protocol, which defines 32-bit fields for data transmission.
<b>ISM</b>	Industrial, Scientific, and Medical Equipment radio frequency band, in the 900-MHz, 2.4-GHz, and 5.8-GHz ranges.
<b>Jitter</b>	Timing-based measure of the reception quality of a link. An acceptable link displays a jitter value between 0 and 4 for a 10-Mbps Backhaul timing slave in Release 4.0 and later, between 0 and 9 for a 20-Mbps Backhaul timing slave, or between 5 and 9 for any Subscriber Module or for a Backhaul timing slave in any earlier release.
<b>L2TP over IPSec</b>	Level 2 Tunneling Protocol over IP Security. One of several virtual private network (VPN) implementation schemes. Regardless of whether Subscriber Modules have the Network Address Translation feature (NAT) enabled, they support VPNs that are based on this protocol.
<b>Late Collision Field</b>	This field displays how many late collisions occurred on the Ethernet controller. A normal collision occurs during the first 512 bits of the frame transmission. A collision that occurs after the first 512 bits is considered a late collision. A late collision is a serious network problem because the frame being transmitted is discarded. A late collision is most commonly caused by a mismatch between duplex configurations at the ends of a link segment.
<b>Latency Tolerance</b>	Acceptable tolerance for delay in the transfer of data to and from a module.
<b>Line of Sight</b>	Wireless path (not simply visual path) direct from module to module. The path that results provides both ideal aim and an ideal Fresnel zone.
<b>Linux</b>	A registered trademark of Linus Torvalds.
<b>LNK/5</b>	Furthest left LED in the module. In the operating mode, this LED is continuously lit when the Ethernet link is present. In the aiming mode for a Subscriber Module or a Backhaul timing slave, this LED is part of a bar graph that indicates the quality of the RF link.
<b>Logical Unit ID</b>	Final octet of the 4-octet IP address of the module.
<b>LOS</b>	Line of sight. The wireless path (not simply visual path) direct from module to module. The path that results provides both ideal aim and an ideal Fresnel zone.



<b>LUID</b>	Logical Unit ID. The final octet of the 4-octet IP address of the module.
<b>MAC Address</b>	Media Access Control address. The hardware address that the factory assigns to the module for identification in the Data Link layer interface of the Open Systems Interconnection system. This address serves as an electronic serial number.
<b>Management Information Base</b>	Space that allows a program (agent) in the network to relay information to a network monitor about the status of defined variables (objects).
<b>Master</b>	Designation that defines the role of a component relative to the role of another. This designation both applies to a Backhaul module that provides synchronization over the air to another Backhaul module (a Backhaul timing slave) and applies to a Bandwidth and Authentication Manager (BAM) server whose SQL database is automatically copied onto a redundant BAM server (BAM slave). In each case, the master is not a product. Rather, the master is the role that results from deliberate configuration steps.
<b>Maximum Information Rate</b>	The cap applied to the bandwidth of an SM or specified group of SMs. In the Canopy implementation this is controlled by the Sustained Uplink Data Rate, Uplink Burst Allocation, Sustained Downlink Data Rate, and Downlink Burst Allocation parameters.
<b>Media Access Control Address</b>	Hardware address that the factory assigns to the module for identification in the Data Link layer interface of the Open Systems Interconnection system. This address serves as an electronic serial number.
<b>MIB</b>	Management Information Base. Space that allows a program (agent) in the network to relay information to a network monitor about the status of defined variables (objects).
<b>MIR</b>	See Maximum Information Rate.
<b>MySQL</b>	A registered trademark of MySQL AB Company in the United States, the European Union, and other countries.
<b>mysqladmin</b>	A command to set the administrator and associated password on the Bandwidth and Authentication Manager (BAM) server.
<b>mysql-server</b>	Package group that enables the SQL Database Server application in the Red Hat® Linux® 9 operating system to provide SQL data for Bandwidth and Authentication Manager (BAM) operations.
<b>NAT</b>	Network Address Translation defined in RFC 1631. A scheme that isolates Subscriber Modules from the Internet. See <a href="http://www.faqs.org/rfcs/rfc1631.html">http://www.faqs.org/rfcs/rfc1631.html</a> .
<b>NBI</b>	See Northbound Interface.

<b>NEC</b>	National Electrical Code. The set of national wiring standards that are enforced in the U.S.A.
<b>NetBIOS</b>	Protocol defined in RFC 1001 and RFC 1002 to support an applications programming interface in TCP/IP. This interface allows a computer to transmit and receive data with another host computer on the network. RFC 1001 defines the concepts and methods. RFC 1002 defines the detailed specifications. See <a href="http://www.faqs.org/rfcs/rfc1001.html">http://www.faqs.org/rfcs/rfc1001.html</a> and <a href="http://www.faqs.org/rfcs/rfc1002.html">http://www.faqs.org/rfcs/rfc1002.html</a> .
<b>Network Address Translation</b>	Scheme that defines the Access Point Module as a proxy server to isolate registered Subscriber Modules from the Internet. Defined in RFC 1631. See <a href="http://www.faqs.org/rfcs/rfc1631.html">http://www.faqs.org/rfcs/rfc1631.html</a> .
<b>Network Management Station</b>	Monitor device that uses Simple Network Management Protocol (SNMP) to control, gather, and report information about predefined network variables (objects).
<b>NMS</b>	Network Management Station. A monitor device that uses Simple Network Management Protocol (SNMP) to control, gather, and report information about predefined network variables (objects).
<b>Northbound Interface</b>	The interface within Prizm to higher-level systems. This interface consists of a Simple Network Management Protocol (SNMP) agent for integration with a network management system (NMS); a Simple Object Access Protocol (SOAP) XML-based application programming interface (API) for web services that supports integration with an operations support systems (OSS) such as a customer relationship management (CRM), billing, or provisioning system; and console automation that allows such higher-level systems to launch and appropriately display the PrizmEMS management console in a custom-developed GUI.
<b>Object</b>	Network variable that is defined in the Management Information Base.
<b>OptiPlex</b>	A trademark of Dell, Inc.
<b>OSS</b>	Operations support system, such as a customer relationship management (CRM), billing, or provisioning system. The application programming interface (API) for Prizm supports integrating Prizm with an OSS.
<b>outdiscards count Field</b>	How many outbound packets were discarded without errors that would have prevented their transmission. (Some of these packets may have been discarded to increase buffer space.)
<b>outerrors count Field</b>	How many outbound packets contained errors that prevented their transmission.
<b>outnucastpkts count Field</b>	How many packets for which the higher-level protocols requested transmission to a non-unicast (subnetwork-broadcast or subnetwork-multicast) address. The number includes those that were discarded or not sent.

<b>outoctets count Field</b>	How many octets were transmitted out of the interface, including those that deliver framing information.
<b>outucastpkts count Field</b>	How many packets for which the higher-level protocols requested transmission to a subnetwork-unicast address. The number includes those that were discarded or not sent.
<b>Override Plug</b>	Device that enables the operator to regain control of a module that has been locked by the No Remote Access feature, the 802.3 Link Disable feature, or a password or IP address that cannot be recalled. This device can be either fabricated on site or ordered.
<b>Pentium</b>	A registered trademark of Intel Corporation.
<b>php-mysql</b>	Package group that enables the Web Server application in the Red Hat® Linux® 9 operating system to provide data from the SQL Database Server application as PHP in the Bandwidth and Authentication Manager (BAM) GUI.
<b>Point-to-Point Protocol</b>	Standards that RFC 1661 defines for data transmittal on the Internet. Also known as PPP or PTP. See <a href="http://www.faqs.org/rfcs/rfc1661.html">http://www.faqs.org/rfcs/rfc1661.html</a> .
<b>Power Control</b>	Feature in Release 4.1 and later that allows the module to operate at less than 18 dB less than full power to reduce self-interference.
<b>PPTP</b>	Point to Point Tunneling Protocol. One of several virtual private network implementations. With the Network Address Translation (NAT) feature enabled, Subscriber Modules <i>do not</i> support VPNs that are based on this protocol. With NAT disabled, they do support VPNs that are based on this protocol.
<b>Prizm</b>	The Canopy software product that allows users to partition their entire Canopy networks into criteria-based subsets and independently monitor and manage those subsets. Prizm Release 1.0 and later includes a Northbound Interface to higher-level systems. Prizm Release 2.0 and later integrates Canopy Bandwidth and Authentication Manager (BAM) functionality and supports simple migration of a pre-existing authentication, bandwidth, and VLAN settings into the Prizm database.
<b>Protective Earth</b>	Connection to earth (which has a charge of 0 volts). Also known as ground.
<b>Proxy Server</b>	Network computer that isolates another from the Internet. The proxy server communicates for the other computer, and sends replies to only the appropriate computer, which has an IP address that is not unique or not registered.
<b>PTMP</b>	Point-to-Multipoint Protocol defined in RFC 2178, which specifies that data that originates from a central network element can be received by all other network elements, but data that originates from a non-central network element can be received by only the central network element. See <a href="http://www.faqs.org/rfcs/rfc2178.html">http://www.faqs.org/rfcs/rfc2178.html</a> .

<b>PTP</b>	Point-to-Point Protocol. The standards that RFC 1661 defines for data transmittal on the Internet. See <a href="http://www.faqs.org/rfcs/rfc1661.html">http://www.faqs.org/rfcs/rfc1661.html</a> .
<b>QoS</b>	Quality of Service. A frame field that Bandwidth and Authentication Manager (BAM) provides to the AP and SM the sustained data rates and burst data limits of the SM. The format of this field is 64 hexadecimal characters of 0 to 9 and a to f. The BAM SQL database expresses this field as five contiguous subfields.
<b>Quality of Service</b>	A frame bit that Bandwidth and Authentication Manager (BAM) provides to the AP and SM the sustained data rates and burst data limits of the SM. The format of this field is 64 hexadecimal characters of 0 to 9 and a to f. The BAM SQL database expresses this field as five contiguous subfields. Also known as QoS.
<b>Quick Start</b>	Interface page that requires minimal configuration for initial module operation.
<b>Radio Signal Strength Indicator</b>	Relative measure of the strength of a received signal. An acceptable link displays an Radio Signal Strength Indicator (RSSI) value of greater than 700.
<b>Random Number</b>	Number that the Bandwidth and Authentication Manager (BAM) generates, invisible to both the SM and the network operator, to send to the SM as a challenge against an authentication attempt.
<b>Reader</b>	A registered trademark of Adobe Systems, Incorporated.
<b>Recharging</b>	Resumed accumulation of data in available data space (buckets). See Buckets.
<b>Red Hat</b>	A registered trademark of Red Hat, Inc.
<b>Reflection</b>	Change of direction and reduction of amplitude of a signal that encounters an object larger than the wavelength. Reflection may cause an additional copy of the wavelength to arrive at after the original, unobstructed wavelength arrives. This causes partial cancellation of the signal and may render the link unacceptable. However, in some instances where the direct signal cannot be received, the reflected copy may be received and render an otherwise unacceptable link acceptable.
<b>Registrations MIB</b>	Management Information Base file that defines registrations for global items such as product identities and product components. See also Management Information Base.
<b>repl-m</b>	A command that sets up the database replication process on a Bandwidth and Authentication Manager (BAM) master server, uses SFTP to copy both the database and the <code>repl-s</code> script to a BAM slave server, and remotely executes the <code>repl-s</code> script on the BAM slave server. See Master, Slave, <code>repl-s</code> , Secure Shell, and SFTP.

<b>repl-s</b>	A command that sets up the database replication process on a Bandwidth and Authentication Manager (BAM) slave server. See Master, Slave, and <code>repl-m</code> .
<b>RES</b>	Result. A field in the data that the <code>cmd show esn</code> command generates from the SQL database in the Bandwidth and Authentication Manager (BAM) server.
<b>RetransLimitExp Field</b>	This field displays how many times the retransmit limit has expired.
<b>RF</b>	Radio frequency. How many times each second a cycle in the antenna occurs, from positive to negative and back to positive amplitude.
<b>RJ-11</b>	Standard cable that is typically used for telephone line or modem connection.
<b>RJ-45</b>	Standard cable that is typically used for Ethernet connection. This cable may be wired as straight-through or as crossover. Later Canopy modules auto-sense whether the cable is straight-through or crossover.
<b>Router</b>	Network element that uses the logical (IP) address of another to pass data to only the intended recipient. Compare to Switch and Bridge.
<b>RPM</b>	Red Hat® Package Manager.
<b>rpm</b>	A command that the Linux® operating system accepts to identify the version of Linux® software that operates on the Bandwidth and Authentication Manager (BAM) server.
<b>RSSI</b>	Radio Signal Strength Indicator. A relative measure of the strength of a received signal. An acceptable link displays an RSSI value of greater than 700.
<b>RxBabErr Field</b>	This field displays how many receiver babble errors occurred.
<b>RxOverrun Field</b>	This field displays how many receiver overrun errors occurred on the Ethernet controller.
<b>SDK</b>	<i>PrizmEMS™ Software Development Kit (SDK)</i> —the document that provides server administrator tasks, GUI developer information for console automation that allows higher-level systems to launch and appropriately display the Prizm management console. The SDK also describes the how to define new element types and customize the Details views.
<b>Secure Shell</b>	A trademark of SSH Communications Security.
<b>Self-interference</b>	Interference with a module from another module in the same network.

<b>SES/2</b>	Third-from-right LED in the module. In the Access Point Module and Backhaul timing master, this LED is unused. In the operating mode for a Subscriber Module or a Backhaul timing slave, this LED flashes on and off to indicate that the module is not registered. In the aiming mode for a Subscriber Module or a Backhaul timing slave, this LED is part of a bar graph that indicates the quality of the RF link.
<b>Session Key</b>	Software key that the SM and Bandwidth and Authentication Manager (BAM) separately calculate based on that both the authentication key (or the factory-set default key) and the random number. BAM sends the session key to the AP. Neither the subscriber nor the network operator can view this key. See also Random Number.
<b>SFTP</b>	Secure File Transfer Protocol.
<b>Simple Network Management Protocol</b>	Standard that is used for communications between a program (agent) in the network and a network management station (monitor). Defined in RFC 1157. See <a href="http://www.fags.org/rfcs/rfc1157.html">http://www.fags.org/rfcs/rfc1157.html</a> .
<b>skey</b>	Software key that correlates to the random number that the Bandwidth and Authentication Manager (BAM) server generates and sends in a challenge through the AP to the SM. The network operator can create and, at some security risk, send this key over the air to the SM. The SQL database in the BAM server correlates this key to QoS information about the SM. The format of this key is 32 hexadecimal characters of 0 to 9 and a to f. This key must be unique to the individual SM. Also known as authentication key.
<b>Slave</b>	Designation that defines the role of a component relative to the role of another. This designation both applies to a Backhaul slave that receives synchronization over the air from another Backhaul module (a Backhaul timing master) and applies to a redundant Bandwidth and Authentication Manager (BAM) server whose SQL database is automatically overwritten by a copy from the primary BAM server (BAM master). In each case, the slave is not a product. Rather, the slave is the role that results from deliberate configuration steps.
<b>SM</b>	Customer premises equipment (CPE) device that extends network or Internet services by communication with an Access Point Module or an Access Point cluster.
<b>SM MIB</b>	Management Information Base file that defines objects that are specific to the Subscriber Module or Backhaul timing slave. See also Management Information Base.
<b>SNMP</b>	Simple Network Management Protocol, defined in RFC 1157. A standard that is used for communications between a program (agent) in the network and a network management station (monitor). See <a href="http://www.fags.org/rfcs/rfc1157.html">http://www.fags.org/rfcs/rfc1157.html</a> .
<b>SNMP Trap</b>	Capture of information that informs the network monitor through Simple Network Management Protocol of a monitored occurrence in the module.

<b>SOAP</b>	Simple Object Access Protocol (SOAP). The protocol that the Northbound Interface in Prizm uses to support integration of Prizm with an operations support systems (OSS) such as a customer relationship management (CRM), billing, or provisioning system
<b>SSE</b>	Bandwidth and Authentication Manager (BAM) interface to the SQL server. Unique sets of commands are available on this interface to manage the BAM SQL database and user access. Distinguished from Engine. See also Engine.
<b>Standard Operating Margin</b>	See Fade Margin.
<b>Static IP Address Assignment</b>	Assignment of Internet Protocol address that can be changed only manually. Thus static IP address assignment requires more configuration time and consumes more of the available IP addresses than DHCP address assignment does. RFC 2050 provides guidelines for the static allocation of IP addresses. See <a href="http://www.faqs.org/rfcs/rfc2050.html">http://www.faqs.org/rfcs/rfc2050.html</a> . See also DHCP.
<b>su -</b>	A command that opens a Linux <sup>®</sup> operating system session for the user <code>root</code> .
<b>Subnet Mask</b>	32-bit binary number that filters an IP address to reveal what part identifies the network and what part identifies the host. The number of subnet mask bits that are set to 1 indicates how many leading bits of the IP address identify the network. The number of subnet mask bits that are set 0 indicate how many trailing bits of the IP address identify the host.
<b>Subscriber Module</b>	Customer premises equipment (CPE) device that extends network or Internet services by communication with an Access Point Module or an Access Point cluster.
<b>Sustained Data Rate</b>	Preset rate limit of data transfer.
<b>Switch</b>	Network element that uses the port that is associated with the physical address of another to pass data to only the intended recipient. Compare to Bridge and Router.
<b>SYN/1</b>	Second-from-right LED in the module. In the Access Point Module or Backhaul timing master, as in a registered Subscriber Module or Backhaul timing slave, this LED is continuously lit to indicate the presence of sync. In the operating mode for a Subscriber Module or Backhaul timing slave, this LED flashes on and to indicate that the module is not registered. In the aiming mode for a Subscriber Module or a Backhaul timing slave, this LED is part of a bar graph that indicates the quality of the RF link.
<b>Sync</b>	GPS (Global Positioning System) absolute time, which is passed from one module to another. Sync enables timing that prevents modules from transmitting or receiving interference. Sync also provides correlative time stamps for troubleshooting efforts.



<b>TCP</b>	Alternatively known as Transmission Control Protocol or Transport Control Protocol. The Transport Layer in the TCP/IP protocol stack. This protocol is applied to assure that data packets arrive at the target network element and to control the flow of data through the Internet. Defined in RFC 793. See <a href="http://www.faqs.org/rfcs/rfc793.html">http://www.faqs.org/rfcs/rfc793.html</a> .
<b>tcp</b>	Transport Control type of port. The Canopy system uses Port 3306:tcp for MySQL <sup>®</sup> database communications, Port 9080:tcp for SSE <code>telnet</code> communications, and Port 9090:tcp for Engine <code>telnet</code> communications.
<b>TDD</b>	Time Division Duplexing.
<b>TDMA</b>	Time Division Multiple Access.
<b>telnet</b>	Utility that allows a client computer to update a server. A firewall can prevent the use of the <code>telnet</code> utility to breach the security of the server. See <a href="http://www.faqs.org/rfcs/rfc818.html">http://www.faqs.org/rfcs/rfc818.html</a> , <a href="http://www.faqs.org/rfcs/rfc854.html">http://www.faqs.org/rfcs/rfc854.html</a> and <a href="http://www.faqs.org/rfcs/rfc855.html">http://www.faqs.org/rfcs/rfc855.html</a> .
<b>Textual Conventions MIB</b>	Management Information Base file that defines Canopy system-specific textual conventions. See also Management Information Base.
<b>Time of Last Transaction</b>	A field in the data that the <code>cmd show esn</code> command generates from data in the SQL database in the Bandwidth and Authentication Manager (BAM) server. This field identifies the time of day of the most recent authentication attempt by the SM. Expressed in the database output as TLT.
<b>TLT</b>	Time of last transaction. A field in the data that the <code>cmd show esn</code> command generates from data in the SQL database in the Bandwidth and Authentication Manager (BAM) server. This field identifies the time of day of the most recent authentication attempt by the SM.
<b>TNAF</b>	Total number of authentication requests failed. A field in the data that the <code>cmd show esn</code> command generates from the SQL database in the Bandwidth and Authentication Manager (BAM) server. This field indicates how many times the SM (identified by ESN in the related data) attempted to authenticate but was denied by BAM.
<b>TNAR</b>	Total number of authentication requests. A field in the data that the <code>cmd show esn</code> command generates from the SQL database in the Bandwidth and Authentication Manager (BAM) server. This field indicates how many times the SM (identified by ESN in the related data) attempted to authenticate, regardless of whether the attempt succeeded.
<b>Tokens</b>	Theoretical amounts of data. See also Buckets.
<b>TOS</b>	8-bit field in that prioritizes data in a IP transmission. See <a href="http://www.faqs.org/rfcs/rfc1349.html">http://www.faqs.org/rfcs/rfc1349.html</a> .



<b>TxUnderrun Field</b>	This field displays how many transmission-underrun errors occurred on the Ethernet controller.
<b>UDP</b>	User Datagram Protocol. A set of Network, Transport, and Session Layer protocols that RFC 768 defines. These protocols include checksum and address information but does not retransmit data or process any errors. See <a href="http://www.faqs.org/rfcs/rfc768.html">http://www.faqs.org/rfcs/rfc768.html</a> .
<b>udp</b>	User-defined type of port.
<b>U-NII</b>	Unlicensed National Information Infrastructure radio frequency band, in the 5.1-GHz through 5.8-GHz ranges.
<b>VID</b>	VLAN identifier. See VLAN.
<b>VLAN</b>	Virtual local area network. An association of devices through software that contains broadcast traffic, as routers would, but in the switch-level protocol.
<b>VPN</b>	Virtual private network for communication over a public network. One typical use is to connect remote employees, who are at home or in a different city, to their corporate network over the Internet. Any of several VPN implementation schemes is possible. With the Network Address Translation feature (NAT) enabled, SMs on Canopy System Release 4.2 or later support L2TP over IPSec (Level 2 Tunneling Protocol over IP Security) VPNs, but <i>do not</i> support PPTP (Point to Point Tunneling Protocol) VPNs. With NAT disabled, SMs support all types of VPNs.